

THE GRANDEUR THAT WAS AND IS
Columns of a palatial Pompeian house.

LATIN—SECOND YEAR

BY

LILLIAN GAY BERRY

PROFESSOR AND HEAD, DEPARTMENT OF LATIN
INDIANA UNIVERSITY

AND

JOSEPHINE L. LEE

TEACHER OF LATIN, SHORTRIDGE HIGH SCHOOL
INDIANAPOLIS, INDIANA

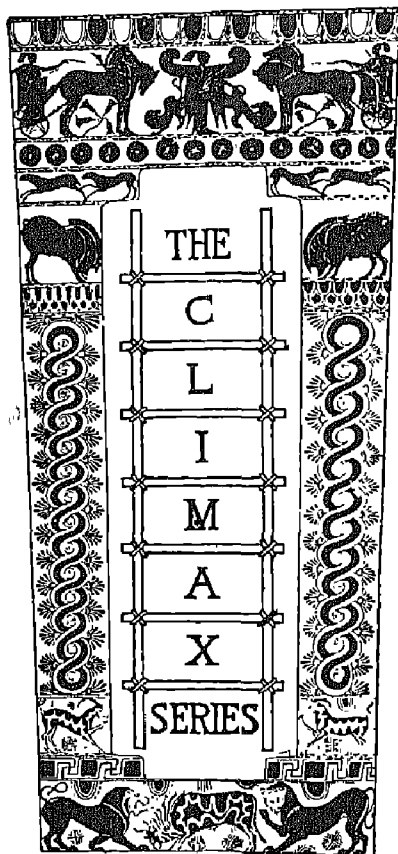


SILVER BURDETT COMPANY

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

SAN FRANCISCO



RALPH VAN DEMAN MAGOFFIN

LATE PROFESSOR AND HEAD, DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS
NEW YORK UNIVERSITY

EDITOR

COPYRIGHT, 1930, 1932, 1938, 1942, BY SILVER BURDETT COMPANY

EDITOR'S PREFACE

The Climax Series of Latin textbooks for the secondary school, of which this volume is the second, embodies the spirit of the recommendations made in the General Report of the Classical Investigation.

The Series contains the material that has been sanctioned by experience and also other material that may have a stronger appeal to teachers and pupils of today. Latin, from the point of view of linguistics, receives due emphasis and at the same time its ethical, cultural, and literary values receive the attention they deserve. From the outset, the material and method are designed to cultivate interest in the study of Latin. By awakening and developing an interest in Latin for its human significance, it is believed that this Series will give the work in Latin renewed effectiveness.

LATIN-SECOND YEAR is the product of many years' experience both in teaching Latin to pupils in the second year of high school and in conducting courses for teachers who were teaching or were to teach Latin in the second year. LATIN-SECOND YEAR and LATIN-FIRST YEAR meet every requirement for the first two years of Latin.

The illustrations and the descriptions of them provide many opportunities to deepen and widen the knowledge and interest of pupils in the life, language, and literature of the Romans; and the Latin subject matter emphasizes the Roman characteristics of *virtus*, *fortitūdō*, and *disciplīna*.

RALPH VAN DEMAN MAGOFFIN

NEW YORK UNIVERSITY

VIRGINIBUS PUERĪSQUE
— HORACE

AUTHORS' PREFACE

LATIN-SECOND YEAR is the result of the conviction of the authors that Latin may be so selected and taught that the pupil will find pleasure in reading it for its content, satisfaction in acquiring power to read it with some ease and rapidity, and an abiding interest in language and literature.

READING CONTENT. The reading content of LATIN-SECOND YEAR serves to give a cultural background by affording a knowledge of Roman life, institutions, ideals, literature, and men of letters, and of the influence of these on civilization. The selections chosen are varied, attractive, adapted to the interest and capacity of high school pupils, and of a character to develop progressive power to read Latin. The wealth of subject matter affords the teacher much freedom in the selection of material suitable for different classes and for the varying ability of pupils. The content is divided into four parts.

Part I, Myths, consists of twelve stories from classical mythology selected for their appeal to human interest and their significance in relation to present-day life.

Part II, The Argonauts, has as its subject matter the story of the Argonautic expedition as told by Ritchie in "Fābulae Faciles," which is a conscious imitation of the style, language, and syntax of Caesar's "Gallic War." Thus, through an interesting and ancient tale of adventure with an appeal to the imagination of youth, the pupil is prepared to read Caesar with greater facility. Part II is to be used by the teacher as best fits the needs of the class. Some teachers may wish to use it for intensive study of syntax, while others may prefer to use it for rapid reading.

Part III, Readings from Roman Literature, consists of simple and interesting readings selected after careful study and experi-

ment from a wide range of Latin authors. They include *Glimpses of Roman History*, which embraces important episodes in the history of Rome; *Rome Day by Day*, which contains selections touching almost every phase of daily life; *The Story-Teller*, which gives versions of many folk tales, fables, and legends as found in Latin authors. Part III is taken directly from Latin authors. The selections have been simplified only by the omission of the more difficult passages and the elimination of certain unusual words that the pupil does not need to know for subsequent reading. Points of unusual difficulty are carefully annotated or translated. Part III is especially adapted for meeting the individual differences of pupils. For some pupils parts of it may be used as sight reading.

Part IV, Caesar's *Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, includes selections from the seven books of the Gallic War. All chapters omitted are briefly summarized that the pupil may see, as in a moving picture, the continuous story of the seven dramatic years which were destined to have a profound effect upon the history of civilization.

The chapters included in the text are those which have been found to be most valuable from the point of view of historical background; which give an idea of typical methods of Roman warfare, such as a land battle, a sea fight, and a great siege; which give information concerning the life of the ancient Gauls, Germans, and Britons; and which throw light on the character of Caesar.

In order that too many difficulties may not at once confront the pupil and that he may gain confidence in himself and interest in the story through being able to read it with some speed, some of the rather long and involved passages in Liber I are omitted, or if in indirect discourse, they are changed to the direct form.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY. The lack of a *vocabulary* of permanently retained words constitutes the pupil's greatest handicap in reading and understanding Latin. Special attention has been given to this vexing problem. The words listed under *Required Vocabulary* are those specified for the second year of Latin (and some first year words not generally found in first books) by the

College Entrance Examination Board and the New York State Revised Syllabus. Each of these words is set down to be learned in the lesson in which it *first* occurs. As a rule, it is to be used in an English-Latin sentence of a lesson or in a review, and later is recalled through an English derivative. All first and second year required words are starred in the *Latin-English Vocabulary*. A thorough mastery of this limited number of words often used, or important from the point of view of English derivative, as an integral part of each lesson will result in increased ability to read Latin with ease and understanding.

WORD STUDY. The *word studies* are designed not merely to afford knowledge of the derivation and formation of specified Latin words, but to develop the ability to determine the meaning of new words through a knowledge of the significance of roots, prefixes, and suffixes. English derivatives are taken up in the lessons in which their Latin ancestors occur and are confined to words in general use. The majority of these are to be found in Thorndike's "Teacher's Word Book." Occasional little stories are included which give the ancestry and life histories of interesting words.

Underlying all the suggested vocabulary work is the thought that the study of words is not dry and dull but that in a single word often lies a hidden world in which one may travel with profit and pleasure.

FORMS AND SYNTAX. *Forms* and *syntax* are not taught as an end but as a very necessary means to an end which cannot be realized without a thorough understanding of each. New points are taken up under the heading *Rēs Grammaticae* and points to be reviewed under the heading *Iteratiō*.

Part I takes up for intensive study the forms and constructions necessary for second year reading which are not now usually studied in the first year. Each new point is first met functionally in the Latin narrative of the lesson in which it is explained, compared with similar expressions in English, and illustrated by Latin examples.

Part II continues the study of additional new constructions and by reviewing several special points in each lesson systemati-

cally covers all forms and syntax that have been studied in first year Latin and in second year up to this point. Part II is to be used by the teacher as best fits the needs of the class. The review may not be necessary with all classes, as all important points of syntax are again taken up in Part IV.

Part III is not intended as an exercise ground for the study of syntax, but the abundance and variety of its subject matter afford ample practice for applying in adequate translation the principles of syntax previously studied.

Part IV takes up for systematic study, largely review, all important points of syntax necessary for second year reading. One point is taken up for special study in each lesson. It is presented in four ways: an example in the context of the lesson and in *Syntax for Reference*, a Latin quotation, a Latin question, and an English-Latin sentence. The use of any or all of this material is optional. Each important point of syntax has, if possible, three references to it in the notes of the lessons.

The examples used as illustrations in *Syntax for Reference* are taken from Caesar's "Gallic War."

EXERCISE. The *Exercises* (**Exercitātiō** in Part IV) afford oral and written practice on the required vocabulary and the forms or points of syntax taught or reviewed in the lesson. The sentences under *Respondē Latīnē* and *Scribē Latīnē* may be used at the discretion of the teacher. Some teachers may choose to take them up at stated intervals, dealing with a number of sentences in one composition lesson.

COMPREHENSION. The *Comprehension* questions are not meant to be exhaustive, but merely suggestive of questions that deal with the story or thought of the lesson unit.

ORAL LATIN. The *oral side* of Latin is provided for in an abundance of short, easy, Latin questions which may be asked and answered orally in Latin.

In order that the pupil may get the aid in the interpretation of the thought that should come from fluent and intelligent oral reading of the Latin, the quantity of the vowels is marked in the poetry as well as in the prose. It is not intended or even advisable to make a study of the meter of the poems, or to attempt

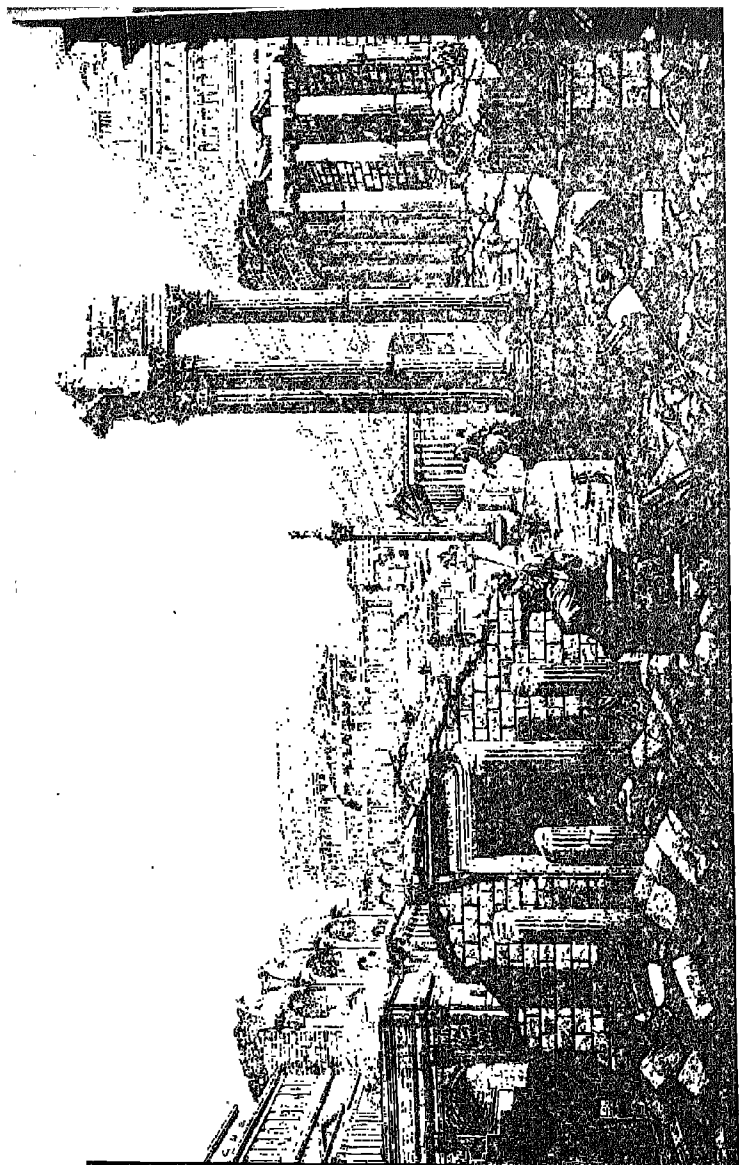
to read them metrically. But since the proper reading of Latin poetry depends upon the correct pronunciation of the vowels and syllables and a knowledge of the simple principle of elision, some pupils with a little help from the teacher may be able to read it as poetry.

LITERARY BACKGROUND. The *literary background* of LATIN-SECOND YEAR includes suggested collateral readings in English, pertinent quotations from many ancient and modern sources, and brief sketches of the lives of Roman writers from whose works selections are included in the text. These have been selected with a view to giving a deeper understanding of the subject matter in its broader implications, and a wider acquaintance with and appreciation of literature in general.

ILLUSTRATIONS. Each *illustration* is an integral part of the lesson in which it occurs. The illustrations represent various types of art and include examples of Roman architecture, coins, mosaics, sculptured reliefs, and statuary; Greek vase paintings; medieval drawings, engravings, and tapestries; photographs of places referred to in the text; and reproductions of illustrated Latin manuscripts. Thanks are due to the museums and libraries which have graciously granted the privilege of photographing antiquities which they cherish among their treasures. Grateful acknowledgment is made to the many friends of the classics who have contributed to this effort to visualize effectively and artistically the daily life of the ancient Romans and to add to the pupils' knowledge and appreciation of art.

The authors wish to express their indebtedness to the many teachers of Latin from whom they have received valuable suggestions and assistance. It is not possible to name all to whom most grateful acknowledgment is due.

LILLIAN GAY BERRY
JOSEPHINE L. LEE



From the *Archaeological Survey of Rome*

AVE ROMA IMMORTALIS

CONTENTS

PART I. MYTHS

OPUSCULUM	FĀBULA	RĒS GRAMMATICAE	PAGE
I	The First Aviators <i>Daedalus and Icarus</i>	Deponent Verbs Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs	3
II	An Old Love Story, I <i>Pyramus and Thisbe</i>	Future Perfect Tense Adjectives in -iūs and -ī	7
III	An Old Love Story, II <i>Pyramus and Thisbe</i>	The Subjunctive Mood Present Subjunctive Purpose Clauses	11
IV	A Reckless Driver, I <i>Phaëthon</i>	The Irregular Verb ferō Transitive and Intransitive Verbs Dative with a Compound Verb	15
V	A Reckless Driver, II <i>Phaëthon</i>	Imperfect Subjunctive Result Clauses	18
VI	The Touch of Gold <i>King Midas</i>	The Irregular Verb fiō The Indefinite Pronoun quidam	22
VII	The Flood <i>Deucalion and Pyrrha</i>	Perfect Subjunctive Past Perfect Subjunctive Sequence of Tenses Indirect Questions	26
VIII	The Labors of Hercules, I	The Irregular Verb volō Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs	31
IX	The Labors of Hercules, II	The Irregular Verbs nōlō and mālō Negative Commands Cum Circumstantial Clauses Cum Clauses with the Indicative	35
X	Cupid and Psyche, I	Cum Causal Clauses Cum Adversative Clauses Dative of Possession The Irregular Verb eō	40
XI	Cupid and Psyche, II	The Gerund The Gerundive Passive Periphrastic Conjugation Dative of Agent	44

OPUSCULUM	FĀBULA	RĒS GRAMMATICAE	PAGE
XII	The First Beauty Contest <i>The Judgment of Paris</i>	Independent Volitive Subjunctive Substantive Volitive Subjunctive Accusative of Place to Which	50
XIII	Reiterandum Est	Review of Forms, Syntax, and Required Vocabulary	54

PART II.* THE ARGONAUTS

AN ANCIENT GREEK STORY OF ADVENTURE

XIV	Saved from a Wicked Uncle	Objective Genitive	60
XV	The Return of Jason	Active Periphrastic Conjugation	63
XVI	Jason Promises to Obtain the Golden Fleece		66
XVII	The Building of the Argo	Relative Clause of Purpose Dative of Purpose	69
XVIII	The Argo Sails with Many Heroes Aboard	Impersonal Use of Verbs	72
XIX	The Fatal Result of Mistaken Identity	Ablative of Measure of Difference Genitive of the Whole	75
XX	Hylas Is Kidnapped by the Nymphs		78
XXI	Phineus Saved from the Harpies	Subjunctive in Subordinate Clause of Indirect Discourse	80
XXII	The Argo Passes between the Clashing Rocks	Subjunctive of Anticipation	83
XXIII	The Price to be Paid for the Golden Fleece	Genitive and Ablative of Description	86
XXIV	The King's Daughter Falls in Love with Jason	Ablative of Specification	89
XXV	The Harvest of the Dragon's Teeth		92
XXVI	Medea Prepares to Flee with Jason	Substantive Clauses with Words of Doubting	95

*Part II includes a comprehensive review, *Iterātio*, of the forms and syntax of LATIN-FIRST YEAR and Part I of LATIN-SECOND YEAR. Two or more of these review points are taken up in each lesson in connection with their occurrence in the Latin reading, and practice in their use is given in the exercises.

CONTENTS

xiii

OPUSCULUM	FĀBULA	RĒS GRAMMATICAE	PAGE
XXVII	The Golden Fleece at Last	Dative of Reference	97
XXVIII	Flight and Pursuit		102
XXIX	Jason's Demand and the Promise of Pelias		105
XXX	Medea's Magic Fails to Restore Pelias		107
XXXI	The Fate of Medea and Jason	Ablative of Accordance	110
XXXII	Reiterandum Est	Review of Forms, Syntax, Required Vocabulary, and Word Study	113

PART III. READINGS FROM ROMAN LITERATURE

GLIMPSES OF ROMAN HISTORY

The Kings of Rome	<i>Entropius</i>	117
The Prophecy of an Imperial Rome	<i>Livy</i>	119
Lūcius Iūnius Brūtus	<i>Livy</i>	119
The People Gain Their Rights	<i>Livy</i>	120
Hannibal, The Enemy of Rome	<i>Nepos</i>	121
Hannibal Hides His Money	<i>Nepos</i>	122
An Early Champion of Woman's Rights	<i>Livy</i>	123
An Honest Governor	<i>Gellius</i>	126
Cicero Writes to a Friend on Caesar's Staff	<i>Cicero</i>	127
Caesar Rewards an Ex-service Man	<i>Seneca</i>	129
The Ides of March	<i>Suetonius</i>	130
The Deeds of Augustus	<i>Augustus</i>	132
The Last Day of Pompeii	<i>Pliny the Younger</i>	135
The Early Christians	<i>Tertullian</i>	137

ROME DAY BY DAY

The Household God	<i>Plautus</i>	139
Here Comes the Bride	<i>Catullus</i>	141
A Courageous Wife	<i>Pliny the Younger</i>	143
Welcome Home	<i>Catullus</i>	144
Cato's Idea of a Housekeeper	<i>Cato</i>	145
Cato's Recipe for Cheese-Cake	<i>Cato</i>	146
The Gods of the Farmer	<i>Varro</i>	146
Famous Roman Farmers	<i>Cicero</i>	147
The Farm Manager	<i>Cato</i>	149

	PAGE
A Roman's Day	<i>Martial</i> . . . 150
A Poet's Prescription	<i>Martial</i> . . . 151
Nōn Amō Tē	<i>Martial</i> . . . 151
An Old-Time Clinic	<i>Martial</i> . . . 152
An Old Excuse	<i>Martial</i> . . . 152
A Snowstorm at Rome	<i>Martial</i> . . . 153
The Lesser of Two Evils	<i>Martial</i> . . . 153
Requiescant in Pāce	<i>Martial</i> . . . 154
Hope Deferred	<i>Martial</i> . . . 154
The Miser's Lament	<i>Plautus</i> . . . 154
Echo Answers	<i>Ovid</i> . . . 155
At the Races	<i>Ovid</i> . . . 157
Lovers' Quarrels	<i>Catullus</i> . . . 158
A Confirmed Bachelor	<i>Gellius</i> . . . 158
A Roman Joke	<i>Quintilian</i> . . . 159
The Bore	<i>Horace</i> . . . 159
Friendship	<i>Cicero</i> . . . 161
Immortality	<i>Cicero</i> . . . 161
The Heavens Declare the Glory of God	<i>Cicero</i> . . . 162
An Honorable Man	<i>Seneca</i> . . . 163
Footpath to Peace	<i>Juvenal</i> . . . 164
To See Ourselves as Others See Us	<i>Phaedrus</i> . . . 164
Ignōrantia Lēgis Nēminem Excūsāt	<i>Legal Maxims</i> . . . 165
The First Latin Primer	<i>Distichs of Calo</i> . . . 166
The First Illustrated Latin Textbook	<i>Comenius</i> . . . 168
Gaudeāmus Igitur	169

THE STORY-TELLER

The Price of Luxury	<i>Acsop</i> . . . 170
Who Will Bell the Cat?	<i>Odo</i> . . . 171
The Fox in the Well	<i>Odo</i> . . . 171
A Sack of Tricks	<i>Odo</i> . . . 172
Hard to Please	<i>De Vitry</i> . . . 172
A Horseback Ride	<i>De Vitry</i> . . . 173
The Power of Suggestion	<i>De Vitry</i> . . . 174
Having the Last Word	<i>De Vitry</i> . . . 174
The Lazy Slave	<i>Alfonsus</i> . . . 174
Breaking the News	<i>Alfonsus</i> . . . 175
Please Everybody, Please Nobody	<i>Petrarch</i> . . . 176
The Heavy Loaf	<i>Gesta Rōmānōrum</i> 177

CONTENTS

xv

	PAGE
The Daughters of King Lear	<i>Gesta Rōmānōrum</i> 178
Two After Dinner Stories, I	<i>Erasmus</i> . . . 179
Two After Dinner Stories, II	<i>Erasmus</i> . . . 180
The Magic Ring	<i>Cicero</i> 180
The Dream That Came True	<i>Cicero</i> 181
The Casket Story of the Merchant of Venice	<i>Gesta Rōmānōrum</i> 181
The Boy Who Went to the Senate	<i>Gellius</i> 183
Columbus Discovers America	<i>Columbus</i> . . . 184

PART IV. CAESAR'S COMMENTĀRĪ DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ

INTRODUCTION

Gaius Julius Caesar	189
Roman Warfare	196

LIBER I 205

The Campaign Against the Helvetians. The War with Ariovistus

Chapters: 1-15; 21-29; 35.

Summaries of chapters: 16-20; 30-34; 36; 37-54.

LIBER II 258

The Campaign Against the Belgians

Chapters: 1-15; 20-21; 25-27.

Summaries of chapters: 16-19; 22-24; 28-35.

LIBER III 294

The Campaign Against the Veneti

Chapters: 14, 15, 16.

Summaries of chapters: 1-6; 7-13; 17-29.

LIBER IV 302

The First Invasion of Germany. The First Invasion of Britain

Chapters: 1, 2, part of 12, 20-38.

Summaries of chapters: 3-12; 13-16; 17; 18-19.

LIBER V 333

The Second Invasion of Britain. The Revolt of Northern Gaul

Chapters: 12-14; 30-31; 40-45; 48-49; 52.

Summaries of chapters: 1-11; 15-23; 24-29; 32-39; 45-47; 50-51;
53-58.

	PAGE
LIBER VI	349
The Second Invasion of Germany	
Chapters: 9-24; 38.	
Summaries of chapters: 1-8; 24; 25-28; 29-37; 39-44.	
LIBER VII	360
The Defeat of the United Gauls under Vercingetorix	
Chapters: 1, 4, 15, part of 25, part of 50, 63-60, 88-89.	
Summaries of chapters: 2-3; 5-14; 16-24; part of 25; 26-50; 51-62; 70-87; 90.	
FORMS FOR REFERENCE	386
RULES OF SYNTAX FOR REFERENCE	410
PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES FOR REFERENCE	433
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	1
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	67
INDEX	79
SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES FOR WRITING LATIN	85

Maps

IMPERIUM ROMANUM	<i>Between</i> 56-57
GALLIA	<i>Between</i> 180-187
THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS	242
THE BATTLE ON THE AXONA (AISNE)	272
THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII	284

Illustrations in Color

THE GRANDEUR THAT WAS AND IS	<i>Facing</i> i
A PAGE FROM THE FIRST PRINTED BOOK	<i>Facing</i> xvi
HERCULES SLAYS THE NEMEAN LION	<i>Facing</i> 31
THE DANCING HOURS WITH APOLLO AND THE SUN CHARIOT	<i>Facing</i> 46
THE TOILETTE OF THE BRIDE	<i>Facing</i> 142
CHARIOT RIDE ALONG THE BAY OF NAPLES	<i>Facing</i> 159
"SPLENDOR SET WITH ALL SUPERB DESIGN"	<i>Facing</i> 174
COMMENTĂRII DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ	<i>Facing</i> 191



Courtesy New York Public Library

A PAGE FROM THE FIRST PRINTED BOOK

This is the first page from the Proverbs of Solomon in the Gutenberg Bible, which is traditionally accepted as the first book printed from movable type. It was printed in Germany about 1454. The proverbs, in Latin, begin in the second column beside the illustration.

PART I

MYTHS

They wove bright fables in the days of old,
When Reason borrowed Fancy's painted wings;
When Truth's clear river flowed o'er sands of gold
And told in song its high and mystic things.

THOMAS K. HERVEY, *Cupid and Psyche*



From an engraving by Bernard Picart

Courtesy of Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

THE FALL OF ICARUS

This illustration of the flight of Daedalus and Icarus is found in a seventeenth-century text of this story in Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

OPUSCULUM PRIMUM

Nil mortālibus arduū est ;
 Caelum ipsum petimus stultitiā.
*Nothing is hard for mortals ;
 In our folly we try the sky itself.*

HORACE

1.

THE FIRST AVIATORS

Daedalus erat artifex peritissimus. Is cum filiō Īcarō Crētā venī, ubi multis officiis¹ Mīnōi rēgi fūctus est. Rēx locum tūtum Mīnōtaurō,² quod mōnstrum³ hominibus vēscēbatur, cupiebat. Huic bēstiae saevae, quae corpus hominis habuit sed caput tauri, Daedalus labyrinthum aedificāvit, in quō erant multae ambāgēs. In labyrinthum Mīnōs tandem irātus Daedalum et Īcarum in custōdiam coniēcit.

Daedalus cupidus libertātis sibi et filiō suō ālās fēcit. Pinnīs et cērā ūsus est. His ad umerōs affixīs, ut avēs, tum volāre cōnāti sunt. Īcarus cōnārī nōn verēbatur. Hic, quī¹⁰ ālis suis fruēbatur, patre invitō,⁴ altius volāre incipiēbat. Volāvit prope sōlem, quī cēram liquidam fēcit. Ālae ex umerīs dēcidērunt et ipse igitur in mare, quod ex eō Īcarium Mare⁵ appellātum est, dēcidit. Daedalus autem ad Graeciam patriam tūtus pervēnit. Ibi multōs annōs vitā frūctus est.¹⁵

Poēta Horātius scripsit :

Expertus vacuum Daedalus āera⁶ pinnīs nōn hominī datīs.⁷

This story and others of a mythological character are found in .

Classical Myths That Live Today, FRANCES E. SABIN, Silver, Burdett and Company.

Classic Myths in English Literature and in Art, CHARLES MILLS GAYLEY, Ginn and Company.

Greek and Roman Mythology, JESSIE M. TATLOCK, The Century Company.

Myths of Greece and Rome, H. A. GUERBER, American Book Company.

Myths and Their Meaning, MAX J. HERZBERG, Allyn and Bacon.

2.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Ēdiscenda, nōn modo in manibus cotidiē habenda, *To be learned thoroughly, not merely to be held in the hand each day.* **PLINY.** This advice of a Roman writer should be followed in the study of the required vocabulary.

In your first year of Latin you have learned about five hundred Latin words. If you will learn the words included in each required vocabulary of this book, you will have at the end of the year a working vocabulary that will increase your ability to read Latin. Moreover, you will then have learned all the words required for the first two years of Latin.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum	try	perītus, -a, -um	skillful
experior, -irī, -pertus sum	make	sōl, sōlis, m.	sun
	trial of, attempt	ut as	
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	begin	ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum	use
		vacuus, -a, -um	empty

3.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **multis officiis:** translate as if direct object of **fūctus est**.
2. **Mīnōtaurō:** dative of **Mīnōtaurus**.
3. **quod mōnstrum:** *a monster which;* the antecedent is within the relative clause and agrees in case with the relative **quod** (560, a).
4. **patre invitō:** *against his father's will;* ablative absolute.
5. **Īcarium Mare:** predicate nominative with **appellātum est**.
6. **āera:** direct object of **expertus (est)**; the Greek form of the accusative; the Latin form, if used, would be **āerem**.
7. **pinnis . . . datis:** *translate on wings not given to man.*

4.

COMPREHENSION

1. What did Daedalus do for King Minos?
2. How was he at a later time treated by the angry king?
3. In what way did he escape? With what result?

5.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Deponent verbs. In the sentence, **pater et filius volāre cōnāti sunt,** **cōnāti sunt** is active in meaning, but passive in form. Such a verb is called a *deponent* (from **dēpōnere**, *lay aside*) because it has laid aside or lost its active forms and its passive

meaning. The forms of the deponent verbs in each of the four conjugations are the same as those of the passive voice of regular verbs.

<i>First Conj.:</i>	<i>cōnor, I attempt</i>	<i>cōnārī, to attempt</i>	<i>cōnātus sum, I have attempted</i>
<i>Second Conj.:</i>	<i>vereor, I fear</i>	<i>verērī, to fear</i>	<i>veritus sum, I have feared</i>
<i>Third Conj.:</i>	<i>utor, I use</i>	<i>ūtī, to use</i>	<i>usus sum, I have used</i>
<i>Fourth Conj.:</i>	<i>experior, I attempt</i>	<i>experīrī, to attempt</i>	<i>expertus sum, I have attempted</i>

Point out in the story five deponent verbs. For the conjugation of deponent verbs see 493.

The ablative with special deponents (547). In the sentence, *Daedalus cērā usus est, Daedalus used wax*, *cērā* is in the ablative case instead of the accusative of direct object, the case required in the English sentence. With the five verbs, *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vāscor*, the ablative case is thus used.

Point out four examples of the ablative so used with special deponent verbs.

6.

EXERCISE

Write the synopsis of: *cōnor* in the third person plural; *experior* in the first person plural; *utor* in the third person singular.

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Quis erat Daedalus? 2. Quem ad locum Daedalus vēnit? 3. Quis cum Daedalō erat? 4. Cūr altius Icarus volāvit? 5. Quid sōl fēcit?

Scrībe Latīnē: 1. King Minos uses the labyrinth. 2. Daedalus and his son as birds will use wings. 3. The son was attempting to fly with his skillful father. 4. Icarus makes trial of the empty air. 5. He did not enjoy the sun.

7.

WORD STUDY

To what word in the story is each of these words related by derivation: *aviator*, *experiment*, *fruition*, *function*, *liquefy*, *solarium*, *useful*, *utility*?

LATIN SECOND YEAR

Roger Bacon, a thirteenth century scholar who was interested in scientific discoveries, foretold the invention of the airplane, which would be propelled "in the manner of a flying bird."

The birds can fly, an' why can't I?

J. T. TROWBRIDGE, *Darius Green and His Flying Machine*

And lest his wings should melt apace old Daedalus flies low,
But Icarus beats up, beats up, he goes where lightnings go.
He cares no more for warnings, he rushes through the sky,
Braving the crags of ether, daring the gods on high,
Black against the crimson sunset, gold over cloudy snows,
With all Adventure in his heart the first winged man arose.

STEPHEN VINCENT BENÉT, *The Winged Man**



*The Langley
Medal*

*Courtesy of Smithso-
nian Institution*

THE AIR IS ALSO MAN'S DOMINION

The Langley Medal was given for a non-stop flight across the Atlantic Ocean.

* From *Young Adventure*, by Stephen Vincent Benét, published by Doubleday, Doran and Company.



Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

THISBE HIDES FROM THE LION

This illustration is from a 1563 edition of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, in which the story of Pyramus and Thisbe is told.

II

OPUSCULUM SECUNDUM

In such a night
Did Thisbe fearfully o'ertrip the dew,
And saw the lion's shadow ere himself,
And ran dismayed away.

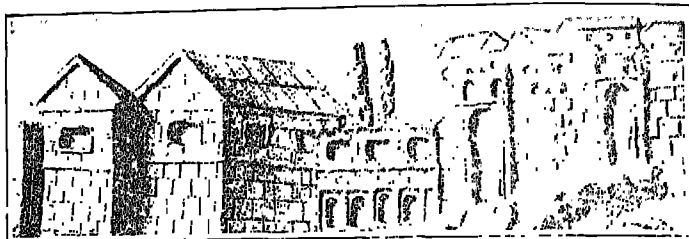
SHAKESPEARE, *The Merchant of Venice*

8.

AN OLD LOVE STORY, I *

Urbem Babylōniam, Pȳramus, adulēscēns fortis, incolēbat.
Thisbē, puella pulcherrima, domum adiūctam habitābat.
Quod inter sē¹ amābant, Pȳramus eam in mātirimōnium dūcere
statuit. Hoc tamen parentēs crūdēlēs vetuērunt. Alterum
alteram vidēre nōn patiēbantur. Amantēs autem signīs inter s
sē loquēbantur.

* A burlesque on this story is found in Shakespeare, *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, V, 1.



DUAE DOMŪS

Venus, dea amoris, adulēscētib² favēbat. "Brevi tempore," inquit, "eīs auxiliū miserō.³" Auxiliō ei⁴ amantēs rīam parvam in pariete commūnī quī domum alterius ā domō⁴ alterius dividēbat vidērunt. Multās epistulās, quās per rīam trādēbant, scribēbant. Ā deā inducti,⁵ parentibus invitīs, ē domib⁶ excēdere dēcrēvērunt. Singulās rēs⁷ tōtius fugae sic cōstituērunt: "Ante mediam noctem ē domō excēserō," Pīramus scripsit.

15 Thisbē respondit, "Ante illud tempus urbem reliquerō et ad vetustum tumulum Nīnī rēgis pervēnerō."

Post haec adulēscēns, "Si pīma ad illum locum pervēneris, sub mōrum tē celā.⁸" In epistulā puella respondit, "Pallam albam meam mēcū portābō et, cum tē venientem aū-
20 dīverō, eam induam. Facile eam in umbrā vidēbis."

Thisbē autem, quae sōla ad locum cōstitutum vēnerat, aspectū leōnis perterrita est. Abiectā pallā, quae nōn erat ūtilis, in cavernam fūgit.

9.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -entis, *m. or f.* a youth
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus decide
dividō, -ere, -visī, -visus separate
excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus de-
part

incolō, -ere, -uī, — live in

indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus influence

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum talk, speak
patior, -ī, passus sum permit
tōtus, -a, -um all, the whole
tumulus, -ī, *m.* tomb, mound
ūtilis, -e useful

vetustus, -a, -um ancient

10.

NOTES ON THE STORY

This story is told for the first time in the *Metamorphoses*, a poem by Ovid, a great Roman story teller.

1. *inter sē*: among themselves; translate each other.
2. *adulēscēntibus*: the young man and woman; dative with *favēbat*.
3. *miserō*: I shall have sent; future perfect indicative.
4. *ā domō*: from the house.
5. *inductī*: perfect passive participle, modifying the subject understood of *dēcrēverunt*.
6. *domibus*: When *domus* means house, a preposition is used with it to express place from which and to which.
7. *Singulās rēs*: the single things; translate the details.
8. *cēlā*: conceal; imperative.

11.

COMPREHENSION

1. How did Pyramus and Thisbe talk to each other? 2. What did they plan to do? 3. Why did Thisbe fail to carry out their plan?

12.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Future perfect tense (492). The future perfect tense denotes an action that will be completed before a definite time in the future. Observe that in the active the future perfect tense is formed by adding to the perfect stem the tense sign *-eri-* and to this the personal endings. In the first person singular, *i* drops out before *ō*: *portāv-er-ō*.

In the passive, the future perfect tense is formed by using the perfect passive participle with the future tense forms of *sum*: *portātus erō*.

Point out in the story all verbs in the future perfect indicative and tell whether they are active or passive.

Adjectives in *-ius* and *-ī* (478). There are nine irregular adjectives which have the ending *-ius* in the genitive singular and *-ī* in the dative singular. Otherwise they are declined as adjectives of the first and second declension. *Alius*, however, has the form *aliud* in both the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

Point out the irregular adjectives in the story and give the case of each.

13.

EXERCISE

Write or give the future perfect indicative of: amō, inducō, loquor.

Give the Latin for: to the whole city, of another night, of neither city, for one thing.

Decline: nūlla puella, aliud auxilium.

Respondē Latinē: 1. Quam urbem incolēbant Pȳramus et Thisbē? 2. Quid dē eis Venus dīxit? 3. Cūr fuga erat difficillima? 4. Quem ad tumultum Thisbē fūgit? 5. Quid puellae nōn ūtile erat?

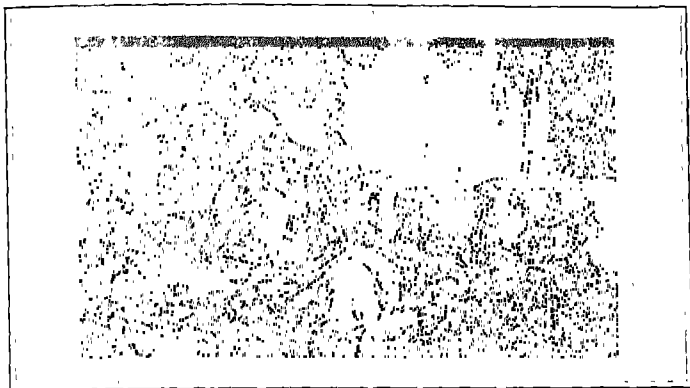
Scibe Latinē: 1. The home of the one is separated from the home of the other by an ancient wall. 2. Before that time I shall have decided the whole matter. 3. The one was not influenced by the other. 4. Before night they will have permitted them to talk with each other. 5. Before midnight the young man will have departed from the house.

14.

WORD STUDY

Many English words derived from Latin are spelled almost like their Latin ancestors. Find five such ancestors and give an English descendant of each: mātrimōnium, matrimony.





From an engraving by Theodor Matham

Courtesy of Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

PYRAMUS AND THISBE

How does this picture illustrate the story?

III

OPUSCULUM TERTIUM

Ut amēris, amābilis estō, *That you may be loved, be lovable.* OVID

15.

AN OLD LOVE STORY, II

Thisbē, leōne vīsō, arbitrāta est, "Leō ad flūmen ut aquam capiat ¹ aggreditur. Ab aquā sē nōn āvertit ut mē sequatur. Revertitur! Longius in cavernam ingrediar ² nē bēstia mē videat."

Animal albam pallam puellae vīdit. Pallam arripiēns, eam sanguine ex ore crūdēlī maculātam reliquit.

Post bēstiae discessum Pȳramus ad eundem locum vēnit. Pallā inventā, arbitrātus est, "Thisbē ā leōne interfecta est. Sine Thisbē vivere nōn iam possum. Ut cum eā sim, mē interficiam. Pallam eius in hōc locō pōnam ut sanguinem meum etiam recipiat. Nunc veniō ut iterum verba eius audiam."

Hīs dictīs, in gladium suum sē iēcit et sub arbore cecidit.

Intereā Thisbē in cavernā remanēbat. Tandem putāvit, "Hic diū exspectō ut Pȳramus leōnem caedat."

15 Fortiter, timōre victō, prōgressa est et oculi arborem, quae inūsītata vidēbātur, statim petivērunt. Mōra nōn iam alba erant sed purpurā maculāta erant. Mox corpus Pȳrami hūmī vidit. Iterum et iterum eum vocābat. Eum complexa est. Dēnique is³ oculōs suōs aperuit et eam vidit. Tum adulescēns
20 dē vitā dēcessit.

Deinde Thisbē arbitrāta est, "Pȳramus, pallā inventā, putāvit mē mortuam esse et sē mē secūtūrum esse.⁴ Nunc eum sequar." Gladiō amantis sē interfēcit.

Duo corpora mortua hūmī inventa parentēs in eōdem tumultō
25 condidērunt. Posthāc mōra, quod mortem Pȳrami et Thisbēs dolēbant, nōn iam erant alba.

16.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertus	open	oculus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	eye
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum	think	prōgredior, -ī, -gressus	sum
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus	cut		advance, proceed
	down, kill	revertor, -tī, -versus sum *	go
ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum	go		back, return
	into	sequor, -ī, secūtus sum	follow
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus	come	ut that, in order that (<i>conj.</i>)	
	upon, find	verbum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	word
nē that not, lest (<i>conj.</i>)		vivō, -ere, vixī, victus	live

17.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. ut . . . capiat: *that he may get water; translate to get water.*
2. ingrediar: future indicative.
3. is: *i.e.*, Pyramus.
4. et . . . esse: *and that he would follow me.*

18.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did Pyramus think that Thisbe had been killed?
2. What did he do then?
3. What did Thisbe do when she found Pyramus?

* Regularly reverti, the perfect of revertō, the active form, is used in the perfect tense.

19.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

The subjunctive mood. In English, a distinction between the indicative mood and the subjunctive is rarely made. It is occasionally found in such expressions as: if this *be* true; God *bless* you. It is more common in conditions with the verb *were*: if he *were* rich; if I *were* strong. An auxiliary verb is used in English to convey the idea that is expressed in Latin by the subjunctive: *let there be light, fiat lux.*

In Latin, the subjunctive mood is used to represent an act as willed, purposed, wished, possible, or doubtful, whereas the indicative mood is used to state a fact or ask a question. The subjunctive is most frequently used in subordinate clauses. Its different uses will be taken up as they occur in opuscula following.

The subjunctive mood has four tenses: present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect (pluperfect).

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE, SINGULAR

<i>First</i>	<i>Second</i>	<i>Third</i>	<i>Fourth</i>	<i>Sum</i>	<i>Possum</i>
portem	videam	mittam	audiam	sim	possim
portēs	videās	mittās	audiās	sīs	possīs
portat, etc.	videat, etc.	mittat	audiat	sit	possit

Present subjunctive. Observe that in the first conjugation the sign of the present subjunctive is *ē*; in each of the other three conjugations, it is *ā*. In the first and third conjugations, the final vowel of the present stem is dropped before the *e* or the *a*. In the second and fourth conjugations, the *a* is added to the present stem. The regular active and passive personal endings are used.

Observe that, before *nt* and final *m* and *t*, (long) *ē* or *ā* of the present tense is replaced by (short) *e* or *a*: *portēs*, *portet*. The same principle holds true before final *r* and *ntur* of the passive.

For the entire conjugation of the present subjunctive of the model verbs, see (492).

Purpose clauses (586). *The lion goes to the river to get water, leō ad flūmen aggreditur ut aquam capiat.* In the English sentence the purpose of the act denoted by the verb *goes* is expressed by the infinitive phrase *to get water*. This is the usual way of expressing purpose in English.

In the Latin sentence purpose is expressed in a clause introduced by *ut* with its verb *capiat* in the subjunctive. If the purpose clause is negative, *nē* is used as the introductory word: *nē bēstia mē videat, in order that the beast may not see me.* Point out in the story five other purpose clauses. Note that in Latin prose an infinitive phrase is never used to express purpose.

20.

EXERCISE

Give the present subjunctive of: *arbitror, remaneō, ingredior, inveniō.*

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Quō cōsiliō leō ad flūmen aggreditur? 2. Quae erant verba Thisbēs ubi leōnem vidit? 3. Cūr puella in cavernā remanēbat? 4. Quid facit Thisbē ut cum Pȳramō sit? 5. Ubi parentēs duo corpora condiderunt?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. Thisbe turns away in order that the lion may not follow her. 2. Thisbe thought, "I shall proceed farther into the cave." 3. Thisbe returns to find Pyramus. 4. Pyramus did not live long.

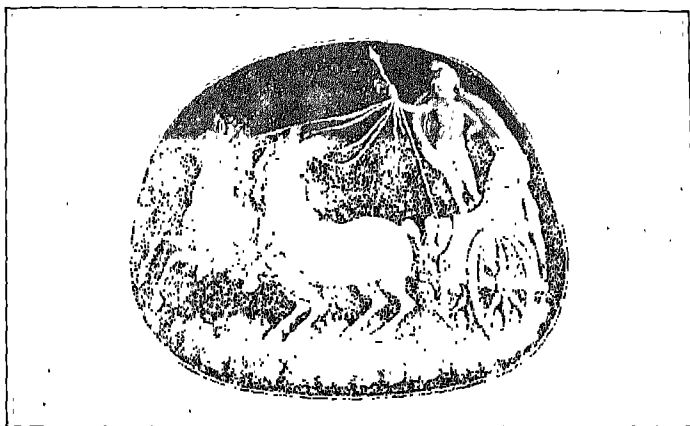
21.

WORD STUDY

To what word in the story is each of these related by derivation: *immaculate, ingredient, invent, oculist, progress, and verbatim*? Define each.

Give and define one or more English words derived from either the present or the participial stem of *sequor* combined with each of the following prefixes: *con, ē or ex, ob, per, prō, and sub*. For example, *execute, to finish*, is derived from *ex + secūtus* (perfect passive participle of *sequor*), and means *follow out (to the end)*.

What is the *sequel* to a story? What is a *sequence* of events?



Courtesy of American Museum of Natural History, New York

APOLLO DRIVES THE SUN-CHARIOT

This lovely cameo represents Apollo, the sun-god, driving his fiery steeds.

IV

OPUSCULUM QUARTUM

Mediō tūtissimus ībis, You will go safest in the middle course. OVID

22.

A RECKLESS DRIVER, I^b

Phaethōn, quī erat fīlius Apollinis, deī sōlis, curruī¹ patris
ūnum diem praeesse cupiēbat. Puer, ut hanc veniam petat,²
ad patrem iterum atque iterum sē cōnfert. "Hunc ūnum diem,"
inquit, "Ō pater, currum tuum dīrigere cupiō. Is³ tē multōs
diēs tulit; mē ūnum diem facile ferre potest." 5

Apollō postulātum fili nōn probāvit. Eī nōn cessit. "Phae-
thontī nōn cēdam," arbitrātus est. "Homīnibus orbis ter-
rārū⁴ exitiū īferet."

Tandem postulātis fili victus est, quod ōlim eī postulātum
aliquod pollicitus erat. Magnā cum cūrā puerum monēbat. 10
"Via," inquit, "difficilis est. Currus bonus est et onus

^aThe story of Phaethon is found in Sabin, *Classical Myths That Live Today*, pp. 21-23.

maius quam tē saepe fert, sed timeō. Fidūcia tua omnibus exitium inferre potest. Mediō tūtissimus ibis.⁵ "

Phaethōn audāx ob adulēscēntiam suam sine cūrā hoc audīvit,
 15 et in currum ascendēns per iter ignōtum equōs lactus et
 fortis⁶ dirēxit. Currus altius et altius in caelum lātus est.

23.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

audāx, audācis	bold	inferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus	carry
cōferō, -ferre, contulī, collātus			in, bring to
bring together; sē cōferre	go	onus, -eris, <i>n.</i>	load
dirīgō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus	guide	polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum	promise,
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus	bear, carry		offer
fidūcia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	self-confidence	praesum, -esse, -fuī, —	be in
ignōtus, -a, -um	unknown,		command of
	strange	probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	approve

24.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. curruī: dative with the compound verb praeesse.
2. petat: what mood? Why?
3. Is: the antecedent is currum in the preceding sentence.
4. orbis terrārum: translate *of the whole world*; an idiom. What is it literally?
5. ibis: *you will go*; future of eō.
6. fortis: *fearlessly*; an adjective, but translated as if it were an adverb.

25.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did Apollo at first refuse to let Phaethon drive his chariot?
2. Why did he at last grant his son's request?
3. What warning did he give his son?
4. How was it received?

26. Present indicative of *ferō* (497).

Active		Passive	
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris	ferimini
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

Learn the conjugation of *ferō*.

27.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Transitive and intransitive verbs. In Latin, as in English, verbs are transitive or intransitive. Some verbs, however, are used in both a transitive and an intransitive sense. Thus in the sentence, *hoc postulātum filiō concessit*, *he granted this request to his son*, *concessit*, which denotes an action that goes over to an object, is a transitive (*trānsīre*, *go over*) verb. This same verb *concēdō* may have the meaning of *yield* or *give in*, as in the sentence, *filiō concessit*, *he yielded to his son*. Here *concessit*, which shows no action going over to an object, is an intransitive (*in*, *not* + *trānsīre*) verb.

Point out in the story the transitive or intransitive verbs.

Dative with a compound verb (518). The dative is used with many verbs which are compounds of a verb and a preposition: *fidūcia puerō exitium infert*, *self-confidence brings destruction to the boy*. If such verbs are transitive, both the accusative case and the dative are used with them; if they are intransitive, the dative only is used: *Phaethōn curruī patris praeesse cupiēbat*, *Phaethon wished to be in charge of the chariot of his father*; *pater filiō nōn oberat*, *the father did not oppose his son*.

28.

EXERCISE

Compare the forms of the present indicative of *ferō* with those of *mittō*, and point out the forms of *ferō* that are irregular (497, 492). What forms of *ferō* are used in the story?

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Cuius filius erat Phaethōn? 2. Quō audāx puer sē contulit? 3. Cūr pater nōn probāvit? 4. Ubi Phaethōn lātus est?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. The horses will carry the strange load easily. 2. They have carried many loads. 3. Self-confidence brings destruction on all. 4. Formerly Apollo was in command of the chariot of the sun. 5. What did Apollo promise Phaethon?

29.

WORD STUDY

Give an English word derived from: *arbitrātus*, *audāx*, *cōnferō*, *filius*, *onus*, *orbis*, *pater*, *Phaethōn*, *probāre*, *sine* + *cūra*.

OPUSCULUM QUINTUM

30.

A RECKLESS DRIVER, II

Equi agitātōrem esse ignōtum et dominum suum sē nōn dīrigere¹ brevī tempore cognōvērunt. Ponder etiam currūs tam parvum erat ut perterrērentur.² Nunc Phaethontī erat³ summa cūra. Dum⁴ puer perterritus manibus currui adhaeret
5 nē caderet, equos dīrigere nōn poterat.

Interim equi solitam viam nōn sequēbantur. Primō ad stellās altissimās currēbant, deinde praecipitēs inf̄rā ad terram. Currus sōlis tam prope inf̄riōrem mundi partem lātus est ut maria omnia et flūmina incenderet atque frūmentum in agrīs
10 et arborēs in silvīs combūreret. In Āfricā sōl tam prope terram vēnit ut ignis colōrem hominum converteret et herbae iterum crēscere nōn possent. Omnēs mortālēs⁵ ob sōlis aestum tam miserī erant ut ab Iove auxilium implōrārent. Pater deōrum hominumque tam irātus erat ut puerum fulmine occīsum⁶
15 dē currū dēiceret. Equi ad stabula sua revertī coactī sunt.

Corpus Phaethontis in flūmen, quod in Italiā est, cecidit. Sorōrēs eius adeō lacrimāvērunt ut ā deīs in pōpulōs stantēs prope hoc flūmen converterentur.

31.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

adeō so (<i>adv.</i>)	incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus
aestus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> heat	set on fire, burn
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus	interim in the meantime (<i>adv.</i>)
change	primō at first (<i>adv.</i>)
dum while (<i>conj.</i>)	soror, -ōris, <i>f.</i> sister

32.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *dominum . . . dirigere*: *that their master was not driving them*; an indirect statement used with *cognōvērunt*.

2. *perterrērentur*: see 687.

3. *Phaëthontī erat*: *to Phaëthon was*; translate *Phaëthon had*. The dative as used here denotes possession.

4. *Dum*: the present indicative is regularly used with *dum* meaning *while* (600), but it may be translated as if it were past time.

5. *mortālēs*: *liable to die, mortal*; translate *people*.

6. *occisum*: a perfect passive particle modifying *puerum*.

33.

COMPREHENSION

1. Where did the horses carry the sun-chariot? 2. What happened to Phaëthon? 3. What did the gods do to the sisters of Phaëthon? 4. What explanation did the ancients have for the deserts of Africa?

34.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Imperfect subjunctive (492). The imperfect subjunctive, both active and passive, is formed by adding to the present stem the imperfect tense sign *-sē** (*-rē* between vowels) and to this the personal endings. An easy rule to follow in forming the imperfect subjunctive is: add the personal endings to the present infinitive active: *portā-re-m, vidē-re-m, mitte-re-m, audī-re-m, esse-m*.

Point out in the story five verbs in the imperfect subjunctive.

Result clauses (587). In the sentence, *pondus tam parvum erat ut perterrērentur*, *the weight was so little that they were frightened*, *ut perterrērentur* expresses result.

Apollō currum sōlis sic dirēxit ut herbās nōn incenderet, *Apollo drove the chariot of the sun so that he did not set fire to the green plants*. Observe that a negative result clause is introduced by *ut . . . nōn*. What word introduces a negative purpose clause?

Result is regularly expressed by a subordinate clause introduced by *ut* or *ut . . . nōn*. The main clause often contains

* Remember that a long vowel is always shortened before nt, and final m, r, and t.

a word such as *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, meaning *so*, or *tantus*, *so great*, which anticipates the result clause.

35.

EXERCISE

Give imperfect subjunctive active of: *lacrimō*, *adhaerēō*, *convertō*, *veniō*.

Point out the words in main clauses which anticipate result clauses.

Respondē Latinē: 1. Quid equi cognōverunt? 2. Cūr Phaethōn eōs dirigere nōn poterat? 3. Dum puer currū adhaeret, ubi equi concurrerunt? 4. Quam irātus erat Iuppiter?

Scribē Latinē: 1. Phaethon was so frightened at first that he clung to the chariot. 2. In the meantime the horses were so frightened that they did not follow the usual path. 3. His sister was so wretched that the gods changed her into a poplar tree. 4. The heat of the sun has been so great (*tantus*) that it set fire to the fields.

36.

WORD STUDY

Find in the story the Latin ancestor of each of the following words and give its English equivalent: *crescent*, *mundane*, *ponderous*, *prime*, *silvan*, *stellar*.

Hic situs est Phaethōn, currūs auriga paterni,
Quem si nōn tenuit magnis tamen excidit ausis.

Here lies Phaethon, driver of his father's chariot;
If he did not control it, still he fell in a great enterprise.

OVID, *Metamorphoses*

The shining way still dares the driver's skill,
And all the azure vault
Dares the assault
Of wings. They can who will!
And I —
Icarus am I, and Phaethon!

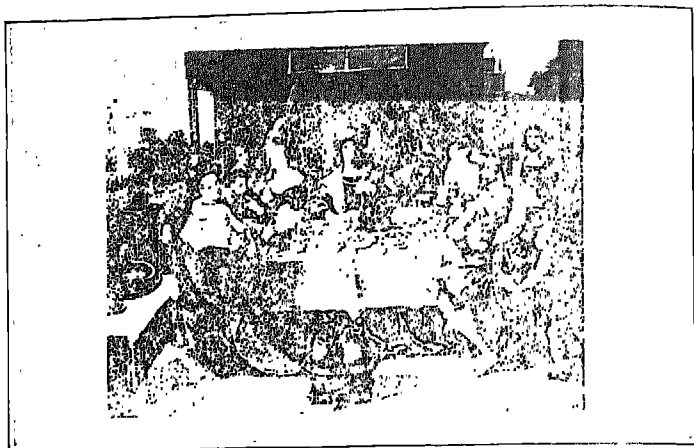
O. R. HOWARD THOMSON, *Quaesitor Aeternus**

* Reprinted by permission of the NEW YORK TIMES and the author.



THE FALL OF PHAËTHON

The helpless Phaëthon is hurled earthward by a thunderbolt of Jupiter, who is pictured in the upper right of the illustration.



From a painting by F. Franchen, the Younger,
in Ducal Museum, Brunswick

Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

MIDAS

King Midas finds that even his food turns to gold at his touch.

VI

OPUSCULUM SEXTUM

By this mythologic story we are very plainly told,
That, though gold may have its uses, there are better things than gold;
That a man may sell his freedom to procure the shining pelf;
And that Avarice, though it prosper, still contrives to cheat itself.

JOHN G. SAXE, *The Choice of King Midas*

37.

THE TOUCH OF GOLD

Erat quīdam rēx Phrygiae, nōmine Midās, quī ōlim Bacchum
deum vīnī iūverat. Deus praemiō¹ ei dēlectum dōnī dedit.
Rēx quandam rem petere nōn haesitāvit. "Omnia," inquit,
"quae tangam aurum fiant."²

5 Bacchus postulātum nōn laetus concessit. Midās fortunam
statim explorāre coepit. Quaedam in rēgiā quae digitis tan-
gēbat omnia aurum facta sunt. Prīmum hōc dōnō fruēbātur.

"Lectī, librī, mēnsae, gladiī, sellae, mūrī, tāctū meō³ aurum fiunt," sēcum dīxit.

In hortum ingressus est. "Arborēs et flōrēs manū meā¹⁰ tāctī aurum etiā fient," arbitrātus est rēx. Mox rosae decōrae albae et quaedam ex herbīs pulchrīs dūrae et aureae erant.

Tandem ad cēnam vēnit. Neque cibum edere neque aquam bibere poterat. Nam cibus ōre rēgis tāctus aurum dūrum¹⁵ frēbat. Aqua et vīnum flūmina aurea frēbant. Rēx sē citissimē famē moritūrum esse⁴ intellēxit. "Cibus meus aurum fit. Moriar,"⁵ magnā cum vōce conclāmāvit.

Filia parva hoc audiēns ad patrem cucurrit ut eum cōnsōlārētur. Midās filiae ōsculum dedit, et statim puella aurum²⁰ facta est. Pater miser dīxit, "Et tū aurum fis!"

Rēx periculum suum cognōvit. Iterum et iterum Bacchum ōrāvit ut tāctum aureum sibi ēriperet.⁶ Conclāmābat, "Dā mihi veniam, pater, peccāvi." Tandem deus bonus hominem famē et sitī cōnfectum atque fātō crūdēli perterritum audīvit et²⁵ dīxit, "Tāctum aureum tibi ēripiam. Omnia aurea fient ut quondam erant."

Bacchus rēgem caput sub aquās cuiusdam flūminis, quī⁷ nōminātus est Pactōlus, ter submergere tum iussit. Hoc imperātum Midās facere statim mātūrāvit. Arēnās Pactōlī³⁰ aureās fieri lactus vidit. Tāctum aureum sē reliquisse intellēxit. Aquā ex flūmine Midās omnia ut quondam erant fēcit. Postea aurum ei ingrātum erat.

38.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

concedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus	imperātum, -ī, <i>n.</i> command;
grant	<i>with</i> facere obey
digitus, -ī, <i>m.</i> finger	mēnsa, -ae, <i>f.</i> table
explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	try out
quidam, quaedam, quiddam	a
famēs, -is, <i>f.</i> hunger	certain one
fīō, fierī, factus sum (<i>pass. of</i>	tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus touch
faciō) be made, become	

39.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *praemiō*: for a reward.
2. *Omnia, fiant*: let all things become; *aurum*, a predicate nominative, is used with *fiant*.
3. *tactū meō*: at my touch; *tactus* is a noun. How do you know that it is not the participle of *tangō*?
4. *sē . . . moritūrum esse*: that he would very quickly perish from hunger; an indirect statement used with *intellēxit*.
5. *Moriar*: future indicative.
6. *ut . . . ēriperet*: that he take away the golden touch from him.
7. *quī*: agrees in gender with *Pactōlus*, the predicate nominative, instead of with its antecedent, *flūminis* (560, d). The Pactolus was famous for the gold found in its bed.

40.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did Bacchus give the golden touch to Midas?
2. How did the king use this gift?
3. How did he free himself from it?

41.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

The irregular verb *fiō* (498). Learn the conjugation of *fiō*, observing very carefully the quantity of the stem vowel *i*. All forms of *fiō* which are built upon the present stem are used as the passive of *faciō*: *omnia aurum fiēbant*, all things became (were made) gold.

Point out five forms of *fiō* in the story.

The indefinite pronoun *quīdam* (491). *Quīdam* may be used either as pronoun or adjective. Learn its declension. Observe that in the neuter, *quiddam* is the form used for the pronoun and *quoddam* the one used for the adjective.

In the story identify forms of *quīdam*.

With forms of *quīdam*, the ablative with *ex* or *dē* is used in place of the genitive which might be expected: *quaedam ex herbis*: certain of the plants (510, a).

42.

EXERCISE

Give the synopsis of: *fiō* in the third person singular; in the first person plural.

Give the Latin for : on a certain table, to a certain dinner, a certain girl, for a certain king, certain gifts.

Respondē Latīnē : 1. Cui praemium Bacchus dedit? 2. Quid Midās petivit? 3. Quid Bacchus rēgī concessit? 4. Quem in locum Midās ingressus est? 5. Quid in hortō rēx fēcit? 6. Cūr aurum rēgī ingrātum fīēbat?

Scribe Latīnē : 1. A reward was given to a certain king by Bacchus. 2. He immediately tried out this gift. 3. The king said, "The tables touched by my fingers are becoming gold." 4. A certain one of his daughters had become gold. 5. Worn out with hunger, Midas carried out (*faciō*) the command of Bacchus.

43.

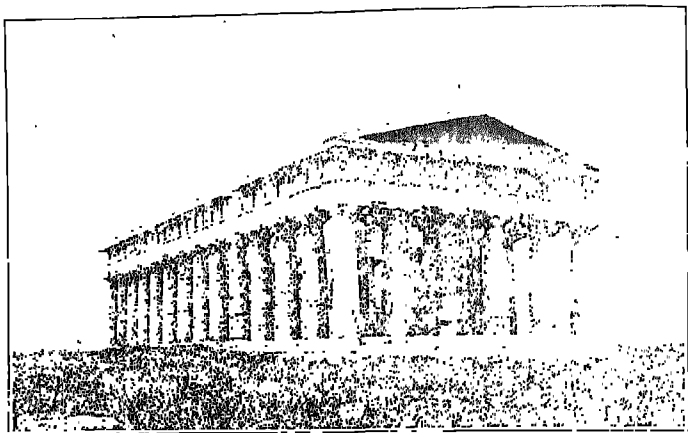
WORD STUDY

Give and define five English words derived from *tangō*.

THE REWARD OF AVARICE

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam quae ei cotidiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Mulier ita exīstimābat, "Mea gallina sine dubiō pondus aurī intus habet; sī gallinam occīdam, omne aurum statim habēbō." Itaque eam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit nisi quod in aliīs gallinīs reperīri solet. Itaque dum maiōrēs rēs cupit, minōrēs etiam perdidit.





Paestum, Italy

THE TEMPLE OF NEPTUNE

This beautiful temple, dedicated to the god of the sea, was built in the fifth century B.C. by Greek colonists at Paestum, a town originally named Poseidonia from Poseidon, the Greek word for Neptune. It is of the Doric type of architecture and perfectly proportioned. Facing the sea, it stands in simple grandeur — the finest temple in Italy.

VII

OPUSCULUM SEPTIMUM

Cūra piī deīs sunt, The good are a care to the gods. OVID

44.

THE FLOOD *

Ōlīm omnēs hominēs maximē impiī erant. Iuppiter ubique nefās et scelus vidēbat. Tandem deus sēcum dīxit, "Genus hūmānum omne dēlēbō. Nihil aliud facere possum." Neptūnum, frātre suū, ad sē vocāvit et quaesīvit quōmodo is si iuvāre sē posset. Auxiliō Neptūnī aquās ōceanī et omnium flūminum super terram mīsīt. Poena erat maxima.

Ubique hominēs dicēbant, "Neque scīmus quid fēcērīmus neque vidēmus cūr deī dē nōbīs supplicium sūmant." Iuppiter autem precibus eōrum nōn mōtus est. Ubique terram diluviō

* The story of *The Flood* is told in Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, I, 125-437. The story of *The Flood*, as found in the Bible, is in *Genesis*, 6: 11-8: 22.

inundāvit. Summī montēs ipsī tegēbantur. Aquae erant super¹⁰ omnem terram praeter ēditum caput Parnāsī montis.

Tandem duo mortālēs sōlī vivēbant. Deucaliōn et Pyrrha piissimī semper fuerant. Itaque dē diluviō monitī,¹ salūtem sibi prōvidere potuerant. Arcam magnam, in quā per tempus diluvī habitārent,² aedificāverant. Haec in marī infinītō vecta³ 15 dēnique in monte Parnāsō stetit. Neptūnō nūbēs dispersās revocante, aquae recēdere coepērunt, et terra paulātīm ēminēbat.

Deucaliōn et Pyrrha sōlī et tristēs erant. Ā deīs quacsi- vērunt cūr servātī essent et quōmodo sine aliīs mortālībus vivere possent. Iuppiter imperāvit ut ossa parentis⁴ magnae post²⁰ tergum iacerent.⁵ Quacsi vērunt ubi ossa essent et num respōnsum eius rēctē audivissent.

Tandem arbitrātī sunt terram esse parentem magnam omnium. Quārē lapidēs, quī ossa Terrae Mātris * sunt, post tergum iaciēbant. Lapidēs quī ā Deucaliōne iaciēbantur virī²⁵ iactī sunt, illī ā Pyrrhā iactī, fēminae, quī omnēs Deucaliōnem et Pyrrham secūtī sunt.

Ita Iuppiter, omnibus impiīs hominībus dēlētis, terrae hū- mānum genus melius restituit.

45.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersus	respōnsum, -ī, <i>n.</i> response
scatter	restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus restore
ēditus, -a, -um lofty	sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take
lapis, -idis, <i>m.</i> stone	supplicium sūmere dē inflict
modus, -ī, <i>m.</i> manner, way	punishment upon
paulātīm gradually (<i>adv.</i>)	supplicium, -ī, <i>n.</i> punishment
prex, precis, <i>f.</i> prayer	tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus cover
tergum, -ī, <i>n.</i> back	

46.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. monitī: *warned*; modifies the subject understood of *potuerant*.

2. in . . . habitārent: *in which to live during the time of the flood*.

* The Romans thought of the earth as the mother of all. A story embodying this thought is found on page 119.

3. **vecta**: *borne*; from *vehō*.
4. **parentis**: what is its gender? why?
5. **imperāvit ut, iacerent**: *ordered (them) to throw*.

47.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why and how did Jupiter punish men? 2. For what reason did Deucalion and Pyrrha escape punishment? How? 3. How was the earth repopled?

48.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Perfect subjunctive (492). Observe that in the active the perfect subjunctive is formed by adding to the perfect stem the tense sign **-erī-** and to this the personal endings: **portāv-eri-m, vīd-eri-m, mīs-eri-m, audīv-eri-m, fu-eri-m**. In the passive, the perfect subjunctive is formed by using the perfect passive participle together with the forms of the present subjunctive of the verb **sum**: **portātus sim**.

Past perfect subjunctive (492). Observe that in the active the past perfect (pluperfect) subjunctive is formed by adding to the perfect stem the tense sign **-issē-** and to this the personal endings: **portāv-isse-m, vīd-isse-m, mīs-isse-m, audīv-isse-m, fu-isse-m**. In the passive, the past perfect subjunctive is formed by using the perfect passive participle together with the forms of the imperfect subjunctive of the verb **sum**: **portātus essem**.

Learn the conjugation of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive of the model verbs.

Sequence of tenses (577-8). In the sentence, *I know who you are*, if the tense of the main verb *know* is changed to the past, *knew*, the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause is made to harmonize with it: *I knew who you were*. This principle of English speech is the rule in Latin if the verb of the subordinate clause is in the subjunctive: **sciō quis sis; scīvī quis essēs**. This is a very important principle in Latin because of the extensive use of the subjunctive. This relationship between the tense of the verb in the principal clause and the tense of

the verb in the subordinate clause in a complex sentence is called *sequence of tenses*.

Tenses expressing present or future time are called *primary* or *principal* tenses; those expressing past time are called either *secondary* or *historical* tenses. Primary tenses are regularly followed by primary tenses and secondary by secondary, as shown in the following table.

TENSE	VERB IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSE		VERB IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSE SUBJUNCTIVE
PRIMARY	<i>Present</i> <i>Future</i> <i>Future Perfect</i>	followed by	{ <i>Present</i> (action incomplete at the time of the action of the verb in the principal clause) <i>Perfect</i> (action completed at the time of the action of the verb in the principal clause)
	<i>Quaerunt quid faciāmus, they ask what we are doing.</i> <i>Quaerunt quid fēcerimus, they ask what we did.</i>		
SECONDARY	<i>Imperfect</i> <i>Perfect</i> <i>Past Perfect</i>	followed by	{ <i>Imperfect</i> (action incomplete etc.) <i>Past perfect</i> (action completed etc.)
	<i>Quaesivērunt quid facerēmus, they asked what we were doing.</i> <i>Quaesivērunt quid fēcissēmus, they asked what we had done.</i>		

Indirect questions (595). *Scīmus quid fēcerimus, we know what we have done.* *Quaesivērunt cūr servātī essent, they asked why they had been saved.* An indirect question is a subordinate clause, introduced by an interrogative word, depending on a verb meaning to *ask, inquire, tell, know, or perceive*. The verb of the indirect question is in the subjunctive mood. Its tense follows the rule of sequence of tenses.

Point out the indirect questions in the story, give the tense of the verb in each, and explain the sequence.

49.

EXERCISE

Give the perfect and past perfect subjunctive of: *aedificō, audiō, quaerō, moneō.*



Courtesy of Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

DEUCALION AND PYRRHA

A new race is springing up from the stones thrown by Deucalion and Pyrrha. This illustration is found in a 1767 edition of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

Give the use of: impiī, l. 1, diluviō, l. 9, essent, l. 10, virī, l. 25, Pyrrhā, l. 26.

Respondē Latinē: 1. Quid Iuppiter ubique vidit? 2. Quōmodo deus omnēs delēvit? 3. Quis deum iūvit? 4. Quam alta (*deep*) erat aqua? 5. Ubi dēnique arca stetit?

Scribe Latinē: 1. Gradually the waters covered the land. 2. The father of the gods hears their prayers. 3. Jupiter sees how he can restore the race of men. 4. They asked why he had inflicted this punishment on them. 5. They knew what the response was. 6. Do you know who scattered stones behind their backs?



Lowre, Paris

Courtesy New York Public Library

HERCULES SLAYS THE NEMEAN LION

OPUSCULUM OCTAVUM

Nil sine magnō vīta labōre dedit mortālībus,
Life has given nothing to mankind without great labor.

HORACE

50.

THE LABORS OF HERCULES, I⁺

In antīquā Graeciā Herculēs erat vir¹ praeclārus. Infāns² in cūnābulīs duās serpentēs magnās dextrā suā strangulāvit.

Multīs post annīs³ Apollō eum ob quoddam scelus ulcisci voluit. Deus Eurystheō rēgī poenam virī commisit. Rēx Herculem poenae causā duodecim labōribus fungī volēbat.⁵ Dē his labōribus plūrima ā poētīs scripta sunt.

Prīmum manibus suis leōnem ingentem, quī vallem Nemeae incolēbat et animālibus¹ hominibusque nocēbat, interfecit. Tum mortuum leōnem ad rēgem umerīs tulit.

Post haec iussus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre. Hoc¹⁰ mōnstrum, quod novem capita, quōrum ūnum immortāle erat, habēbat, vicit. Sagittās sanguine mōnstrī tīnxit et cās mortiferās fēcit.

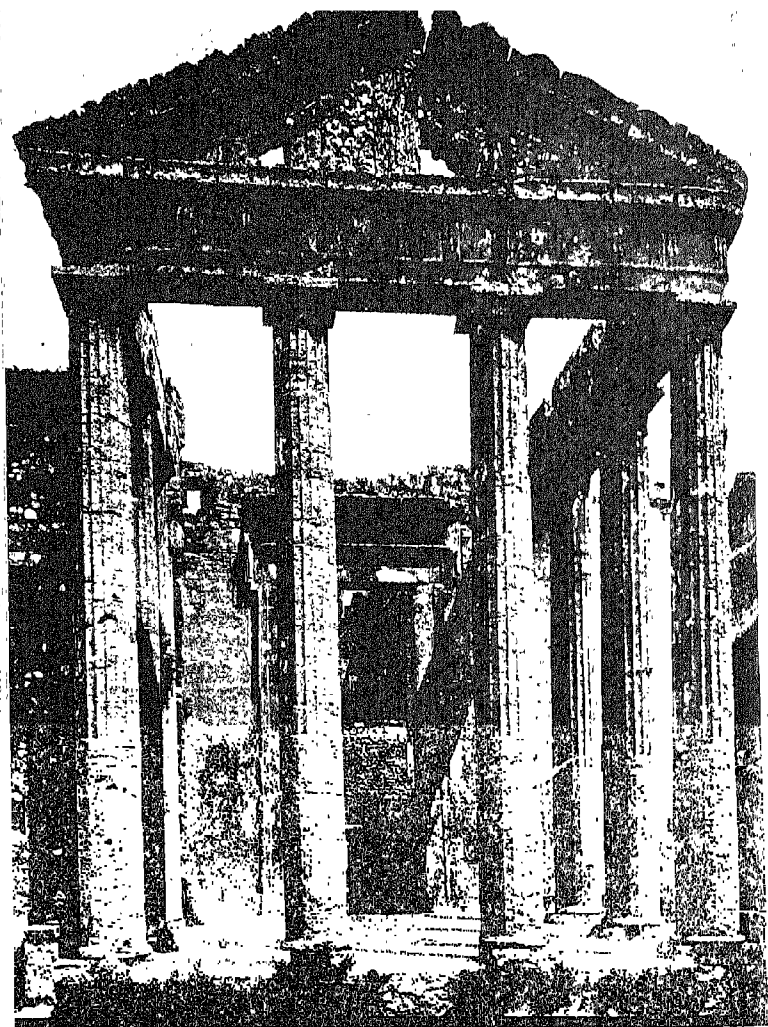
Haec rēs rēgī nōn placuit, quī tum dixit, "Tē aprum Erymanthium capere volō." Tandem Herculēs summā difficultate¹⁵ aprum laqueō implicātum ad rēgem dūxit.

Eurystheus deinde cervō, quī numquam defessus in campīs Arcadiae vagābātur, potiri voluit. Huic cervō erant⁵ cornua ex aurō et pedēs ex aere. Vir, rēgī pārere coactus, tōtum annum cervum sequēbātur, et dēnique eum cēpit.

20

Post haec Herculēs, avēs Stympālīdēs, quae carne hominum vēscēbantur, necāre iussus, ad Minervam iit. "Avēs in lacū Stympālīcō," inquit, "interficere volō." Dea virō fāvit et

*The story of Hercules is found in Sabin, *Classical Myths That Live Today*, pp. 211-229.



THE TEMPLE OF HERCULES AT CORI

This ancient temple, standing in a garden of roses at the highest point of an ancient hill town on the Appian Way, commands a wide view of the Roman campagna. It is not definitely known to what god this temple was dedicated. It is usually attributed to Hercules.

eum iūvit. Hās avēs, quae pinnīs suis prō sagittīs ūtēbantur, tēlis mortiferis dēlēvit. 25

Deinde Eurystheus Herculī hunc labōrem gravissimum imposuit. Augēae⁶ stabula, quae trīgintā annōs nōn lauta⁷ erant, fuērunt. Vir dixit, "Sī volēs, ūnō diē stabula tua lavābō. Visne⁸ mē id facere?" Herculēs, ubi Augēas annuerat, flūmen per stabula convertit et ea facillimē lāvit. 30

51.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

aes, aeris, <i>n.</i> bronze	potior, -iri, -itus sum	get possession of
campus, -i, <i>m.</i> field		
labor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> labor	sagitta, -ae, <i>f.</i> arrow	
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus be harmful	tēlum, -i, <i>n.</i> weapon	
pāreō -ēre, -uī, — obey	vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum	roam about
placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus please	vallēs, vallis, <i>f.</i> valley	
	volō, velle, voluī, — wish	

52.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **vir**: *hero*; contrast this meaning with that of *homō*.
2. **Infāns**: translate *when an infant*.
3. **Multis post annis**: *after many years*.
4. **animālibus**: dative used with *nocēbat*.
5. **huic . . . erant**: translate *this stag had*; *cervō* is a dative denoting possession.
6. **Augēae**: *to (King) Augeas*.
7. **lauta**: *washed*.
8. **Visne**: second singular of the present tense of *volō* with the enclitic, -ne, a sign of a question.

53.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why were labors imposed on Hercules?
2. Describe the first six labors.

54.

RES GRAMMATICAE

The irregular verb *volō* (499). Learn the conjugation of *volō*. Point out in the story and identify the forms of *volō*.

Dative with special intransitive verbs (517). *Herculēs rēgi placuit, Hercules pleased the king. Dea virō fāvit, the goddess favored the man.* The dative is used with certain verbs, such as *faveō, favor; placeō, please; parcō, spare; and persuādeō, persuade.* This dative is usually translated into English as if it were an accusative of direct object.

Point out in the story the verbs with which this dative is used.

55.

EXERCISE

Identify these forms: quoddam, l. 3; fungī, l. 5; umeris, l. 9; iussus, l. 10.

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Quis erat Herculēs? 2. Cūr eum ulcisci Apollō vult? 3. Cui poenam virī deus commisit? 4. Quōmodo leōnem Herculēs interfecit? 5. Cuius stabula vir lāvit?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. The labors of Hercules pleased the god. 2. The hero said, "I am forced to obey you." 3. The weapons of Hercules were arrows. 4. They wish to favor the hero and will not injure him. 5. The stag, which had feet of bronze, wandered in the fields and valleys.

56.

WORD STUDY

The diphthongs *oe* and *ae*, found in certain Latin words, become *e* in their English derivatives: *poena, penal*. Give other derivatives of *poena*.

To what word in the story is each of these related by derivation: *agency, infantile, lavatory, placate, sanguine, vagrant, volition?*



FIVE LABORS OF HERCULES



From a mural painting by John Singer Sargent

Courtesy of Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

A HEAVY BURDEN

One of the feats of strength performed by Hercules was that of holding the heavens for Atlas.

IX

OPUSCULUM NŌNUM

Finis ecce labōrum, Lo, the end of labors.

MOTTO OF THE EARL OF SELKIRK

57.

THE LABORS OF HERCULES, II

Eurystheus Herculi septimum labōrem imposuit. Eum ad sē ex insulā Crētā bovem quendam vīvum referre iussit. Herculēs igitur sē ad insulam contulit. Hoc erat opus difficillimum, sed Herculēs ad Eurystheum magnō labōre captum hunc vīvum tandem rettulit.

5

Cum Herculēs bovem ad rēgem portāvisset, Eurystheus dixit, "Nisi equōs Diomēdis viceris, nōlī revertī." ¹

Herculēs cum equōs vīcisset, Diomēdem, quī eōs carne hominum aluerat, interfēcit et eīs corpus eius dedit.



From a Greek vase painting

AN AMAZON ON HORSEBACK

The Amazons were warlike women, who won much fame by fighting with men on equal terms. Hercules overcame the Queen of the Amazons.

10 Hōc labōre cōfectō, filia Eurysthei zōnā pulcherrimā rēgināe Amāzonum potīri cupiēbat. Vir, rēginā occisā, zōnā potītus est.

Herculēs deinde multōs bovēs Gēryonis, gigantis triplici corpore,² capere iussus est. Bovēs ā pāstōre magnō corpore et ā cane bicipite³ custōdiēbantur. Custōdibus interfectīs, vir
15 cum bōbus⁴ revertitur.

Eurystheus cum bovēs Gēryonis accēpisset, graviōrem labōrem Herculi imposuit. Iussit enim eum aurea mālā ex hortō Hesperidum auferre. Mālā aurea Hesperidum ā filiabus Atlantis et ā dracōne ingentī, quī oculōs suōs numquam claudēbat, custōdiēbantur. Herculēs ad Atlantem,⁵ custōdem mālōrum, vēnit. Atlās, quī caelum umerīs sustinēbat, virō dicere ubi essent mālā nōluit. Ipse mālā referre māluit. "Mihi," inquit, "sustinē caelum. Tum iterum sustinēbō, cum revertar." Itaque Herculēs, illō absente, caelum sustinuit.
25 Atlās cum mālā rettulisset, Herculi dixit, "Nōli mihi caelum iterum dare. Nunc id semper sustinē!" Sed Herculēs per dolum⁶ Atlantem caelum recipere coēgit et cum mālīs revertit.

Herculēs alacer, aurcīs mālīs relātīs, extrēmum labōrem, quī erat difficillimus, suscepit. Cerberum, canem trīcipitem,³⁰ ex Tartarō in terram tulit. Herculēs cum his labōribus fūctus esset, servitūte ab Eurystheō liberātus est.

58.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

alacer, -cris, -cre eager	referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus
alō, -ere, -uī, -itus feed	bring back
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus close	rēgina, -ae, f. queen
cum when (<i>conj.</i>)	servitūs, -tūtis, f. slavery
extrēmus, -a, -um last	suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus
mālō, malle, mālui, — prefer	undertake
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — not wish,	vīvus, -a, -um alive
be unwilling	

59.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *reverti*: present infinitive of the deponent verb *revertor*.
2. *triplici corpore*: *with triple body*; an ablative of description.
3. *bicipite*: Why does this mean *two-headed*?
4. *bōbus*: *bulls*; from *bōs*.
5. *Atlantem*: accusative of *Atlās*.
6. *per dolum*: *by a trick*; i.e., Hercules asked Atlas to hold the heavens a moment while he fixed a pad on his shoulder.

60.

COMPREHENSION

1. What were the last six labors of Hercules?
2. Which was the most difficult?
3. Why did Atlas take back the sky?

61.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

The irregular verbs *nōlō* and *mālō* (499). The verb *nōlō* is formed from the words *nōn* and *volō*. The verb *mālō* is formed from *magis* and *volō*. Learn the conjugation of each.

Point out in the story and identify the forms of *nōlō* and *mālō*.

Negative commands (611, a). *Nōlī mihi caelum dare, be unwilling to give the sky to me*, translate, *do not give the sky to me*;

nōlite eī māla dare, do not give the apples to him. A negative command is regularly expressed by the imperative of *nōlō* (*nōlī*, singular; *nōlite*, plural) and a complementary infinitive. In *nōlite eī māla dare* what is the complementary infinitive?

Point out in the story two negative commands. What complementary infinitive is used in each?

Cum temporal with the subjunctive (circumstantial) (597). *Herculēs cum equōs vīcisset, Diomēdem interfēcit*, when Hercules had conquered the horses, he killed Diomedes. In this sentence *cum*, when, introduces the clause, *Herculēs equōs vīcisset*, which gives the circumstance or situation connected with the action expressed by the verb, *interfēcit*, in the main clause.

The verb in a *cum* circumstantial clause is in the past perfect subjunctive if the action expressed by it has occurred before the action expressed by the verb in the principal clause. The verb is in the imperfect subjunctive if the two actions occur at the same time.

Cum temporal with the indicative (596). In the sentence, *tum iterum sustinēbō, cum revertar*, when I (shall) return, then I will hold it again, the verb in the *cum* clause, *revertar*, is in the indicative because it defines or dates the time at which the action of the verb in the principal clause, *sustinēbō*, is to occur.

The verb in a *cum* clause is in the indicative if the clause merely indicates time and not circumstance.

Point out in the story three examples of *cum* circumstantial clauses and give the reason for the tense of the verb in each.

62.

EXERCISE

Give the present indicative of: *nōlō* and *mālō*.

Explain the use of: *portāvisset*, l. 6; *zōnā*, l. 10; *essent*, l. 22; *revertar*, l. 24; *absente*, l. 24; *sustinē*, l. 26; *labōribus*, l. 31.

Respondē Latinē: 1. Cūr Herculēs alacer erat? 2. Cuius zōnā filia rēgis potiri volēbat? 3. A quibus bovēs Gēryonis custodiēbantur? 4. Quis caelum umeris sustinēbat? 5. Quālis (what sort of) canis Cerberus erat?

Scrībe Latīnē: 1. Hercules prefers to be freed from servitude. 2. The man said, "Do not feed the animal flesh." 3. The queen does not wish to close her eyes. 4. Atlas did not eagerly (use adj.) undertake the task. 5. When the hero had brought back the dog alive, his last task was finished.

63.

WORD STUDY

The word *canary* is derived from *canis, dog*. The *Canary Islands* were so called because of the *dogs* found there by the Romans. Later the name *canary* was applied to the birds found on these islands.

To what word in the story is each of these related by derivation: *alimentary, Atlantic, refer, revive, triple, zone*?



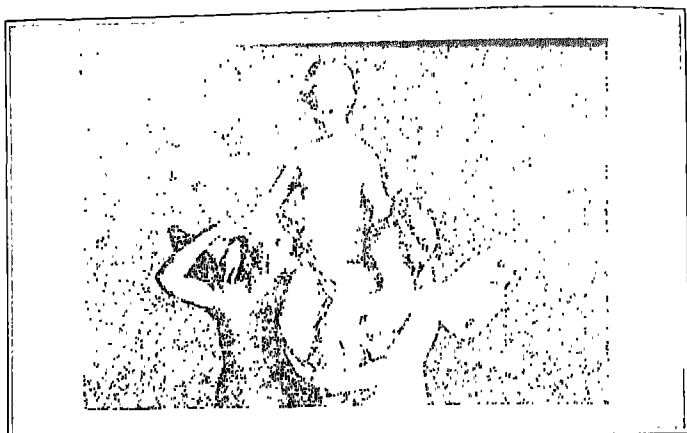
Library, University of Leiden, Holland

THE DOG THAT SAW HIS SHADOW

This crude illustration is from an eleventh-century manuscript of *Aesop's Fables*.

Canis Cum Carne

Canis trāns flūmen carnem in ōre serēbat. Mox in aquā imāginem suam vidit. Crēdēns hanc esse alterum canem cum carne, hanc praedam ab alterō cane ēripere voluit. Itaque cibum quem tenēbat ōre dīmīsīt. Neque cibum quem petēbat attingere potuit. Is enim meritō suum āmittit quī aliēnum petit.



Doria Gallery, Rome

From a replica of a statue by John Gibson

PSYCHE CARRIED BY THE ZEPHYRS

Psyche is carried to the palace of Cupid from the lonely mountain where she had been left in accordance with the decree of the oracle.

X

OPUSCULUM DECIMUM

Amāre et sapere vix deō concēditur. LABERIUS

The proverb holds that to be wise and love

Is hardly granted to the gods above. DRYDEN

64.

CUPID AND PSYCHE, I

Erant in quādam civitate rēx et rēgīna. Psȳchē erat filia minima nātū¹ huius rēgis et rēgīnae. Eīs erant² trēs filiae pulchrae, quārum Psȳchē erat pulcherrima. Cum³ puella tam pulchra esset, omnēs eam mīrātī sunt. Multīs in terrīs fābulae dē eius pulchritūdine audiēbantur. Multī dicēbant, “Psȳchē pulchrior quam Venus est.” Genus hūmānum omne deam ob puellam pulchram neglegere coepit. Tandem Venus maximē irāta filium suum Cupīdinem vocāvit ut sē iuvāret. Statim Cupīdō ad domum Psȳchēs⁴ ire mātūrāvit ut mātrem suam

ulcisceretur. Cum autem pulchritudinem puellae vidēret, deus 10
amoris sagittis suis vulnerātus est.

Cum ⁵ omnēs eam mirārentur, nēmō virginem pulchram in
mātrimōnium dūcere voluerat. Rēx et rēgīna, cum filia sua
neque ā rēge neque princīpe in mātrimōnium ducta esset, ad
ōrāculum Apollinis ierunt et cūr Psȳchē deīs ingrāta esset 15
quaesivērunt. Deinde interrogāvērunt cūr deī puellae nūllum
maritum dedissent. Ōrāculum respondit, "Filiae vestrae erit
nūllus maritus mortālis, sed mōnstrum ⁶ quod in summō monte
puella vidēbit eam in mātrimōnium dūcet."

Mox Psȳchē cum parentibus dolentibus et amicīs miseris ad 20
montem cōstitutum iit. Virgō, cum socii eam sōlam reli-
quissent, lacrimāre coepit. Brevi tempore ventus eam ad
rēgiam magnificam in valle pulchrā portāvit. Psȳchē arbi-
trāta est, "Cum omnia pulchra sint, ego fortior erō." In
rēgiam ingressa est. Vōcēs eī dixerunt, "Cum nōs vidēre nōn 25
possis, tamen tibi serviēmus."

Ad eam cibum et vīnum ferēbant atque eī cantābant. Cum
Psȳchē corpora nūlla vidēret, vōcēs saepe audiēbat. Cum nox
venisset, dominus rēgiae revertit. Puella cum eum vidēre
nōn posset, vōcem dulcem eius audiēbat. Semper primā nocte 30
veniēbat et ante lūcem proficiēscēbātur.

Tandem Cupīdō, quī erat dominus huius rēgiae, Psȳchēn ⁸
uxōrem suam fēcit. Uxor autem nescivit quis maritus esset.
Deus dixit, "Nōlī mē vidēre conārī aut mihi gravissimum
dolōrem et tibi summum exitium ferēs." 35

Cum Psȳchē omnia pulchra habēret, tamen sorōrēs suās vidēre
cupiēbat. Cum ⁵ Cupīdō esset invītus, cum ³ uxōrem amāret, ven-
tum mīsit ut duās sorōrēs ad eam ferret. Sorōrēs, cum Psȳchē
anteā misera nunc tam lacta esset et rēs tam magnificās habēret,
invidiae erant. Persuādent eī ⁹ ut vultum marītī intueātur. ¹⁰ 40

Psȳchē, cum sorōrēs profectae essent, sēcum dīxit, "Cum
maritum meum amem, eius vultum numquam vīdī. Cum
requiēscet, ¹¹ tum lucernam capiam et ad eum ibō."

65.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

anteā before, formerly (<i>adv.</i>)	numquam never (<i>adv.</i>)
aut or (<i>conj.</i>)	persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus persuade
eō, ire, ii, itus go	
interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus ask	proficiscor, -ī, -fectus sum depart
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum admire	uxor, -ōris, <i>f.</i> wife
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus neg- lect, disregard	ventus, -ī, <i>m.</i> wind

66.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. minima nātū: *least by birth*; translate *the youngest*.
2. Eis erant: translate *they had*. See 521.
3. Cum: *since*.
4. ad domum Psȳchēs: *to the house of Psyche*.
5. Cum: *although*.
6. mōnstrum: *monster*; nominative, subject of dūcet.
7. primā nocte: *at first night*; translate *at nightfall*.
8. Psȳchēn: a Greek form of the accusative.
9. eī: why is this case used?
10. ut . . . intueātur: a substantive clause used as object of persuādēt and expressing an act as willed. In what mood is intueātur?
11. Cum requiēscet: the indicative is used in this cum clause because it fixes the time and does not emphasize the circumstance.

67.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Cum causal clauses (604). Cum puella tam pulchra esset, omnēs eam mīrātī sunt, *because the girl was so beautiful, all admired her*. When the conjunction cum means *because* or *since*, it introduces a clause with its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum adversative (concessive) clauses (606). Psȳchē cum corpora nūlla vidēret, tamen vōcēs saepe audiēbat, *although Psyche saw nobody (no bodies), she often heard (their) voices*. When the conjunction cum means *although*, it introduces a clause with its verb in the subjunctive.

Dative of possession (521). In English, possession is usually expressed by the verb *have*: *they had three daughters*. The Romans used the verb habeo in the same way: trēs filiās habu-

ērunt, but they also expressed this same idea of possession by using a dative with the verb *sum*: *eīs erant trēs filiae*, *to them were three daughters*; translate *they had three daughters*. This use of the dative is very common in Latin and is called the *dative of possession*. Observe that the *thing possessed* is in the nominative case.

The irregular verb *eō* (500). Learn the conjugation of *eō*.

68.

EXERCISE

Identify the *cum* clauses in the story. What is the mood and tense of the verb in each?

Identify the forms of the verb *eō*. Identify as to person, voice, tense, and number: *it, istis, ierat, eat, issētis, itūrus, euntem*.

Identify as to case and use: *sē, l. 8; filiae, l. 17; tibi, l. 26; mihi, l. 34*.

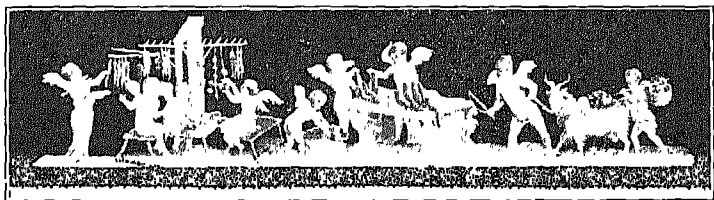
Respondē Latīnē: 1. Quālis puella erat Psȳchē? 2. Quem ad locum iit Cupīdō? 3. Cuius sagittis Cupīdō vulnerātus est? 4. Quandō (*when*) ad ōrāculum rēx et rēgīna iērunt? 5. Quōmodo Psȳchē ad rēgiam portāta est?

Scrībe Latīnē: 1. Although Psyche was formerly neglected, she was now very happy. 2. Because Cupid admired the girl, he asked who she was. 3. Cupid (dative of possession) now had a wife, Psyche. 4. Did Psyche see or hear her husband? 5. Although the wind carried the sisters to the royal palace, they never saw its master. 6. When they had persuaded the girl, they departed. 7. Are you (*sing.*) going?

69.

WORD STUDY

To what word in the story is each of these related by derivation: *admirable, interrogative, negligent, response, reversal, serve, translate*?



Fresco, House of the Vettii, Pompeii

Courtesy of Newark Public Library

CUPIDS AS FLORISTS



MERCURY CONDUCTS PSYCHE TO JUPITER

This is part of the border of the painted ceiling in the Cupid and Psyche room of the Villa Farnesina.

XI

OPUSCULUM ŪNDECIMUM

Nūl dēspērāndum, Nothing should be despaired of. HORACE.

Superanda omnis fortūna ferendō est, Every blow of fortune must be overcome by enduring. VERGIL.

70.

CUPID AND PSYCHE, II

Posterā nocte igitur Psȳchē in cubiculum lucernam portāvit ut vultum marītī intueretur. Prō¹ mōnstrō virum pulcherrimum vultū dīvinō vidit. Dum puella maritum amantibus oculis intuetur, gutta olei ferventis dē lucernā in eius cervicem cecidit. Ille, ē somnō excitātus, ē lectō subsiluit. Cū uxorem suam hoc fēcisse intellexeret, dixit, “Tū mihi dēserenda es,² cum mihi crēdere nōn possīs. Māter mea Venus mē ut dē tē supplicium sūmerem misit. Ego autem ā tē vulnerātus sum.”

Cupīdō maestus rēgiam reliquit. Mox rēgia et vallēs florētēs ē cōspectū Psȳchēs abiērunt. Psȳchē ipsa ad urbem in quā sorōrēs habitābant ventō portāta est. Duae sorōrēs, verbis eius audītis, ad rēgiam Cupīdinis iterum īre voluerunt. Ā summō monte dēsiliētēs sine auxiliō ventī, perierunt.

Psȳchē misera multōs diēs per orbem terrārum marītī petendī

causā³ errābat. "Mihi," inquit, "marītus meus videndus¹⁵ est."

Interim Cupidō domi⁴ mātris suae custodiēbātur. Cum alba avis facta⁵ Cupīdinis et Psychēs ad Venerem rettulisset, dea amoris irāscēbātur. "Dē illā puellā," inquit, "deīs supplicium gravissimum sūmendū est."²⁰

Psychē maesta ad Cererem sē contulit ut auxilium peteret. Dea respondit, "Venus tibi plācanda est. Hōc factō, maritum tuum recipere poteris."

Tandem Psychē ad rēgiām Veneris vēnit. Haec irātissima miserae puellae gravissimum labōrem imperāvit. "Prīmō,"²⁵ inquit, "haec sēmina tibi ante noctem sēparanda sunt." Sic locūta abiit. Puella labōrāre coepit. Mox formicae diligentēs iuvandī⁶ causā vērunt, et primum opus ante noctem ad finem perductum est. Prīmā nocte Venus revertit. "Hoc," inquit, "factum nōn est ā tē. Veniam meam nōn cōsecūta es."³⁰

Deīnde Venus secundum opus imperat, "Vellus aureum ovium saevārum, quae prope flūmen sunt, tibi ad templum meum portandum est." Psychē ad flūmen ire mātūrāvit.

Vocēs dulcēs dīxērunt, "Tibi nōs audiendae sumus, tibi serviēmus. Ovēs saevae merīdiē dormient." Psychē, cum³⁵ merīdiē sōl ovēs in umbram ad dormiendum⁷ ire cōgerat, vellus aureum dē rubīs et sentibus lēgit. Eō ad Venerem portātō, secundum opus ad finem perductum est.

Tum dea etiam irāta dīxit, "Aqua in hāc urnā ex fonte Stygis flūminis tibi ferenda est." Avis Iovis ad eam auxili ferendī⁴⁰ causā volāvit. Urnam capiēns avis ad fontem Stygis volāvit et eam complēvit. Puella urnam plēnam portāns ad mātrem marītī laeta revertit. Itaque tertium opus ad finem perductum est. Etiam tunc saevam deam plācāre nōn potuit.

Dēmum Venus sēcūm dīxit, "Mihi paulum dē pulchritūdine⁴⁵ Prōserpinae, deae Orcī, habendum est. Psychae⁸ ea pulchritūdō capiēda est et in hāc arcā ad terram superam referenda est. Illa puella ultrā Stygem ad Orcum mihi mittenda est."

- Psyche alacris ad imperata facienda ad Orcum descendit.
 50 Puellae miserae trans Stygem flumen eundem est et canis Cerberus placandus est. Tamen potentiam divinam iuta,⁹ pulchritudine Proserpinae captam, portans arcam ad terram superam iterum venire potuit. Defessa et misera autem arcae aperiendae causam consedit. Somnus gravis ex arca veniens statim eam pervasit.
 55 Hic Cupido, qui est cubiculo in quo custodiebatur evaserat, eam invenit. Ad Iovem celeriter iit. Mox Iuppiter Mercurium, nuntium deorum, misit ut Psychen ad se duceret. Puellae nectar dedit, "Immortalis," inquit, "semper eris." Venus Cupidini¹⁰ et eius uxori ignovit.
 60 Dei nuptias celebraverunt. Vulcanus cenam coxit, Apollo ad citharam cantavit, et Venus saltavit. Horae item saltaverunt atque omnia rosae et ceteris floribus ornaverunt. Omnes laetissimi fuerunt et eis gratulationes magnas fecerunt.

71.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

consequor, -i, -secutus sum obtain	gratulatio, -onis, f. congratulation
consido, -ere, -sedi, -sessus take a seat	hora, -ae, f. hour
descendo, -ere, -di, -scensus descend	lego, -ere, legi, lectus pick
desero, -ere, -ui, -sertus desert, leave	perduco, -ere, -dixi, -ductus lead through, bring
diligens, -entis industrious	pereo, -ire, -ii, -itus perish
	posterus, -a, -um next, following
	superus, -a, -um upper
	ultra beyond (<i>prep. with acc.</i>)

72.

NOTES ON THE STORY

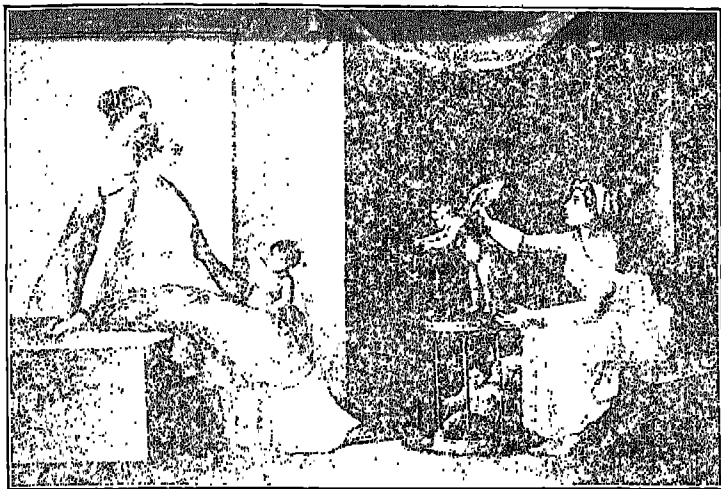
1. Pro: *instead of*.
2. mihi deserenda es: translate *I must desert you*. See 501.
3. mariti petendi causa: *for the sake of seeking her husband*; genitive of the gerundive petendi, agreeing with mariti; used with causa to express purpose.
4. domi: *at home*; locative case (555).
5. facta: *acts, affairs*; accusative plural, object of rettulisset.



From the work of "Lionel" Raymond

THE DANCING HOUR, WITH APOLLO AND THE SUN CHARIOT

From the work of "Lionel" Raymond



WHO WILL BUY MY LOVES?

This wall painting was found at Stabiae, a town which was destroyed in 79 A.D. by the eruption of Vesuvius, which also overwhelmed Pompeii and Herculaneum.

6. *iuvandī*: genitive of the gerund used with *causā* to express purpose. Read Chapter 15 in Owen Johnson's *The Varmin!*, which gives the story of the experience of Stover and his schoolmates with gerunds and gerundives.

7. *dormiendum*: *sleeping*; accusative of the gerund used with *ad* to express purpose.

8. *Psychae*: translate by *Psyche*; dative of agent.

9. *iūta*: *aided*; perfect passive participle of *iuvō*.

10. *Cupidini*: why dative (517)?

73.

COMPREHENSION

1. What did Cupid do when he discovered Psyche's lack of trust in him?
2. How were the sisters punished? 3. What labors did Psyche perform?

74.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

The gerund (629). In the phrase, *the art of writing*, the verb form, *writing*, is a verbal noun. Such a form, since it is a noun,

may be used in all cases and, since it has a verbal idea, may have an object: *the art of writing books*. Such a verbal noun is called a *gerund*.

Latin has a gerund corresponding to the English gerund except that it has no nominative form: *ars scribendī librōs*, *the art of writing books*; *ūtilis legendō*, *useful for reading*; *idōneum tempus ad legendum*, *a suitable time for reading*; *iuvandī causā vērērunt*, *they came for the sake of aiding*.

Learn the forms of the gerunds (492). Observe that a gerund is a neuter noun of the second declension, used only in the singular, and has the distinctive letters *-nd-*: —, *iuvandī*, *iuvandō*, *iuvandum*, *iuvandō*.

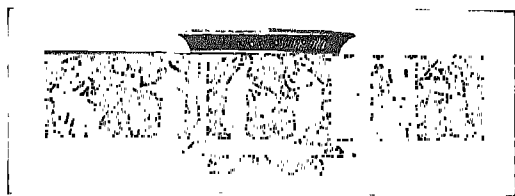
The gerundive (630). In Latin there is a verbal adjective form, the *future passive participle* or *gerundive*, for which in English there is no corresponding form: *iuvandus*, *-a*, *-um*, *to be aided*. Because it is an adjective, it agrees with its noun in number, gender, and case: *ars librōrum scribendōrum*, *the art of books to be written*, translate *the art of writing books*; *eius iuvandae causā*, *for the sake of her to be aided*, translate *for the sake of aiding her*.

The gerundive is generally used instead of a gerund with an object and should be used instead of a gerund with an object if it is (1) dependent upon a preposition, (2) in the dative case: *in librīs legendīs*, *in reading books*; *Psychē alacris ad imperāta faciēda* (l. 49), *Psyche eager to carry out the demands*.

Note that the gerund or gerundive may be used with *ad* or *causā* to express purpose. For examples, see NOTES ON THE STORY, 3, 6, and 7.

Learn the forms of the gerundives (492).

Passive periphrastic conjugation (501). In the sentence, *Psychē mihi mittenda est*, *Psyche must be sent by me*, or *I must send Psyche*, *mittenda est*, which is made up of the future passive participle (gerundive) and a form of the auxiliary verb *sum*, expresses necessity. The future passive participle (gerundive)



From a Greek vase painting

THE TOILETTE OF VENUS

is used with all tenses of the indicative and subjunctive of the verb *sum*, and with the present infinitive of *sum*, to form a special conjugation, called the *passive periphrastic conjugation*. *Periphrastic* is from a Greek word meaning a *round about way of speaking*. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *necessity or obligation*.

Dative of agent (522). *Mihi* in the Latin sentence in the preceding paragraph is in the dative case and denotes the person *by whom* the sending, *mittenda est*, must be done. This dative used with the passive periphrastic conjugation is called the *dative of agent*. It is preferably translated as if it were the subject or as an ablative of agent.

Translate: *Tibi hoc faciendum erit; ei Venus placanda est.*

75.

EXERCISE

Point out: the gerunds and gerundives in the story and give the case and use of each; examples of the passive periphrastic conjugation and of the dative of agent; examples of different ways of expressing purpose.

Respondē Latinē: 1. Cūr Psychē Cupīdinī dēserenda erat? 2. Quot diēs Psychē errābat? 3. Cuius recipiendī causā laborābat Psychē?

Scribe Latinē: 1. How did the sisters perish? 2. The girl descended beyond the Styx to the Lower Regions for the sake of obtaining aid. 3. On the following day the diligent girl must pick the fleece. 4. The work must be brought to an end by the girl.

76.

WORD STUDY

Define: *agenda*, *Amanda*, *legend*, *memorandum*, *Miranda*, *referendum*.



National Museum, Rome

Capitoline Museum, Rome

TWO ROMAN BEAUTIES

The problem of permanent waves must have been an engrossing one with Roman women! The illustration at the left is of an unknown Roman girl; the one at the right is of Julia, daughter of the Emperor Titus.

XII

OPUSCULUM DUODECIMUM

Was this the face that launched a thousand ships
And burnt the topless towers of Ilium? MARLOWE

77.

THE FIRST BEAUTY CONTEST

Nēreō ¹ multae filiae erant, quae Nēreidēs appellātae sunt. Pulcherrimae erant Nēreidēs, quārum Thetis erat pulchrior quam sorōrēs. Eam Nēreus Pēleō in mātirimōnium dedit. Iuppiter ad nūptiās Pēlei et Thetidis deōs deāsque omnēs, 5 Discordiā exceptā, convocāvit. Discordia irāta iniūriam ulcisci dēcrevit. Ea, cum omnēs ad cēnam nūptiālem essent, mediōs in deōs et deās ² aureum mālum iēcit.

"Pulcherrimae," inquit, "hoc sit praemium."

Statim, cum omnēs deae mālum sibi cuperent, summum erat 10 certāmen dē praemiō maximē inter Iūnōnem, Venerem, Mi-

nervam. Clāmitābant, "Eāmus³ ad Iovem, ut pulcherrimam eligat." Sed Iuppiter, nē eārum animōs in perpetuum in sē incitāret, respondit, "Nē deus iūdicet."

Paridem, filium Priamī, rēgis Trōiae, ad rem iūdicandam elēgit. Mercuriō imperāvit ut deās cupidās praemī in Idam¹⁵ montem dūceret, ut Paris, quī ibi ovēs custodiēbat, iūdicāret.

Magnum erat opus iūdicandī quae dea esset pulcherrima. Trēs deae Paridī clam dīxērunt quod praemium ei darent.

Iūnō, "Sī," inquit, "mē pulcherrimam iūdicāveris, magnum tibi imperium dabō." Minerva prōmīsīt cum omnium sapien-²⁰ tissimū virum futūrum esse. Venus sē cī pulcherrimam fēminam orbis terrārum uxōrem datūram esse prōmīsīt. Paris, quībus audītis, Venerem pulcherrimam iūdicāvit, "Venus ha-beat⁴ aurcum mālum."

Hōc tempore pulcherrima fēmina erat Helena, uxor Menelāi,²⁵ rēgis Lacedaemonis, quam multī nōbillissimī in mātirimōnium dūcere cupīverant. Tandem Paris omnēs fōrmam Helenae ēgregiam laudāre audīvit. Ad Venerem ire mātūrāvit. "Volō," inquit, "ut mihi uxōrem prōmissam dēs."

Venus Paridī imperāvit ut Lacedaemonem irēt⁵ et Helenam³⁰ victam amōre Trōiam dūceret. Paris laetus Venerī pāruiť. Nāve celerīter parātā, in Graeciam profectus est. Cum mare trānsisset et Lacedaemonem advēnisset, in amīcitiam ā Menelāō rēge receptus est. Paris, auxiliō Veneris ūsus, Helenae facile persuādet ut ūnā sēcūm Trōiam eat.⁶

Ob hanc perfidiam irātus Menelāus cum Graecīs⁷ multis et nōbillissimīs cum Trōiam secūtus est. Haec erat causa bellī⁸ quod Graeci decem annōs ad Trōiam gessērunt.

78.

REQUIRED VOCABULARY

clam secretly (*adv.*)
ēgregius, -a, -um remarkable
fōrma, -ae, *f.* beauty
incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus incite
laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus praise

perfidia, -ae, *f.* treachery
perpetuus, -a, -um continuous
in perpetuum (tempus) forever
trāseō, -ire, -iī, -itus go across
ūnā along with (*adv.*)

79.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Nereus with his fifty daughters dwell in the depths of the sea.
2. *mediōs . . . deās*: *into the midst of the gods and goddesses*.
3. *Eāmus*: *let us go*.
4. *Venus habeat*: *let Venus have*.
5. *ut, irēt*: *that he go*; translate *to go*.
6. *eat*: present subjunctive of *eō*.
7. *cum Graecis*: Helen's former suitors had taken an oath to avenge any wrong done to her or her husband.

8. *belli*: Helen of Troy and the Trojan war which followed her abduction have been the inspiration of many writers. The greatest Greek poet, Homer, in the *Iliad* narrates the story of the last year of the siege of Troy, and in the *Odyssey* describes the wanderings and adventures of Odysseus (Ulysses) on his journey back home to Ithaca after the fall of Troy. Vergil, Rome's greatest poet, in the *Aeneid* follows the fortunes of another of the heroes who survived this war, Aeneas, the founder of the Roman race.

80.

COMPREHENSION

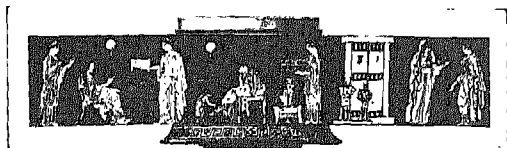
1. How did the contest arise? 2. What return did each contestant for the prize offer the judge for a favorable decision? 3. What connection had this contest with the Trojan war?

81.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Independent volitive subjunctive (580). The subjunctives used in preceding opuscula have all been in subordinate clauses. They were used in indirect questions, and in purpose, *cum*, and result clauses. In this opusculum the subjunctive is used in principal clauses to express an act as willed: *Hoc sit praemium*, *let this be the prize*; *nē deus iūdicet*, *let not a god decide*. This independent subjunctive, called the volitive, usually occurs in the first and third persons and is generally translated by *let*. The negative is *nē* instead of *nōn*. For the second person the imperative is regularly used: *Dā mihi praemium*, *give me the prize*; *nōlī mihi praemium dare*, *do not (be unwilling) give me the prize*.

Substantive volitive subjunctive (589). A volitive subjunctive is often used in a subordinate clause which is the object of a



From a Greek vase painting

GETTING READY FOR THE CONTEST

verb meaning to will or command. Such a clause is called a *substantive (noun) clause*: *Imperat ut hoc sit praemium, he orders that this be the prize*; *imperāvit nē hoc esset praemium, he ordered that this should not be the prize.*

Accusative of place to which (529). Limit of motion, or place to which, is expressed by the accusative with a preposition: *in Graeciam profectus est, he set out for Greece.* With names of towns and with *domus, home*, the accusative is used without a preposition: *Paris Trōiam vēnit, Paris came to Troy.*

82.

EXERCISE

Point out at least one example of: substantive volitive clause, independent volitive, *cum* circumstantial clause, *cum* adversative clause, clause of purpose, deponent verb, indirect question, ablative absolute, gerund, gerundive, dative with a special verb, future perfect indicative, future infinitive, primary sequence of tenses, accusative of place to which, dative of possession.

Respondē Latinē: 1. Quid Discordia deābus dixit? 2. Quid dixit Iuppiter? 3. Cūr Venus imperāvit ut Paris Lacedaemonem iret?

Scribe Latinē: 1. Let the gods praise the remarkable beauty of that girl. 2. Let Discord not go to the banquet. 3. The god ordered Discord not to go. 4. The case (*rēs*) must be judged by the son of Priam. 5. Venus commands Paris to cross the sea.

83.

WORD STUDY

To what word in the story is each of these related: *convocation, elect, imperious, irate, laudatory, nuptial, perfidy, perpetuity, pulchritude*?

It is interesting to recognize the descendants of Latin words in different modern languages: descendants of *soror* are *sœur*, French; *sorella*, Italian; *sor*, Spanish; and *sorosis*, English.



Courtesy of The Classical Center, Los Angeles

ANCIENT LIFE IN VASE PAINTINGS

The beautiful black-figured cup and red-figured vase and mixing bowl here shown are Greek originals in the collection of antiquities, illustrative of the life of the ancient Greeks, Romans, and Etruscans, which has been assembled by the Classical Center of the Los Angeles Schools.

XIII

OPUSCULUM TERTIUM DECIMUM

REITERANDUM EST

Forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvabit.

Perchance sometime it will please you to remember these things.

VERGIL

84.

EXERCISE

1. *Decline*: aliud onus, quidam campus. 2. Write the synopsis in the third person plural of: arbitror in the indicative; sequor in the subjunctive. 3. Identify as to mood, voice, tense, person, and number: latus est, eam, vis, nolumus, tulissetis, malebant, ieram, volueris, secutus erit, arbitrareretur. 4. Give the forms for the gerund and gerundive of: incito, persuadeo, sumo, progredior. 5. Give the synopsis in the indicative and subjunctive: active and passive of ferro, first person singular; nolo, second person plural.

1. *Give the synopsis in the indicative and subjunctive of*: volo and eo in the first person plural; fio and malo in the third person plural. 2. Give

the synopsis of *laudō* in the passive periphrastic conjugation, indicative and subjunctive, second person singular. 3. Write the subjunctive of *sum*.

1. *Name*: three compound verbs with which the dative case is used; three ways of expressing purpose; five deponent verbs with which the ablative case is used; five special verbs with which the dative case is used; the nine irregular adjectives; the primary tenses, the secondary tenses.
2. Give the rule for sequence of tenses.

How is each of the following expressed in Latin: result; negative command; place to which; indirect question; a clause of circumstance; a command in the third person; a command in a substantive clause; the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation? Write an English sentence illustrating the use of each.

Write the Latin for the italicized words: A. 1. *Daedalus went (betrook himself) to Crete for the purpose of aiding his father.* 2. He said, "*I must make wings.*" 3. *Since Thisbe had sent the letter,* her lover followed her. 4. *She prefers to remain in the cave.* 5. The parents said, "*Do not go home.*"

B. 1. *Although the lion did not see her,* the girl was thoroughly frightened. 2. *When Pyramus opened his eyes,* he saw her. 3. *The queen attempts to kill herself.* 4. The god of the sun asks *why Phaëthon wishes* to drive his horses. 5. *At last Apollo will favor his son.*

C. 1. Midas was so unhappy *that he cried aloud,* "I shall die." 2. *Deucalion and Pyrrha are borne to a lofty mountain.* 3. *Neptune was in charge of the sea.* 4. Hercules undertook his labors *that he might be freed from servitude.* 5. Venus orders Psyche *to depart from her sight.*

D. 1. *Mencius (use dative) had a wife praised for her beauty.* 2. He was sent *to undertake the work* (express in three ways). 3. *Pyramus and Thisbe had wished to be buried in the same tomb.* 4. *One sister said to the other,* "In a short time *we shall have persuaded her.*"

Write Latin: 1. Do you approve of the young man's plan of flying? 2. Let that diligent girl be praised. 3. The most beautiful goddess was to be selected by the king's son. 4. The tables became gold. 5. Have you enjoyed the gods and heroes of these stories?

85.

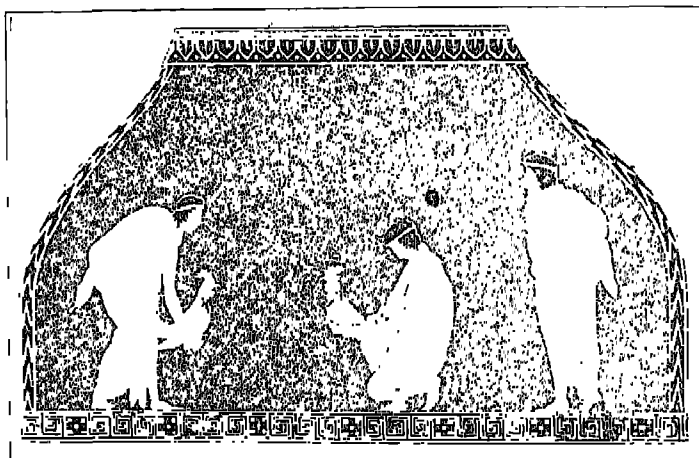
REVIEW OF REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Each of the following words is derived from, or connected in derivation with, a word in the required vocabularies of *Opuscula* I-XII. Give the

Latin word suggested by each and its meaning. Define the English word on the basis of its Latin derivation: *e.g.*, *abuse* is derived from *ûsus*, perfect participle of *ûtor*, *use*, combined with *ab*, *away from*. It means *away from use, misuse*. *Adolescence* is derived from *adulêscêns*, *-entis*, *young man*, and means the *period of young manhood*.

Abscend, *adverb*, *alacrity*, *aperture*, *arbitrate*, *audacity*, *avalanche*, *benevolent*, *camp*, *clause*, *collaborator*, *concession*, *conference*, *congratulation*, *consecutive*, *convert*, *decree*, *desert*, *detect*, *digit*, *diligent*, *dirigible*, *disperse*, *divisor*, *egregious*, *elegant*, *era*, *estuary*, *excess*, *exit*, *exonerate*, *expert*, *exploration*, *extravagant*, *famine*, *fiat*, *fiduciary*, *hour*.

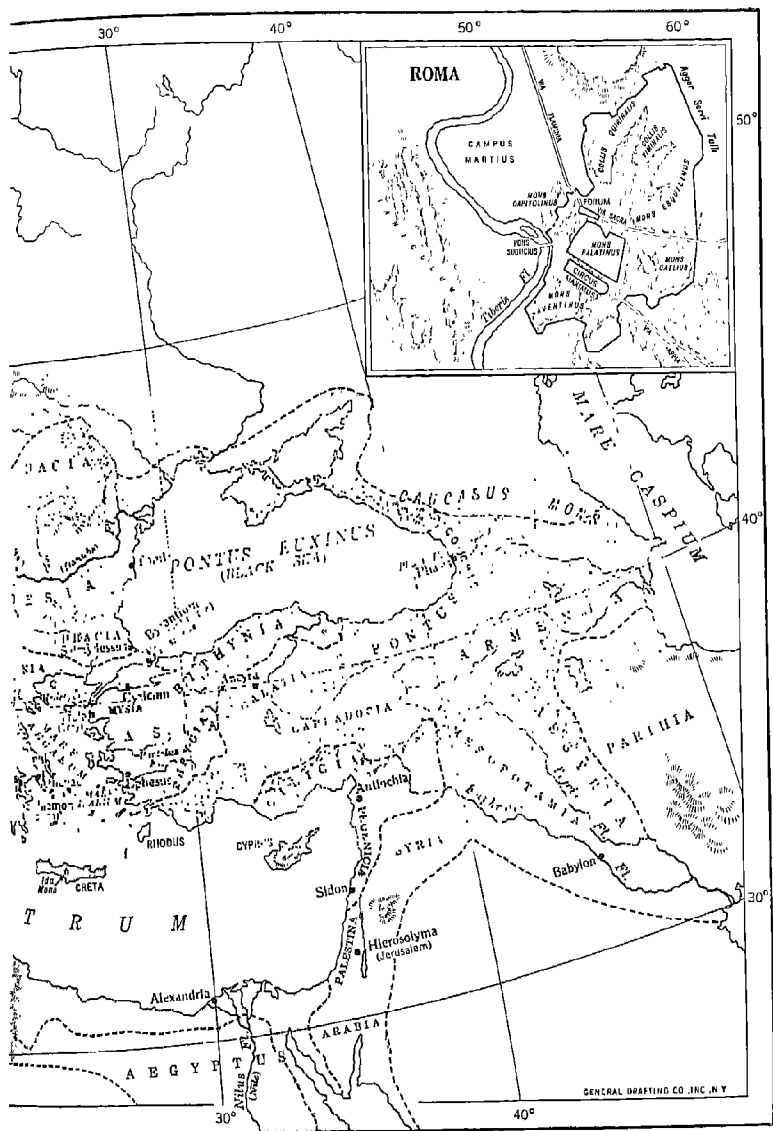
Incense, *incipient*, *inductive*, *inference*, *inoculate*, *intangible*, *interim*, *interrogative*, *invention*, *involuntary*, *lapidary*, *laud*, *loquacious*, *mode*, *patient*, *perfidious*, *perish*, *perpetual*, *persuasive*, *posterior*, *precarious*, *present*, *presumption*, *probation*, *progression*, *referee*, *relation*, *restitution*, *reversible*, *sagillarius*, *servitude*, *solar*, *sorority*, *susceptible*, *tangent*, *tectotaler*, *transient*, *anterior*, *utilitarian*, *vacuum*, *verbose*, *vivacious*.



From a Greek vase

ANCIENT LIFE IN VASE PAINTINGS





PART II

THE ARGONAUTS

AN ANCIENT GREEK STORY OF ADVENTURE

And mistily, as through a veil,
I catch the glances of a sea
Of sapphire dimpled with a gale
Toward Colchis blowing, where the sail
Of Jason's Argo beckons me.

JAMES WHITCOMB RILEY

Pretium labōris nōn vile, *The reward of toil not cheap.*

MOTTO OF THE ORDER OF THE GOLDEN FLEECE

The story of Jason and the Argonauts in their search for the Golden Fleece is an ancient Greek tale full of wonderful adventure. Jason, the hero and leader of the expedition, was the son of Aeson, King of Thessaly. The story tells why Jason decided to go on the expedition for which Argus built the good ship Argo; what perilous experiences Jason and his fifty heroic companions had on their journey to Colchis, where the Golden Fleece was hidden; how they finally succeeded in their quest with the help of Medea, the daughter of the king of Colchis, who was an enchantress; and how the love story of Jason and Medea ended in tragedy.

The story was originally told in the third century B.C. by a Greek writer, Apollonius of Rhodes. *The Argonauts*, a prose translation of this poem by R. C. Seaton, is in the Loeb Classical Library. A poetic translation has been made by A. S. Way. Other interesting versions of the story are: *The Argonauts*, by Gaius Valerius Flaccus, a Latin writer, translated by Thomas Noble; *The Life and Death of Jason*, a poem by William Morris; and *The Golden Fleece* in *Tanglewood Tales* by Nathaniel Hawthorne.

May Colchis curse the dawn of day when first she thundered free
And our golden captain, Jason, in glory put to sea!

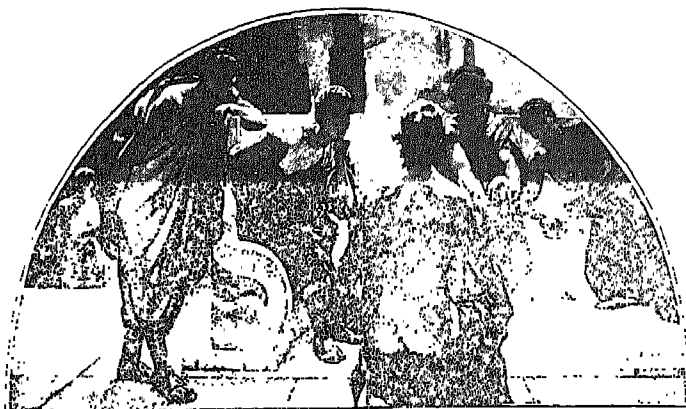
WILLIAM ROSE BENÉT, *The Argo's Chantey**

* From *Merchants from Cathay*, by William Rose Benét, published by Yale University Press.



A Faint line of text, possibly a credit or publisher's mark, located below the illustration.

THE ARAB PASSES THROUGH THE CLASHING ROCKS



From a painting by Walter McEwen

Courtesy of Congressional Library, Washington

JASON RELATES THE STORY OF HIS ADVENTURES

XIV

OPUSCULUM QUĀRTUM DECIMUM

This Pelias, being covetous and strong
And full of wiles, and deeming naught was wrong
That wrought him good, thrust Aeson from his throne,
And over all the Minyae reigned alone.*

86.

SAVED FROM A WICKED UNCLE

Erant olim in Thessaliā¹ duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn,²
alter Peliās appellābātur. Ex his Aesōn primum rēgnū ob-
tinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditāte ad-
ductus,³ nōn modo frātrēm suum expulit, sed etiam in animō
habebat Iāsonem, Aesonis filium, interficere. Quīdam tamen
ex amicīs⁴ Aesonis, ubi sententiam Peliae intellēxērunt, pue-
rum ē tantō periculō ēripere cōstituērunt. Noctū igitur
Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et cum posterō diē ad rēgem

*This quotation and all those used as headings in Part II, unless otherwise specified, are from *The Life and Death of Jason* by William Morris.

rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās cum haec audīvisset, elsī rē vērā ⁵ magnum gaudium per-₁₀ cipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praebuit, et quae causa esset mortis ⁶ quaesivit. Illi tamen cum intellexerent ⁷ dolōrem eius falsum esse, ⁸ fābulam dē morte pueri finxērunt.

87.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Thessaliā: follow on a map the course of the voyage of the Argonauts.
2. Aesōn: predicate nominative with *appellābatur*.
3. rēgnī . . . adductus: *influenced by a desire for (of) royal power*.
4. Quidam, ex amicis: *certain (of the) friends*.
5. rē vērā: translate *in fact*.
6. quae . . . mortis: *what was the cause of his death*; an indirect question.
7. cum intellexerent: a causal clause.
8. dolōrem . . . esse: translate *that his grief was assumed*.

88.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why was a false report of Jason's death made to Pelias? 2. How did Pelias act when he heard the report of Jason's death?

89.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Objective genitive (512). You have learned that the genitive case in Latin corresponds to the possessive case in English: *Aesonis filius*, *Aeson's son*. In Latin, in such phrases as *amor patriae*, *love of country*, and *spēs libertātis*, *hope of liberty*, the genitive case is also used to denote the object of the feeling expressed by a noun or adjective containing a verbal idea. In the phrase, *rēgnī cupiditāte*, *by a desire of power*, l. 3, *rēgnī* indicates the object of the feeling expressed by *cupiditāte* and the phrase is equivalent to a verb and its object, *rēgnum cupit*, *he desires power*. A genitive so used is called an *objective genitive*.

90.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: * A. 1. Point out in the story: nouns of the *first declension* (466); of the *second declension* (469). 2. Decline: *causa*, *fābula*, *annus*, *rēgnum*.

* *Iterātiō*, *review*, is derived from the Latin verb *iterō*, meaning *do a second time*.

3. Conjugate in the indicative active, present, imperfect, and future tenses (492): *appellō, habeo, intellegō, audiō*. 4. Identify as to person, number, and tense: *habēs, appellābat, habēbit, intellegēmus, auditis, interficiam, habēbunt*.

B. 1. Point out in the story: two different uses of the *nominative case* (507-8); two examples of the *possessive genitive* (509); one example of the *ablative of time when* (553).

Respondē Latinē: 1. Cuius cupiditāte Peliās adducēbātur? 2. Quis erat Iāsōn? 3. Quid amīcī Aesonis faciēbant?

Scribe Latinē: 1. The son of Aeson is called Jason. 2. Desire for the kingdom was not the cause of his death. 3. Although friends report the opinion of Pelias, still Jason shows no appearance of grief. 4. The king's son will not only return in the following year, but will also obtain the kingdom.

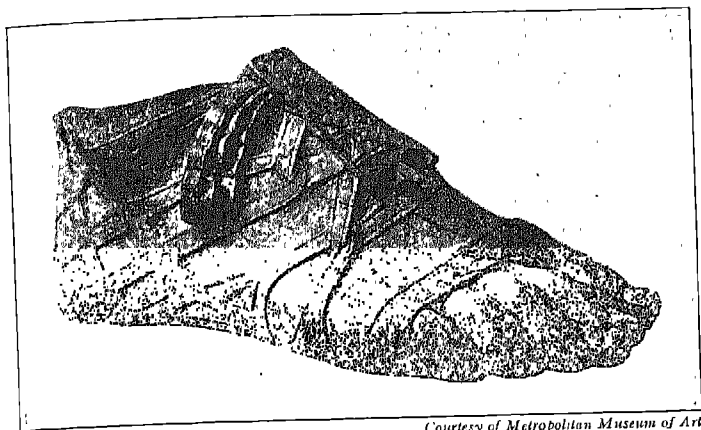
91.

VERBA

Master each word in the required vocabulary by learning its meaning; the genitive and gender of each noun; the principal parts of each verb; and the nominative forms of each adjective.

Required Vocabulary: *at, causa, cupiditās, etsī, modo, noctū, obtineō, praebeō, redeō, renūtiō, sententia, speciēs*.

Word Study. The suffix *-tās* (in English *-ty*), denoting a *state of*, added to adjective or noun stems, forms feminine nouns of the third declension. For example, *cupiditās* is formed from *cupidus*, *eager*, and the suffix *-tās* (*cupidi- + -tās*), and means *state of being eager* or *eagerness, desire*. What nouns are formed with the suffix *-tās* from: *vērūs, posterus, and paucus*?



Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

AN ANCIENT SHOE

The shoe, *calceus*, worn by Jason was similar to the sandal, *solea*, shown here, which consists of a heavy leather sole held in place by straps.

XV

OPUSCULUM QUINTUM DECIMUM

Now Jason, by Anaurus left alone,
 Found that, indeed, his right-foot shoe was gone,
 But, as the Goddess bade him, went his way
 Halfshod, and by an hour before mid-day
 He reached the city gates, and entered there,
 Whom the folk mocked, beholding his foot bare.

92.

THE RETURN OF JASON

Post breve tempus Pelias, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā
 vī et fraude occupātum amitteret,¹ amicum quendam Delphōs²
 misit, quī ōrāculum cōsuleret.³ Ille igitur quam celerrimē⁴
 Delphōs sē contulit et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōnstrāvit.
 Respondit ōrāculum nullum esse in praesentiā periculum;⁵
 monuit tamen Peliam ut aliquem calceum ūnum gerentem
 cavēret.⁶ Post paucōs annōs accidit ut Pelias magnum sacri-
 ficiū factūrus esset;⁷ nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimiserat et

diem conveniendī⁸ dixerat. Diē cōstitutō magnus numerus
 10 hominum undique ex agris convēnit; inter aliōs autem vēnit
 etiam Iāsōn, quī ā puerō⁹ apud centaurum quendam habitāverat.
 Dum tamen iter facit, calceum alterum in trānseundō flūmine¹⁰
 āmisit.

93.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. veritus nē . . . āmitteret: after a verb of fearing, nē is translated *that* and is used to introduce a substantive clause whose verb is in the subjunctive. Ut in a similar clause is translated *that not*. (592)

2. Delphōs: *to Delphi*; what accusative is this? (529) Apollo's shrine was at Delphi, and many came there to consult the oracle.

3. quī . . . cōsuleret: *to consult the oracle*; a relative clause expressing purpose.

4. quam celerrimē: translate *as quickly as possible*.

5. nūllum . . . periculum: *that there was no danger for the present*.

6. ut . . . cavēret: *to beware of anyone wearing one shoe*.

7. ut . . . esset: *that Pelias was going to make a great sacrifice*.

8. conveniendī: *for assembling*; the genitive of the gerund.

9. ā puerō: *from a boy*; translate *from boyhood*.

10. in . . . flūmine: *in crossing a river*; trānseundō, what form of the gerundive?

94.

COMPREHENSION

1. On what occasion did Jason return to the kingdom of his uncle?
2. What misfortune befell him on the way? 3. What connection did this have with the response sent to Pelias by the oracle?

95.

RES GRAMMATICAE

Active periphrastic conjugation (501). The Romans had a special form to convey the idea of the expression *about to* or *going to*, meaning *intend*: *he is going to speak*, dictūrus est; *that which they were going to carry with them*, id quod sēcum portātūrī erant. For this purpose they used the future active participle and a form of the verb *sum*. This special form is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

Point out one form of the active periphrastic conjugation.

Translate: *ventūrus erat*; *calceum gestūra est*; *amicum missūrī sunt*; *ōrāculum respōnsūrum est*.

96.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Point out in the story two *adjectives of the first and second declension* (476). 2. Decline *magnus* in all genders. 3. Conjugate in the *indicative active, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses* (492): *habitō, moneō, mittō, veniō*. 4. Identify as to person, number, and tense: *monuerāmus, misisti, fecerit, habitāvistis, vēnerunt, monuerō, misi, vēnerint*.

B. 1. Find in the story two adjectives of the first and second declension and show the *agreement of the adjective with the noun it modifies* (662). 2. Point out in the story: five examples of the *accusative of direct object* (626); one example of the *accusative of limit of motion* (529). 3. With what *prepositions* in the story is the accusative case used (533)?

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Quem Delphōs Peliās misit? 2. Cūr Peliās ōrāculum cōnsuluit? 3. Dē quō periculō ōrāculum Peliām monuit? 4. Ubi Iāsōn ā puerō habitāverat?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. A few friends went (betook themselves) to Delphi and consulted the oracle. 2. They are going to send messengers to other kingdoms. 3. On the appointed day a great number will have assembled from all quarters.

97.

VERBA

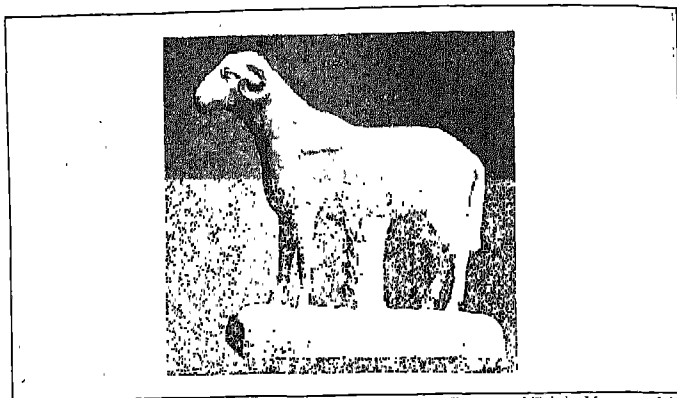
Required Vocabulary: *accidō, aliquis, cōnsulō, conveniō, undique, vereor*.

Word Study. The suffixes *-ulum, -bulum, -culum* (in English *-le, -ble, -cle*), added to verb stems, form nouns denoting *means, instrument, or place*: *ōrāculum* (*ōrā-* + *-culum*), the *place* where the responses of the oracle were given. Show how *vehicle* and *stable* are derived from *vehō* and *stō*.

Contingit use of things we like,
But accidit when evils strike.

Vereor nē, I fear he will;
Vereor ut, I fear he won't.

These couplets are from a Latin book published in 1846. Jingles used to be learned to help remember Latin words and rules.



Courtesy of Toledo Museum of Art

"THE RAM THAT BORE UNSAFELY THE BURDEN OF HELLE." LONGFELLOW

This life-size marble figure of a ram is the work of a Roman artist of the first century A.D. It is one of the finest original specimens of ancient sculpture in this country.

XVI

OPUSCULUM SEXTUM DECIMUM

Then, if but ten lay hold upon the oar,
And I, the eleventh, steer them toward the cast,
To seek the hidden fleece of that gold beast,
I swear to Jove that only in my hand
The fleece shall be, when I again take land
To see my father's hall.

98. JASON PROMISES TO OBTAIN THE GOLDEN FLEECE

Iāson igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, ūnō pede nūdō,¹ in rēgiam pervēnit. Illum cum vīdisset Peliās, subitō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset.² Hoc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum³ quod Phrixus ōlim ibi reliquerat. Cōstituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī negōtium dare, ut hōc vellere potirētur; ⁴ cum enim

rēs esset magni periculī,⁵ spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse.⁶ Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessivī et quid fieri vellet dēmōn-
strāvit. Iāson autem, etsi bene intellegēbat rem⁷ esse dif-
ficillimam, negōtium libenter suscepit.

99.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *ūnō . . . nūdō*: translate *with one foot bare*; an ablative absolute.
2. *dēmōnstrāvisset*: the verb in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse is in the subjunctive.
3. *vellus . . . aureum*: the reference is to the famous Golden Fleece of the ram which had carried Phrixus and his sister Helle away from their cruel stepmother. On the way Helle fell off into the sea, which was thereafter called Hellespont from this incident. Phrixus was borne to Colchis, where he sacrificed the ram. Its fleece was kept in a sacred grove and guarded by a dragon who never slept.
4. *ut . . . potirētur*: translate *of obtaining this fleece*; a substantive clause in apposition with *negōtium*. What case is used with *potior*?
5. *magni periculī*: translate *very dangerous*; a genitive of quality or description used in the predicate.
6. *eum . . . peritūrum esse*: *that he (Jason) would die on the journey*; an indirect statement depending upon *spērābat*.
7. *rem*: translate *the undertaking*. *Rēs* may be translated by any English word that satisfies the context.

100.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did Jason's misfortune make Pelias fear him?
2. How did Pelias plan to destroy Jason?
3. Give examples from history or literature of other quests, for example, the search for the Holy Grail.

101.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Decline *hic* and *ille*, all genders (487). 2. Give the Latin for: *to that kingdom, of this fear, to that man, with this plan*. 3. Decline: *hic calceus, illud periculum, haec rēgia*. 4. Conjugate in the *indicative passive, present, imperfect, and future tenses* (492): *dēmōnstrō, vidēō, intellegō, recipiō, potior*. 5. Identify as to person, number, tense, and voice: *āmittēbar, obtinēs, āmittam, afficiētur, datur, obtinēmur, damini*.

B. 1. Point out in the story an example of: *ablative of place where* (552); *ablative of means* (546).

Respondē Latinē: 1. Quōmodo Iāsōn in rēgiām pervēnit? 2. Quō in locō erat illud vellus aureum? 3. Quis erat rēx Colchidis illō tempore?

Scribe Latinē: 1. Jason was not affected by this great danger. 2. That man will be summoned by the king. 3. Since he hoped to recover the golden fleece, he formed this plan. 4. Was there a king in that great palace?

102.

VERBA

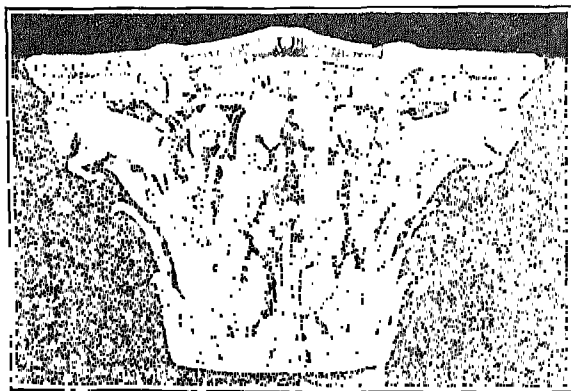
Required Vocabulary: afficiō, arcessō, ineō, recipiō, spērō.

Word Study. Find words in the story which contain these prefixes: ā- or ab-, ad-, cum-, dē-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, sub-. Give the literal meaning of each word. What assimilations of final consonants of prefixes do you find?

Bassanio says of Portia:

“And her sunny locks
Hang on her temples like a golden fleece;
Which makes her seat of Belmont Colchos’ strand
And many Jasons come in quest of her.”

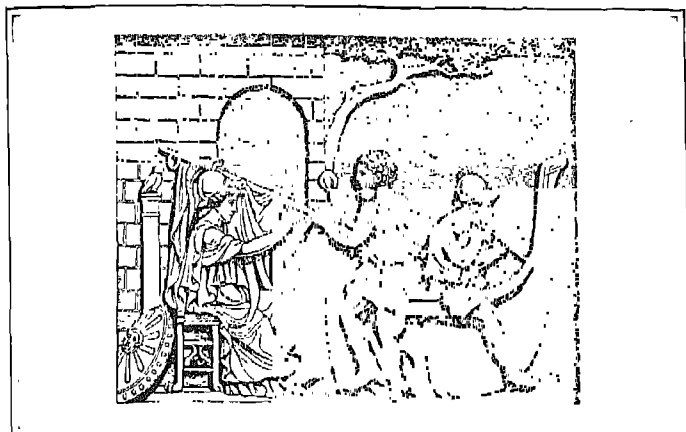
SHAKESPEARE, *Merchant of Venice*, Act I, Scene 1.



Rome, Italy

CAPITAL DECORATED WITH RAMS' HEADS

This ornate capital, fashioned in Corinthian style, is from a column of the Temple of Concordia, which once stood in the Roman Forum.



British Museum, London

Courtesy of Frances E. Sabin

THE GODS AID ARGUS

XVII

OPUSCULUM SEPTIMUM DECIMUM

So Argus¹ laboured, and the work was sped
 Moreover, by a man with hoary head,
 Whose dwelling and whose name no man could know,
 Who many a secret of the craft did show.

103.

THE BUILDING OF THE ARGO

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, sōlus Iāsōn proficisci nōluit. Dīmīsīt igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī causam itineris docērent² et diem conveniendī dicerent. Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī³ ad armandās nāvēs⁴ comportārī iussit, negōtium⁵ dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam scientiam rerū nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret.⁵ In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōsumpti sunt; Argus enim, quī operī⁶ praeerat, tantam dīligentiam adhibēbat ut nē nocturnum⁷ quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret.⁸ Ad multītūdinem hominum multa milia passuum⁹ trānsportan-¹⁰

dam nāvis paulō erat lātor quam quibus¹⁰ in nostrō marī¹¹ ūtī cōnsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta¹² ē rōbre facta est.

104.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Argus: the gods aided him in his task.
2. quī, docērent: translate *to make known*, or *to show*.
3. ūsui: *for a use*; translate *useful*. What form is this?
4. ad . . . nāvēs: *for equipping the ships*; armandās is the accusative of the gerundive with ad and a noun to express purpose. Point out two other examples in the story.
5. negōtium, ut . . . aedificāret: *the business of building the ship*.
6. operī: dative with praeerat.
7. nocturnum: this word is made emphatic by its position between nē and quidem.
8. ut . . . intermitteret: translate *that he did not cease work even at night*.
9. multa . . . passuum: translate *many miles*.
10. quibus: (*the ships*) *which*; ablative with ūtī.
11. nostrō marī: the Mediterranean. To whom does nostrō refer?
12. tōta: *wholly*; an adjective, but translate as if it were an adverb.

105.

COMPREHENSION

1. How did Jason prepare for his journey? 2. Why were his preparations completed so quickly?

106.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Relative clause of purpose (585). Section 19 gives examples of purpose clauses introduced by *ut* or *nē* with their verbs in the subjunctive. In the sentences, *dīmīsīt nūntiōs quī causam itineris docērent*, *he sent out messengers to (who should) show the cause of the journey*, l. 2, and *Peliās amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsīt, quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret*, *Pelias sent a certain friend to Delphi to (who should) consult the oracle* (92), what is the introductory word of each purpose clause? What is its antecedent?

If a definite antecedent is expressed or implied in the main

clause, a relative pronoun may be used to introduce the clause of purpose.

Dative of purpose (523). In the sentence, *he gives a book as a present*, the phrase, *as a present*, states the purpose of the action indicated by the verb *gives*. In Latin, *as a present* is expressed by the dative *dōnō*: *librum dōnō dat*; *he selected a place for a camp*, *locum castris dēlēgit*. *Ūsuī*, *for a use*, l. 4, expresses purpose. This dative, naming that *for which* a thing serves, is called the *dative of purpose*.

107.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Point out in the story five nouns of the third declension (470-1). 2. Decline: *iter nocturnum, nāvis lāta, summum opus*. 3. Review the conjugation of *sum* in the indicative (495). 4. Identify as to person, number, tense, and voice: *estis, erant, erimus, fuisti, fueram, fuerit*.

B. 1. Find in the story one example of: *accusative of extent of space* (530); *dative with a compound verb* (518).

Respondē Latīnē: 1. *Cūr Iāsōn sōlus nōn proficiscitur?* 2. *Quis operi praeest?* 3. *Quālem nāvem Argus aedificāvit?* 4. *Cūr erat paulō lātor nāvis?*

Scribe Latīnē: 1. The ship endured a very great storm for about ten miles. 2. The multitude will collect all things (*omnia*) which will be of use (for a use) for equipping ships. 3. He sends men who are to build the ship. 4. The men who are in charge of the work are not accustomed to interrupt their labor even at night time.

108.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *armō, circiter, cōnsuēscō, cōnsūmō, intermittō, nocturnus, paulō, perferō, postquam, quidem, tempestās, ūsus*.

Word Study. Give the formation and meaning of *diligentia* and *scientia*. What is the English equivalent of the Latin suffix *-ia* or *-tia*?

With the suffix *-tūdō* what nouns are formed from the adjectives: *lātus, multus, sōlus*? Give the English equivalent of each.



Courtesy of Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

THE ARGO

Orpheus hath harped her,
Her prow hath drunk the sea. WILLIAM ROSE BENÉT *

XVIII

OPUSCULUM DUODĒVICĒSIMUM

And now behold within the haven rides
Our good ship, swinging in the changing tides.

109. THE ARGO SAILS WITH MANY HEROES ABOARD

Intereā is diēs appetēbat quem Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēnūntiāverat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī, quōs aut rei novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. Trāditum est autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem, dē quō suprā multa perscrīpsimus, Orpheum,¹ citharoedum praeclārissimum, Thēseum,² Castorem,³ multōsque aliōs quōrum nōmina sunt nōtissima. Ex his Iāsōn, quōs⁴ arbitrātus est ad omnia perīcula subeunda⁵ parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adiūnxit; tum paucōs diēs commorātus, ut
10 ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem ad nāvīgandum⁶ idōneam nactus, magnō cum gaudiō omnium solvit.⁷

110.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. **Orpheum**: by his music he could charm wild beasts and move rocks and trees.

*From *The Argo's Chantey* in *MERCHANTS FROM CATHAY*, published by Yale University Press.

2. **Théseum**: the national hero of Athens; his most famous act was the killing of the Minotaur.

3. **Castorem**: the half brother of Pollux. They were so devoted to each other that when Castor was killed, Pollux, though immortal, took Castor's place in Hades every other day.

4. **quōs**: its antecedent is **eōs**, object of **dēlēgit**.

5. **ad . . . subeunda**: *to undergo all dangers*.

6. **ad nāvigandum**: *for sailing*.

7. **solvit**: **nāvem** is understood.

111.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did so many heroes wish to go with Jason? 2. On what basis did Jason choose his companions? 3. Why did he not set sail at once?

112.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Impersonal use of verbs (502). In Latin, as in English, some verbs do not have a personal subject: **pluit**, *it rains*; **accidit**, *it happens*. Such verbs are called *impersonal verbs*. Impersonal verbs often have an infinitive phrase or a substantive clause as subject: **licet ire**, *it is permitted to go*; **multa oportet discat**, *it is necessary to learn many things*.

Verbs are used impersonally in Latin more often than in English, especially in the passive of intransitive verbs: **pugnātum est**, *it was fought*, instead of **pugnāvērunt** for *they fought*; **ventum est**, instead of **vērērunt**, *they came*. **Trāditum est**, l. 3, *it has been handed down*, is used impersonally with the infinitive phrase, **fuisse Herculem**, as its subject.

113.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Point out in the story: a noun of the *fourth declension* (473); the demonstrative is (487). 2. Decline: **ea regiō**, **id subsidium**, is **cāsus**. 3. Give the *comparison of the adjectives*: **nōtus**, **magnus**, **praeclārus**, **multus**. 4. Conjugate in the *indicative passive, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses* (492): **moveō**, **conveniō**, **comparō**, **dēducō**. 5. Give the synopsis of **dēligō** in all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, third person, singular number. 6. Identify as to person, number, and tense: **dēductus est**, **comparātī erunt**, **mōtī erāmus**, **dēlēctī sunt**.

B. 1. Point out in the story: an *ablative of manner* (542); an *accusative of extent or duration of time* (530).

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Cūr paucōs diēs commorātī sunt? 2. Quid dē sociis Iāsonis trāditum est? 3. Quōmodo Iāsōn nāvem solvit?

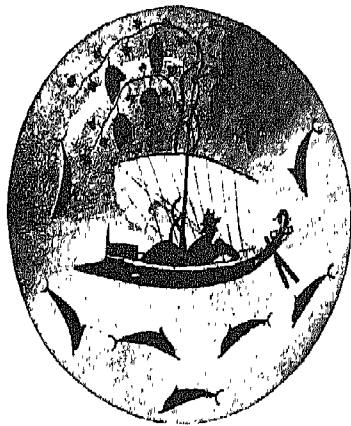
Scribe Latīnē: 1. This most famous ship had been launched with great danger. 2. Jason's comrades were influenced either by the hope of glory or the danger of the enterprise (*rēs*). 3. Aid from this region will have been obtained for the emergencies. 4. It was reported that Jason had sailed.

114.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: cāsus, commoror, dēdūcō, ēnūntiō, glōria, nanciscor, regiō, solvō, subsidium, suprā.

Word Study. Give and define ten English words derived from solvō.



From a Greek vase painting

AN ANCIENT SHIP

OPUSCULUM ŪNDĒVICĒSIMUM

So when they had done this thing,
 They saw the face of Cyzicus the king.
 But Jason, when he saw him, wept and said:
 "Ill hast thou fared, O friend, that I was led
 To take thy gifts and slay thee."

115.

THE FATAL RESULT OF MISTAKEN IDENTITY

Nōn multō post¹ Argonautae, ita enim appellāti sunt qui in istā nāvī vehēbantur, īnsulam quandam, nōmine² Cyzicum, attigērunt et, ē nāvī ēgressī, ā rēge illius regiōnis magnō hospitīō³ exceptī sunt. Paucīs post hōrīs ad sōlis occāsū rūsus solvērunt. At, postquam pauca mīlia passuum⁴ prōgressī sunt, 5 tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī erant magnō cum periculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant et, nāvem inimīcam vēnisse arbitrāti, arma rapuērunt et eōs ēgredi prohibēbant.⁵ Ācriter in 10 litore pugnātum est,⁶ et rēx ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs⁷ occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum iam lūx esset, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre et arma abiēcērunt; Argonautae autem, cum vidērent rēgem occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēperunt.

15

116.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Nōn . . . post: translate *a little later*. What is the literal translation?
2. nōmine: *by name*; an ablative of specification (551).
3. hospitīō: what use of the ablative? Find another example.
4. passuum: what case; mīlia passuum: translate *miles*.
5. eōs . . . prohibēbant: translate *tried to keep them from going ashore*.

6. *pugnātum est*: *they fought*; what use of the verb?
 7. *Argonautis*: what use of the ablative (538)? From what two nouns is this word formed?

117.

COMPREHENSION

1. What misfortune overtook the Argonauts soon after they set sail?
 2. What mistake was made? With what fatal outcome?

118.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Ablative of measure of difference (550). In the phrase, *paucis post hōris*, *a few hours later*, l. 4, the ablative *hōris* is used with the adverb *post* to show *how much* later it was; *i.e.*, *by a few hours*. It is called the *ablative of measure of difference* and is used generally with adverbs and comparatives.

Translate the following phrases literally: *multis ante diēbus*; *paulō longius*.

Genitive of the whole (510). Latin corresponds to English in the use of a genitive to express the *whole* with a word denoting a part; *multi incolārum*, *many of the inhabitants*; *pars urbis*, *part of the city*; *mīlia passuum*, *thousands of paces*. But Latin differs from English in using the *genitive of the whole* with neuter pronouns and adjectives used substantively; *nihil novī*, *nothing (of) new*; *satis causae*, *sufficient (of) cause*; *minus dolōris*, *less (of) sorrow*.

119.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Point out in the story one of the *nine irregular adjectives* (478). 2. Decline the intensive pronoun *ipse* (488). 3. Decline *ipsa nāvis*, *alius cursus*. 4. Give the Latin for: *of the whole ship*, *to the other inhabitants*, *of one island*, *of grief alone*. 5. Conjugate in the *subjunctive*, *active* and *passive*, *present* and *imperfect* (492): *appellō*, *videō*, *attingō*, *sentīō*. 6. Identify as to mood, voice, tense, person, and number: *dēicerentur*, *esset*, *appellet*, *vehant*, *agnōscēbant*, *vidērent*.

B. 1. Point out in the story: two examples of the *ablative of agent* (538); two *cum causal clauses* (604).

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Cūr Argonautae ita appellātī sunt? 2. Quot milia passuum Argonautae prōgressī erant? 3. Vēruntne Argonautae in litus alijs insulae?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. Since the storm was so great, they again held their course toward the west whence they themselves had set out. 2. A few hours later they were received with great hospitality by the king of the island. 3. When the ship had reached the shore, a part of the inhabitants suddenly seized their arms.

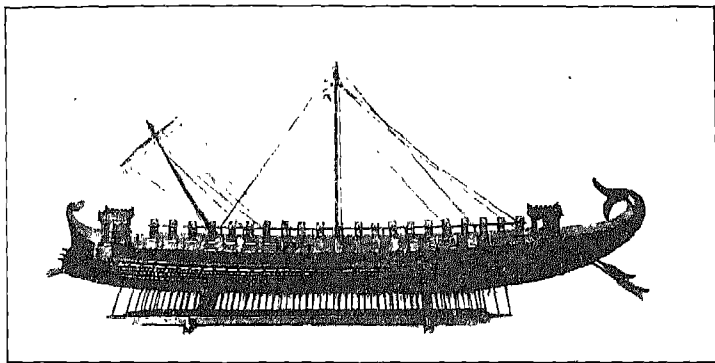
120.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: attingō, cursus, ēgredior, excipiō, iste, ita, litus, occāsus, rursus, subitō, unde, vehō.

Word Study. From what verbs in the story are the following nouns derived: raptor, arbitrātor, pugnator? Define each.

The word *Argonauts* (*Argo* + *nauta*), originally applied to Jason and the band of heroes who sailed with him on the *Argo*, later was used to characterize persons beginning a hazardous enterprise, particularly a long and dangerous journey in quest of something. The name has frequently been applied to the gold seekers who crossed the continent to California in '49. Bret Harte says, "I regard the story of the Argonauts of '49 as an episode in American life as quaint as that of the Greek adventurers."



Courtesy of the Philadelphia Commercial Museum

A GREEK TRIREME

OPUSCULUM VICĒSIMUM

And bore him, sleeping still, as by some spell,
Unto the depths where they were wont to dwell.

121.

HYLAS IS KIDNAPPED BY THE NYMPHS

Postridiē eius diēi¹ Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus, summa enim tranquillitās iam cōsecūta erat, ancorās sustulit et, pauca milia passuum prōgressus, ante noctem Mýsiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancoris² exspectāvit; ā nautis enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam quam sēcum³ habērent⁴ iam dēficere; quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautis, in terram ēgressi, aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā maximā;⁵ quī, dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem quae fontem¹⁰ colēbant, cum iuvenem vīdissent, eī persuādēre cōnatae sunt ut sēcum manēret;⁶ et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse,⁷ puerum vī abstulērunt.

Comitēs eius, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre affecti, diū frūstrā quaerēbant. Herculēs autem¹⁵ et Polyphēmus, quī vēstigia pueri longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad litus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse⁸ cognōvērunt.

122.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. Postridiē eius diēi: translate *on the following day*; an idiom.
2. in ancoris: translate *at anchor*.
3. sēcum: = cum sē; the preposition cum is used regularly as an enclitic following a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun which is its object.
4. habērent: the subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect statement.
5. fōrmā maximā: translate *of extraordinary beauty*; an ablative of description.

6. *ut . . . manēret*: that he remain with them; object of *persuādēre*.
 7. *cum . . . esse*: when he said that he would not do this; the verb *negō* is translated regularly, say . . . not, with the negative idea transferred to the clause which is dependent on *negō*.
 8. *solvisse*: *nāvem* is the object understood; an indirect statement. Hercules returned to Greece after the expedition had sailed away without him.

123.

COMPREHENSION

1. What adventure did the Argonauts have at Mysia? 2. Who was lost here? How?

124.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Decline: *diēs*; *magna rēs* (474). 2. Point out a reflexive pronoun of the third person (486). 3. Give the Latin for: he saw himself, they had this with them, she persuades herself. 4. Conjugate in the subjunctive, active and passive, perfect and past perfect (492): *expectō*, *videō*, *tollō*, *dēficiō*, *sentiō*. 5. Give the synopsis of *sum* in the subjunctive, third person, singular number. 6. Identify as to mood, voice, tense, person, and number: *habērent*, *vīdissent*, *fuissem*, *expectātus sit*, *quaerit*, *viderint*, *sēnsī essent*, *faciam*, *fuērītis*.

B. 1. Point out in the story: an example of the *dative with special verbs* (517); a *substantive volitive clause* (589).

Respondē Latīnē: 1. *Sēnsēruntne quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautis cum Nymphis mānsisset?* 2. *Quālis puer erat Hylās?* 3. *Quid Nymphae Hylac persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut faceret?*

Scribē Latīnē: 1. Since supplies were lacking, they weighed anchor on the following day. 2. They persuaded their comrades to seek the boy with them. 3. For a long time the sailors sought Hylas in vain.

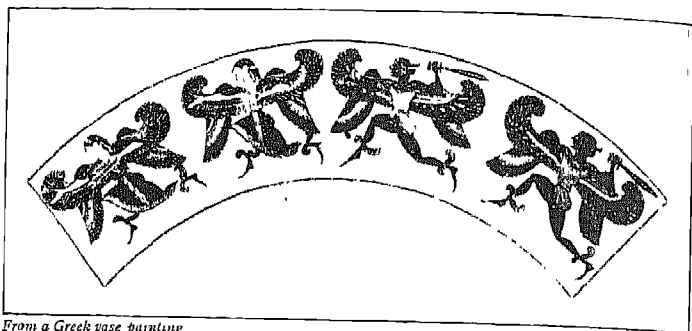
125.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *ancora*, *dēficiō*, *diū*, *frūstrā*, *nauta*, *negō*, *postridiē*, *quaerō*, *satis*, *tollō*.

Word Study. Define the following words derived from *quaerō*, showing that each contains the idea of *seeking*: *acquire*, *acquisition*, *exquisite*, *inquest*, *inquisitive*, *prerequisite*, *quest*, *requisition*.

Define *sēcēdō*, *redeō*, and *prōgredior*, showing the force of the prefix in each.



From a Greek vase painting

THE HARPIES

XXI

OPUSCULUM VICESIMUM PRIMUM

These through the hall unheard-of shrieking sent,
And rushed at Phineus, just as to his mouth
He raised the golden cup to quench his drouth,
And scattered the red wine, and buffeted
The wretched king.

126.

PHINEUS SAVED FROM THE HARPIES

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et, postquam ad oppidum Salmydēssum nāvem appulērunt, in terram ēgressi sunt. Ibi cum ab incolīs quaesissent quis rēgnum eius regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs facti sunt ¹ Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dirō quōdam suppliciō affici, quod olim sē crudēlissimum in filiōs suōs prae buisset.² Cuius supplicī hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Iove mōnstra quaedam speciē horribilī, quae capita virginum, corpora avium habēbant. Hae avēs, quae Harpūiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam molestiam asserēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat,³ veniēbant et cibum statim auferēbant.

Rēs igitur male sē habēbat ⁴ cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt. Phīneus autem, simul atque audivit eōs in suōs finis

ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvisus est. Sciēbat enim quantam opiniōnem virtūtis⁵ Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quā sibi¹⁵ auxilium ferrent.⁶ Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit, quī Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiā vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in periculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsīt sē magna praemia datūrum esse, si illi remedium repperissent.⁷

Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt et, ubi hōra vēnit,²⁰ cum rēge accubuērunt; at, simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpŷiae domum intrāvērunt et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae primum gladiis avēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse,⁸ Zētēs et Calais, quī ālis erant instrūctī, in āera sē sublevāvērunt ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod⁹ cum sēn-²⁵ sissent Harpŷiae, reī novitāte perterritae, statim aufūgērunt, neque postea umquam rediērunt.

127.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *certiorēs factī sunt*: translate *they were informed*. This idiom is used to introduce an indirect statement, *Phīneum . . . esse*.

2. *sē . . . praebuisset*: translate *had acted cruelly toward his sons*. What is the literal translation?

3. *accubuerat*: Roman men reclined on couches at their meals. This custom is here ascribed to Phīneus.

4. *Rēs . . . habēbat*: translate *The situation was desperate*.

5. *opiniōnem virtūtis*: translate *reputation for bravery*.

6. *nec . . . ferrent*: *and he did not doubt that they would bring aid to him (591)*.

7. *sī . . . repperissent*: *if they should find a remedy*. This past perfect tense represents a future perfect indicative of the direct statement (623, a, Note).

8. *nihil prōdesse*: translate *was of no advantage*.

9. *Quod*: translate *this*; a connecting relative referring to the thought of the preceding sentence.

128.

COMPREHENSION

1. What three things did the Argonauts learn from the inhabitants?
2. By whom, for what, and how was Phīneus punished?
3. How did the Argonauts finally frighten the Harpies away?

129.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Subjunctive in subordinate clause of indirect discourse (623). *Præbuisset*, l. 7: the verb in a subordinate clause that is part of an indirect statement is in the subjunctive. Although in the subjunctive, it should be translated as if it were in the indicative, *had acted*. Find another example in the story of this use of the subjunctive. Write two English sentences which, if translated into Latin, will illustrate this use of the subjunctive.

130.

EXERCISE

Ierātio: A. 1. Point out in the story five *infinitives* (492). 2. Form and translate the infinitives of: *dubitō*, *habeō*, *petō*, *reperiō*, *sum*.

B. 1. Point out in the story the *infinitives in indirect statements* (620). On what does each depend? What is the tense of each? 2. Explain what is meant by *sequence of tenses* in indirect discourse (623). 3. Find in the story an *ablative of accompaniment* (541); a *purpose clause* (586). 4. Point out the *reflexive pronouns and adjectives* and explain the use of each.

Respondē Latīnē: 1. *Ā* (from) quibus cognōvērunt hunc, quī esset rēx, caecum esse? 2. Cūr Phineus nūntium ad nāvem mittit? 3. Quanta praemia sē datūrum esse prōmīsīt? 4. Quōcum Argonautae accubuerunt?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. They are informed that nothing has been done. 2. The king discovers that the Argonauts who came there first will give him aid. 3. Phineus with his comrades heard that the Argonauts, who had a great reputation, were coming. 4. The Argonauts bring aid to Phineus in order that the Harpies may not make an attack upon him. 5. The Harpies had wings that they might rise (lift themselves) into the air.

131.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *ac*, *afferō*, *certus*, *dubitō*, *eō* (*adv.*), *impetus*, *nec*, *nihil*, *opiniō*, *primum*, *quantus*, *reperiō*, *simul*, *sublevō*, *umquam*.

Word Study. The suffixes *-iō*, *-siō*, *-tiō* (in English *-tion*), are added to verb roots or stems to form nouns expressing *action* or a *state of*. From what verb in the story and with what suffix is each of the following formed: *affectiō*, *appositiō*, *dēmōnstrātiō*, *missiō*, *petitiō*, *visiō*, and *vocātiō*? What is the English equivalent of each?

OPUSCULUM VICĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

Then with a mighty shout,
 They rose rejoicing, and poured many a cup
 Of red wine to the gods, and hoisting up
 The weather-beaten sail, with mirth and song,
 Having good wind at will, they sped along.

132. THE ARGO PASSES BETWEEN THE CLASHING ROCKS

Hōc factō, Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritās grātiās referret, Iāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vitāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitudīne,¹ quae ā Iove positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenīret.² Hae parvō intervallō³ in mari natābant et, sī quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibili celeritāte concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid faciendum esset,⁴ Iāsōn, sublātis ancoris, nāvem solvit et, lēnī ventō prōvectus, mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit; tum in prōrā stāns,⁵ columbam quam in manū tenēbat ēmisit. Illa¹⁰ rēctā viā⁶ per medium spatium volāvit et, priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis pervāsit, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūsus concurrerent, Argonautae, bene intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt et nāvem¹⁵ incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, deīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō periculō ēreptī erant; bene enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēliciter ēvēnisse.

133.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. ingentī magnitudīne: *of great size*; an ablative of description.

2. eō . . . pervenīret: *with this purpose, that no one might come to Colchis*; Colchida is the accusative case.

3. *parvō intervallō*: translate *with a narrow space between them*.
4. *faciendum esset*: *must be done*. What form of the verb is this? (501)
5. *stāns*: *standing*; present participle of *stō*. Why is it in the nominative case?
6. *rectā viā*: translate *in a straight line*.

134.

COMPREHENSION

1. How did Phineus show gratitude for his deliverance?
2. By what plan did the Argonauts escape from danger?

135.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Subjunctive of anticipation (599, 601). In English, the verb in a clause introduced by *until (till)* or *before* is usually in the indicative mood: *he waits until Caesar passes along*. It is rarely found in the subjunctive: *There will I stand till Caesar pass along*.*

In Latin, if *dum*, *until*, *antequam*, *before*, or *priusquam*, *before*, introduces a clause that states a fact, its verb is in the indicative mood. On the other hand, the verb is in the subjunctive mood if it expresses an action as expected or anticipated.

The verb in the dependent clause in the sentence, *dum conveniunt, morātur*, *he waits while they are assembling*, states a fact and is in the indicative. The verb in the dependent clause in the sentence, *dum convenirent, morātus est*, *he waited until they could assemble*, expresses an action as *looked forward to* or *anticipated* and is in the subjunctive. This use is called the *subjunctive of anticipation*.

Translate the following sentences and explain the use of the verb in the dependent clause of each: *priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, pervāsīt*, l. 11; *antequam rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt*; *dum dīcis, tempus fugit*; *exspectō dum dīcās*.

136.

EXERCISE

- Iterātiō*: A. 1. Point out in the story five *adjectives of the third declension* (476). 2. Decline: *nāvis incolumis, ventus lēnis, omnis spēs*. 3. Give the

* From Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*.

synopsis of *possum* (496) in the third person, plural, all tenses, indicative and subjunctive. 4. Give the Latin for: *I can avoid, you could approach, we have been able to stand, you had been able to learn.*

B. 1. Point out in the story four examples of the *ablative absolute* (545); translate each in two ways. 2. Find one *complementary infinitive* (614). 3. Explain the case of: *celeritate*, l. 6; *salutis*, l. 14; *rēmis*, l. 15; *deīs*, l. 16.

Respondē Latinē: 1. Quae erant Symplēgadēs? 2. Quōmodo Iāsōn Symplēgadēs vitāre potuit? 3. Columbā ēmissā, quid Argonautae facere poterant?

Scribe Latinē: 1. The Argonauts approached two huge rocks standing in the middle (of the) sea. 2. Before the rocks could come together, the Argonauts by the help of the gods passed through unharmed. 3. Since the danger has been avoided (the danger having been avoided), they will give deserved thanks to the gods. 4. Since hope of safety had been lost, they were not able to avoid the danger.

137.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *appropinquō, cōfligō, grātia, incolumis, intervāllum, lēnis, medius, mereō, priusquam, rēmus, salūs, stō, vitō.*

Word Study. Account for the meaning of *intelligent* derived from *intellegō* (*inter, between + legō gather, select*). *Intervāllum* (*inter + vāllum, a wall*), which originally meant the *space between two walls*, in time came to be a word used in general for space between, *an interval*.

THE CLASHING ROCKS *

High o'er the main two rocks exalt their brow,
The boiling billows thundering roll below;
Through the vast waves the dreadful wonders move,
Hence named Erratic by the gods above.
Scarce the famed Argo passed these raging floods,
The sacred Argo filled with demigods!

HOMER, *Odyssey*, TRANSLATED BY POPE

* Note the illustration on page 59.



From an engraving by René Boyvin

Courtesy of Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

THE ARRIVAL AT COLCHIS

Jason demands the golden fleece from King Aëtes.

XXIII

OPUSCULUM VICESIMUM TERTIUM

Take thou the sack that holds the serpent's teeth
 Our fathers slew upon the sunless heath;
 There sow those evil seeds, and bide thou there
 Till they send forth a strange crop, nothing fair,
 Which garner thou, if thou canst 'scape from death.

138. THE PRICE TO BE PAID FOR THE GOLDEN FLEECE

Brevi intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressi essent, statim ad rēgem Aētem sē contulērunt et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, irā commōtus est et diū negābat sē vellus hominibus trāditūrum esse.¹ Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nō sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, prōmisit sē vellus trāditūrum, sī Iāsōn labōrēs duōs magnae

difficultātis prius perfēcisset; ² et, cum Iāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia ¹⁰ perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Prīmum iungendī erant duo taurī ³ speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, hīs iūctīs, ager quīdam arandus erat et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs audītīs, Iāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī ⁴ intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsionem rei ¹⁵ bene gerendae ⁵ āmitteret, negōtium suscepit.

139.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *negābat . . . esse*: he said he would not give up the fleece to mortals.
2. *sī . . . perfēcisset*: if Jason should first have completed two very difficult labors (623).
3. *iungendī . . . taurī*: two oxen had to be yoked. Find two other examples of the passive periphrastic conjugation.
4. *summī perīculī*: what is the literal translation?
5. *rei . . . gerendae*: of performing the task well.

140.

COMPREHENSION

1. On what condition did the king of Colchis promise to hand over the Golden Fleece? 2. How did Jason treat the king's offer? Why?
3. What were the tasks which he was required to perform?

141.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Genitive and ablative of description (511, 544). The English expression, *man of courage*, translated into Latin is *vir fortis*. But if an adjective modifies the noun in a descriptive phrase, *e.g.*, *of great courage*, the phrase is expressed in Latin either by the genitive or the ablative: *vir magnae virtūtis* or *vir magnā virtūte*. The ablative is used generally to describe a *physical quality*. The genitive often indicates *measure or number*: *mūrus sex pedum*, *a six-foot wall*. Such phrases are often used in the predicate: *opus summae difficultātis erat*, *the work was very difficult*.

Point out in the story an example of the ablative of description and two of the genitive of description. Write an English sentence illustrative of this usage.

142.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Give in Latin the *cardinal numerals* from one to twenty (484). 2. Count in Latin by tens to one hundred. 3. Decline: duo, trēs, milia.

B. 1. Point out in the story: two examples of the *dative of indirect object* (516); three *cum circumstantial clauses* (597).

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Cum Iāsōn in fīnēs Colchōrum vēnisset, ad quem sē contulit? 2. Cui sē vellus aureum trāditūrum esse rēx pollicitus est? 3. Quot labōrēs Iāsōn perficiet?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. The king demands two tasks of the greatest difficulty. 2. When the king had shown him what the opportunity was, Jason yoked the two oxen. 3. What will the dragon's teeth produce? 4. The oxen were of horrible appearance.

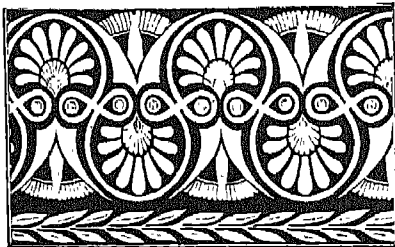
143.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: dēns, difficultās, ēdō, iungō, mūtō, occāsio, ostendō, perficiō, postulō.

Word Study. The suffixes *-bilis* and *-ilis* (in English *-ble* and *-ile*), added to verb stems, form adjectives meaning *able* or *capable of*: *horribilis*, horrible, is so derived from *horreō*, *shudder at*. From words in the story explain the derivation of: *arable*, *audible*, *facile*, *intelligible*, *mutable*, *ostensible*, *susceptible*.

Define the following words derived from *iungō*, showing by your definition that the idea of *joining* appears in each: *adjoin*, *adjunct*, *disjunctive*, *enjoin*, *injunction*, *junction*, *subjunctive*.





From an engraving by René Boyvin

Courtesy of Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

MEDEA AND JASON

Medea gives Jason the magic ointment.

XXIV

OPUSCULUM VICESIMUM QUARTUM

But soon he rose to fit him for the strife
And ere the sun his orb began to lift
O'er the dark hills, with fair Medea's gift
His arms and body he anointed well.

144. THE KING'S DAUGHTER FALLS IN LOVE WITH JASON

At Mēdēa, rēgis filia, Iāsonem amāvit et, ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem agrē ferēbat.¹ Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse cō ipsō cōsiliō, ut Iāson moreretur.² Quae cum ita essent,³ Mēdēa, quae summam scientiam⁴ medicīnae habēbat, hoc cōsiliū iniit. Mediā nocte, insciente patre,⁵ ex urbe ēvāsit et, postquam in montēs finitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum, sūcō expressō, oleum parāvit quod vī suā corpus aleret⁶ nervōsque cōfirmāret. Hōc factō, Iāsonī oleum dedit; praecēpit autem

10 ut eō diē quō istī labōrēs cōficiendī essent⁷ corpus suum et arma māne oblineret.⁸ Iāsōn, etsī paene omnēs magnitūdine et viribus corporis antecēdēbat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs rei militāris cōstīterat⁹), tamen hoc cōsiliū nōn neglegendum esse cēnsēbat.

145.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. rem . . . ferēbat: translate *she was greatly annoyed*.
2. eō . . . morerētur: *with this very plan, that Jason should die*.
3. Quae . . . essent: translate *since these things were so*. What use of the relative pronoun (580, c)?
4. scientiam: Medea's art suggests that of the witches in *Macbeth* IV, 1.
5. Mediā . . . patre: translate *in the middle of the night, without the knowledge of her father*.
6. quod . . . aleret: translate *which with its essence should nourish his body*; a relative clause of purpose.
7. quō . . . essent: *on which these labors were to be performed*.
8. oblineret: subjunctive in a substantive volitive clause depending on *praecepit*, a verb of commanding.
9. cōstīterat: translate *had been spent*.

146.

COMPREHENSION

1. For what purpose does Medea think that the king has imposed the labors on Jason? 2. How does she help Jason? Why?

147.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Ablative of specification (551). Iāsōn omnēs magnitūdine et viribus antecēdēbat, *Jason surpassed all in size and strength*. The ablatives *magnitūdine* and *viribus* tell *in what respect* Jason surpassed all others.

Translate literally: *par numerō; linguā differunt; rēx nōmine; maiōrēs nātū*.

The ablative of specification answers the question *in what respect*.

148.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Point out in the story the *relative pronouns* (489). 2. Give the Latin for: *to whom, by whom, of whom, whose*. 3. Give the synopsis of

ferō (497) in the indicative active, all tenses, second person, singular.
 4. Identify as to voice, tense, and mood: *fertis, ferēbam, tulit, feram, lātus sim, ferāmur, tulerit, lātī essēmus, tulerat, lātus erō*.

B. 1. On what verb in the story does each of the following verbs depend: *morerētur, essent, aleret, cōfirmāret, oblineret*? Explain the tense of each by telling why it is primary or secondary (577-8). 2. Point out the antecedent of each relative pronoun in the story and show how the relative agrees with it (560).

Respondē Latinē: 1. *Quis erat Mēdēa?* 2. *Quid Mēdēa mediā nocte fēcit?* 3. *Cui Mēdēa oleum ferēbat?*

Scrībe Latinē: 1. Medea was angry (bore it ill) because her father had proposed this work. 2. The king's daughter surpassed almost all in strength. 3. Medea, who loved Jason, advised him to do this. 4. Since these things (*quae*) were so, Jason formed this plan.

149.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *aegrē, antecēdō, cēseō, cōsistō, paene, praecipō, prōpōnō*.

Word Study. What is the literal meaning of *antecedent*? Of *penult*?

From what verb stem and with what suffix is *initium* formed? Give and define five nouns that are formed with this suffix.

MEDEA

The enchantress Medea and her love for Jason has always been a favorite theme in literature, art, and music. Euripides made her the heroine of his famous tragedy *MEDEA*, a rôle which has been played by great actresses. Many operas are based on the story of Medea's love and hate. Scenes from her life are portrayed in ancient vase paintings and in frescoes on the walls of Pompeii and Herculaneum.

MEDEA'S LETTER TO JASON

Ovid, a Roman poet of the first century, in his book on Heroines writes an imaginary letter from Medea to Jason, in which she says: "Then I saw you, then I began to know you. That was the beginning of my downfall. I saw you and I was lost. You were handsome, and the fates were dragging me on to my doom. Your eyes had taken away my power to see. Traitor, you saw it — for can any one hide love?"

OPUSCULUM VICĒSIMUM QUĪNTUM

Then he saw the mounds
 Bursten asunder, and the muttered sounds
 Changed into loud strange shouts and warlike clang,
 As with the freed feet at last the earth-born sprang
 On to the tumbling earth, and the sunlight
 Shone on bright arms, clean, ready for the fight.

150.

THE HARVEST OF THE DRAGON'S TEETH

Ubi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum dīxerat, Iāsōn, ortā lūce,¹ cum sociīs ad locum cōstitutum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit in quō taurī inclūsī erant; tum, portīs apertīs, taurōs in lūcem trāxit et summā cum difficultāte siugum imposuit. At Aeētēs cum vidēret taurōs nihil ² contrā Iāsonem valēre,² magnopere mīrātus est; nesciēbat enim filiam suam auxilium eī dedisse.

Tum Iāsōn, omnibus aspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantā diligentīā ūsus est ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus
 10 cōnfēcērit.³ Hōc factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit; quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā cum diligentīā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut, in eō locō ubi sparsī essent,⁴ virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur.

15 Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcērat; imperāverat enim eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gignerentur ⁵ sōlus interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Iāsōn, lassitūdine exanimātus, quiētī sē trādīdit, dum virī istī gignerentur. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum
 20 tamen, ē somnō subitō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum erat cognōvit; nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī mag-

nitūdine corporis, gladiīs galeisque armātī, mīrum in modum⁶ ē terrā oriēbantur.

Hōc cognitō, Iāsōn cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn omittendum esse putābat; saxum igitur ingēns, ita enim prae-²⁵ cēperat Mēdēa, in mediōs virōs⁷ coniēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrerunt et, cum quisque sibi id saxum habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictīs gladiīs, inter sē pugnāre coepērunt et, cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī vulneribus cōfectī ā Iāsone nūllō negōtiō⁸ interfectī³⁰ sunt.

151.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *ortā lūce*: translate *at daybreak*. What is the literal translation?
2. *nihil, valēre*: translate *had no strength*.
3. *cōnfēcerit*: for the tense see 578, a.
4. *sparsī essent*: the subjunctive by attraction, dependent on *gignerentur* (610).
5. *quī . . . gignerentur*: *who should spring up from the teeth*.
6. *mīrum in modum*: *in a marvelous manner*.
7. *in mediōs virōs*: translate *in the midst of the men*.
8. *nūllō negōtiō*: translate *with no difficulty*.

152.

COMPREHENSION

1. What happened when the dragon's teeth were planted? 2. What additional task did the king impose on Jason? 3. How did Jason accomplish this task?

153.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Give the synopsis of 50 (500), third person, plural, indicative and subjunctive. 2. Identify as to tense and mood: *ibam, ierim, eat, ibitis, istī, ierāmus, ierit, irēmus*. 3. Decline the indefinite pronoun and adjective *quisque* (491).

B. 1. Point out in the story: one example of the *ablative of cause* (540); two *clauses of result* (587). 2. Explain the use of each of the subjunctives: *vidēret*, l. 5; *gignerentur*, l. 16; *interficeret*, l. 17; *dedisset*, l. 24; *vellet*, l. 27; *occīsī essent*, l. 29.

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Quantā diligentia Iāsōn ūsus est? 2. Quā rē Iāsōn exanimātus est? 3. Dum virī istī orīrentur, quid fēcīt Iāsōn? 4. Cūr magna contrōversia orta est?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. When the yoke was put on (abl. abs.), Jason opens the gate and drags the oxen into the field. 2. Each one used such great diligence that nothing availed against him. 3. Toward evening the king ordered each one to approach. 4. Because of a quarrel he had not yet finished before noon the work begun at daybreak.

154.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: adeō (verb), aspiciō, contrā, contrōversia, exanimō, impōnō, iugum, merīdiēs, nōndum, orior, quiēs, quisque, saxum, trahō, valeō, vesper.

Word Study. To what word in the story is each of the following related: *confection, impostor, magnitude, tractor*? Define and give the formation of the Latin word to which each is related.

Define on the basis of Latin derivation: *sparse, retaliate*.

THE MEDEA OF EURIPIDES

Jason's appreciation of Medea's advice and help, through which he was enabled to perform superhuman tasks and thereby save his life, is portrayed by the Greek poet Euripides in his tragedy *Medea*:

"Since you exaggerate so proudly your services, I deem that to Venus alone of gods or men is due the safety of my voyage.

"Since you did aid me, it was kindly done. Yet by saving me you received more than you gave, as I shall prove: first, you live in Grecian lands instead of on barbarian shores. You have learned the meaning of justice and to live by law and not by the dictates of brute force, and all the Greeks recognize your wisdom, and you have gained fame; but had you still dwelt in that distant land, no tongue would have named you."

OPUSCULUM VĪCĒSIMUM SEXTUM

All seemed asleep, but now Medea went
With beating heart to work out her intent.

155. MEDEA PREPARES TO FLEE WITH JASON

Rēx Acētēs, ubi Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum¹ cōnfēcisse cognōvit, irā graviter commōtus est; id enim per dolum factum esse intellegēbat, nec dubitābat quā Mēdēa ei auxilium tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore² periculō, sī in rēgiā maneret, fugā salutem petere cōstituit. Omnibus rēbus igitur ad fugam parātis, mediā nocte, insciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsīt, et quam celerrimē³ ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcīt, et multīs cum lacrimīs cum obsecrāvit nē in tantō discrimine mulierem dēsereret quae ei tantum prōfuisset.⁴ 10 Ille, memoriā tenēns sē per eius auxilium ē magnō periculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit et, postquam causam veniendī audivit, hortātus est nē patris iram timēret. Prōmīsīt autem sē quam prīmum eam in nāvī suā āvectūrum.⁵

156. NOTES ON THE STORY

1. prōpositum: *which had been set (for him)*. The participle is often best translated by a clause.

2. fore: *would be*; fore is often used for futūrum esse, the future infinitive of sum.

3. quam celerrimē: *as quickly as possible*.

4. quae . . . prōfuisset: *who had been of such great assistance to him*.

5. sē . . . āvectūrum (esse): *that he would bear her away in his ship as soon as possible*.

157.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did Medea flee from her father's kingdom? 2. What did Jason promise her? Why?

158.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Substantive clauses with words of doubting (591). *Nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa eī auxilium tulisset*, l. 3, and *he did not doubt that Medea had brought aid to him (Jason)*. *Nōn dubium est quīn illa patrem timeat*, *there is no doubt that she fears her father*. These sentences illustrate the use of *quīn* and the subjunctive in substantive clauses that follow negative expressions of *doubting* or *ignorance*.

159.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Give and translate the *participles* (492, 495) of: *dubitō*, *maneō*, *subducō*, *audiō*, *sum*. 2. Complete: *rēx irā* (*moved*), *mulier periculum* (*fearing*), *pater* (*about to come*).

B. 1. Point out the participles in the story and give the form and use of each.

Respondē Latīnē: 1. *Cūr rēx irā commōtus est?* 2. *Quōcum Mēdēa, fugā salūtem petītūra, ēvāsīt?* 3. *Quem ad locum Mēdēa auxilium obsecrāns sē contulīt?*

Scrībe Latīnē: 1. When the task was finished (*abl. abs.*), the woman goes (*betakes herself*) to the ship which has been beached. 2. She was about to throw herself at Jason's feet. 3. *Acētes* did not doubt that Medea had encouraged Jason. 4. Jason brings aid to Medea escaping from her father.

160.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *hortor*, *mulier*, *prōiciō*, *quīn*, *subducō*.

Word Study. To what word in the story is each of these related by derivation: *celerity*, *dole*, *evasive*, *exhortation*, *fratricide*, *fugue*, *pare*, *projectile*, *timidity*, *salutary*? Define each.

Define the following words derived from *petō*, showing by your definition that the idea of *seeking* appears in each: *appetite*, *competitive*, *impetus*, *repeat*.



From an engraving by Goussier

Courtesy of Indiana University Library

JASON PUTS THE DRAGON TO SLEEP

This illustration is from the story of Medea and Jason in a 1732 edition of Ovid's poems.

XXVII

OPUSCULUM VICESIMUM SEPTIMUM

Nor longer now the heroes silence kept
 So joyously their hearts within them leapt,
 But loud they shouted, seeing the gold fell
 Laid heaped before them, and longed sore to tell
 Their fair adventure to the maids of Greece.

161.

THE GOLDEN FLEECE AT LAST

Postrīdiē eius diēi Iāsōn cum sociis suis, ortā lūce, nāvem dēdūxit, et, tempestātem idōneam nactī, ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt quō in locō ¹ Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrābat. Eō cum vēnissent, Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et, sociis ad mare relictis quī praesidiō ² nāvī essent, ipse cum Mēdēa in silvās sē₅ contulit. Pauca milia passuum per silvam prōgressus, vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēsum vidit. Id tamen auferre

erat summae difficultatis,³ nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et
nātūrā et arte mūnitus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam specie
10 terribilī arborem custodiēbat.

Tum Mēdēa, quae, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, medicinae
summam scientiam habuit, rārum quem dē arbore proximā
dēripuerat venēnō infēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum appropinquāvit,
et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertīs eius adventum exspectābat,
15 venēnō sparsit; deinde dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit,
Iāson vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Mēdēā quam
celerrimē pedem rettulit.

Dum⁴ autem ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī
erant, animō ānxiō reditum Iāsonis exspectābant; id enim
20 negōtium summī esse periculī intellegēbant. Postquam igitur
ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā exspectāverunt, dē eius salūte dēspē-
rāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quā aliquī⁵ cāsus accidisset.⁶
Quae cum ita essent,⁷ mātūrandum sibi⁸ cēnsuerunt ut auxiliū
ducī ferrent; sed, dum proficiscī parant, lūmen quoddam subitō
25 cōspiciunt, mirum in modum intrā silvās refulgēns, et, magno-
pere mirātī quae causa esset eius rei, ad locum concurrunt.
Quō cum vēnissent, Iāsoni⁹ et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrē-
runt, et vellus aureum lūminis eius causam esse cognōverunt.
Omni timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpē-
30 runt et deīs grātiās ēgērunt, quod vellere potitī essent et rēs
tam feliciter ēvēnisset.¹⁰

162.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. quō in locō: *in which*; the antecedent is here repeated in the relative clause (560, a).

2. praesidiō: *for a protection*.

3. Id . . . difficultatis: translate *however, to carry it away was very difficult*. The infinitive is here used as the subject of the verb, as in English: *to err is human* (613).

4. Dum: what is the meaning of this word as used in two other clauses in the story? What is the mood of the verb in these clauses? Why?

5. aliquī: adjective form of the indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (491).

6. accidisset: account for the mood.



From a painting by Herman Lubin,
Roberts

Copyright 1900, by the artist

THE GOLDEN FLEECE

7. Quae . . . essent: translate *and so*. What is it literally?
8. mātūrandum sibi: translate *they must hurry*; sibi is dative of agent used with a verb in the passive periphrastic conjugation.
9. Iāsonī: with the compound occurrerunt.
10. quod . . . ēvénisset: (603, a).

163.

COMPREHENSION

1. Where did Jason find the Golden Fleece? 2. How was it guarded?
3. How did Medea help Jason to obtain it? 4. What was the attitude of his companions?

164.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Dative of reference (519). Socii praesidiō nāvī sunt, *the comrades are a protection to (for) the ship*. The dative of purpose, praesidiō, is used with the dative, nāvī, which names the thing to which the companions are (for) a protection. This dative, which indicates the *person or thing concerned* or *to whom* or *to which* a statement refers, is called the *dative of reference*. It is used commonly with the dative of purpose, especially with auxiliō, cūrae, impedimentō, praesidiō, and subsidiō: cūrae mihi est, *it is (for) a care to me*; Mēdēa Iāsonī auxiliō vēnit, *Medea came (for) as an aid to Jason*.

These two datives, when used together, are sometimes called the "double dative."

165.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Give the synopsis of the following *deponent verbs* in the indicative and subjunctive, third person singular (493): mīror, nanciscor, ēgredior, orior. 2. Translate: mīrāti eritis, nactus sum, ēgrederis, nanciscar, oriēbātur, mīrāmini, prōgrediēns, ēgressurus. 3. Point out five deponent verbs in the story. 4. Give the Latin for: *suitable weather arising, his companions having proceeded, Medea having obtained the poison, Jason having disembarked*.

B. 1. Point out an example of the *ablative with special deponents* (547). 2. Explain the case of: lūce, l. 1; rēmīs, l. 2; locō, l. 3; sociis, l. 4; arbore, l. 7; arte, l. 9; factō, l. 13; faucibus, l. 14; venēnō, l. 15; somnō, l. 15; animō, l. 19; salūte, l. 21; timōre, l. 29; gaudiō, l. 29.

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Cui praesidiō socii Iāsonis relictī sunt? 2. Cūr vellus auferre erat summae difficultātis? 3. Quid Argonautae cōspexērunt?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. To see the fleece is (a matter) of very great difficulty. 2. This was (for) a protection to the tree. 3. Having obtained the fleece, he then met his comrades. 4. Jason's comrades, overcome by the fear of some accident, despaired of his safety.

166.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: cōspiciō, deinde, dēspērō, intrā, occurrō, opprimō, praesidium.

Word Study. The endings of present participles of Latin verbs appear also in English derivatives as the suffixes *-ant*, *-ent*, and *-ient*. To what word in the story is each of the following related: *accident*, *cognizant*, *concurrent*, *expectant*, *refulgent*?



From the Turin
Manuscript

From the British
Museum

JASON AND THE DRAGON

This sixteenth century illustration of Jason putting to sleep the dragon that guarded the Golden Fleece is from an illustrated manuscript of an old French poem "The Romance of the Rose." This manuscript is a very splendid one, written on vellum and illustrated by woodcuts so overlaid with gold and colors that they really are miniature paintings.

OPUSCULUM DUODĒTRICĒSIMUM

A little more, a little more,
 O carriers of the Golden Fleece !
 A little labor with the oar,
 Before we reach the land of Grece.

167.

FLIGHT AND PURSUIT

His rēbus gestis, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscondērunt et, sublātis ancoris, primā vigiliā¹ solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī iam ante inimicō in eōs fuerat animō,² ubi cognōvit
 5 filiam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam³ quam celerrimē dēdūcī iussit⁴ et, militibus impositis, fugientēs⁵ insecūtus est.

Argonautae, quī bene sciēbant rem in discrimine esse,⁶ sum-
 10 mīs vīribus rēmīs contendēbant; cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingentī esset magnitudīne, nōn eādē celcritate quā Colchī⁷ prōgredi poterant; neque longius intererat quam quō tēlum adicī posset.⁸ At Mēdēa, cum vīdisset quō in locō rēs essent, paene omnī spē dēpositā, infandum hoc cōsiliū cēpit.
 15 Erat in nāvi Argonautārum filius quīdam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, Mēdēa ex urbe fugiēns sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa interficere cōstituit eō cōsiliō, ut, membrīs eius in mare coniectis, cursum Colchōrum impediret; certō enim sciēbat Aeētem, cum membra
 20 fili vīdisset, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse. Neque opīniō Mēdēam fefellit,⁹ omnia enim ita ēvēnērunt ut spērāverat. Aeētēs, ubi prīmum membra vidit, ad ea colligenda nāvem tenērī iussit.

Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmi-
gandī labōre, mox ē cōspectū hostium auferēbantur; neque ²⁵
prius¹⁰ fugere dēstitērunt quam¹⁰ ad flūmen Ēridanum per-
vērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus¹¹ sī
longius prōgressus esset, domum revertit ut fili corpus ad sepul-
tūram daret.

168.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. *primā vigiliā*: ablative of time when; the first watch was early in the evening, just after sunset.
2. *inimicō . . . animō*: translate *had been unfriendly toward them*. What kind of ablative is *animō*?
3. *Nāvem longam*: *warship*.
4. *iussit*: an infinitive with subject accusative is always used as the object of *iubeō* instead of a substantive volitive clause (589, Note).
5. *fugientēs*: *the fugitives*; a participle used as a substantive.
6. *rem . . . esse*: translate *that the situation was critical*.
7. *eādem . . . Colchī*: *with the same swiftness as (with which) the Colchians*.
8. *neque . . . posset*: translate *and the distance between them was no more than a javelin's throw*.
9. *Neque . . . fefellit*: translate *nor was Medea deceived in her expectation*; *fefellit* is from *fallō*.
10. *prius, quam*: *before*. *Prius* is often separated from *quam* by one or more words. It introduces a verb in what mood here? Why?
11. *nihil . . . arbitrātus*: translate *thinking it would do him no good*.

169.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why were the Argonauts at a disadvantage in their flight from the king? 2. What was Medea's plan for delaying her father? 3. How did it succeed?

170.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Give in Latin: the *ordinal numerals* from one to ten (484); the even ordinal numerals from ten to twenty. 2. Give the *gerunds* and *gerundives* of (492): *spērō*, *teneō*, *trahō*, *aperiō*, *orior*.

B. 1. Point out in the story: two gerundives and give the case and use of each (630); one gerund, and its case and use (629).

175.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Give the synopsis, indicative and subjunctive of: *fiō*, third person singular (498); *volō*, second person plural (499).

B. 1. Point out: two examples of the *ablative of place from which* (536); one example of an *independent volitive subjunctive* (580). 2. Explain the mood and tense of the following: *trāderētur*, l. 4; *rettulisset*, l. 5; *vellet*, l. 6; *appropinquet*, l. 10; *rogāvisset*, l. 13.

Respondē Latinē: 1. Quem in locum tandem pervēnit Iāsōn? 2. Quid Iāsōn voluit? 3. Quid Pelīās pollicitus erat? 4. Quandō Iāsōn rēx fiet?

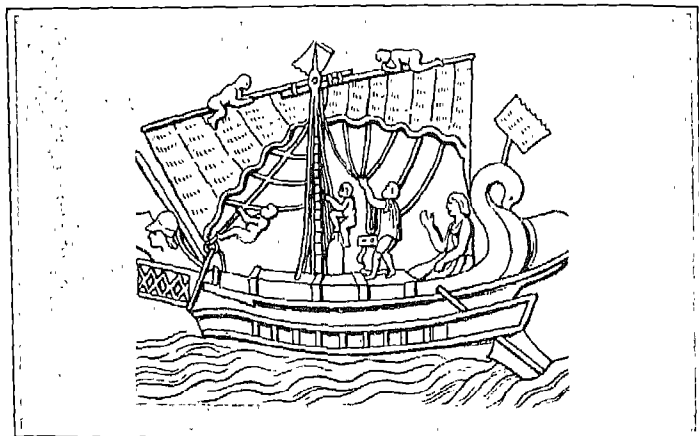
Scribe Latinē: 1. They set out from the same place. 2. Let Jason become king. 3. Let his kingdom continue for a long time. 4. The king wished to depart from this life. 5. At first Jason asks that he succeed the king.

176.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *permanēō*, *rogō*, *succēdō*.

Word Study. Give five English derivatives of *loquor*. Define these derivatives of *rogō*: *abrogate*, *arrogance*, *interrogation*, *prerogative*, *surrogate*.

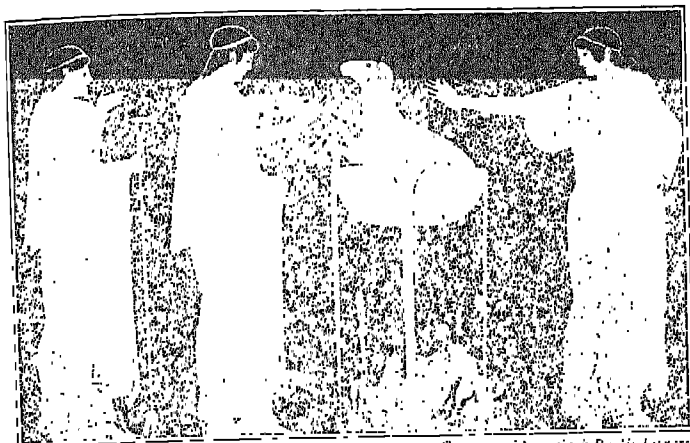


Pompeii, Italy

Courtesy of Philadelphia Commercial Museum

THE END OF THE VOYAGE

This relief on a tomb shows a ship in still water. It symbolizes the end of the voyage of life. The sailors furl the sails, and the helmsman sits idly at the stern.



From a Greek vase painting

Courtesy of New York Public Library

THE MAGIC BREW

Medea demonstrates to the daughters of Pelias the efficacy of her magic brew in restoring the strength and youth of the aged ram.

XXX

OPUSCULUM TRICĒSIMUM

And let king Pelias rise if now he can,
And stop the coming of the half-shod man.

177. MEDEA'S MAGIC FAILS TO RESTORE PELIAS

Hīs rēbus cognitis, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit et, rēgnī cupiditāte adducta, mortem rēgī per dolum inferre cōstituit. Hōc cōstitūtō, ad filiās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est:

"Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte iam esse cōfectum, neque ad labōrem rēgnandi perferendum¹ satis valēre. Vultisne eum; rūsus iuvenem fieri?"

Tum filiae rēgis, hīs audītis, ita respondērunt, "Num² hoc fieri potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene iuvenis³ factus est?"

At Mēdēa respondit, "Nōnne scītis mē medicīnae summam¹⁰

habere scientiam? Nunc igitur vobis demonstrabo quomodo haec res fieri possit."

His dictis, cum arietem aetate iam confectum interfecisset, membra eius in vas aeneum posuit et, igne supposito, in aquam
 15 herbam quendam infudit. Tum, dum aqua effervesceret, carmen magicum cantabat. Post breve tempus aries ē vase exsiluit et, viribus⁴ relictis, per agros currebat. Dum filiae regis hoc miraculum stupentes intuentur, Mēdea ita locuta est:

"Videtisne quantum valeat medicina?⁵ Vos⁶ igitur, si
 20 vultis patrem vestrum in adolescentiam reducere, id quod feci ipsae⁶ facietis. Vos patris membra in vas conicite;⁷ ego herbam magicam praebebo."

Quod ubi auditum est, filiae regis consilium quod dedisset Mēdea sibi non omittendum esse putaverunt. Patrem igitur
 25 Peliam necaverunt et membra eius in vas aeneum coniecerunt; nihil enim dubitabant quin hoc maxime ei profuturum esset.⁸ At res omnino aliter evenit ac⁹ speraverant; Mēdea enim non eadem herbam dedit quibus ipsa usa erat. Itaque, postquam diu frustra expectaverunt, patrem suum re vera mortuum esse
 30 intellexerunt. His rebus gestis, Mēdea se cum coniuge suo regnum accepturam esse sperabat; sed cives cum intellegent quomodo Pelias periisset, tantum scelus aegre tulerunt. Itaque, Iasone et Mēdea ē regno expulsis, Acastum regem creaverunt.

178.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. ad . . . perferendum: *to endure the labor of ruling.*
2. Num: implies that the answer "no" is expected. What does *nōne* imply?
3. iuvenis: predicate nominative.
4. viribus: what is the nominative singular?
5. quantum . . . medicina: *how strong the medicine is.*
6. Vos, ipsae: *you, yourselves.* Vos is used for emphasis and contrast (556).
7. conicite: *place*; an imperative.
8. quin . . . esset: translate *that this would be very beneficial to him.*
9. aliter . . . ac: *otherwise . . . than.*

179.

COMPREHENSION

1. What proposal did Medea make to the king's daughters? 2. What magic feat did she perform? 3. What did Medea hope to gain by the death of the king? 4. How did her plan succeed?

180.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Decline: the *interrogative pronoun quis* (490); the *interrogative adjective quī* (490). 2. Decline the *personal pronouns of the first and second persons* (485). 3. Give the synopsis in the *passive periphrastic conjugation*, third person, singular, neuter, indicative and subjunctive (501) of *dēmōnstrō*.

B. 1. Point out in the story: an *interrogative pronoun*; an *interrogative adjective*. 2. Point out an example of: *dative of agent* (522); *emphatic use of personal pronouns* (485); *possessive adjective* (564); *passive periphrastic conjugation*; *indirect question* (595).

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Scīsne cui Mēdēa mortem inferre velit? 2. Quam scientiam filiābus rēgis dēmōnstrāvit? 3. Num vīs patrem tuum ē sene fieri iuvenem? 4. Quid filiae rēgis sibi nōn omittendum esse putant?

Scribē Latīnē: 1. You (tibi) must make a fire. 2. Medea did not wish him to become young, did she? 3. You ought to hear the plan. 4. They will show us what they wish (to be) done, will they not? 5. Who wishes to do this? 6. We must select a king. 7. I must do this.

181.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: aetās, aliter, currō, ignis, itaque, omnīnō, reficiō.



National Museum, Rome

MEDĒA

A relief on the side of a marble sarcophagus showing Medea, after having given the fatal robe to Creusa, escaping in the chariot drawn by dragons.

XXXI

OPUSCULUM TRICĒSIMUM PRIMUM

And now is all that ancient story told
Of him who won the guarded Fleece of Gold.

182.

THE FATE OF MEDĒA AND JASON

Iāsōn et Mēdēa, ē Thessaliā expulsi, ad urbem Corinthum
vērunt, cuius urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum obtinēbat.
Erat autem Creontī filia ūna, nōmine Glaucē. Quam cum
vidisset, Iāsōn cōstituit Mēdēam uxōrem suam repudiāre, eō
cōsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātirimōnium dūceret.

At Mēdēa, ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, irā graviter
commōta, iūre iūrando cōfirmāvit sē tantam iniūriam ultūram.¹
Hoc igitur cōsiliū cēpit. Vestem parāvit summā arte con-
textam et variis colōribus tinctam; hanc mortiferō quōdam
venēnō infēcit, cuius vīs tālis erat ut, sī quis cam vestem in-
duisset,² corpus eius quasi ignī ūreretur. Hōc factō, vestem ad
Glaucēn mīsīt; illa autem, nihil malī³ suspicāns, dōnum libenter
accēpit et vestem novam, mōre fēminārum, statim induit.

Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia
membra sēnsit, et post paulum, crūdēlī cruciātū affecta, ē vitā
excessit. Hīs rēbus gestis, Mēdēa, furōre atque āmentiā im-
pulsā, filiōs suōs necāvit. Tum magnum sibi⁴ fore⁵ periculum

arbitrāta sī diūtius ibi manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōstituit. Hōc cōstitutō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō periculō auxilium sibi praeberet. Sōl autem, hīs precibus commōtus, currum mīsit, ²⁰ cui dracōnēs, ālīs instrūctī, iūctī erant. Mēdēa, nōn omit-tendam tantam occāsionem arbitrāta, currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit.

Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim, sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum, sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae ²⁵ in litus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. Nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem ubi Iāsōn iacēbat subitō dēlāpsa, virum infēlicem oppressit.

183.

NOTES ON THE STORY

1. ultūram (esse): *world avenge*; from *ulciscor*.
2. sī . . . induisset: *if anyone put on this dress*.
3. malī: *wrong*; genitive of the whole with *nihil*.
4. sibi: *to herself*.
5. fore: = *futūrum esse*; depends on *arbitrāta*.

184.

COMPREHENSION

1. Where did Jason and Medea go? 2. How did Jason wrong Medea?
3. How did Medea avenge the wrong done to her? 4. Do Jason and Medea receive their just deserts in this story?

185.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Ablative of accordance (537). The ablative without a preposition is used to express the idea *in accordance with*: *mōre fēminārum*, *in accordance with the custom of women*, l. 13.

Translate: Iāsōn eō cōnsiliō ēgit; Colchī ea suīs mōribus fēcērunt; suō cōnsiliō Glaucē vestem induit.

186.

EXERCISE

Iterātiō: A. 1. Compare the adjectives: *magnus, brevis, infēlix, superus* (479) (480). 2. From what adjectives in the story are these adverbs formed: *crūdēliter, mīrē, breviter*? 3. Compare: *graviter, libenter* (482).

B. 1. Point out in the story an example of *dative of possession* (521).
 2. Explain the use of *nōmine*, l. 3; *quam*, l. 3; *vidisset*, l. 4; *dūceret*, l. 5; *habēret*, l. 6; *quōdam*, l. 9; *ūrērētur*, l. 11; *arbitrāta*, l. 18; *hōc*, l. 19; *praebēret*, l. 20; *omittendam*, l. 21; *modō*, l. 24.

Respondē Latīnē: 1. Cui erat filia ūna Glaucē? 2. Quārum mōre vestem novam statim Glaucē induit? 3. Cūr Mēdēa in Thessaliā manēre nōluit? 4. Quam ad urbem Mēdēa vecta est?

Scribe Latīnē: 1. Creon had (to Creon was) a kingdom. 2. Jason had scarcely seen the king's daughter when he begged to marry her. 3. Medea, impelled by great anger, with an oath vowed to do this. 4. Jason was expelled in accordance with the customs of the city.

187.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *cruciātus*, *impellō*, *iūs iūrandum*, *mōs*, *ōrō*, *sive*, *suspīcor*, *vestis*, *vix*.

MEDEA'S LETTER TO JASON*

"Why did I take too great a joy in your golden locks, your beauty, and the false charm of your speech?

"There is some pleasure in reproaching an ingrate with favors done. This shall be my pleasure; this the only delight I shall bear from you.

"But for you, I remember, I the queen of Colchis could find time, when you asked that my art should bring you aid. You were the first to speak with faithless lips: 'Fortune has handed over to you the right to decide my safety, and in your hand is life and death.' Thus was I, a mere girl, quickly beguiled by your words.

"I wish that the Symplegades had caught and crushed our lives out together! Yet safe and a victor you return to your city, and the golden fleece is placed before your father's gods.

"I am abandoned, I have lost my throne, my native land, my home, my husband — who for me alone took the place of everything."

OVID

* Continued from page 91.

OPUSCULUM TRICĒSIMUM SECUNDUM

REITERANDUM EST

Repetitiō est māter studiōrum,
Repetition is the mother of learning.

188.

EXERCISE

Give the name of the construction that would be used in translating each of the italicized expressions into Latin: 1. They surpass all others *in strength*. 2. *They fought* long and hard. 3. Aeson knew that Jason would return *if he obtained the fleece*. 4. Medea waited *until the caldron should boil*. 5. To pass the clashing rocks was *very difficult*. 6. A certain king, Pelias *by name*, did not doubt *that Jason would perish*. 7. Medea's love *for Jason* was an aid to him *in accomplishing his task*. 8. Suspecting *no danger* she sings *while she waits*. 9. *In accordance with the advice* of certain of his friends, he selects men *to appoint a day of assembling*. 10. *A little later* he is going to go to his home.

Write the Latin for the italicized words: 1. *Desire of obtaining the kingdom* led Pelias on. 2. *How long did they fight?* 3. To kill the monster of *great size* was a task of *very great danger*. 4. Jason's comrades waited *until he should bring back the fleece*. 5. Pelias sends Jason *to obtain the golden fleece*.

Scribe Latīnē: A. 1. A few days later he decided the time was suitable for changing their course. 2. There was a space of two miles between. 3. That friend of yours has to finish two difficult labors. 4. He says (*negō*) he will not stay with them after his comrades have returned to the ship. 5. Did Jason's ship surpass that of the Colchians? 6. In accordance with their custom they rowed (contended with the oars) with greatest strength.

B. 1. Medea does not doubt that she will bring aid to Jason. 2. He leaves his comrades as a protection to the ships. 3. Worn out with these tortures, she does not doubt that her last day is approaching. 4. She was borne through the air to Athens. 5. When all were looking on, he ordered him to open the gates. 6. The nature of the garment was such that, as soon

as she had put it on, she was overcome with torture. 7. Either by chance or by the will (plan) of the gods, Jason got possession of the fleece. 8. Is there ever any rest for that man who seeks glory?

189.

REVIEW OF REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Each of the words in the following paragraphs is derived from, or related in derivation to, a word in the required vocabularies of *Opuscula XIV-XXXI*. Give the Latin word to which each is related and its meaning. Then define each English word on the basis of its Latin derivation:

Accidental, adorable, affect, afferent, ancestor, anchor, armature, arrogant, aspect, attract, casual, causal, censure, centrifugal, collect, conjugate, conspectus, conspicuously, consultation, consumption, contradict, controversy, convene, cruciate, current, cursory, custom.

Deduction, deficit, depose, desist, desperation, difficulty, editor, egress, equivalent, except, expostulate, extol, extract, glorify, hortatory, igneous, immutable, impede, impel, imposition, impulse, indent, indubitable, inevitable, ingratiate, initiation, interest, intermittent, interval, intramural, invest.

Juncture, juror, littoral, mediator, meridian, meritorious, morale, moratorium, nihilist, nautical, negative, nocturne, obstacle, obtain, occasional, occur, opinion, oppress, oriental, peninsula, perfect, permanent, precept, primer, projector, proposition, prosecutor, quantity.

Reception, regional, repertory, requiem, salubrious, satisfactory, sentence, simultaneous, solution, specious, subsidy, substance, successor, tempestuous, usual, valentine, vehicular, vespers.

190.

REVIEW OF WORD STUDY

Explain the formation of each word in the following paragraph, the meaning of the word from which each is derived, the force of prefix or suffix (637-9), and the meaning of the word as a whole: *inscientia*, *in-* (*not*) + *-sciens* (*sciō, know*) + *-tia* (*condition of*), = *the condition of not knowing, ignorance.*

Aspicō, auferō, comportō, contrōversia, dimitto, eveniō, impediō, incredibilis, magnitūdō, miraculum, nātūra, novitās, occurrō, orātiō, perferō, praedicō, prōpōnō, renūtiō, sacrificium, subeō, trānsportō, tristitia.

PART III

READINGS FROM ROMAN LITERATURE

Teach him on these as stairs to climb
And live on even terms with time. EMERSON
MOTTO OF ART AND ARCHAEOLOGY

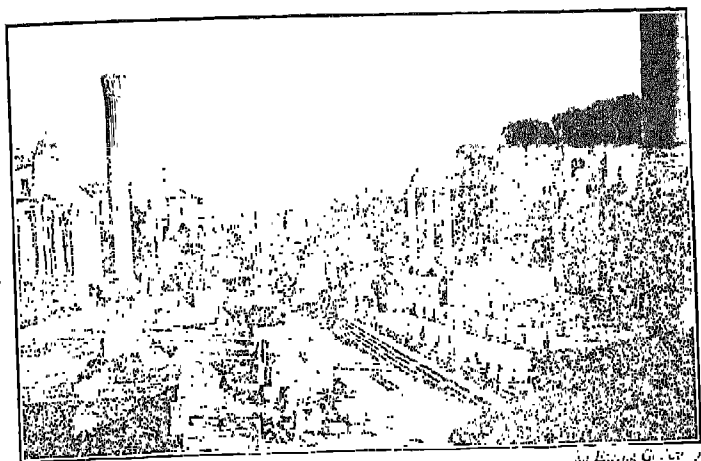


From a painting by Jan Goyen.

A LITERARY READING

A Roman author reads from a roll or book, *volumen*, of his new work to a rapt audience. The rest of the rolls can be seen in their circular case, *capsa*. A Roman book was written on papyrus sheets which were glued together at the sides forming one long strip. This was rolled up when not in use. Since it had to be *unrolled* as it was read, the word for *reading a book* was *avolvō*.

Curriculum of School Latin



THE ROMAN FORUM TODAY

Now thy Forum roars no longer,
fallen every purple Caesar's dome
Tho' thine ocean-roll of rhythm
sound forever of Imperial Rome.

TENNYSON

GLIMPSES OF ROMAN HISTORY

191.

THE KINGS OF ROME

The following selection is taken from a brief history of Rome written by Eutropius in the fourth century A.D.

Rōmānum imperium ā Rōmulō initium habet. Is, decem et octō annōs nātus,¹ urbem exiguam in Palātīnō monte cōstituit. Conditā civitatē, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, multitudinem finitimōrum in civitatem recēpit, centum ex seniōribus lēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectutem. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus nōn habērent, invitāvit ad spectāculum lūdōrum vicinās Rōmāe nātiōnēs atque eārum virginēs rapuit. Annō rēgnī tricēsīmō septimō ad deōs trānsisse crēditus est² et cōsecrātus.

Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī bellum quidem 10

nūllum gessit, sed lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōstituit et Rōmae sacra ac templa cōstituit. Dēcessit³ quadrāgēsīmō et tertio imperī annō.

Huic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella gessit, Albānōs
15 vīcit, urbī Caelium montem⁴ adiēcīt.

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscepit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dimicāvit, Aventīnum montem civitātī adiēcīt et Iāniculum. Vicēsīmō et quārtō annō imperi morbo periit.

20 Deinde rēgnum Priscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic Rōmae Circum⁵ aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmānōs⁶ instituit, mūrōs fēcīt et cloācās,⁷ Capitōlium incohāvit.

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, nātus ex nōbili fēminā, captivā tamen et ancillā. Hic quoque Sabīnōs subēgit;
25 montēs trēs, Quirinālem, Viminālem, Esquilinum, urbī adiūnxit; mūrū⁸ et fossās circum urbem dūxit.

L. Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēx, templum Iovī in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Postea imperium perdidit. Brūtus⁹ populum concitāvit et imperium adēmīt Tarquiniō,¹⁰
30 quī cum uxōre et liberis suis fūgit. Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

Hinc cōsulēs coepērunt, prō ūnō rēge duo, hāc causā creati ut, sī ūnus malus esse voluisset, alter habēns potestātem similem eum coercēret. Et placuit nē imperium longius quam annum habērent.

1. nātus: translate *at the age of*; perfect participle of *nāscor*. 2. ad . . . est: Romulus disappeared during a storm which came up while he was holding a review of the army. The Romans cherished the idea that he had been translated to the gods, but some secretly thought that he had been torn to pieces by the senators. 3. Dēcessit: *died*. 4. Caelium montem: one of the seven hills of Rome; the Janiculum was not included in "the seven hills." 5. Circum: the Circus Maximus, in the valley between the Palatine and Aventine. 6. lūdōs Rōmānōs: yearly games in honor of the gods. They were also called the Lūdi Magni. 7. cloācās: *sewers*; the greatest of these, the Cloāca Maxima, is still to be seen in Rome. 8. mūrū: parts of the Servian wall are still standing. 9. Brūtus: this is the Brutus who feigned stupidity while waiting a chance to free Rome from the tyrant. See 193. 10. Tarquiniō: *from Tarquin*.

192.

THE PROPHECY OF AN IMPERIAL ROME

Titus Livius (Livy, 59 B.C.-17 A.D.), one of the greatest writers of Latin prose, relates the story of this prophecy. He was the author of a history of Rome, containing one hundred and forty-two books, many of which have been lost. In those that remain he has told with eloquence the story of the glory that was Rome's.

Bōs in Sabīnis¹ nāta est mīrandā magnitūdine ac speciē. Haruspīcēs cecinērunt,² "Cuius civitātis eam cīvis Diānae immolāverit,³ ibi imperium erit;" idque⁴ pervēnerat ad sacerdotem templi Diānac. Sabīnus, ut prīma apta diēs sacrificiō vīsa est,⁵ bovem Rōmam āctam⁶ dēdūcit ad templum Diānae et ante āram statuit. Ibi sacerdos Rōmānus, cum eum magnitūdō victimae mōvisset, memor respōnsi, "Quid⁷ tū, hospes, parās," inquit, "impium sacrificium Diānae facere? Quīn⁸ tū vīvō⁹ flūmine lavāris. Īnfimā vally fluit Tiberis." Hospes, quī omnia cuperet rīte facta, dēscendit ad Tiberim. Intereā Rō-¹⁰ mānus immolat Diānae bovem. Id grātum rēgi civitātique fuit.

1. Sabīnis: the Sabines, although defeated in many battles, still hoped to gain supremacy over the Romans. 2. cecinērunt: translate *predicted*; from *canō*. 3. Cuius . . . immolāverit: of whatever state a citizen shall have sacrificed this heifer to Diana. 4. id: the prophecy. 5. ut . . . est: translate as soon as a day seemed suitable for the sacrifice. 6. āctam: driven. 7. Quid: = *cūr*. 8. Quīn: *why not*. 9. vīvō: translate *flowing*.

193.

LŪCIUS IŪNIUS BRŪTUS*

Livy, in one of the many interesting stories found in his history of Rome, relates how Tarquin, the last king of Rome, sent his two sons to Delphi to consult the oracle as to the meaning of a terrifying portent. In sport the sons took along a relative whom they called Brūtus, the *dullard*. Brutus, however, had been feigning stupidity while awaiting an opportunity to save Rome from the tyrant king Tarquin. A little later he was instrumental in driving the Tarquins from Rome and in establishing a republic of which he became one of the first consuls.

Quō¹ postquam ventum est,² perfectis patris mandātis, cupidō incessit animōs iuvenum quaerendi ad quem eōrum rēgnū esset ventūrum. Ex ĩnfimā³ cavernā vōx reddita est,

* For Roman names see JOHNSTON, *Private Life of the Romans*, pp. 35-48.



Courtesy of Prescott W. Townsend

THE TEMPLE OF APOLLO AT DELPHI

On the right are the foundations of the temple; on the left, the ruins of an ancient Greek theater. The road at the foot of the mountain is a modern highway following the route traveled by Brutus and the Tarquins when they came to consult the oracle.

"Imperium summum Rōmae habēbit quī vestrum p̄rimus, Ō siuvenēs, ōsculum māt̄rī tulerit." Uter prior, cum Rōmam redisset, māt̄rī ōsculum daret, sortī⁴ permittunt.

Brūtus aliō ratus spectāre vōcem,⁵ velut sī dēlāpsus cecidisset,⁶ terram ōsculō contigit, quod ea⁷ commūnis māt̄r omniū mortāliū est.

1. Quō: *i.e.* Delphi, a city in Greece famous for its shrine of Apollo to which the young Tarquins went to get the response of the oracle. 2. ventum est: translate *had come*; impersonal use of the verb. 3. inīmā: *the depths of* (567). 4. sortī: *to chance; i.e., they cast lots*. 5. aliō . . . vōcem: *thinking the response pointed to another thing*. 6. velut . . . cecidisset: *translate just as if he had slipped and fallen*. 7. ea: *i.e., the earth*.

194.

THE PEOPLE GAIN THEIR RIGHTS

In his account of the long and bitter struggle between the patricians and plebeians, Livy tells the following story of the effort of the plebeians to secure such rights as marriage with the patricians and a share in the public affairs.

The plebeians, oppressed by debt, were promised relief if they would help to defeat the Volscians (494 B.C.). Although the Volscians were defeated,

the patricians did not keep their promise. The plebeians marched out of Rome to the Sacred Mount, and there they stayed until they were granted officials, *tribūnī plebis*, to guard their rights.

Plēbs in *Sacrum montem* sēcessit trāns Anienem, tria ab urbe milia passuum. Ibi sine ullō duce vāllō fossāque quieti per aliquot diēs, neque lacessitī neque lacessentēs, sēsē tenuerunt. Timor ingēns erat in urbe. Timet relictā ab suis plēbs¹ patrēs; timent patrēs relictam in urbe plēbem.

Sic placuit igitur ad plēbem mitti orātōrem,² faciendum virum et, quod inde³ oriundus erat, plēbi cārum. Agī deinde dē concordia coeptum⁴ concessumque est ut plēbis magistrātūs essent sacrōsāntī,⁵ quibus auxili lātiō adversus cōsulēs esset,⁶ nēve cui patrum eum magistrātum capere liceret.⁷ Ita duo¹⁰ tribūnī plēbis creati sunt.

1. *relictā* . . . *plēbs*: the plebeians left (in the city) by their own people. 2. *orātōrem*: this envoy, Agrippa, told the story of the strike declared against the stomach by other members of the body, and showed them how all parts of the body must do their work for the good of the whole. The plebeians saw the point. 3. *inde*: translate from them. 4. *Agī* . . . *coeptum* (esse): translate then they began to discuss peace. 5. *sacrōsāntī*: the persons of the tribunes of the plebs were inviolate. Their duty was to safeguard the rights of the common people. They could veto any proposal that they felt harmful to the interest of the plebeians. This office gave the common people a powerful weapon. 6. *quibus* . . . *esset*: through whom there might be the right of bringing aid against the consuls. 7. *nēve* . . . *liceret*: translate and that no one of the senators be permitted to hold this office.

195.

HANNIBAL, THE ENEMY OF ROME

The historian, Cornelius Nepos, born about 100 B.C., interested himself chiefly in the manners, characters, and customs of people. He wrote biographies of the men who were exemplars of the virtues of earlier Greece and Rome. *Hannibal, The Enemy of Rome*, and *Hannibal Hides His Money* are both taken from his biography of Hannibal.

Hannibal, who had vowed eternal enmity to Rome, was the greatest Carthaginian leader in the long struggle between Rome and Carthage, 264-241; 218-201; and 149-146 B.C. Hannibal was in command in 218-201.

Hannibal erat Hamilcaris¹ filius Carthāginiēnsis. Hic velut hērēditāte relictum² odium in Rōmānōs cōservāvit. Dē fidē

suā et odiō in Rōmānōs hoc commemorat, "Pater Hamilcar, puerō mē nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, imperātor proficiēscēs
 5 Carthāgine Iovī optimō maximō³ victimās immolāvit. Quae⁴ divīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur,⁵ quaeſivit ā mē vellemne⁶ sēcum in castra proficiēscī. Id cum libenter accēpissēm atque ab eō petere coepissēm nē dubitāret⁷ dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem⁸ quam postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad
 10 āram addūxit, apud quam sacrificium facere instituerat, eamque tenentem⁹ fidem dare iussit numquam mē in amicitīā cum Rōmānīs fore.¹⁰ Id ego iūs iūrandum patrī datum usque ad hanc aetātem cōservāvī."

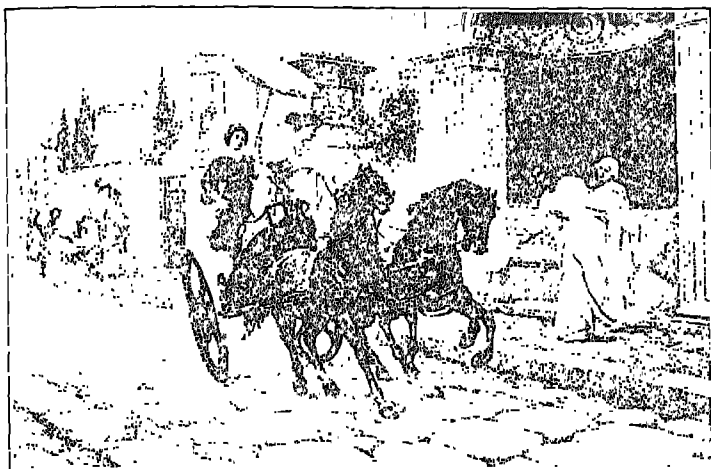
1. *Hamilcaris*: a general in the first Punic War. 2. *velut . . . relictum*: left just as if by an inheritance. 3. *Iovī . . . maximō*: to Jupiter, all good and all powerful. According to the Roman author, a Carthaginian is here sacrificing to a Roman god. 4. *Quae*: modifies *rēs*; translate as if *haec* (560, e). 5. *dum cōficiēbātur*: the use of the imperfect with *dum* is an exception to the rule (600, Note). 6. *vellemne*: whether I wished. 7. *nē dubitāret*: that he should not hesitate. 8. *fidem*: pledge. 9. *eamque tenentem*: translate and laying my hand on the altar; modifies *mē*. 10. *fore*: the other form for *futūrum esse*, future infinitive.

196.

HANNIBAL HIDES HIS MONEY

Hannibal Crētam vēnit. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset,¹ propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; magnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exisse fāmam.² Itaque capit tāle cōsiliū.
 5 Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās³ operit aurō et argentō. Hās, praesentibus principibus, dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His dēceptis, statuās quās sēcum portābat omnī suā pecūniā complet easque in vēstibulō domī abicit.⁴ Crētēnsēs templum magnā
 10 cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēterīs quam ab Hannibale, nē ille, inscientibus eīs,⁵ tolleret sua sēcumque dūceret.

1. *nisi . . . prōvidisset*: if he did not make some provision; the past perfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of the direct discourse (623, a, Note). 2. *exisse fāmam*: a report had gone out. 3. *summās (amphorās)*: the tops of the wine-jars. 4. *abicit*: throws; as if of no value. 5. *inscientibus eīs*: without their knowledge.

*From a painting by E. Forti**Courtesy of Signora Forti*

ROMAN WOMEN HOLD THE REINS

The painter represents these women as riding in a chariot within the city, a privilege which was denied them by the Oppian law. Cato would have called them very bold, for they even do the driving.

197. AN EARLY CHAMPION OF WOMAN'S RIGHTS

After the defeat of the Romans at Cannae in 216 B.C., Rome turned all of her resources toward the defeat of Hannibal. In order to discourage luxurious living, the Oppian Law was passed, which forbade women to wear parti-colored garments, to have more than a half ounce of gold, and to ride in a chariot within or near the city.

In 105 B.C. the war was over, and the women wanted this war-time measure rescinded. They found a champion in Lucius Valerius, a tribune of the plebs. He and a colleague proposed the repeal of the Oppian Law. Its repeal was violently opposed by Cato, who, seeing the women gathering in numbers to urge the restoration of their rights, made a speech in the Senate severely criticizing the bold methods of these "new" women and warning the senators to be on their guard against such feminist movements. Valerius answers Cato's speech and urges that the women, too, be permitted to enjoy the fruits of peace.

Livy in his history quotes the speeches made in the Senate for and against the women, the former of which is given here in a somewhat simplified and abridged form.

L. Valerius prō rogātiōne¹ ita dixit: "Cum² cōsul M. Porcius³ orātiōne longā contrā rogātiōnem nostram dixerit, necesse est paucis verbis respondere. Seditiōnem et sēcessiōnem fēminārum appellāvit, quod mātṛōnae in pūblicō vōs rogāvissent
 5 ut lēgem in sē lātā⁴ per bellum, temporibus dūris, in pāce et flōrentī ac beātā rē pūblicā abrogārētis. Nam quid tandem novī⁵ mātṛōnae fēcērunt? Numquam ante hoc tempus in pūblicō visae sunt? Tuās adversus tē *Originēs* recitābō.⁶

"Accipe quotiēns id fēcērunt et quidem semper bonō pūb-
 10 licō. Cum, Capitoliō ab Sabīnis captō, mediō in forō dimicā-
 rētur, nōne mātṛōnae, inter aciēs duās sē inferentēs,⁷ dimicandī
 finem fēcērunt; cum, Coriolānō⁸ duce, legiōnēs Volscōrum
 castra ad quīntum lapidem⁹ posuissent, nōne id agmen mā-
 trōnae āvertērunt? Iam, urbe captā¹⁰ ā Gallīs, aurum quō
 15 redēpta urbs est nōne mātṛōnae in pūblicum contulērunt?"

"Veniō nunc ad id dē quō agitur.¹¹ Cōsul est indignātus
 eam praecipuē lēgem abrogārī¹² quae lūxuriae fēminārum
 coercendae causā lāta esset. Cūr lēx sit autem lāta, ipsum
 indicābit tempus.¹³ Hannibal in Italiā erat, victor ad Cannās;
 20 ad urbem Rōmā admōtūrus¹⁴ exercitus vidēbātur; nōn
 militēs, nōn sociōs, nōn pecūniā habēbāmus. Tālī tempore
 in lūxuriā et ōrnātū mātṛōnae occupātae erant ut ad ea coer-
 cenda Oppia lēx necesse esset.

"Ad coniugēs tantum¹⁵ nostrās pācis fructus nōn perveniet?
 25 Purpurā¹⁶ virī ūtimur, praetextātī¹⁷ in magistrātibus, in sacer-
 dōtīs; liberī nostrī praetextātis togīs ūtuntur; magistrātibus
 in colōniis togae praetextatae habendae iūs permittimus.
 Fēminis purpurae ūsū interdicēmus?¹⁸

"Dolor et ira est cum sociōrum uxōribus vident ea concessa
 30 ōrnāmenta quae sibi adēpta sunt,¹⁹ cum insignīs²⁰ eas esse
 aurō et purpurā vident, cum illās vehī per urbem, sē²¹ pedibus
 sequī. Virōrum hoc animōs vulnerāre posset; quid mulier-
 culārum²² cēnsētis, quās etiam parva movent? Nōn magistrātūs
 nec sacerdōtia nec triumphī nec insignia²³ nec dōna aut spolia



British Museum, London

DANCING SUFFRAGETTES

These figures are painted on the side of a die made of bone.

bellica eis contingere possunt; ²⁴ ōrnātus et cultus, ²⁵ haec fēmi-
nārum insignia sunt, his gaudent et glōriantur. Iniquis nō-
minibus ūtēbātur modo cōsul ²⁶ sēditionem fēminārum et
sēcessionem appellandō.”

Haec cum prō lēge ²⁷ dicta essent, maior multitudō mulierum
posterō diē sēsē in pūbicum effūdīt, ūnōque agmine omnēs ⁴⁰
Brūtōrum ²⁸ iānuās obsēderunt, nec ante abstiterunt quam ²⁹
abrogāta lēx Oppia ³⁰ est.

1. rogātiōne: *proposal*; i.e., to annul the law. 2. Cum: *since*. 3. M. Porcius: this was Marcus Porcius Cato. 4. lēgem . . . lātā: *a law passed against themselves*. 5. novi: genitive of the whole with quid (510). 6. Tuās . . . recitābō: *translate to answer you I will read your Originēs*; Valerius quotes Cato's own book in which the services of women to the state are enumerated. 7. sē inferentēs: *translate rushing*. 8. Coriolānō: for the story of Veturia and Coriolanus see SHAKESPEARE, *Coriolanus*, Act V, Scenes 3-5. 9. lapidem: for milestones on Roman roads see JOHNSTON, *Private Life of the Romans*, p. 283. 10. urbe captā: in 390 B.C. 11. id . . . agitur: *the point which is being discussed*. 12. indignātus . . . abrogārī: *he is incensed especially that this law is being annulled*. 13. tempus: *translate state of affairs*. 14. admōtūrus: *about to move on*. 15. tantum: *only*. 16. Purpurā: Roman purple was not the purple of today; it was more nearly

scarlet. **17. praetextāti:** *clothed in the toga praetexta*; this had a scarlet border. It was worn by boys, magistrates, and priestly officials. **18. Fēminis . . . interdīcēmus:** *shall we prohibit women only the use of purple?* **19. cum . . . sunt:** *when they see granted to wives of allies those ornaments of which they have been deprived.* Valerius appeals to the pride of the Roman men. They would not want the wives of provincials to be better dressed than their own. **20. insignīs:** *resplendent with;* modifies *eās*, which refers to the wives of the allies of Rome. **21. sē:** the women of Rome; subject of *sequi*. **22. mulierculārū:** *mere women*; modifies *animōs*, *feelings*. **23. insignia:** *decorations*; granted to public officials as badges of their office, or to soldiers for bravery, like the Congressional Medal or Croix de Guerre. **24. eis . . . possunt:** *can be their (the women's) good fortune.* **25. ōrnātus et cultus:** *adornment and dress.* **26. cōsul:** Cato. **27. prō lēge:** *i.e., the new bill restoring rights to the women.* **28. Brūtōrū:** Marcus and Publius Brutus, tribunes of the plebeians, had opposed the repeal of the Oppian Law. **29. ante, quam:** translate as one word, *before*. **30. lēx Oppia:** the bill was passed by a unanimous vote. Dio Cassius, a historian in the second century A.D., in telling this tale says that the women put on some of their ornaments right there in the senate and went out dancing.

198.

AN HONEST GOVERNOR

Gaius Gracchus and his brother, Tiberius, belonged to the famous Semonian family. Their father had held important public offices and their mother, Cornelia, the daughter of Cornelius Scipio, was a woman of great ability. She encouraged her two sons to carry out a program involving the division of the public lands as a means of relieving the poor.

This account of a speech made by Gaius Gracchus, told by Aulus Gellius (125-175 A.D.) in *Noctēs Atticae*, *Attic Nights*, reveals the high integrity for which the Gracchi were famous.

C. Gracchus, cum ex Sardinia Rōmam rediit, ōratiōnem ad populum habuit. Eius verba sunt haec: "Versātus sum,"¹ inquit, "in prōvincia quōmodo ex ūsū vestrō² exīstimābam esse, non quōmodo mihi conducere³ arbitrabar. Nulla apud mē fuit popīna.⁴ Ita versātus sum in prōvincia uti nēmō posset dicere assem⁵ aut eō⁶ plūs in mūneribus mē accēpisse aut meā operā quemquam sūmptum fēcisse.⁷ Biennium fuī in prōvincia; cum Rōmam profectus sum, zōnās,⁸ quās plēnās argentī extulī, eās ex prōvincia inānēs retulī; alīī vinī amphorās, quās plēnās tulērunt, eās argentī plēnās domum reportāvērunt."

1. *Versātus sum*: *lived*. 2. *ex ūsū vestrō*: *to your advantage*. 3. *mihi cōducere*: *was of advantage to me*. 4. *popīna*: *tavern*. The public eating places and inns were little frequented by the better classes. Gracchus means that his house was not a rendezvous for low characters. 5. *assem*: *a penny*. 6. *eō*: an ablative with the comparative *plūs*. 7. *meā . . . fēcisse*: *on my own account had incurred any expense*. 8. *zōnās*: *bells*; often used to carry money. The provinces were regarded by Roman officials as sources of legitimate graft. Verres robbed the Sicilians of their most valued possessions. The poet Catullus complained that he came home from his province with his pocket full of cobwebs. Gellius, discussing in another passage the subject of honesty, quotes Cato the Censor to the effect that thieves who steal private property spend their lives in prison, while public grafters flourish in gold and purple.

199. CICERO WRITES TO A FRIEND ON CAESAR'S STAFF

Marcus Tullius Cicero was born in 106 B.C. Of equestrian rank, a *novus homō*, without famous ancestry, he rose through all the ranks of public office to the highest, that of consul. In his consulship he rendered most patriotic service to his country by crushing Catiline's conspiracy against the state. He was not only Rome's most eloquent orator but also her most gifted writer of Latin prose. Many of his orations are extant, as well as his works on rhetoric, oratory, and philosophy, and many of his letters.

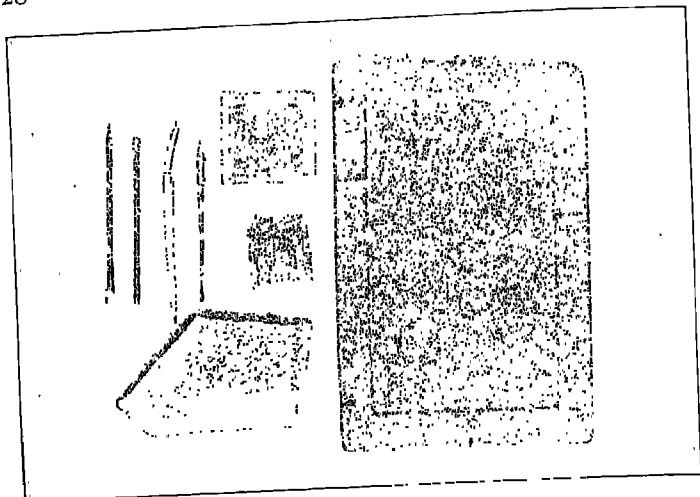
CICERŌ TREBĀTIŌ¹

Ego tē commendāre nōn dēsistō; sed, quid prōficiam,² ex tē scīre cupiō. Spem maximam habeō in Balbō, ad quem dē tē diligentissimū et sapissimē scribō. Illud³ soleō mirārī, nōn mē totiēns⁴ accipere tuās litterās quotiēns⁴ ā Quīntō mihi frātre afferuntur.

In Britannīā nihil esse audiō neque aurī neque argentī. Id sī ita est, essedum aliquod capiās⁵ persuādeō et ad nōs quam prīmum redeās. Perfice⁶ ut sis in familiāribus Caesaris.⁶ Multum tē in cō frāter adiuvābit meus, sed, mihi crēde, tuus pudor et labor plūrimū.⁷ Imperātōrem⁸ liberālissimū, aetātem⁹ ¹⁰ opportunissimā, commendātiōnem¹⁰ certē singulārem habēs, ut¹¹ tibi ūnum timendum sit, nē ipse tibi dēfuisse videāris.¹¹

1. *Trebātiō*: *to Trebatius*. A common form of salutation in Roman letters* was the use of the nominative, giving the name of the writer, followed by the

* For a description of a Roman letter read JOHNSTON, *Private Life of the Romans*, pp. 287-290.



British Museum, London

ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

A writing tablet, which looked like an old-fashioned slate, had a waxed surface on which the letters were traced with a sharp-pointed instrument, stylus.

dative of the person addressed. Trebatius was a young man on Caesar's staff in Gaul. Cicero, who was very fond of him, sought every opportunity to advance him in favor with Caesar. He strongly urged him, however, to do his part. 2. *quid proficiam*: translate *what success I am having*. 3. *illud*: *this*; explained by the words *nōn . . . litterās*. Cicero may suspect Trebatius of neglecting to answer his letters. 4. *totiēns . . . quotiēns*: *so often . . . as*. 5. (*ut*) *capiās*: *to seize*. 6. *Perfice . . . Caesaris*: *bring it about that you are one of Caesar's intimate friends*. 7. *plūrimum* (530, a). 8. *Imperātōrem*: *i.e., Caesar*. 9. *aetātem*: of Trebatius, who was thirty-five. 10. *commendatiōnem*: of Cicero. 11. *ut . . . videāris*: translate *so you have but one thing to fear, that you yourself may seem to be wanting*. In another letter Cicero says that men in Gaul say Trebatius is conceited. Notwithstanding Cicero's advice to Trebatius and his persistence in recommending him to Caesar, Trebatius evidently did not distinguish himself, for his name is nowhere mentioned in Caesar's Gallic War. However, he became a devoted admirer of Caesar and served under him in the Civil War. He was a trained jurist, and Caesar doubtless found his advice valuable in settling administrative problems of the newly conquered country. Horace and Cicero each dedicated a book to him.

200.

CAESAR REWARDS AN EX-SERVICE MAN

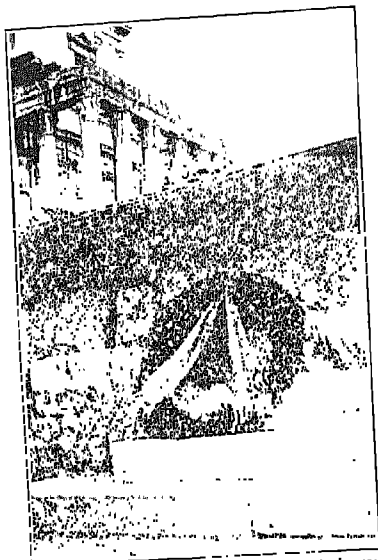
L. Annaeus Seneca, a Spaniard by birth, became one of Emperor Nero's advisers, but finally fell into disfavor and was forced to take his own life.

In *Dē Beneficiis*, the most famous of his moral and philosophical essays, Seneca tells the following story of Caesar's gratitude to one of his veterans for a service which the latter had once rendered to him.

Causam dicēbat ¹ apud Iūlium ex veterānīs quīdam paulō violentior ² adversus vicinōs suōs et causa premēbatur.³ "Meministi," inquit, "imperātor, tē in Hispāniā vulnerātum esse?" Cum Caesar sē meminisse dixisset, "Meministi quidem,"⁴ inquit, "sub quādā arbore minimum umbrae spargente ⁵ cum vellēs requiēscere, ferventissimō solē,⁶ et esset asperimus locus, quendam ex militibus sagulum suum tibi supposuisse?" Cum dixisset Caesar, "Cūr nōn meminerim?"⁷ Et quidem sitī cōfectus,⁸ quia impeditus ⁹ ire ad fontem proximum nōn poteram, ire manibus volēbam,¹⁰ nisi homō fortis ¹⁰ aquam mihi in galeā suā attulisset." "Potes ergō," inquit, "imperātor, agnōscere illum hominem aut illam galeam?" Caesar ait sē nōn posse galeam cognōscere, hominem posse et adiēcit, "Tū ille nōn es." "Meritō," inquit, "Caesar, mē nōn agnōscis; nam cum hoc factum est, integer eram. Postea ¹⁵ ad Mundam ¹¹ in aciē oculus mihi efflossus est. Nec galeam illam, si videris, agnōscēs. Gladiō enim Hispānō divisa est."

Caesar militi suō dedit agrōs dē quibus cum vicinīs līs ¹² fuerat.

1. *Causam dicēbat*: pleading his case; quīdam is the subject. 2. *paulō violentior*: translate somewhat vehemently. 3. *premēbatur*: was being hard pressed. 4. *quidem*: surely. 5. *arbore . . . spargente*: a tree casting very little shade. 6. *ferventissimō solē*: when the sun was very hot. 7. *Cūr . . . meminerim*: why should I not remember? 8. *sitī cōfectus*: worn out with thirst. 9. *impeditus*: i.e., by his injured ankle. 10. *ire . . . volēbam*: I wished to crawl on my hands (and would have done so). 11. *Mundam*: this battle in Spain established Caesar's supremacy in the Roman world. 12. *līs*: the controversy concerned some land. Caesar's biographers say that he did not permit his veterans, when their service was over, to spend their last days in poverty, but always provided them with grants of land and gifts of money.



Rome

Courtesy of Grace A. Emery

TRIBUTE OF ONE ROMAN DICTATOR TO ANOTHER

This illustration shows the wreath placed by Mussolini on the steps of the Temple of Julius Caesar in the Roman Forum. The letters S. P. Q. R. on the ribbon are the abbreviations for **SENATUS POPULUSQUE RŌMĀNUS**. The columns in the background are those of the Temple of Antoninus and Faustina.

201.

THE IDES OF MARCH

This account of the murder of Caesar was written by Gaius Tranquillus Suetonius, who lived in the second century of our era. His chief work is *Dē Vitā Caesarum*. These biographies contain many personal details and gossip stories, but as history they are not valued highly.

Caesar was murdered on March 15, 44 B.C. He had had many warnings of disaster impending on the Ides of March. These warnings, together with illness, almost made him stay at home that day, but he was finally induced to go to the Senate.*

Caesar introiit cūriam, Spūrinnam irrīdēns, quod sine ūllā suā¹ noxiā Idūs Mārtiae adessent. Is respondit, "Vēnērunt

* See SHAKESPEARE, *Julius Caesar*, Act III, Scene 2.

quidem eae, sed nōn transiērunt." Sedentem² cōspirātī speciē offici³ circumstetērunt; Cimper, quī primās partēs suscēperat, quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accessit; manū in aliud tempus differenti⁴ ab utrōque umerō togam arripuit; deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vis est," alter⁵ ē Cascis āversum vulnerat paulum infrā iugulum.⁶ Caesar Cascae braccium arreptum graphiō trāiēcīt;⁷ cōnātusque⁸ prōsilīre, aliō vulnere tardātus est. Ubī animadvertit undique sē petī,⁹ togā caput¹⁰ obvolvīt. Atque ita tribus et vīginti vulneribus trāiectus est, ūnō¹⁰ modo ad prīmum ictum gemitū sine vōce ēditō.¹⁰ Effugientibus cūctīs, aliquamdiū iacuit dōnec lecticae impositum,¹¹ dēpendente bracchiō,¹² trēs servolī domum retulērunt.

1. suā: *his*; translate to him (557, a). 2. Sedentem: as he sat; modifies Caesarem understood. 3. speciē offici: with a show of respect. 4. in . . . differenti: putting him off to another time; differenti modifies Caesarī understood, and is a dative of reference (619). Cimper took hold of Caesar's toga at the shoulders. 5. alter: there were two brothers of the Casca family among the conspirators. 6. āversum . . . iugulum: wounds him a little below the neck as he turned, i.e., in the breast. 7. arreptum . . . trāiēcīt: seized and stabbed with his writing-stylus. 8. cōnātusque: and attempting. 9. petī: was being attacked. 10. ūnō . . . ēditō: without a word, uttering one moan only at the first blow. Suetonius says that Caesar recognized Marcus Brutus and said in Greek, "Thou, too, my son." 11. impositum: modifies Caesarem, the understood object of retulērunt. 12. dēpendente bracchiō: these words and the diminutive servolī, poor slaves, suggest the contrast now with his power when in life, "The paths of glory lead but to the grave."



BRUTUS GLORIES IN CAESAR'S DEATH

Coins commemorating the death of Caesar. The one on the right shows Brutus with attendants; a head of Libertās is on the reverse side. The one on the left bears the head of Brutus. The reverse shows two daggers and the liberty cap worn by freed slaves. EID(ibus) MART(iis) gives the date, on the Ides of March.



Uffizi Gallery, Florence

ĀRA PĀCIS AUGUSTAE

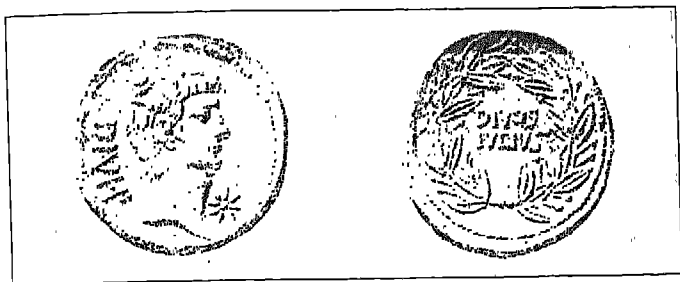
Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs, gentemque togātā, *The Romans, the masters of the world, the toga-clad race.* VERGIL. This fragment from the beautiful marble Altar of Peace, built by Augustus, portrays a religious procession, showing Augustus in the dress of a high priest and others in typical Roman costumes.

202.

THE DEEDS OF AUGUSTUS

The Emperor Augustus wrote a summary of his offices and of his services to the state. After his death this account was inscribed on two bronze tablets and placed at the entrance of his tomb. The original at Rome disappeared, but most of the text has been found in a copy at Ancyra in Asia Minor. The following passage is taken from this inscription, called *Rēs Gestae Divi Augusti*, *Deeds of the Deified Augustus*.

Bella terrā et marī¹ tōtō in orbe terrārum suscēpi victorque omnibus cīvibus peperci. Omnium prōvinciārum² populī Rōmānī, quibus finitimae fuērunt gentēs, quae nōn pārērent imperiō nostrō, finēs auxi. Galliās et Hispāniās prōvinciās et
 5 Germāniam pācāvi. Iānum Quirīnum,³ quem clausum esse maiōrēs nostrī voluērunt, cum per tōtum imperium populī Rōmānī terrā marique esset parta victōriis pāx, cum⁴ priusquam nāsceretur, ā conditā urbe⁵ his omnīnō clausum esset, ter, mē princepe, senātus claudendum esse cēnsuit.



A COIN OF AUGUSTUS

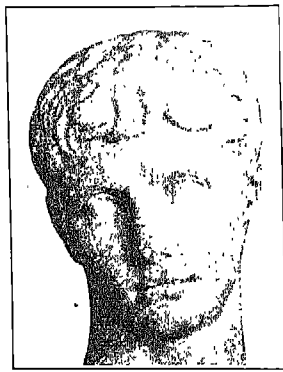
The senate deified Julius Caesar after his death. This is indicated by the word **DIVOS** (**DIVUS**) as shown on the coin at the right. The coin at the left shows the head of Augustus, who was the adopted son of Julius (**DIVI F.**).

Nōn recūsāvī in summā frūmentī inopiā cūram annōnae,⁶¹⁰ quam ita administrāvī ut paucīs diēbus metū et periculō populum ūniversum meis impēnsīs liberārem. Plēbī Rōmānae sēstertiōs⁷ trecēnōs dedī ex testāmentō patris mei. Ter mūnus gladiātōrium⁸ dedī meō nōmine et quinquēns filiōrum meōrum aut nepōtum nōmine; quibus in mūneribus pugnāvērunt hominū¹⁵ circiter decem milia. Nāvālis proeli spectāculum⁹ populō dedī trāns Tiberim.

Rivōs¹⁰ aquārum complūribus locīs refēcī, et aquam quae Mārcia¹¹ appellātur duplicāvī, fonte¹² novō in rīvum eius immissō. Forum Iūlium et basilicam, quae est inter aedem Castoris¹³ et aedem Sātūrnī,¹⁴ incohāvī et, sī vivus nōn perfēcērō,²⁰ perfēcī ab hērēdibus iussī. Duo et octōgintā templā¹⁵ deūm¹⁶ in urbe ex dēcrētō senātūs refēcī, nūllō praetermissō quod eō tempore refēcī dēbēbat. Viam Flāminiam¹⁷ ab urbe Ariminum fēcī et pontēs omnēs praeter Mulvium et Minucium. In privātō²⁵ solō Mārtis¹⁸ Ultōris templum forumque Augustum fēcī, theātrum¹⁹ in solō magnā ex parte ā privātīs ēmpō²⁰ fēcī sub nōmine M. Mārcelli.

Cum scrīpsī haec, annum agēbam septuāgēsimum sextum.

1. *terrā et mari*: on land and sea. This expression is used regularly without a preposition to express place. 2. *prōvinciārum*: modifies *finēs*, l. 4; *quibus* . . . *gentēs*: translate *which had as neighbors tribes*. 3. *Iānum Quirīnum*: an ancient temple, the gates of which were closed when Rome was at peace. Before the time of Augustus it had been closed only twice. 4. *cum*: *although*. 5. *ā conditā urbe*: *from the foundation of the city*. The traditional date is 753 B.C. 6. *cūram annō-nae*: this was the office of food administrator. The problem of an adequate food supply at Rome was a serious matter. 7. *sēstertiōs*: a sesterce was a small silver coin worth a little less than our five-cent piece. "Here is the will, and under Caesar's seal, To every Roman citizen he gives, To every several man, seventy-five drachmas." Antony's speech, in Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*, III, 2. 8. An account of gladiatorial combats may be found in *A Day in Old Rome*, by Davis, Sections 330-344. 9. A lake was built across the Tiber for this purpose. The exhibition given was a magnificent one representing a great sea-fight. 10. *Rīvōs*: *channels*. 11. *Mārcia*: the Marcian Aqueduct still brings water to Rome. 12. *fonte*: *spring*. 13. *Castoris*: the three remaining columns of this temple are among the finest architectural remains in Rome. 14. *Sātūrnī*: eight columns of this temple are still standing. 15. *templa*: Augustus said that he found Rome made of brick and left it made of marble. 16. *deum*: = *deōrum*. 17. *Flāminiam*: this road ran north-east from Rome to *Ariminum*, *Rimini*. 18. *Mārtis*: this was one of the most splendid temples in Rome. Several beautiful columns are now standing. 19. *theātrum*: this building is still standing. The Orsini Palace occupies its upper stories. 20. *in . . . ēmptō*: *on ground in great part bought from private individuals*.



Courtesy of The Detroit Institute of Arts

AUGUSTUS

This portrait head represents Augustus as a young man.

203.

THE LAST DAY OF POMPEII

C. Plinius Caecilius Secundus (Pliny the Younger) was born at Comum in Italy about 62 A.D. He was one of the most learned men of his age and had a distinguished career as a lawyer and as a public official. Ten books of his letters are extant. They are of great interest and value for the light they throw upon the life of a Roman gentleman of refinement and culture.

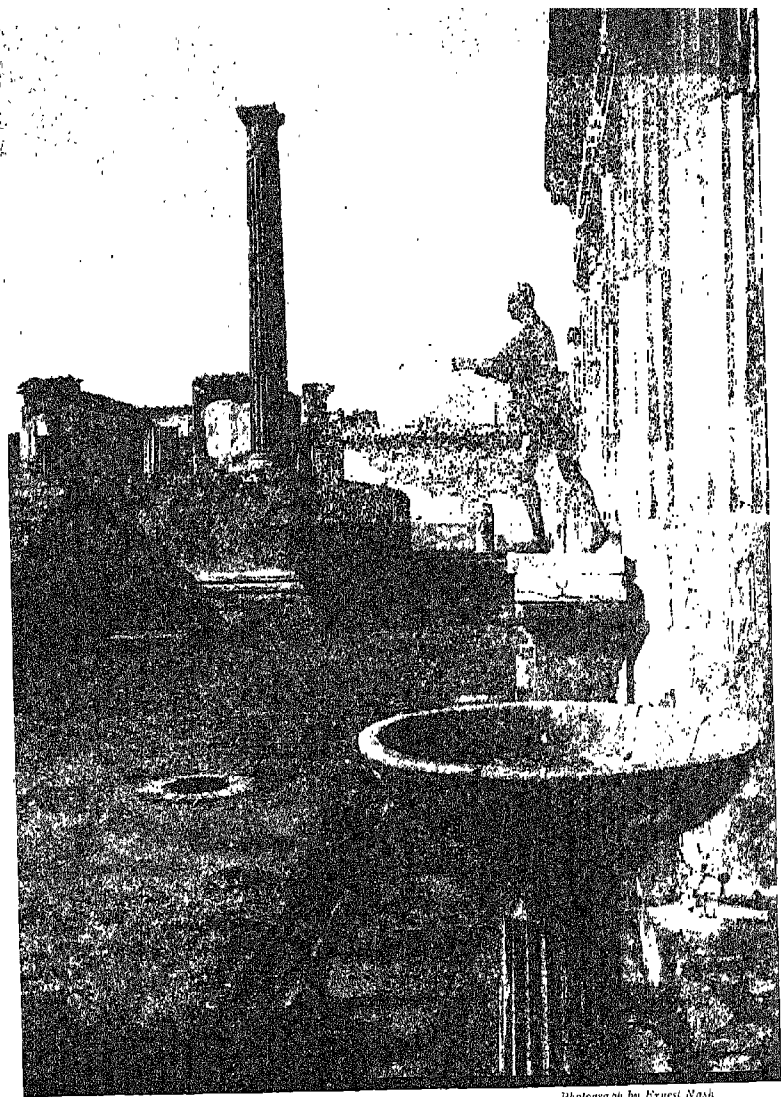
The following selection is taken from a letter which Pliny wrote to the Roman historian Tacitus. Tacitus wished to include in his history an account of the eruption of Vesuvius in 79 A.D. and asked Pliny to write him about the death of his uncle, Pliny the Elder, who perished in the eruption.

Nōnum Kal. Septembrēs hōrā ferē septimā¹ māter mea indicat eī² apparere nūbem inūsītātā et magnitudīne et speciē. Nūbēs, incertum erat ex quō monte (Vesuvium fuisse postea cognitum est), oriēbātur. Longissimō truncō elāta in altum, rāmīs diffundēbātur.³

Cinīs incidēbat, calidior et dēnsior, iam pūmicēs⁴ etiam nigrīque et combustī et frāctī igne lapidēs. Interim ē Vesuviō monte plūribus locīs lātissimae flammae altaque incendia oriēbantur, quōrum fulgor tenebrīs noctis excitābātur.⁵ Iam diēs alibī, illīc nox omnibus noctibus nigrior dēnsiorque; iam quas-¹⁰ sātīs tēctīs, magnus erat metus.

Tūc dēmum excēdere oppidō vīsum;⁶ sequitur vulgus. Multa ibi mīranda, multōs metūs patimur. Nec multō post illa nūbēs dēscendit in terrās, operuit maria. Audirēs⁷ fēminārum ululātūs, clāmōrēs virōrum; aliī parentēs, aliī liberōs, aliī con-¹⁵ iugēs appellābant; hī suum cāsum, illī suōrum⁸ miserābantur; erant quī metū mortis mortem precārentur; multī ad deōs manūs tollēbant, plūrēs nusquam iam deōs illōs aeternamque illam et novissimam noctem mundō⁹ interpretābantur.

1. Nōnum . . . septimā: about noon, August 24, 79 A.D. The date usually would be written a.d. IX Kal. Sept. Ante diem is understood with nōnum; for dates see 632-5. 2. eī: to him, i.e., to Pliny the Elder. 3. Longissimō . . . diffundēbātur: (the cloud) lifted on high by a very long trunk was spread out in branches. Pliny compared it to the umbrella pine tree which is still typical of an Italian landscape. 4. pūmicēs: pieces of pumice stones; the lapidēs were solid rock; incidēbant is to be understood with these two nouns. 5. excitābātur: was



Photograph by Ernesi Nash

TEMPLE OF APOLLO AT POMPEII

made brighter. 6. *visum* (est): *it seemed best.* 7. *Audirēs*: *one might hear*; second person indefinite, potential subjunctive (582, a). 8. *illī suōrum*: *others* (*lamented the fate*) of their friends. 9. *aeternamque . . . mundō*: *that last and final night for the world.*

204.

THE EARLY CHRISTIANS

One of the first Romans to write in defense of Christianity was Q. Septimius Florens Tertullianus (Tertullian), who was born at Carthage about 160 A.D. In the passage quoted here Tertullian gives the substance of a letter still extant, written by Pliny the Younger about 112 A.D., when he was governor of Bithynia, to the Emperor Trajan in regard to the proper treatment of the Christians.

Plinius enim Secundus cum prōvinciam regeret, damnātis quibusdam Christiānīs, quibusdam pulsīs, ipsā tamen multitudine perturbātus est. Quid ageret¹ cōsultuit tunc Trāiānum imperātōrem, dicēns praeter pertināciam nōn immolandī nihil aliud sē dē sacrāmētis eōrum comperisse quam² coetūs³ ante⁵ lūcem ad canendum Christō ut deō, homicidium, adulterium, fraudem, perfidiam, et cētera scelera prohibentēs.⁴ Tunc Trāiānus Pliniō scrīpsit eōs inquirēndōs quidem nōn esse, oblātōs vērō pūniri oportere.⁶

1. *ageret*: *he should do.* 2. *quam*: *than.* 3. *coetūs*: *meetings*, on the Sabbath. 4. *prohibentēs*: modifies *coetūs*. 5. *oblātōs . . . oportere*: *but if brought before him, it was fitting for them to be punished.*

THE CONVERSION OF A ROMAN EMPEROR

Eusebius, the biographer of Constantine (emperor 306–337 A.D.), relates the story of the adoption of Christianity by Constantine. Constantine himself told Eusebius that on the day before the great battle at the Mulvian Bridge (312 A.D.), he saw with his own eyes the symbol of the cross shining in the sky with the inscription, “by this conquer.” The troops carried this emblem the following day in the battle in which they defeated Maxentius. As a memorial of this victory, the Senate later erected the triumphal arch shown on page 162.



Lateran Museum, Rome

A HOUSEHOLD GOD

One of the Lares carved on the side of the marble altar of Gaius Manlius. The Lar holds a *patera*, *libation plate*, in his hand. On either side are branches of laurel.

ROME DAY BY DAY

205.

THE HOUSEHOLD GOD

The Household God, Lār Familiāris, is an extract from the prologue of a play, *Aululāria, The Pot of Gold*, by Titus Maccius Plautus. Plautus, born about 254 B.C., wrote comedies which, although based upon Greek originals, were very Roman in spirit. Twenty of these comedies are still in existence. They are excellent examples of early Roman drama and of the everyday speech of that period.

The *Lār Familiāris*, who watched over the safety of the household, is represented as telling the story of the pot of gold which had been buried by his old master, the grandfather of his present master, Euclio, an old miser. Because Euclio's good daughter makes due sacrifices to the *Lār*, the latter makes known to Euclio the hiding place of the gold, in order that the daughter may have a suitable marriage dowry.

LĀR FAMILIĀRIS. Nē quis mīrētur quī sim,¹ paucīs ² ēloquar.

Ego Lār sum familiāris ex hāc familiā

unde exeuntem mē aspexistis.³ Hanc domum

iam multōs annōs est cum possideō ⁴ et colō

patri avōque ⁵ iam huius quī nunc hīc habet,⁶

5

sed mihi avus huius obsecrāns concrēdidit

aurī thēsaurum clam ⁷ omnīs: in mediō focō

dēfōdit, venerāns mē ut id servārem sibi.

Is quoniam moritur (ita avidō ingenio ⁸ fuit),

numquam indicāre id filiō voluit suō.

10

Is ⁹ ex sē hunc ¹⁰ reliquit quī hīc nunc habitat filium

pariter mōrātum ut ¹¹ pater avusque huius fuit.

Huic filia ūna est. Ea mihi cotīdiē

aut tūre ¹² aut vīnō aut aliquī ¹³ semper supplicat,

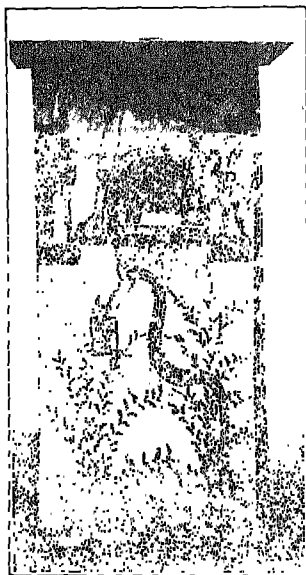
dat mihi coronās. Eius honoris grātiā ¹⁴

15

fēcī thēsaurum ut hīc reperīret Eucliō ¹⁵

quō illam facilius nūptum, sī vellet, daret.¹⁶

1. *Nē . . . sim*: that no one may wonder who I am. 2. *paucis*: in a few words. 3. *unde . . . aspexistis*: from which you saw me coming out. 4. *iam . . . possideō*: translate now for many years I have possessed. 5. *avōque*: and for the grandfather. 6. *habet*: i.e. *vivit*. 7. *clam*: unknown to; followed by the accusative *omnis*. 8. *ita . . . ingeniō*: of such a greedy disposition. 9. *Is*: the son of the first owner of the house did not pay due honor to the household god, so he too died. He left a son whose character was like his own. 10. *hunc*: with *filium*. This is *Euclio*, the grandson of the one who buried the gold. 11. *pariter . . . ut*: translate of similar character to. 12. *tūre*: with incense. 13. *aliquī*: with something. 14. *Eius . . . grātiā*: translate for the sake of honor to her. 15. *feci . . . Euclio*: translate I saw to it that *Euclio* found the treasure here. 16. *quō . . . daret*: in order that he might more easily give her in marriage, if he wished.

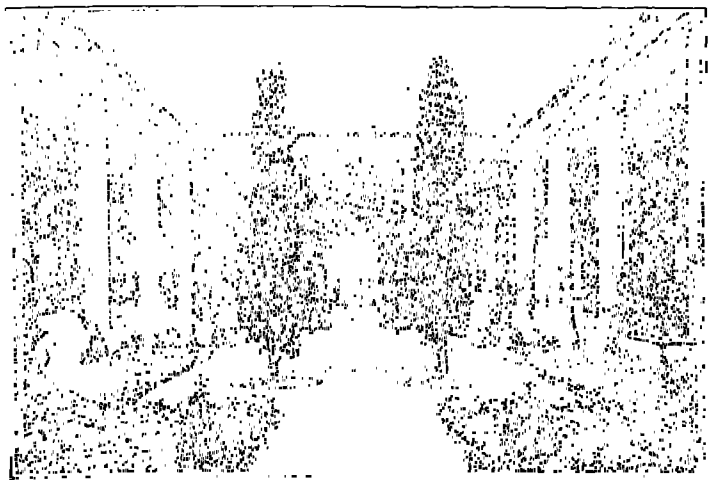


Pompeii, Italy

Courtesy of Roy C.
Flickinger

SHRINE OF HOUSEHOLD GOD

The figures on either side of the niche are of household gods. Such shrines usually have two snakes painted on them. This snake is about to partake of the offering to the god.



Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

COURT OF A ROMAN HOUSE

A lovely vista met the eyes of the bride as she was carried over the threshold of her new home. Through a formal reception room, *atrium*, decorated with marble pillars, mosaic floor with fountain in the center, and beautiful frescoed walls, she looked into the master's room, *tablinum*, and beyond that into a lovely court surrounded by a colonnade, adorned with fountains, flowers, and statuary. There is a reproduction of such an open-air court in the Metropolitan Museum. Its walls are painted in colors copied from Pompeian houses. Roman works of art placed here and there create an atmosphere of reality.

206.

HERE COMES THE BRIDE

The poet, Gaius Valerius Catullus, whose lyric poems are among the finest in literature, was born at Verona about 87 B.C.

These five stanzas are from a marriage hymn written in honor of the wedding^{*} of two of his friends. They refer to the ceremony of conducting the bride to her husband's home after the wedding. The bride comes forth from her home and the procession led by boys carrying torches moves to the home of the groom. Here the bride is carefully lifted over the threshold, as it would be a bad omen for her to stumble on entering her new home.

^{*}For interesting accounts of a Roman wedding read: JOHNSTON, *Private Life of the Romans*, pp. 53-64; PAXSON, *Two Latin Plays*, A Roman Wedding.

Prōdeās,¹ nova nūpta, sī
Iam vidētur,² et audiās
Nostra verba. Vidē ut facēs
Aureās quatiunt comās:³
Prōdeās, nova nūpta.

Tollite, Ō puerī, facēs.
Flammecum videō venīre.
Īte, concinite in modum,⁴
“ Ō Hymēn Hymenaeē iō,
Ō Hymēn Hymenaeē.”

Vōsque item simul, integrae
Virginēs, quibus advenit
Pār diēs, agite in modum
Dicite, “ Ō Hymenaeē Hymēn,
Ō Hymēn Hymenaeē.”

En tibi * domus ut potēns
Et beāta viri tui;⁵
Quae tibi⁶ sine serviat.⁷
Ō Hymēn Hymenaeē iō,
Ō Hymēn Hymenaeē.

Trānsfer ōmine cum bonō
Līmen aureolōs pedēs,
Rāsilemque subī forem.⁸
Ō Hymēn Hymenaeē iō,
Ō Hymēn Hymenaeē.

1. Prōdeās: *come forth*; volitive subjunctive. 2. vidētur: *seems best*. 3. ut . . . comās: *how the torches scatter their golden rays*. 4. concinite . . . modum: *trans-late sing in unison*. 5. En . . . tui: *Lo, how fine and splendid is the home of your husband*. 6. tibi: dative, pointing out the person interested (519). 7. Quae . . . serviat: *allow it to serve you*. 8. Rāsilemque subī forem: *enter the polished doorway*.

*Note that for metrical reasons the second i of tibi must be read long. In Latin poetry the quantity of a vowel is sometimes changed to meet the requirements of the meter.



THE TOILETTE OF THE BRIDE

A painting on the walls of the suburban villa of Diomedes at Pompeii, the so-called Villa of Mysteries.

207.

A COURAGEOUS WIFE

This story of a Roman wife and mother is found in a letter written by Pliny the Younger to a friend.

Aegrōtābat Caecina Paetus, maritus eius,¹ aegrōtābat et filius. Filius dēcessit. Huic illa ita fūnus parāvit ut ignōrāret maritus; quīn immō,² quotiēns cubiculum eius intrāret, vīvere filium atque etiam commodiōrem³ esse simulābat ac saepe quaerenti quid⁴ ageret puer, respondēbat, "Bene dormīvit, libenter cibum sūmpsit." Deinde, cum lacrimae vincerent, ēgrediēbātur;⁵ tum sē dolōrī dabat; siccis oculis, quiētō vultū redibat. Praeclārum erat quidem illud eiusdem⁶ perfodere pectus, extrahere ferrum, dare marītō, addere vōcem paene dīvinam, "Paete, nōn dolet." Sed quō⁷ maius est sine praemiō gloriae abdere¹⁰ lacrimās, āmissōque filiō, mātrem adhūc agere.⁸

Scribōniānus arma in Illyricō contrā Claudium mōverat; fuerat Paetus in partibus,⁹ occisō Scribōniānō, Rōmam trahēbātur. Erat ascēnsūrus nāvem. Arria militēs ōrābat ut simul impōnerētur.¹⁰ "Virō enim datūrī estis," inquit, "servōs¹⁵ aliquōs quōrum ē manū cibum capiat, ā quibus vestiātur; omnia sōla praestābō."¹¹ Nōn impetrāvit; condūxit nāviculam ingēnsque nāvigium minimō¹² secūta est.

1. eius: refers to Arria, the heroine of this story, wife of Caecina Paetus, an ex-consul. 2. quīn immō: why even. 3. vīvere . . . commodiōrem: that the son was alive and even more comfortable. 4. quaerenti quid: to her (husband) asking how. 5. ēgrediēbātur: kept going out; translate would leave the room. 6. illud eiusdem: that (act) of hers; explained by the infinitives. Paetus was condemned to die because he had joined the conspiracy of Scribonianus against the Emperor Claudius. When he was about to commit suicide, his courage failed him, but Arria, stabbing herself, handed him the dagger with these words, "It does not hurt, Paetus." 7. quō: than this. 8. āmissōque . . . agere: and though her son was dead, still act the part of a mother. 9. in partibus: on his side. 10. ut . . . impōnerētur: translate to be taken aboard with him. 11. omnia . . . praestābō: I alone will perform all these services. 12. minimō: translate in a tiny boat. Arria's heroism sometimes borders on rashness, but the Romans regarded her as a typical example of fortitudō.



From a Greek vase painting

THE RETURNED TRAVELER

208.

WELCOME HOME

Catullus expresses his joy at the return of his friend Veranius from Spain.

Vērānī,¹ omnibus ē meīs amīcīs
 Antistāns mihi milibus trecentis,²
 Vēnistīne domum ad tuōs Penātēs³
 Frātrēsque ūnanimōs anumque⁴ mātrem?
 5 Vēnistī! Ō mihi nūntiū beātī!
 Visam⁵ tē incolumem audiamque Hibērūm⁶
 Nārrantem⁷ loca, facta, nātiōnēs.
 Quid mē⁸ laetius⁹ est beātiusve?

1. *Vērānī*: *Veranius*; vocative case, modified by *antistāns*. 2. *Antistāns* . . . *trecentis*: preferred by me to three hundred thousand. 3. *Penātēs*: these were ancient deities who were guardians of the household. They were also regarded as guardians of the state, which is a union of households. 4. *anum*: old; the fourth declension noun *anus* used as an adjective. 5. *Visam*: I shall behold. 6. *Hibērūm*: of the Iberians (*Spaniards*); modifies the nouns in the following line. 7. *Nārrantem*: telling of; modifies *tē*, the understood object of *audiam*. 8. *mē*: ablative of comparison (539). 9. *laetius*: neuter gender to agree with the subject *quid*, *what*. The English idiom for this is *who*. In Latin, the neuter form is sometimes used when reference is made to a person.



Pompeii, Italy

A POMPEIAN KITCHEN

This illustration shows a corner of the kitchen in a house at Pompeii. On the stove, built up of masonry, are the pots and pans as they were in 79 A.D. when Pompeii was covered by the eruption of Vesuvius. Note the cooking utensils hanging on the wall.

209.

CATO'S IDEA OF A HOUSEKEEPER

Marcus Porcius Cato was a Roman of the old school. He felt that the salvation of Rome rested upon two things, the destruction of Carthage and the maintenance of the simple virtues of early days. Born at Tusculum near Rome in 234 B.C., the son of a farmer, Cato always kept his interest in agriculture even after he had attained fame as a soldier, statesman, orator, and author. His *De Agricultūrā*, from which this selection is taken, is a practical work containing random notes on housekeeping and farm management. An interesting account of Cato's life is found in *Plutarch's "Lives."*

Nē vilica ¹ pigra sit.² Vicinīs aliisque mulieribus quam minimum ūtātur.³ Ad cēnam nē quō eat, nēve ambulātrīx sit. Rem dīvinam nē faciat iniussū dominī aut dominae. Sciat dominum prō tōtā familiā rem dīvinam facere. Munda sit. Villam mundam habeat. Focum mundum cotīdiē, priusquam dormiat, s faciat. Kalendīs,⁴ Idibus, Nōnīs, fēstus diēs cum erit, corōnam in focum impōnat. Per eōsdemque diēs Larī familiārī prō cōpiā supplicet. Cibum dominō et familiae cūret et coctum ⁵ habeat. Gallinās multās et ōva habeat.

1. *vilica*: the housekeeper was usually the wife of the *vilicus*, *farm manager*.
 2. *Nē, sit*: *shall not be*; a volitive subjunctive. All subjunctives in principal clauses in this passage are volitive and should be translated by *let* or *shall*. Observe also the English usage, "Thou shalt honor thy father and mother." 3. *ūtatur*: *let her associate*. 4. *Kalendis*: ablative of time. For dates see (634). 5. *coctum*: modifies *cibum*. She is to see to it that she has food cooked for the household.

210.

CATO'S RECIPE FOR CHEESE-CAKE

Bray well two pounds of cheese in a mortar, and when this is done, pour in a pound of corn-meal (or if you want to be more dainty, a half pound of flour) and mix it thoroughly with the cheese. Add one egg and beat well. Pat into a cake, place on leaves, and bake slowly on a hot hearth stone under a dish.

FAIRFAX HARRISON, *Roman Farm Management*.*

211.

THE GODS OF THE FARMER

A learned man of the first century B.C., who wrote many books about language, antiquities, law, medicine, architecture, and agriculture, was Marcus Terentius Varro. The passage given here is from his work, *Dē Agricultūrā*, written when he was eighty-one years of age.

Invocābō deōs:¹ nec, ut Homērus² et Ennius,³ Mūsās,⁴ sed XII deōs neque tamen deōs urbānōs, quōrum imāginēs⁵ ad forum stant, sex marēs⁶ et fēminae totidem, sed illōs XII deōs quī maximē agricolārū ducēs sunt. Prīmum, quī omnīs fructūs agricultūrae continent, Iovem⁷ et Tellūrem.⁸ Itaque, quod eī parentēs magnī dīcuntur, Iuppiter pater appellātur, Tellus terra māter. Sōlem et Lūnam, quōrum tempora observantur cum quaedam seruntur et conduntur. Cererem et Liberum, quod hōrum fructūs maximē necessariī sunt. Ab hīs enim cibus
 10 et pōtiō venit. Rōbīgum et Flōram, quibus faventibus, neque rōbīgō frūmenta atque arborēs corrumpit, neque nōn tempestīvā⁹ flōrent. Item invocābō Minervam et Venerem, quārum ūnīus cūra olīvētī, alterius hortōrum.¹⁰ Precor etiam Lympham¹¹ ac Bonum Œventum,¹² quoniam sine aquā omnīs
 15 ārida ac misera agricultūra et sine bonō ēventū frūstrā est.

* This is a delightful book on farming, based upon the writings of Cato and of Varro, written "for those who love the country."



From a painting by E. Forti

Courtesy of Signora Forti

SCENE AT A ROMAN VILLA

The vilicus and his familia are at work during the vintage season.

1. *deōs*: as Varro is going to write a book on farming, he invokes the gods of agriculture, all of whom are not Great Gods.* 2. *Homērus*: the greatest Greek poet, author of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. 3. *Ennius*: (239 B.C.) wrote a poem of eighteen books, *Annālēs*, recounting the history of Rome. He is often called the father of Roman poetry. 4. *Mūsās*: the nine goddesses of music, poetry, and other liberal arts. 5. *imāginēs*: a part of the portico in which these statues stood can still be seen in the Roman Forum. 6. *marēs*: male; from *mās*. 7. *Iovem*: this and the following names of gods in the accusative are in apposition with *deōs*, 1. 2. 8. *Tellūrem*: Tellus was Earth personified as a productive, nourishing divinity. 9. *nōn tempestivē*: out of season. 10. *quārum . . . hortōrum*: the care of the one of whom is (of) the olive, of the other, gardens. 11. *Lympham*: goddess of water and fountains. 12. *Bonum Œventum*: the god of good fortune or success.

212.

FAMOUS ROMAN FARMERS

This passage is from Cicero's essay, *Dē Senectūte*, *On Old Age*, in which he represents Cato as the chief speaker, setting forth the charms of farm life to those who have retired from active public life.

* For an account of the gods of the Romans see SAHN, *Classical Myths That Live Today*.



MANIUS CURIUS SCORNS THE GOLD OF THE SAMNITES

Veniō ad agricolās. In hāc vitā M'. Curius,¹ cum dē Samnitibus, dē Sabīnis, dē Pyrrhō triumphum dēportāverat, cōsumpsit extrēmum tempus aetātis. Cuius quidem ego villam vidēns (abest enim nōn longē ā mē) admirārī satis nōn possum
 5 vel hominis ipsius continentiam² vel temporum disciplinam. Curiō ad focum sedentī³ magnum aurī pondus⁴ Samnitēs cum attulissent, dīmissī sunt; nōn⁵ enim aurum habēre praeclārum sibi vidērī dixit, sed eis quī habērent aurum imperāre.⁵ Arantī L. Quīntiō Cincinnātō⁶ nūntiātum est eum dictātorem esse fac-
 10 tum. Poteratne tantus animus nōn efficere beātam senectūtem?

1. M'. Curius: an example of old-time Roman simplicity and virtue. After defeating Pyrrhus he returned to his farm. The favorite story connected with his mode of life was that the Samnites found him preparing a dinner of turnips.
 2. continentiam: self-control. 3. sedentī: modifies Curiō, which is dative with the compound, attulissent. 4. pondus: this was not a bribe, but a present from the Samnites, whose patron Curius became after their subjugation by Rome under his generalship. 5. nōn . . . imperāre: he said that to have gold did not seem to him so splendid as to rule over those (eis) who had it. 6. Cincinnātō: Cincinnatus was another hero of the Romans. Called from the plow to be dictator in 458 B.C., he defeated the enemy and then returned to his farm.

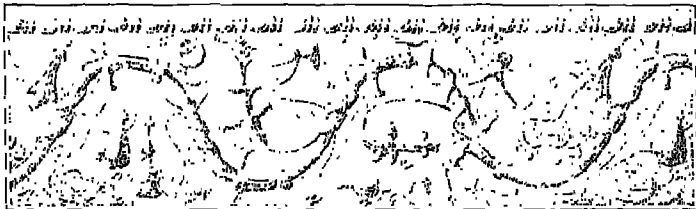
213.

THE FARM MANAGER

Cato outlines the duties of a farm manager in the following extract from his *Dē Agricultūrā*.

Haec erunt vilīcī officia.¹ Disciplīnā bonā ūtātur.² Diēs fēstī serventur.³ Sua servet diligenter. Nē⁴ sit ambulātor,⁵ nē quō ad cēnam eat.⁶ Familiam exerceat; faciat ea quae dominus imperāvit. Nē cēnseat plūs sē scīre quam dominum. Iniussū dominī crēdat nēminī. Sēmen, cibāria, vīnum, oleum; mūtuum det nēminī. Duās aut trēs familiās habeat unde roget⁷ et quibus det. Nē quid ēmissee velit, insciente dominō, nē quid dominum cēlāvisse⁸ velit. Opus rūsticum omne cūret ut sciat facere,⁹ et id faciat saepe. Si hoc faciet, minus libēbit ambulāre et valēbit rēctius et dormiet libentius.¹⁰ Prīmus¹⁰ mātne surgat, postrēmus dormiat.

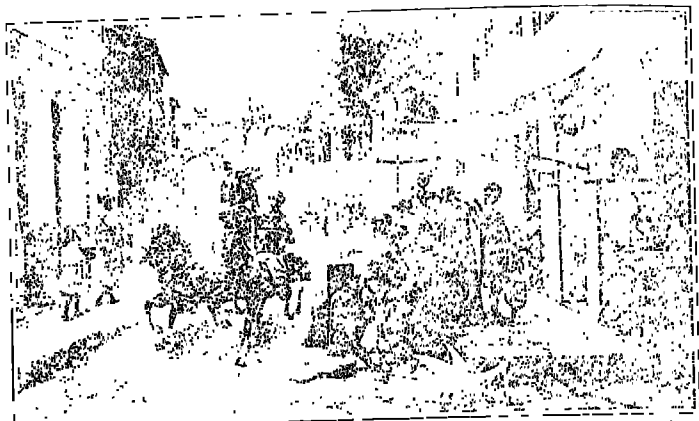
1. vilīcī officia: duties of an overseer. 2. ūtātur: let him use, or he shall use. This subjunctive is a volitive of command. Translate the other volitives in this lesson by let or shall. 3. serventur: shall (let) be observed. 4. Nē: introduces here, as elsewhere in the reading, a negative command in the volitive. Translate let not or shall not. This is usually expressed by the imperative of nōlō with the present infinitive (611, a). 5. ambulātor: a gad-about, or idler. 6. quō, eat: go anywhere. 7. unde roget: from whom he may borrow. 8. quid . . . cēlāvisse: translate to conceal anything from the master. 9. cūret . . . facere: let him see to it that he knows how to do. 10. minus . . . libentius: translate he will not want to run around and will have better health and enjoy his sleep. What is the literal translation?



Pompeii, Italy

Courtesy of Newark Public Library

FLOWERS AND FRUITS IN TERRA COTTA



From a painting by E. Forti

STREET SCENE

Courtesy of Sotheby's

214.

A ROMAN'S DAY

This poem and the eight which follow are by Gaius Valerius Martialis (Martial), who lived in Rome in the last half of the first century A.D. In his poems, called epigrams, he gives a picture of the daily life of a man-about-town in the capital city.*

The epigram is a literary form consisting of two parts. The first part arouses one's curiosity or interest, the second gives the real point of the poem, often with a clever or unexpected turn. An illustration of this may be seen in the following translation of one of Martial's epigrams by Paul Nixon in *A Roman Will*:

"I hear that Lycoris has buried every friend she's had in her life;
I sincerely regret, Fabianus, that she's not introduced to my wife."

Prīma¹ salūtantēs² atque altera conterit³ hōra,
Exercet raucōs tertia⁴ causicidīcōs.⁵

In quīntam⁶ variōs extendit Rōma labōrēs,
Sexta⁷ quīēs lassīs, septīma finis erit:

5 Sufficit in nōnam nitidīs⁸ octāva⁹ palaestrīs
Imperat extrūctōs frangere nōna¹⁰ torōs.¹¹

*For the daily life of a Roman see: FOWLER, *Social Life at Rome*, pp. 263-284; JOHNSTON, *Private Life of the Romans*, pp. 308-9.

1. **Prima**: for the division of a Roman day see 636. 2. **salūtantēs**: the first thing in the morning a Roman of position held a **salūtatiō** to which his followers and clients came in order to salute or greet him. 3. **altera conterit**: *the second hour uses up*, that is *tires out*; the object is **salūtantēs**. 4. **tertia**: modifies **hōra**. 5. **causidicōs**: what two words enter into the formation of this word? 6. **quīntam**: this would be about noon. 7. **Sexta**: then the Roman rested and had lunch. 8. **nitidīs**: *shining*; because of the oil used on the bodies of the bathers. 9. **octāva**: at the eighth hour he went to one of Rome's many bathing establishments where he had his exercise and bath. 10. **nōna**: subject of **imperat**; this was the usual dinner hour. The time varied, according to the season of the year, from one to three in the afternoon. 11. **torōs**: Roman men reclined at meals, and when they took their places on the couches, they disturbed (**frangere**) the couches piled high (**extructōs**) with cushions.

This poem outlines the daily routine of a Roman gentleman. Pliny in a letter tells how his day is spent, "I was present at the ceremony of a youth assuming the toga of manhood; I attended an engagement party and went to a wedding. One man asked me to witness his will, another asked me to represent him in court, and a third asked me for a private consultation."

215.

A POET'S PRESCRIPTION

Martial often satirizes Zoilus as typical of Rome's new-rich, fond of vulgar display. He here accuses him of pretending to be sick in order to display his expensive coverlets.

Zoilus aegrōtat; faciunt hanc strāgula febrem.

Sī fuerit sānus,¹ coccina² quid facient?

Quid torus³ ā Nilō, quid Sīdone tinctus olentī⁴

Ostendit stultās quid nisi morbus opēs?⁵

Quid tibi cum medicīs? Dīmittle Machāonās⁶ omnēs.

5

Vīs fierī sānus, strāgula sūme mea.

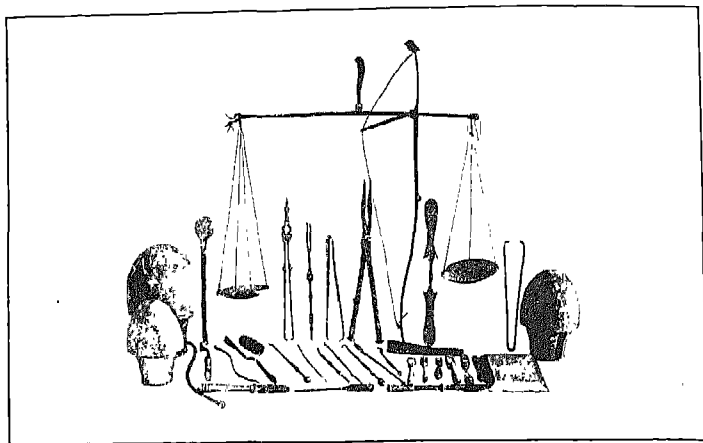
1. **sānus**: *well*. 2. **coccina**: *scarlet bed-coverings*; **coccina** was a dye. 3. **torus**: his mattresses and pillows were imported from Egypt. 4. **quid . . . olenti**: *what good will be his couch dipped in odorous Sidon (purple)*? Sidon was famous for its purple dye. 5. **Ostendit . . . opēs**: *what, except sickness, will show off his foolish wealth?* 6. **Machāonās**: a general word for doctors. Machaon was the son of Aesculapius, god of medicine. Note that the meter requires that the last a be short.

216.

NŌN AMŌ TĒ

. Nōn amō tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē:

Hoc tantum possum dīcere, nōn amō tē.



Courtesy of David M. Robinson

ROMAN SURGICAL INSTRUMENTS

This collection was found in the grave of a Roman surgeon. Some are similar to those used today. They are now in the Archaeological Museum of The Johns Hopkins University.

217.

AN OLD-TIME CLINIC

A prospective doctor at Rome received his training by associating himself with an experienced doctor such as the Symmachus of this poem seems to be. When he visits his patient he takes his students with him.

Languēbam,¹ sed tū comitātus² prōtinus ad mē
 Vēnistī centum, Symmache, discipulis.
 Centum mē tetigēre manūs aquilōne gelātae.³
 Nōn habuī febrem, Symmache, nunc habeo.

1. *Languēbam*: I was a trifle ill. 2. *comitātus*: accompanied; modified by *centum discipulis*. 3. *gelātae*: modifies *manūs*.

218.

AN OLD EXCUSE

Gellius refuses all requests for money with the excuse, "I am building."

Gellius aedificat semper. Modo līmina¹ pōnit,
 Nunc foribus clāvēs aptat emitque serās,

Nunc hās, nunc illās reficit mūtātque fenestrās;
 Dum tantum ² aedificet, quidlibet ³ ille facit —
 Ōrantī nummōs ut dicere possit amīcō
 Ūnum illud verbum Gellius, “ Aedificō.” 5

1. *limina*: *limen*, the *lintel* of a door, is here used for *door*. 2. *Dum tantum*: *provided only*. 3. *quidlibet*: *anything at all*.

219.

A SNOWSTORM AT ROME

Snowstorms are rare at Rome. Martial hints that this one was sent to garb Horatius in white instead of the dark color which he alone wore at a show where the Emperor was present.

Spectābat modo ¹ sōlus inter omnēs
 Nigrīs mūnus Horātius lacernīs,
 Cum plēbs et minor ōrdō maximusque
 Sānctō cum duce candidus sedēret.²
 Tōtō nix cecidit repente caelō :
 Albīs spectat Horātius lacernīs. 5

1. *modo*: *recently*. 2. *Cum . . . sedēret*: *when the plebs, the knights, and the senators, dressed in white, were seated with the sacred leader*. *Plēbs*, *plebians*, *minor ōrdō*, *knights*, and *maximus (ōrdō)*, *senators*, were the three classes of Roman citizens. The emperor is called *sānctus*. The people of Rome had reached such a point of abject flattery that they often referred to their emperor as a god.

220.

THE LESSER OF TWO EVILS

After Caecilianus has been refused the loan of a thousand pieces of money, he asks for the loan of a dish, *lānx*, and a few utensils, *vāsa*, worth about five thousand sesterces, giving as an excuse, *causātus*, the arrival of a friend. Martial hints that these would never be returned.

Mille tibi ¹ nummōs hesternā lūce rogantī
 In sex aut septem, Caecilīāne, diēs,
 “ Nōn habeo,” dixī; sed tū causātus amīcī
 Adventum lancem paucaque vāsa rogās.
 Stultus es? an stultum mē crēdis, amīce? negāvī
 Mille tibi ¹ nummōs, mīlia quīnque dabō? 5

1. *tibi*: note that because of the meter final *i* is long.

221.

REQUIESCANT IN PACE

Septima iam, Philerōs, tibi conditur uxor in agrō;
Plūs nullī,¹ Philerōs, quam tibi reddit ager.

1. nullī: dative of nullus.

222.

HOPE DEFERRED

Nīl mihi dās vivus;¹ dīcis post fāta² datūrum:³
Sī nōn es stultus, scīs, Marō, quid cupiam.

1. vivus: while alive. 2. post fāta: after death. 3. datūrum (esse): tē is the subject understood.

223.

THE MISER'S LAMENT

This passage is from Plautus' comedy *Aululāria*, *The Pot of Gold*. The miser, Euclio, discovers that his treasure has been stolen. His grief over the loss is not unlike that of Shylock's lament for his lost ducats and his daughter, in Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*.

EUCLIO. Perī,¹ interiī, occidī. Quō curram? Quō nōn
curram? Tenē, tenē. Quem? Quis?

Nesciō, nīl videō, caecus eō² atque equidem quō cam³ aut ubi
sim aut quī sim
nequeō animō certum invēstīgāre.⁴ Obsecrō⁵ ego vōs, mī
auxiliō⁶

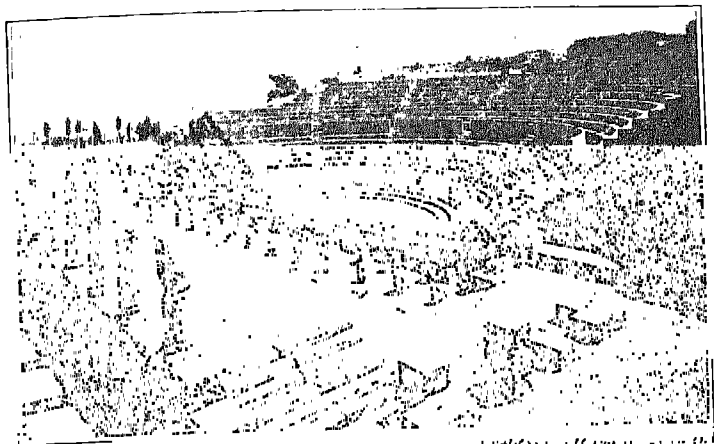
orō, obtestor,⁵ sītis et hominem dēmōnstrētis quis eam abstulerit.
Quid ais tū? tibi crēdere certum est,⁷ nam esse⁸ bonum ex
vultū cognōscō.

10 Quid est? Quid ridētis? Nōvī omnīs, sciō fūrēs esse hīc
complūrīs,
quī vestitū et crētā⁹ occultant sēsē atque sedent¹⁰ quasi sint
frūgī.¹¹

Hem, nēmō habet hōrum? Occīdistī. Dīc igitur, quis habet?
15 nescīs?

heu mē miserum,¹² miserē perī.

1. Perī: the past tense of the verb suggests Euclio's utter despair. The rapid change of mood and tense shows his excitement. 2. caecus eō: I go blindly.



A ROMAN THEATER

Roman and Greek plays were presented in theaters similar to this well-preserved one at Timgad, in northern Africa, where many interesting Roman ruins have been excavated.

3. *quō eam*: where I am going; an indirect question. 4. *nequēō . . . invēstigare*: I cannot tell for certain. 5. *Obsecrō, orō, obtestor*: I beg, I pray, I implore; followed by the two subjunctives, *sitis*, that you be, and *dēmōnstrētis*, that you point out. Euclio here turns to the audience and asks for aid. 6. *mī auxiliō*: (for) an aid to me; translate with *sitis*; *mī* is a short form of *mihi*. 7. *certum est*: I am determined. 8. *esse*: the subject is *tē* understood. 9. *vestitū et crētā*: translate by *clothes whitened with chalk*. 10. *sedent*: the reference is to the seated audience. 11. *frūgi*: an indeclinable adjective. 12. *mē miserum*: wretch that I am (532).

224.

ECHO ANSWERS

Of sweet companions, mine, for choice,
Is Echo of the dulcet voice
Who carols rounds and glees with me
And thoroughly agrees with me.

ARTHUR GUITERMAN, *Echo**

The following lines are taken from one of the poems of Publius Ovidius Naso (Ovid), the Roman story-teller. In fifteen books, called *Metamor-*

*From *The Light Guitar*, by Arthur Guiterman, published by Harper & Brothers.

phōsēs, he tells fascinating stories based upon Greek and Roman mythology. Ovid is typical of the cultivated, gay, and witty society man of his day at Rome. The Emperor Augustus sent him in exile to Tomi on the Black Sea, where he died about 17 A.D.

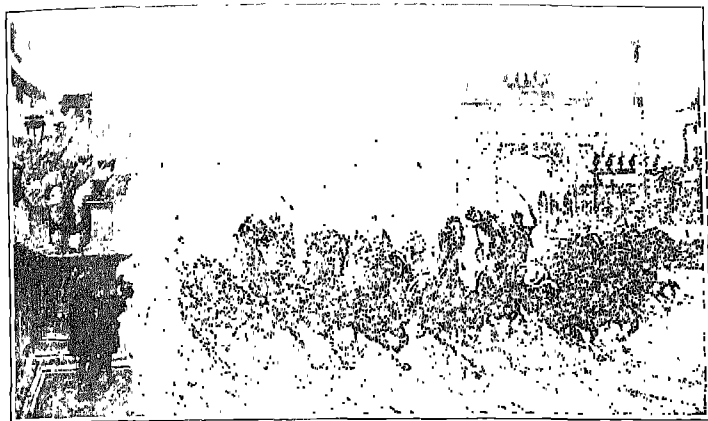
Forte puer,¹ comitum sēductus ab agmine fidō,²
 Dixerat, "Ecquis adest?"³ et "Adest," responderat Ēchō.
 Hic stupet, atque aciem partēs dimittit⁴ in omnēs;
 Vōce, "Venī!" magnā clāmat. Vocat illa vocantem.⁵
 Respicit, et rursus nullō veniente, "Quid,"⁶ inquit,
 "Mē fugis?" et totidem quot dixit, verba recipit.
 Perstat, et alternae dēceptus imāgine vōcis,⁷
 "Hūc coeāmus,"⁸ ait, nullūque libentius umquam
 Respōnsūra sonō,⁹ "Coeāmus," rettulit Ēchō.

1. puer: Narcissus, a beautiful youth, with whom the nymph Echo had fallen in love. 2. comitum . . . fidō: separated from the band of his faithful companions. 3. Ecquis adest?: is there anyone here? 4. aciem, dimittit: directs his gaze. 5. vocantem: modifies eum understood. 6. Quid: why. 7. alternae . . . vōcis: deceived by the echo of an answering voice. 8. Hūc coeāmus: let us meet here. 9. nullūque . . . sonō: destined to answer no sound more gladly.

Other and much later writers of Latin verse have exercised their ingenuity in writing echo poems similar to this, in which the echo repeats the last syllables of the final word of the question and is itself an answer to the question. A sixteenth century poet has this line: "Diū miserum mē fore rēris?" "Eris." Do you think that I will be wretched long? You will be. Capellanus in *Sprechen Sie Lateinisch, Do You Speak Latin*, has imitated this kind of a poem in the following dialogue: (Read these in Latin before translating.)

"Fuerōne beātus sī perservābō in bonīs litterīs?" "Eris."
 "Quid, sī uxōrem dūxerō?" "Sērō."
 "Nōn mē dēlectant sermōnēs tuī disyllabī." "Abī."¹
 "Fācundior essēs,² opīnor, sī longius abessem?" "Essem."
 Coepī prior, sed videō nōn posse vitārī, quā posterior dēsīnās."
 "Sīnās."
 "Sī mē volēs abire, dīcītō." "Iītō!"³

1. Abī: the imperative. 2. essēs: you would be. 3. Iītō: go; future imperative of eō. Observe that the Echo does not always repeat the quantity of a vowel correctly.



From a painting by E. Forti

Courtesy of Signora Forti

THE LADY'S FAVORITE

225.

AT THE RACES

This monologue of a gallant, seated beside his sweetheart at the circus, is a translation from one of Ovid's poems, the *Amôres*, *Loves*. It gives a picture of a Roman chariot race.*

I am not sitting here because I am a fancier of blooded horses, yet I hope that the one you favor may win. I came to talk with you and to sit with you, that you might know the love you inspire. You look at the races. I look at you. Let us both look at that which pleases, each feast our eyes.

O happy driver, who has your support! So it is his good fortune to arouse your interest!

You there on the right, whoever you are, have a care, for the lady is annoyed by your pressing on her side!

Would you like in the meantime to summon the ready breezes, the fan moved by my hand will start them. While I have been speaking your white dress has been sprinkled with light dust. Away, vile dust, from this fair form!

* For a full account of the races see JOHNSTON, *Private Life of the Romans*, Sections 328-343; LEW WALLACE, *Ben Hur*, Book Five, Chapter XIV.

But your feet do not touch the floor. If you like, you can stick the tips of your toes through the grating. The circus is now clear for the big show and the praetor has sent the four-horse chariots from the starting place. I see the one whom you favor. Whoever has your favor will win. The very horses seem to know what you desire. Wretch, he has gone around the post in a wide curve! What are you doing? The next one with wheel close gains on you. What are you doing? Pull, I beg, the left rein with all your might! We are favoring a ne'er-do-well. But call them back, Romans, and as a signal toss your togas from every side! Good! they call them back!

And now the barriers are unbarred again and the gates are open wide; the many-colored line flies forth at full speed. Pass them, push forward, see that the prayers of my sweet-heart are fulfilled!

Realized are my lady's prayers, but mine are not. Your driver has won his palm, my prize is yet to be won.

She smiled and with sparkling eyes promised — something. That is enough for this time.

226.

LOVERS' QUARRELS

This epigram expresses the feeling of Catullus for a young woman whom he calls Lesbia, who is the inspiration of many of his poems.

Ōdī¹ et amō; quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
Nesciō,² sed fierī sentiō³ et excrucior.

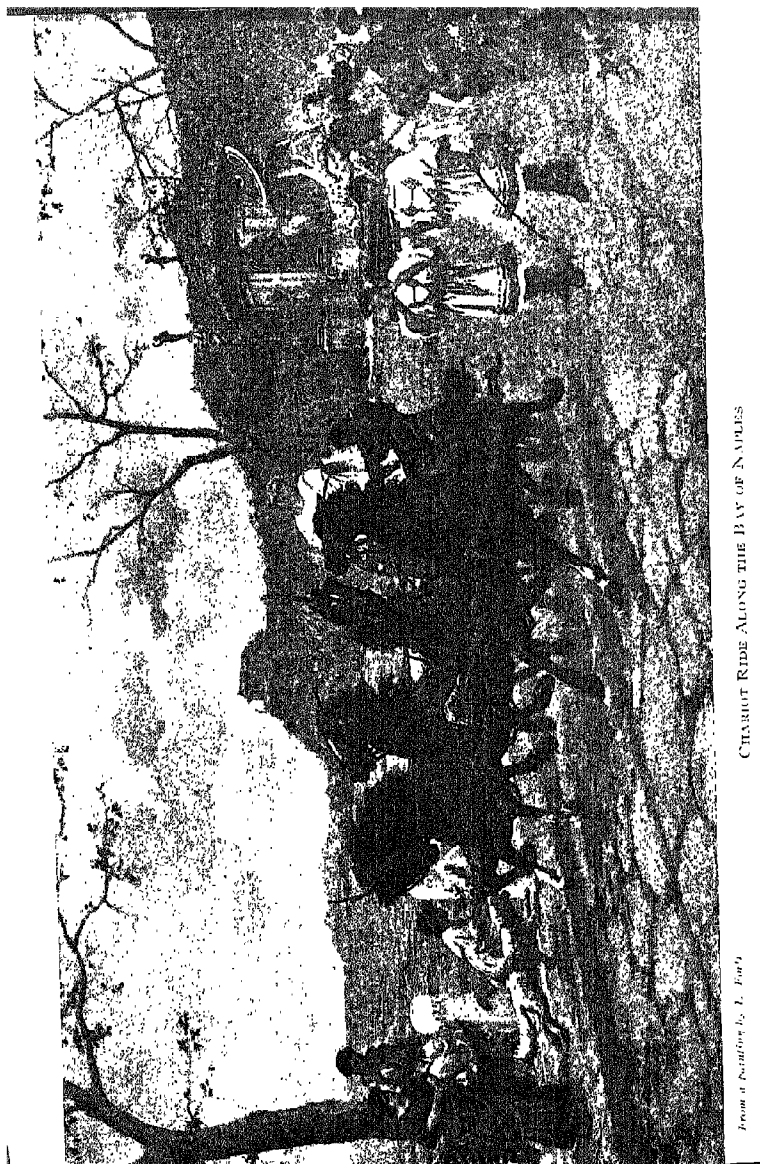
1. Ōdī: translate as a present tense (503). 2. Note that final o is marked short because of the meter. 3. fierī sentiō: *I know it is (true)*.

227.

A CONFIRMED BACHELOR

This story is told by Gellius in *Noctēs Atticae*.

Multis et doctis audientibus, legēbātur ōrātiō Metellī, gravis ac fācundī virī, quam habuit ad populum dē dūcendīs uxōribus,¹ cum eum ut in mātirimōnium mulierem dūceret hortārētur.² In eā ōrātiōne ita scriptum fuit: "Sī sine uxōre vīvere possēmus,



CHARIOT RIDE ALONG THE BAY OF NAPLES

From a painting by L. Fatti

omni cā molestiā carērēmus;³ sed quoniam ita nātūra fēcit ut nec cum illis satis commodē, nec sine illis ullō modō vivī⁴ possit, salūtī perpetuae potius quam brevī voluptātī cōsulendum est.”⁵

1. *dē . . . uxōribus*: concerning marriage. 2. *cum . . . hortārētur*: when the people were urging him to marry. 3. *omni . . . carērēmus*: we would do without all that nuisance; the conclusion of the contrary to fact condition, *sī . . . possēmus*. 4. *vivī*: passive infinitive; complementary with *possit*. 5. *salūtī . . . est*: (we) ought to consult for our permanent good rather than passing pleasures.

228.

A ROMAN JOKE

Quintilian in *Īnstitūtīōnēs Orātōriæ*, *Education of an Orator*, tells this story, first told by Cicero, as an example of wit in which the point is not stated in so many words, but implied from the context.

M. Fabius Quintilianus (35-95 A.D.), born in Spain, became Rome's most celebrated teacher of rhetoric.

Quāle illud¹ apud Cicerōnem² querentī,³ quod uxor sua ex ficō sē suspendisset, “Rogō dēs⁴ mihi surculum ex illā arbore ut īseram,” intellegitur enim, nōn dicitur.

1. *illud*: that (answer); supply *erat*. 2. *apud Cicerōnem*: in Cicero; i.e., in his book, *The Orator*. 3. *querentī*: to one complaining. 4. (ut) *dēs*: that you give.

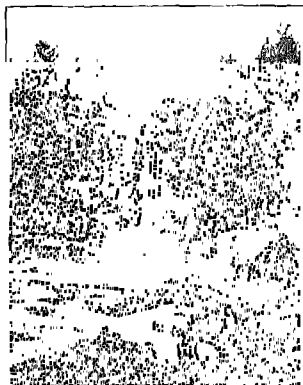
229.

THE BORE

The following selection is taken from one of the best known satires of Quintus Horatius Flaccus (Horace), who was one of Rome's greatest poets. Perhaps no other poet has been studied, read, and quoted more than Horace.

Ībam forte viā Sacrā,¹ sicut meus est mōs,
accurrit quīdam nōtus mihi nōmine tantum,²
arreptāque manū, “Quid agis, dulcissime rerum?”³
“Suāviter, ut nunc est,” inquam, “et cupiō omnia quae vīs.”
Cum assectārētur, “Numquid vīs?”⁴ occupō.⁵ At ille
“Nōris nōs,”⁶ inquit, “doctī sumus!” Hic ego, “Plūris
hōc,”⁷ inquam, “mihi eris.” Miserē discēdere quaerēns,⁸
īre⁹ modo ōcius, interdum cōsistere, in aurem
dicere nesciō * quid puerō,¹⁰ cum quidlibet¹¹ ille
garriret, vicōs, urbem laudāret. Ut illī

* nesciō: the o is shortened for metrical purposes.



Rome

Courtesy of Grace A. Emery

SACRA VIA

It was down this ancient street through the Roman Forum that Horace was walking when he was pursued by the bore.

nīl respondēbam, "Miserē cupis," inquit, "abīre;
iam dūdum vidēō; sed nīl agis;¹² usque tenēbō;¹³
persequar; hinc quō nunc iter est tibi?"¹⁴ "Nīl opus est tē
circumagī;¹⁵ quendam volō vīserē nōn tibi nōtum;
15 trāns Tiberim longē cubat is, prope Caesaris hortōs."
"Nīl habēō quod agam, et nōn sum piger; usque sequar tē."

1. viā Sacrā: a famous street through the Roman Forum. 2. tantum: only.
3. Quid . . . rērum: how do you do, my dear fellow? What is it literally? 4. Num-
quid vīs: you don't want anything, do you? 5. occupō: I anticipate him with.
6. Nōrīs nōs: translate make my acquaintance; nōrīs = nōveris, perfect subjunc-
tive; nōs, note the editorial first person in this and the following expression. 7. Plū-
ris hōc: of more worth for this reason; the genitive used in the predicate (511, c).
8. Miserē . . . quaerēns: desperately trying to get away. 9. ire: this and the fol-
lowing infinitives are to be translated as verbs, I go, etc. 10. in aurem . . . puerō:
say something or other into the ear of my slave. 11. quidlibet: translate at random;
object of garriret, chattered about. 12. iam dūdum . . . agis: I saw (that) long
ago; but it is of no use. 13. usque tenēbō: I shall hold on to you to the end. 14. hinc
. . . tibi: from this place where does your way now lead? 15. Nīl . . . circumagī:
there is no need for you to be taken out of your way.

230.

FRIENDSHIP

This discussion of friendship is from one of Cicero's best known and charming essays, *Dē Amicitia*. The principal speaker is Gaius Laelius, whose friendship with Scipio the Younger was famous.

Quid dulcius quam habere quicum¹ omnia audeās sic loqui ut tecum? Qui esset tantus fructus,² beātis rēbus, nisi habērēs qui illis magis quam tū ipse gauderet? ³ Adversās⁴ vērō ferre difficile esset⁵ sine eō qui illās⁶ gravius etiam quam tū ferret. Amicitia rēs plurimās continet; quōquō tē verteris,⁷ praestō⁸ est, nūllō locō exclūdītur, numquam gravis est; itaque nōn aquā, nōn igni,⁸ ut aiunt, locis pluribus ūtimur quam amicitia.

1. quicum: (one) with whom. The antecedent is omitted, (560, b). 2. Quī . . . fructus: what sort of enjoyment would there be? 3. nisi . . . gauderet: if you did not have (one) who in these would rejoice more than you yourself. This same sentiment is found in Bacon's essay on *Friendship*. 4. Adversās (rēs): adversity. 5. esset: would be. 6. illās: refers to adversās. 7. quōquō . . . verteris: translate wherever one turns; perfect subjunctive (582, a). 8. aquā, igni: ablatives with ūtimur. Water and fire were symbols of prime necessities. To deprive a Roman citizen of fire and water was to sentence him to exile.

231.

IMMORTALITY

This extract is from Cicero's *Dē Senectūte*. The author has just finished his discussion to the effect that a happy old age must rest on a good foundation laid in youth.

Vixi ita ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum¹ existimem, et ex vitā ita discēdō ut ex hospitio, nōn ē domō. Ō praeclārum diem,² cum in illud dīvinum animōrum concilium coetumque proficiscar cumque ex hāc turbā discēdam! Proficiscar enim nōn ad eōs solum virōs dē quibus ante dixi, vērū etiam ad filium meum³ quō nēmō vir melior nātus est, cuius³ ā mē corpus est cremātum, animus vērō nōn mē dēserēns, in ea loca discessit quō mihi ipsi cernēbat esse veniendum.⁴

1. nātum: supply esse; an indirect statement with existimem; mē is the subject. 2. diem: an accusative of exclamation. 3. cuius: his. 4. quō . . . veniendum: where it saw that I too must come; mihi is a dative of agent with the periphrastic form, esse veniendum.

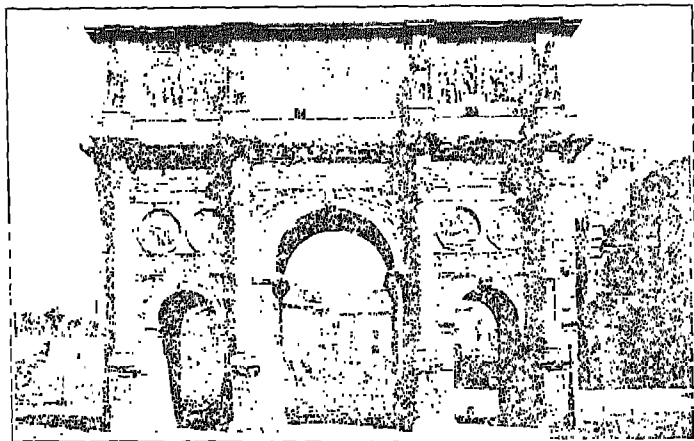
232.

THE HEAVENS DECLARE THE GLORY OF GOD

This passage is from one of Cicero's philosophical works.

Cum vidēmus speciem primum candōremque caeli;¹ deinde conversiōnis celeritātem tantam quantum cōgitāre nōn possumus; tum vicissitudinēs² diērum atque noctium; sōlem lūnamque; tum in eōdem orbe,³ in XII partīs distribūtō, quīnque⁴ stellās ferri; nocturnamque caeli fōrmam⁵ undique sideribus ornātam; hominemque ipsum; haec igitur et alia plūrima cum cernimus, possumus dubitāre quīn iīs praesit aliquis vel effector,⁶ sī haec nāta sunt, ut Platōnī⁷ vidētur, vel, sī semper fuērunt, moderātor tantī operis et mūneris?⁸

1. *speciem . . . caeli*: the beauty and splendor of the heavens. A thought similar to this is found in *Psalm XIX*. 2. *vicissitudinēs*: changes. 3. *orbe*: the Zodiac. 4. *quīnque*: Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. 5. *fōrmam*: beauty. 6. *quīn . . . effector*: that there is over these someone, either a maker. 7. *Platōnī*: Plato was a famous Greek philosopher. 8. *mūneris*: display; this word, which is used very often to designate a show given to the people by an official, suggests the beautiful spectacle the Maker of the Universe has provided for man's enjoyment.



Rome, Italy

THE TRIUMPHAL ARCH OF CONSTANTINE

233.

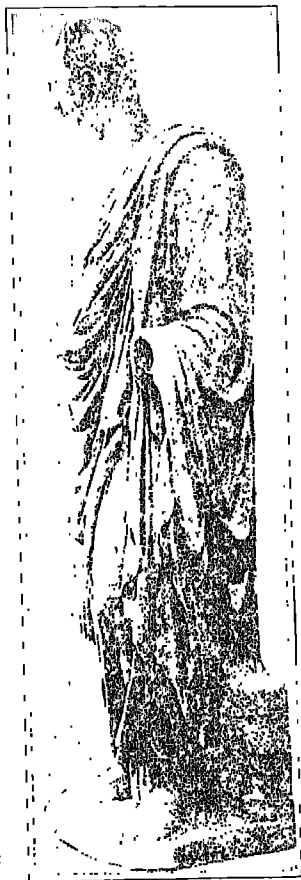
AN HONORABLE MAN

A *vir bonus* is thus characterized by Seneca in *Dē Beneficiis*.

Vir bonus, quod honestē sē factūrum putāverit, faciet, etiam sī labōriōsum erit; faciet, etiam sī damnoōsum erit; faciet, etiam sī periculōsum erit. Rūsus, quod turpe erit nōn faciet, etiam sī pecūniam afferet, etiam sī voluptātem, etiam sī potentiam. Ab honestō nullā rē dēterrēbitur; ad turpia nullā spē invītābitur.

CĪVIS RŌMĀNUS

This portrait statue represents a Roman citizen. He appears to be a man of great dignity. His face is strong and sensitive with a trace of humor. He wears a toga, the distinctive garb of a Roman citizen. Note the grace and dignity of the toga. This garment was usually made of heavy white wool and was about five yards long and four yards wide. It was doubled lengthwise and thrown over the left shoulder in such a way that a short end almost reached the ground in front. The long end was brought from the back under the right arm and carried across the chest to the left shoulder over which it was thrown in folds which hung to the ground in the back.



Courtesy of Cleveland Museum of Art

234.

FOOTPATH TO PEACE

Junius Juvenalis (Juvenal) lived in the last half of the first century A.D. and the first half of the second.

He wrote sixteen satires in which he bitterly assailed the vices and folly of his time. He said, "Indignation makes verses" and "It is difficult not to write satire." The verses quoted here are from a famous satire which has been imitated, quoted, and referred to by many writers. The best imitation is by Dr. Samuel Johnson in his *Vanity of Human Wishes*.

Ōrandum est ¹ ut sit mēns sāna in corpore sānō.
 Fortem posce animum, mortis terrōre carentem,²
 quī ³ spatium vītāe extrēmum inter mūnera ⁴ pōnat
 nātūrae, quī ³ ferre queat quōscumque ⁵ labōrēs,
 5 nesciat irāscī,⁶ cupiat nihil et potiōrēs ⁷
 Herculis aerumnās crēdat saevōsque labōrēs
 et Venere ⁸ et cēnīs et plūmā ⁹ Sardanapalli.¹⁰
 Mōnstrō ¹¹ quod ipse tibi possis dare. Sēmita certē
 tranquillae per virtūtem patet ūnica vītāe.¹²

1. Ōrandum est: one should pray. 2. carentem: free from. 3. quī: its antecedent is *animum*; it is the subject of the five verbs in this clause. 4. spatium . . . mūnera: the end of life among the blessings. 5. quōscumque: any whatsoever. 6. nesciat irāscī: knows not anger. 7. potiōrēs: better than; modifies *aerumnās* and *labōrēs*. 8. Venere: translate *than* love. 9. plūmā: downy couch. 10. Sardanapalli: king of Assyria, noted for his love of luxury. 11. Mōnstrō: the second o is marked short because of the meter. 12. Sēmita . . . vītāe: This sentiment is found in Pope's *Essay on Man*: "Know then this truth enough for man to know, virtue alone is happiness below."

235.

TO SEE OURSELVES AS OTHERS SEE US

The following lines are by Phaedrus, who lived in the first century A.D. He is the author of nearly a hundred fables and stories.

Pērās imposuit Iuppiter nōbīs duās:
 Propriīs replētam vitīis ¹ post tergum dedit,
 Aliēnīs ante pectus suspendit gravem;²
 Hāc rē ³ vidēre nostra mala nōn possumus.

1. Propriīs . . . vitīis: one filled with our own defects. 2. Aliēnīs, gravem: one heavy with (those of) others. 3. Hāc rē: for this reason.

236.

IGNORANTIA LĒGIS NĒMINEM EXCŪSAT

The language of the law is full of Latin expressions. Some of these are in the form of words and phrases, such as *mandamus*, *venire*, *habeas corpus*, which are used so commonly that they are no longer thought of as Latin. Many important principles of law are to be found also in Latin, summarized in brief statements called maxims.

Accūsāre nēmō sē dēbet.

Bona fidēs exigit ut quod convēnit fiat.

Cōsentire vidētur quī tacet.

Diēs dominicus nōn est iūridicus.

Ex nihilō nihil fit.

5

Facta sunt potentiōra verbīs.

Generāle nihil certī implicat.

Hērēditās est successiō in ūniversum iūs quod dēfūctus habuerat.

Id possumus quod dē iūre possumus.

10

Iūris praecepta sunt hacc, honestē vīvere, alterum nōn laedere, suum cuique tribuere.

Lēx prōspicit, nōn respicit.

Minātur innocentibus quī parcit nocentibus.

Nēmō est suprā lēgēs.

15

Omnia praesūmuntur rīte et sollemniter esse ācta dōnec prōbētur in contrārium.

Plūs peccat auctor quam āctor.

Quod dubitās, nē fēceris.

Rēs ipsa loquitur.

20

Salūs populī est suprēma lēx.

Testis oculātus ūnus plūs valet quam aurītī decem.

Ubi iūs, ibi remedium.

Vēritās habenda est in iūrātōre; iūstītia et iūdiciū in iūdice.

"There is no better way for the student to train himself in the choice of the very word that will fit his thought than by translation from Latin and Greek. Such habits are worth more to the lawyer than all training which a modern school may impart."

ROSCOE POUND, Dean of Law School, Harvard University.



Museum at Trier, Germany

A TARDY SCHOLAR

This ancient relief depicts a school scene which is typically Roman. The teacher occupies the middle chair between two pupils, who hold book rolls.

237.

THE FIRST LATIN PRIMER

In Roman days there were no texts especially prepared for young people. The education of children began with the reading of Horace, Vergil, and other authors, very difficult for beginners. In order to provide easier material for reading, a schoolmaster of the fourth century made a collection of Latin couplets to serve as a first reader and a textbook in morals. This book, called the *Distichs of Cato*, was much used in the schools of the middle ages and continued to be a very popular text until the beginning of the nineteenth century. The quaint translations of the couplets included here are from an old English translation made in 1663, and from one published in Philadelphia in 1735 by Benjamin Franklin.

Cum tibi vel socium vel fidum quaeris amicum,
Nōn tibi fortūna est hominis sed vīta petenda.

When-e'er a trusty friend thou dost desire,
Not of his wealth but of his life inquire.

Disce ā doctīs, indoctōs ipse docētō;
Prōpāganda etenim est rērum doctrīna bonārum.

Learn only of the learned, teach the untaught;
Knowledge of truth must to all men be brought.

Contrā verbōsōs nōlī contendere verbīs;
Sermō datur cūnctīs, animī sapientia paucīs.

Try not with words the talker to outdo ;
On all is speech bestowed ; good sense on few.

*Si tibi prō meritīs nēmō succurrit amīcus,
Incūsāre deōs nōlī, sed tē ipse coercē.*

When in thy time of need friends fail to come,
Blame not the gods, because the fault's at home.

*Coniugis irātae nōlī tū verba timēre ;
Nam lacrimīs struit insidiās, cum fēmina plōrat.*

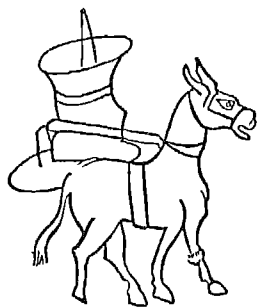
Thy wroth wife's speech fear not. But have a care ;
A woman by her weeping can ensnare.

*Verbera cum tuleris discēns aliquandō magistri,
Fer patris imperium, cum verbis exit in iram.*

Since thou at school thy teacher's blows hast known,
Thou'lt better bear thy father's angry tone.

*Mīrāris versūs nūdīs mē scribere verbis ?
Hoc brevitās fēcit, sēnsū ūnō iungere bīnōs.*

Dost ask why I this form of verses choose ?
Know brevity did bid me couplets choose.



LABORARE
QUOMODO
EGOLABORAVI
FIPRODERITIBI

THE REWARD OF TOIL

This caricature of a donkey turning a mill, found on the walls of one of the palaces on the Palatine Hill, was probably scratched by a page or a schoolboy. The translation of the inscription is: "Labor, little donkey, as I have labored, and it will be of advantage to you." Find the Latin for each of these words.



<p>'Twas thou hast seen in short, all things that can be shewed, and hast learned the <i>chief Words</i> of the <i>English</i> and <i>Latin</i> <i>Tongue.</i></p>	<p>Ita vidisti summam res omnes quæ poterunt ostendi, & didicisti <i>Voces primarias</i> <i>Anglicæ & Latinæ</i> <i>Linguae.</i></p>
--	--

<p>Go on now and read other good <i>Books</i> diligently. and thou shalt become <i>learned, wise, and good.</i></p>	<p>Perge nunc & lege diligenter alias bonos <i>Libros,</i> ut fias <i>doctus, sapiens, & pius.</i></p>
---	--

<p>Remember these things; fear God, and call upon him, that he may bestow upon thee the <i>Spirit of Wisdom.</i> Farewell.</p>	<p>Memento horum; Deum time, & invoca eum, ut largiatur tibi <i>Spiritum Sapientiæ.</i> Vale.</p>
--	---

238.

THE FIRST ILLUSTRATED LATIN TEXTBOOK

This is page 194 from the first illustrated text for the use of students of Latin. This book, called *Orbis Pictus, The Pictured World*, was written by a seventeenth century educator named Comenius, who thought that pupils would learn Latin more easily if the word and the object were associated. *Orbis Pictus* soon became the most popular textbook in Europe. The English translation here given is from one made in 1727.

239.

GAUDEĀMUS IGITUR

Gaudeāmus Igitur is a student song, the second and third stanzas of which appeared in the thirteenth century as a religious song. Other stanzas were added from time to time. The author is unknown.

Gaudeāmus igitur,
Iuvenēs dum sumus;
Post iūcundam iuventūtem,
Post molestam senectūtem
Nōs habēbit humus, 5
Nōs habēbit humus.

Ubi sunt, quī ante nōs
In mundō fuēre?
Vādite ad superōs
Trānsīte ad inferōs, 10
Ubi iam fuēre,
Ubi iam fuēre.

Vīta nostra brevis est,
Brevī finiētur;
Venit mors vėlōciter, 15
Rapit nōs atrōciter,
Nēminī parcētur,
Nēminī parcētur.

Vivat acadēmia,
Vivant professōrēs, 20
Vivat membrum quodlibet,
Vivant membra quaelibet;
Semper sint in flōre,
Semper sint in flōre.



Queen Mathilda Bayeux Tapestry

THE STORY-TELLER

Quid rīdēs? Mūtātō nōmine, dē tē fābula nārrātur. *Why do you laugh?*
If the name is changed, the story is told about yourself. HORACE

240.

THE PRICE OF LUXURY

This fable is from a collection of fables which have been handed down under the name of Aesop, who was a Greek slave of the fifth century B.C.

Lupus, quī canem bene nūtrītum vidēbat, dīxit, "Quanta est tua fēlicitās! Tū, ut vidētur, bene vivis, at ego famē pereō!" Respondit canis, "Venī mēcum in urbem, ibi eandem fēlicitātem habēbis." Lupus condiciōnem accēpit. Dum ūnā iter faciunt, animadvertit lupus cervicem canis attrītā. "Quid," inquit, "hoc est? Num iugum sustinēs?" "Nihil est," respondit canis, "sed interdiū mē alligant ut noctū sim custōs melior. Haec sunt vēstigia vinculi quod in cervicem meam pōnitur." Tum lupus dixit, "Valē, amice. Fēlicitās servitūte ēmpla mihi nōn placet."



National Museum, Naples

A CHAINED DOG



A FELINE ENEMY

This sculptured relief was lately found on a slab in the old wall of Themistocles at Athens, Greece.

241.

WHO WILL BELL THE CAT?

This fable and the two following are from a group of fables collected by Odo, an English monk of the twelfth century, for use in the pulpit and classroom.

Mūrēs iniērunt cōnsilium quōmodo ā fēle sē praecavēre possent, et ait quaedam sapientior cēteris, "Alligētur tintinābulum in fēle, tunc poterimus praecavēre fēlem ipsum et audire quōcumque perrēxerit, et sic eius insidiās vitāre." Placuit omnibus cōnsilium hoc, et dixit ūna, "Quae mūs igitur est inter nōs tantā armāta audaciā ut in fēle alliget tintinābulum?" Respondit ūna mūs, "Certē nōn ego!" Respondit alia, "Certē nōn ego audeō prō tōtō mundō ad fēlem appropinquāre."

242.

THE FOX IN THE WELL

Vulpēs cāsū cecidit in puteum. Vēnit lupus et quaesivit quid faceret ibi vulpēs; quae ait, "Bone frāter, hīc habēō multōs piscēs et magnōs. Volō ut mēcum partem habēās!" Et ait lupus, "Quōmodo possum ibi dēscendere?" Ait vulpēs, "Superest ūna situla, pōne tē intus, et veniēs deorsum." Et erant ibi duae situlae; quāndō ūna dēscenderat, alia ascenderat.

Lupus posuit sē in situlam quae erat suprā et dēscendit; vulpēs in aliā situlā ascendit. Ubi alter alterī occurrit, ait lupus, "Bone frāter, quō vādīs?" Et ait vulpēs, "Satis comēdi
 10 et ascendō; tū dēscendēs inveniēs incredibilia." Dēscendit miser lupus, nec invenit aliquid nisi aquam. Vēnērunt māne rūstici et extrāxērunt lupum et interfēcērunt.

243.

A SACK OF TRICKS

Vulpēs, sive Reynardus, occurrit fēli et ait Reynardus, "Quot fraudēs vel artificia nōvisti?" Ait fēlis, "Certē, sciō unum." Et ait Reynardus, "Quod est illud?" Respondit fēlis, "Ubi canēs mē insequuntur, sciō ascendere in arborēs et
 5 ēvādere. Et tū, quot scīs?" Respondit Reynardus, "Sciō xvii, et adhūc habeo sacculum plēnum. Veni mēcum et docēbō tē artificia mea nē canēs tē capiant." Annuī fēlis et unā cum vulpe ibat. Canēs insequēbantur cōs. Ait fēlis, "Audiō canēs, iam timeō!" Et ait Reynardus, "Nōlī timēre. Bene
 10 tē instruam. Ēvādēs." Appropinquāvērunt canēs. "Certē," dixit fēlis, "longius nōn tēcum ibō; volō ūti artificiō meō." Et ascendit in arborem. Canēs cum dīmīsērunt, et Reynardum insecūtī sunt et tandem cōpērunt, quīdam per tibiās, quīdam per dorsum, quīdam per caput. Fēlis in altā arbore sedēs
 15 clāmitābat, "Reynarde, Reynarde! Aperi sacculum tuum! Certē omnēs fraudēs tuas nōn valent ōvum."

244.

HARD TO PLEASE

This story and the three following are by Jacques de Vitry, a Roman bishop of the thirteenth century, whose sermons are famous for the "Exempla" or stories which they contain. These four stories are typical of the illustrations which he used to make his discourses interesting.

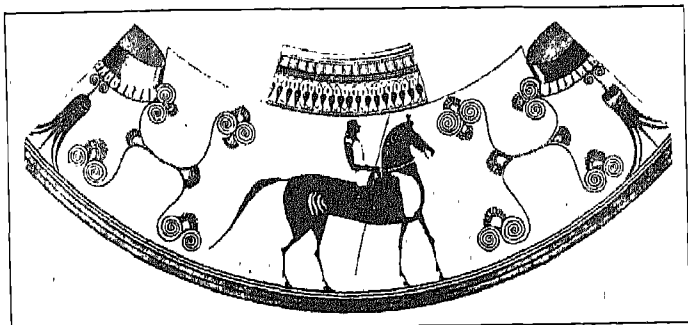
Servī virī potentis, cum dūcerent quendam hominem ut eum suspenderent, venientēs ad silvam illi dixerunt, "Oportet ut suspendāmus tē, sicut iniūctum est nobīs, sed hanc grātiam facimus, ut ex omnibus arboribus huius silvae eligās tibi aliquam

in quā māvīs suspendī; multās et pulchrās et altās inveniēs 5
 quae tē bene sustentābunt et poteris honestē suspendī.” Cum
 autem dūcerent illum per multās arborēs, dicēbant, “Tibi
 placet haec arbor?” At ille, “Nōn placet mihi, in istā suspendī
 nōlō.” Cum per omnēs trānsīssent, numquam arborem in-
 venīre quae illi placuit poterant. 10

245.

A HORSEBACK RIDE

Mulier cum in amphorā ad forum lac portāret, coepit
 cōgitāre in viā quōmodo posset fierī dīves. Cum dē suō lacte
 trēs nummōs habēret, coepit cōgitāre quid dē illīs tribus num-
 mīs emeret. “Emam,” inquit, “gallīnam et ex ōvis multōs
 pullōs habēbō. Quibus vēnditīs, emam porcum, quem 5
 nūtrītum vēdam, et inde emam equum aptum ad equi-
 tandum.” Tum coepit dicere, “Equitābō equum illum et
 dīcam eī, ‘Iō, iō.’” Cum autem haec cōgitāret, coepit movēre
 pedēs, quasi calcāria in pedibus habēret, et manūs; ita mōtū
 pedum et manuum amphoram frēgit, et, lacte in terrā effūsō, 10
 in manibus suis nihil invēnit; et sicut antea pauper fuerat, ita
 postea pauperior fuit. Multī enim multa prōpōnunt et nihil
 faciunt.



From a Greek vase painting

MY KINGDOM FOR A HORSE!

246.

THE POWER OF SUGGESTION

Cum rústicus agnum portāret ad forum, quīdam ait sociis suis, "Facite id quod dīcam vōbīs et grātis illum agnum habēbimus." Eōs in diversīs locīs posuit, sēparātīm, ūnum post ūnum. Trāseunte autem rústicō, prīmus ait, "Homō, vīs vēdere illum canem?" At ille nihil respondit et prōcessit. Cum autem venīret ubi alius stābat, dīxit ille, "Frāter, vīs mihi vēdere illum canem?" "Domine, nōn ferō canem sed agnum." Rústicus, cum autem idem tertius dīxisset, coepit admirārī et irāscī. Quartō autem et quīntō idem dicentibus, rústicus, quod totiēns dictum esset cum esse canem, sextō ait, "Nōlō vēdere, sed grātis accipe, et nōlī mihi irridēre." Et illi abstulērunt agnum et comēdērunt.

247.

HAVING THE LAST WORD

This folk tale with many variations is found in several different languages.

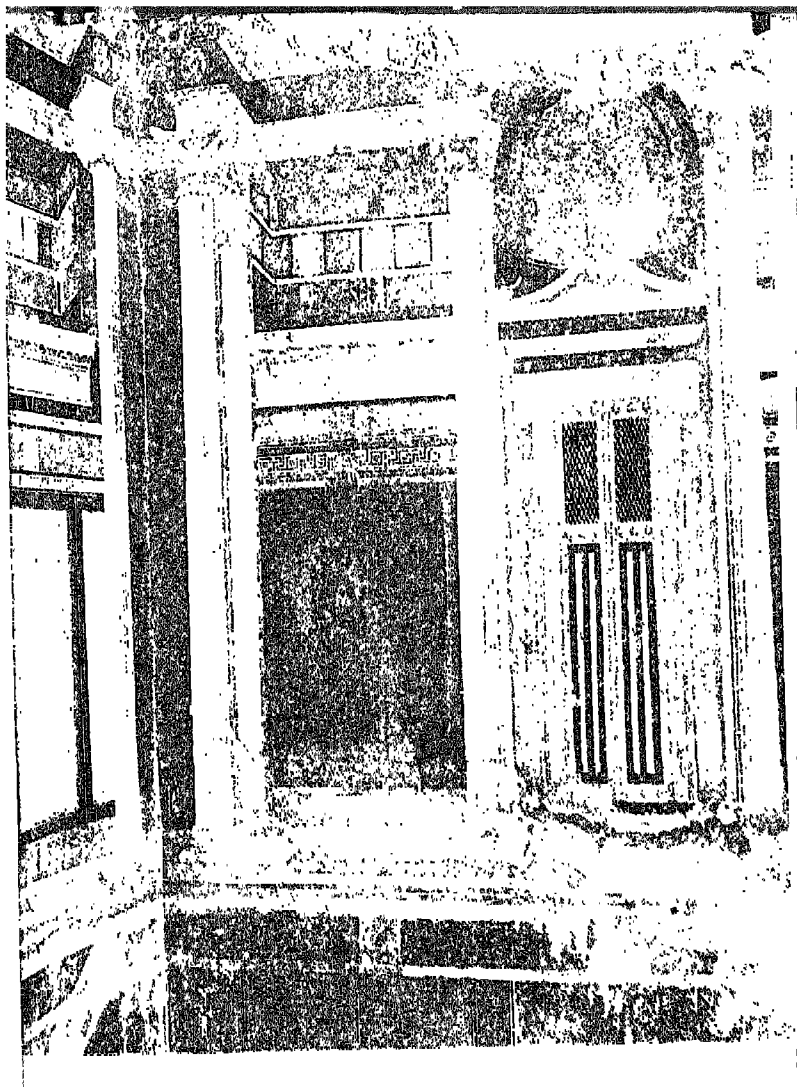
Dē fēminā audīvī hoc: cum trānsīret per campum cum virō suō, dixit vir, "Hic campus falcātus." At illa, "Immō est tōnsus." "Immō falce," ait marītus, "falcātus est." Respondit uxor, "Nōn est, sed forcipe tōnsus;" et coepērunt litigāre. Tandem marītus irātus abscidit linguam uxōris. Illa vērō cum digitīs forcipēs exprimēns signō significābat campum tōnsum esse et, cum nōn posset ōre, digitīs litigāre coepit. Sic faciunt quīdam sī quandō eīs silentium imperātur.

248.

THE LAZY SLAVE

This story and the one that follows are from a collection of tales, chiefly Oriental, which was made in the twelfth century by Petrus Alfonsus while at the court of Alfonso of Aragon.

Dominus Maymundō praecepit quādam nocte ut domūs iānuam clauderet. Ille piger surgere nōluit et dīxit, "Clausā est." Māne dominus servō dīxit, "Maymunde, aperī iānuam." Cui servus, "Domine, quod volēbās cam māne esse apertam,



"SPLENDOR SET WITH ALL SUPERB DESIGN"

BAUDELAIRE, LA BEAUTÉ

Decorated walls in the villa of Diomedes at Pompeii.

eam sērō claudere nōlūi." Tunc primum comperit dominus eum esse pigrum et illi, "Surge," inquit, "fac opus tuum, diēs est, et sōl iam altus est." Cui servus, "Sī sōl iam altus est, dā mihi cibum." Cui dominus, "Serve male, vīs nocte comedere?" Cui servus, "Sī nox est, 10 permitte ut dormiam."



WORK DOES NOT
WORRY HIM

Item dominus noctū, "Maymunde, surge et vidē utrum pluat annōn." Ipse vērō advocāvit canem, quī iacēbat extrā iānuam, et cum vēnisset canis, pedibus inventis 15 siccis, "Domine," inquit, "nōn pluit."

Item ab eō dominus nocte quaesivit num ignis esset in domō. Ipse vērō, vocātā fēle, temptāvit sī calida esset annōn; et cum invēnisset frigidam, dixit, "Nōn est." 20

249.

BREAKING THE NEWS

Different English versions of this medieval story in dialogue form are to be found in old school readers.

Dominus dē forō laetus veniēbat. Servus, Maymundus, contrā dominum exiit. Quem cum vidēret, dominus timuit nē aliquōs malōs rŭmōrēs, ut mōs eius erat, diceret.

DOMINUS: "Cavē nē dicās rŭmōrēs malōs."

SERVUS: "Domine, nōn dicam rŭmōrēs malōs. Canis nostra 5 parvula mortua est."

DOMINUS: "Quōmodo mortua est?"

SERVUS: "Mŭlus noster perterritus est, et dum fugit sub pedibus suis canem oppressit."

DOMINUS: "Quid āctum est dē mŭlō?" 10

SERVUS: "In puteum cecidit et mortuus est."

DOMINUS: "Quōmodo perterritus est mŭlus?"

SERVUS: "Filius tuus cecidit dē tēctō et mortuus est, et inde territus est mŭlus."

15 DOMINUS: "Quid agit pueri māter?"

SERVUS: "Magnō dolōre mortua est."

DOMINUS: "Quis custōdit domum?"

SERVUS: "Nēmō, quoniam in cinerem versa est, et omnia quae in eā erant."

20 DOMINUS: "Quōmodo combusta est?"

SERVUS: "Eādem nocte quā domina mortua est, ancilla oblita est lucernae in cubiculō, et ita combusta est domus tōta."

DOMINUS: "Ubi est ancilla?"

25 SERVUS: "Cecidit trabs super eius caput, et mortua est."

DOMINUS: "Tū vērō quōmodo ēvāsistī, cum tam piger sīs?"

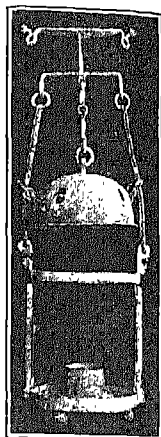
SERVUS: "Cum vidērem ancillam dēfūctam,
30 effūgī."

250. PLEASE EVERYBODY, PLEASE NOBODY

This story is told by Petrarch, an Italian scholar of the fourteenth century.

Ūnam tibi ē fābulis vulgō nōtis referam. Senex cum adulēscēte filiō agēbat iter. Hīs erat ūnus parvus asellus. Mox occurrunt duābus virginibus. Maxima nātū ex hīs dixit,
5 "Num quid potest esse stultius illis quī pedibus iter faciunt, nec asellō vehuntur?" Hoc ubi audīvit senex, filiū asellum ascendere iussit, et ipse cum alacritāte iter pergēbat. Nōn procul ab eō locō aliquī senēs sermōnem inter sē habēbant. Tum ūnus, "Quantum tempora mūtantur! Ubi nunc est ille
10 senectūtis proprius honor?" Pudōre filius victus patrem ascendere coēgit.

Via secundum flūmen dūcēbat in quō duae fēminae vestēs lavābant. Hae ūnā vōce dūrum fili labōrem questae sunt. Senex igitur, quī omnibus placēre vult, puerum post sē sedēre



Courtesy of Field Museum of Natural History, Chicago

ANCIENT LANTERN

This lantern, from a villa near Boscoreale at the foot of Mt. Vesuvius, is one of the treasures which belong to the Field Museum of Natural History.

iubet. Nec tamen ea rēs bene ēvenit quod alius viātor eīs¹⁵ occurrit. "Facilius potestis," inquit, "asellum vehere quam vōs miserum animal." Tum pater respondit: "Nihil quod ab omnibus probētur fieri potest; repetēmus pristinum mōrem nostrum."

Nihil amplius dicam, nec necesse est; rudis fābula, sed bona. Valē.

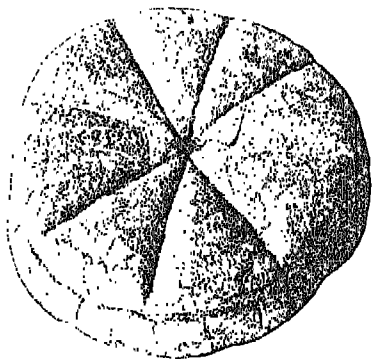
20

251.

THE HEAVY LOAF

This story is found in *Gesta Rōmānōrum*.

Duo caeci erant in cīvitāte Rōmānā. Ūnus ex eīs cotidiē clāmitābat per vīcos cīvitātis, "Bene iuvātur quem Dominus vult iuvāre." Alter vērō clāmitābat, "Bene iuvātur quem imperātor vult iuvāre." Cum imperātor hoc cotidiē audiret, praccēpit ut pānis fieret, et in pāne impōnerentur talenta multa⁵ et alteri caccō pānis darētur. Quō acceptō, alter propter pondus pānis alteri caecō pānem vēndidit. Caecus quī pānem ēmerat domum vēnit et, frāctō pāne, invēnit plēnum talentōrum et Deō grātiās ēgit, et postcā permānsit sine labōre. Alter vērō, cum adhūc pānem quaereret per cīvitātem, vocātus est ab¹⁰ imperātore, quī eī dīxit, "Ubi est pānis quem ego tibi praccēpī dari?" Ille respondit, "Vēndidī sociō meō, quia gravis mihi vidēbātur." "Vērē," ait imperātor, "bene iuvātur quem Deus iuvat!" et caecum ā sē reppulit.



A LOAF FROM POMPEII

This loaf of bread, baked more than eighteen hundred years ago, was found intact in the ruins of Pompeii.

252.

THE DAUGHTERS OF KING LEAR

Shakespeare probably took the plot of *King Lear* from this story, found in *Gesta Rōmānōrum*, a thirteenth century collection of stories, which has been used by many writers as a source for plots of stories and plays.

- Imperātor potēns in civitāte Rōmānā erat quī trēs filiās pulchrās habēbat. Dixitque filiae maximae nātū, "Quantum diligis mē?" Illa, "Certē," inquit, "plūs quam mē ipsam." Ait eī pater, "Et tē ad magnam dignitātem prōmovēbō."
- 5 Statim ipsam dedit rēgī divitī et potentī in uxōrem. Post haec vēnit ad secundam filiam et ait eī, "Quantum diligis mē?" Illa, "Tantum sicut mē ipsam." Post haec vēnit ad tertiam filiam et ait eī, "Quantum mē diligis?" Illa, "Tantum sicut valēs, et nōn plūs neque minus."
- 10 Post haec imperātor bellum contrā vicinū rēgem gessit. Rēx vērō imperātorem ex imperiō expulit. Pater scripsit litterās primae filiae suae quae, ut dixit, patrem suum plūs quam sē ipsam dilēxit, ut sibi succurreret in suā necessitatē, quod ex imperiō expulsus erat. Filia cum hās litterās eius
- 15 lēgisset, virō suō rēgī cāsum patris nārābat. Maritus, "Eī," inquit, "succurram. Colligam exercitum et adiuvābō eum." Ait illa, "Istud nōn potest fierī sine magnīs impēnsīs. Concēde, quamdiū est extrā imperium suum, quīnque milītēs." Et sic factum est. Filia patrī scripsit aliud auxilium habēre
- 20 eum nōn posse, nisi quīnque milītēs. Imperātor cum hoc audivisset, "Heu mihi," inquit, "tōta spēs mea erat in maximā nātū filiā meā quod, ut dixit, plūs mē dilēxit quam sē ipsam, et propter hoc ad magnam dignitātem ipsam prōmovī."
- Scripsit statim secundae filiae, quae dixerat, "Tantum tē
- 25 diligō quantum mē ipsam," ut succurreret sibi in tantā necessitatē. At illa cum audivisset, virō suō hoc cōnsilium dedit, ut nihil aliud patrī concēderet nisi victum et vestitum quamdiū viveret, et hoc patrī suō scripsit. Imperātor cum hoc audisset, dixit, "Dēceptus sum per duās filiās. Iam temptābō tertiam,
- 30 quae mihi dixit, 'Tantum tē diligō quantum valēs.' "

Tertiac filiae litterās scrīpsit. Ea cum vidisset inopiam patris, virō suō, "Domine mī," inquit, "mihi succurre. Iam pater meus expulsus est ab hērēditātē suā." Eī vir eius, "Quid vīs tū ut eī faciam?" Illa, "Exercitū collige, perge cum patre meō." Statim collēgit magnum exercitū, impēnsis 35 propriis suis, et unā cum imperātōre perrēxit ad bellum. Victōriam obtinuit et imperātōrem in imperiō suō posuit. Tunc ait imperātor: "Filiam meam minimam nātū minus aliis filiabus dilēxi. Sed illa mihi in magnā necessitatē succurrit, et aliae filiae meae dēfēcērunt. Eī tōtū imperiū relinqvam." 40

Post dēcessum patris filia minima nātū rēgnāvit et in pāce vitā finīvit.

253.

TWO AFTER DINNER STORIES, I

These two stories are taken from a story-telling contest in a *Colloquium* of Erasmus which contains anecdotes to be related at a banquet.

Erasmus was born at Rotterdam in 1466. He loved learning, associated with the great men of his day, and became a great scholar and leader. Among his many writings are *Colloquia*, which consist of seventy-nine Latin conversations intended to give valuable information on various subjects, and also to serve as models of conversational Latin. He always wrote and spoke in Latin.

Lūdovicus Galliārum rēx occāsione vēnātiōnis nactus est amicitiam cum Conōne, homine rūsticō. Ad eum saepe dēverterat rēx ex vēnātiōne et magnā cum voluptatē vēscēbātur rāpis.

Uxor monuit Conōnem ut rāpās aliquot insignēs rēgi dōnō afferret. Conōn nōluit sed uxor vicit. Conōn rāpās aliquot 5 insignēs dēlēgit. Vērū ipse per viam paulātīm omnēs comēdit, unā magnā exceptā. Ubi ad rēgiā pervēnit statim agnitus est ā rēge. Ille magnā cum alacritatē mūnus dētulit. Rēx maiōre alacritatē accēpit, mandāns ut diligenter pōnerētur inter ea quae habēret cārissima. Conōnem iubet sēcūm 10 accumbere. Post cēnam Conōnī grātiās ēgit et prō rāpā mille nummōs aureōs darī iussit.

Cum huius rei fāma, ut fit, per rēgiā perlāta esset, quīdam

rēgī dōnō dedit equum pulchrum. Rēx intellegēns illum,
 15 propter mūnus quod Conōnī dedisset, praedae cupidum esse,
 vultū laetō mūnus accēpit, et, convocātis principibus, cōn-
 sultāre coepit quid prō pulchrō equō daret. Interim is quī
 equum dederat spēs magnās habēre coepit, sic cōgitāns, “Sī
 tantōs nummōs prō rāpā dedit, quantōs prō equō pulchrō
 20 datūrus est?” Cum rēgī aliud aliud respondēret, tandem
 rēx, “Venit,” inquit, “in mentem quod illi dem.” Quōdam
 ē principibus accersitō, dixit in aurem ut afferret id quod in
 cubiculō reperiret (simulque locum dēmōnstrat) diligenter
 obvolūtum. Affertur. Eam rem obvolūtā rēx suā manū
 25 illi dat, dicēns eam sibi mille nummīs aureīs cōstitisse. Iste
 avidus linteum tollit, prō thēsaurō reperit rāpam iam aridam.

254.

TWO AFTER DINNER STORIES, II

Quidam astābat ad iānuam fēminae quae fructūs vēndēbat,
 oculis intentis in aliquōs ficōs. Illa cum vidēret hominem, ex
 mōre quaesivit sī quid vellet. “Vis,” ait, “ficōs? Sunt
 optimi.” Cum ille annuisset, rogat quot librās vellet. “Vis,”
 5 inquit, “quīnque librās?” Ille annuit. Ficōs effūdīt in
 manum emptōris. Dum illa pōnīt lancēs, ille cum ficīs sē
 subdūcit. Cum acceptūra pecūniā prōdīssēt, vidit emptōrem
 abire. Magnā vōce insequitur. Ille pergit quō coepit ire;
 tandē, multīs ad fēminae vōcem concurrentibus, restitit.
 10 Ibi in populī corōnā agitur causa; emptor negābat sē ēmis-
 sed sē quod ultrō datum esset accēpisse. Omnēs rīsērunt.

255.

THE MAGIC RING

Cicero in his essay on *Moral Duties* tells this story. Plato had previously
 used it in illustration of the point that wrong should not be committed,
 though gods and men do not see it.

Gyges, cum terra discessisset magnīs imbribus, dēscendit in
 cavernam, aēneumque equum, ut scrunt fābulae, animadvertit,
 cuius in lateribus forēs erant; quibus apertis, hominis mortui

vidit corpus magnitudine inūsitatā anulumque aureum in digitō; quem ut dētrāxit, ipse induit, (erat autem rēgis pāstor),⁵ tum in concilium sē pāstōrum recēpit. Ibi cum pālam eius ānuli ad palmam converterat, ā nūllō vidēbātur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat; idem rūrsus vidēbātur cum in locum ānulum inverterat. Itaque hāc opportunitāte ānuli ūsus rēgem dominum interfēcit sustulitque quōs inimicōs arbitrābātur;¹⁰ nec in hīs eum facinoribus quisquam potuit vidēre. Sic repente ānuli beneficiō rēx factus est.

Hunc igitur ipsum ānulum sī habeat sapiēns, nihilō plūs sibi licēre putet peccāre quam sī nōn habēret. Honesta enim ā bonīs virīs, nōn occulta, quacruntur.

15

256.

THE DREAM THAT CAME TRUE

From a work of Cicero in which he discusses dreams and omens.

Cum duo familiārēs iter ūnā facerent et in oppidum vēnissent, alter ad caupōnem dēvertit, ad hospitem alter. Cum requiēscerent, ille vīsus est ōrāre in somniis alterum, quī erat in hospitio, ut subvenīret, quod sibi ā caupōne interitus parārētur; is primō perterritus somniō surrēxit; deinde cum sē collēgisset idque vīsum prō nihilō habendum esse dūxisset, recubuit. Tum eī dormienti idem ille vīsus est rogāre, quoniam sibi vīvō nōn subvenīisset, ut mortem suam ulcīscerētur; dixit sē interfectum in carrum ā caupōne esse coniectum; petivit ut māne ad portam adesset, pruisquam currus ex oppidō exīret. Is hōc somniō¹⁰ commōtus māne ad portam erat, quaesivīt ex agitātōre carrī quid esset in carrō; ille perterritus fūgit, mortuus inventus est, caupō poenās dedit.

257.

THE CASKET STORY OF THE MERCHANT OF VENICE

This story is found in *Gesta Rōmānōrum* with a moral attached to it which makes it applicable to the life of a Christian. It was used as a text for sermons by preachers of the late Middle Ages. This story was used by Shakespeare in the casket episode of *The Merchant of Venice*.

Imperātor ūnicum filium habuit, quem multum dilēxit. Fāma eius imperātōris per mundum volābat quod erat iūstus. Tamen contrā vicinum rēgem bellum gerēbat. Hic rēx tandem cōgitābat, "Ūnicam filiam habeo et adversārius meus ūnicum
5 filium. Si per aliquam viam filiam meam dare possum filiō eius in mātīmōnium, pācem perpetuam obtinēbō." Post hoc puellam cum mūneribus ad imperātōrem mīsīt. Imperātor cum eam vidisset, dīxit, "Cārissima filia, bene tibi sit nunc et in perpetuum. Sed, filia, antequam filium meum habueris in
10 marītum, tē probābō."

Statim fēcīt trēs cophinōs. Prīmus erat ex aurō pūrissimō et lapidibus pretiōsis et erat tālis superscriptiō super hunc cophinum, "Quī mē aperiet, in mē invēnerit quod meruit." Et tōtus cophinus erat plēnus ossibus mortuōrum. Secundus
15 erat ex argentō pūrissimō, plēnus gemmīs, quī tālem superscriptiōnem habēbat, "Quī mē elēgerit in mē invēnerit quod nātūra dedit." Is cophinus terrā plēnus erat. Tertius cophinus erat ē plumbō habēns superscriptiōnem, "Potius eligō hīc esse et requiescere quam in thēsauris rēgis permanēre."
20 In hōc cophinō erant trēs ānuli pretiōsi.

Tunc imperātor puellae dīxit, "Cārissima, hīc sunt trēs cophinī; elige quemcumque volueris; et, sī bene elēgeris, filium meum in marītum obtinēbis." Illa vērō trēs cophinōs respexit et ait in corde suō, "Deus, quī omnia videt, det mihi grātiam
25 sīc eligendī ut nōn deficiam." Prīmum cophinum tetigit et superscriptiōnem lēgit. Illa cōgitābat, "Cophinus est pretiōsus, sed quid intus lateat ignōrō, ideō eum eligere nōlō." Deinde secundam lēgit et dīxit, "Numquam nātūra dedit ut filia patris mei darētur filiō imperātōris." Tertiam lēgit et
30 altā vōce dīxit, "Cophinum tertium eligō."

Imperātor cum hoc audisset, dīxit, "Ō bona puella, magnā cum prūdentiā elēgistī. In istō cophinō sunt trēs ānuli pretiōsi; ūnum prō mē, ūnum prō filiō, tertium prō tē." Statim nūptiās celebrāvit et trādīdit eī filium suum, et sīc in pāce vītā finierunt.

258.

THE BOY WHO WENT TO THE SENATE

The story of the boy who went to the Senate was a favorite of Roman writers and is found in collections of stories as late as the Middle Ages. This version is by Aulus Gellius and is the source of many medieval variations of the story.

Mōs antecā senātōribus Rōmae fuit in cūriam cum prae-
textātis filiīs introīre. Tum, cum in senātū rēs maior cōn-
sultāta eaque in diem posterum prōlāta est placuitque nē quis
eam rem ēnūtiāret pruisquam dē-
crēta esset, māter Papīri puerī, quī
cum parente suō in cūriā fuerat,
rogābat filium quidnam in senātū
patrēs ēgissent. Puer respondit id
dīci nōn licēre. Mulier fit audiendī
cupīdior; silentium puerī animum eius
excitat; quaerit igitur vehementer.



Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art

A ROMAN BOY

This well preserved statue of an unknown Roman boy has a charm rarely equaled in ancient sculpture. It is one of the finest specimens of bronze sculpture to be found in America.

Tum puer, mātrem urgente, magnī
mendāci cōnsilium capit. Actum esse
in senātū dixit, utrum vidērētur
ūtilius exque rē publicā esse ūnus
vir ut duās uxōrēs habēret, an ut ūna
duobus nūpta esset. Hoc illa ubi
audīvit, domō trepidāns ēgreditur
ad cēterās mātērōnās. Pervēnit ad
senātum postridiē mātērōnārum multi-
tūdō. Lacrimantēs orant ūna potius
ut duobus nūpta fieret quam ut ūnī
virō duae.

Senātōrēs ingredientēs in cūriam postulātum mulierum
mīrātī sunt. Puer Papīrius in mediam cūriam prōgressus,
quid ipse mātērī dixisset, nārrat. Senātus cōnsultum facit, nē
posthāc puerī cum patribus in cūriam introeant, praeter
Papīrium.



Courtesy of S. E. Shont

THE GREAT DISCOVERER

One of the Latin editions of Columbus' letter contains eight woodcuts depicting the ships of Columbus and his voyage. The one shown here pictures his journey to the West Indies. Note the king of Spain on the one side of the water and the Aborigines on the other.

259.

COLUMBUS DISCOVERS AMERICA

A Latin translation was made in 1493 of the letter written by Columbus telling of his discovery of the West Indies. The following excerpt, taken from this letter, is of historic interest, although the Latin is far from classical. Since the number of days occupied by the voyage was written originally in Roman numerals, the number thirty-three in the letter may be due to an error made by a copyist who wrote XXXIII instead of LXXIII.

Tricēsimō tertiō diē postquam Gādibus discessī, in mare Indicum pervēnī, ubi plūrimās insulās ab multis habitātās hominibus repperī, quārum omnium prō fēlicissimō rēge nostrō possēssiōnem accēpī. Prīmaeque eārum Dīvi Salvātōris nōmen imposuī, cuius frētus auxiliō ad hanc insulam pervēnimus.

Quippe vidī eās insulās ita flōrentēs atque decōrās ut mēse Maiō in Hispāniā solent esse. Sunt in insulā Iōhanā septem

vel octō palmārum genera, quae pulchritūdine, quem ad modum cēterae omnēs arborēs, herbae fructūsque, nostrās facile praestant. Sunt et altae pīnūs, agrī vāstissimī, variae āvēs, varia mella, varia metalla, ferrō exceptō.

Incolae ubi nostrōs appropinquāre vidēbant, celeriter fūgērunt. Ubi sē cernunt tūtōs, omnī metū repulsō, sunt admodum amīcī ac bonae fideī, et in omnibus quae habent, liberālissimī; dant magna prō parvīs, minimō et nihilō contentī.

15

260.

VERBA

Rident stolidi verba Latina, *The stupid laugh at Latin words.* OVID

*Required vocabulary**: advertō, auctor, cōgitō, colloquium, commodus, contemnō, diversus, familiāris, grātis, integer, magister, pābulor, rapiō, repleō, simulō, supportō, tot, totidem, trabs, vicinus.

NOSCE TĒ IPSUM

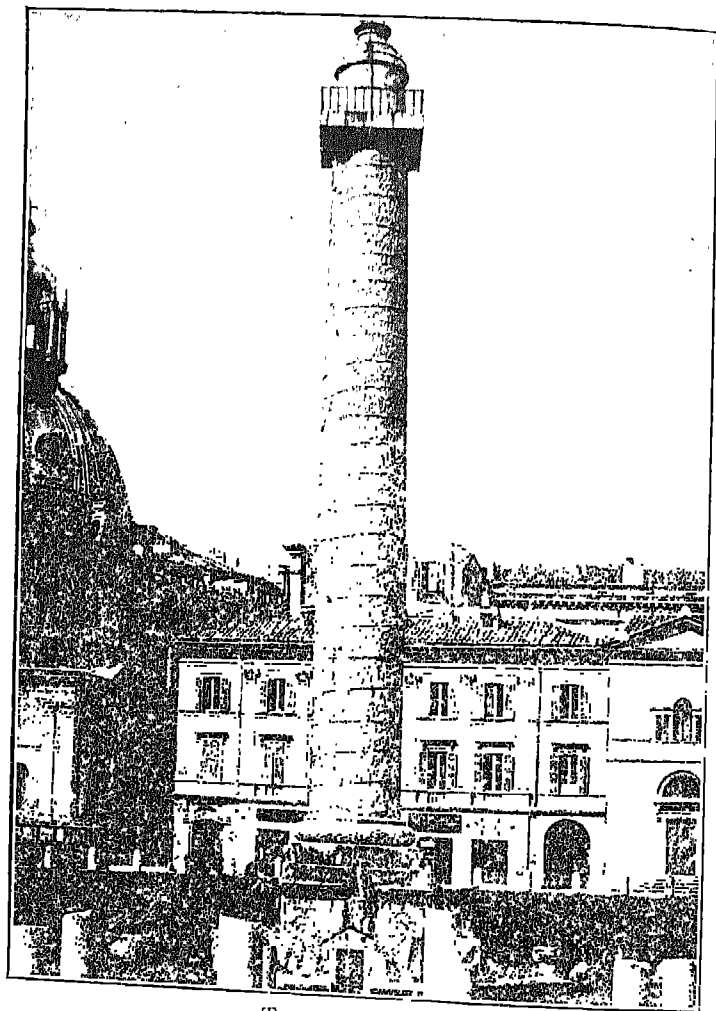
Sunt bona, sunt quaedam mediocria, sunt mala plūra
Quae legis hīc. Aliter nōn fit, Avīte, liber.

MARTIAL

* As PART III is not intended for drill, the required vocabulary has not been entered under each selection. The list of words given above comprises only those required first and second year words that are not found elsewhere in this book.



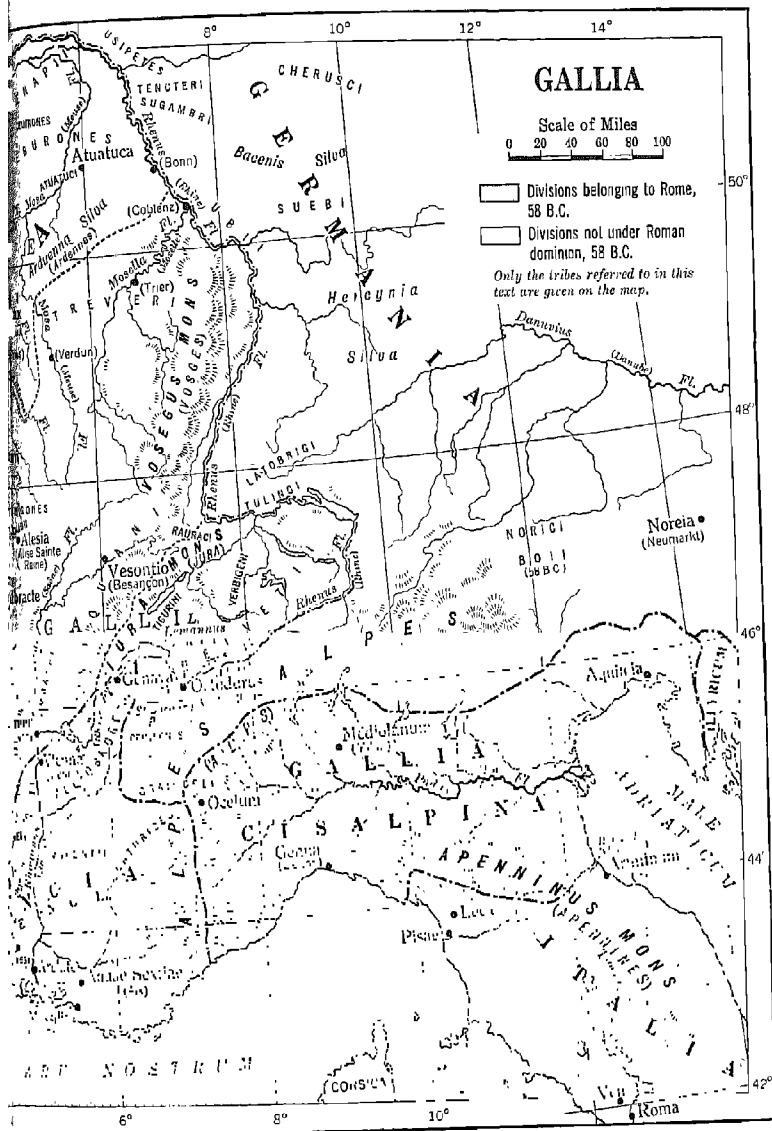
Queen Mathilda Bayeux Tapestry



TRAJAN'S COLUMN

This tall column, erected by the Emperor Trajan, on which is sculptured the history of the wars which he waged, is still standing in Rome. See note on page 199 and the many illustrations of details from this column throughout the text of Caesar's *Gallie War*.





PART IV
C. IŪLĪ CAESARIS
COMMENTĀRII DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ



Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome

GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

This statue represents Caesar in the dress of a commander.

INTRODUCTION

261.

GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

Gaius Julius Caesar was born in the year 100 B.C. His family name, Julius, shows that he belonged to the Julian gens, which traced its descent back through Iulus and Aeneas, the Trojan founders of the Roman State, to the goddess Venus. July, the name of the month in which Caesar was born, still perpetuates his family name.

The young Caesar had the usual education of an aristocratic Roman youth of his day. He studied grammar, rhetoric, philosophy, and oratory. One of his teachers was from Gaul, the land destined to play such an important part in his life. Later he continued his studies abroad under a celebrated teacher in Rhodes.

Many stories are told of Caesar's youth. These, like the story of George Washington and his hatchet, may not be literally true, but they correspond to his character as it has been handed down in history. The pirate story, a favorite one, tells how Caesar, en route to Rhodes, was captured by pirates and held for a ransom of \$20,000. He urged his captors to ask for \$50,000 and then sent his companions away to collect the ransom money while he stayed with the pirates. He joined in their games and exercises, telling them often that after he was ransomed he would return and crucify them. And he did. He is said to have wept when he read the life of Alexander the Great because, at the age when Alexander had conquered so many nations, he himself had done nothing memorable.

He was by nature somewhat frail, but by constant athletic

exercise he developed great powers of endurance. He covered long distances with incredible speed, swimming rivers which barred his path or crossing on inflated bags, often arriving ahead of his messengers. One of his biographers, Suetonius, says that he was highly skilled in arms and horsemanship; that, an expert rider from childhood, he would sit with his hands joined together behind his back and ride at full speed; also, that while he was riding horseback he could give dictation to two secretaries at the same time.

There were two political parties in Rome when Caesar began his public career. The aristocratic party (**Optimātēs**) wished to keep all the power in the hands of the Senate. The democratic party (**Populārēs**) had as its ideal the safeguarding of the rights of the people. With this party Caesar cast his lot. Its leaders were Marius, his uncle by marriage, and Cinna, his father-in-law. This relationship and his own forceful personality were responsible for Caesar's being put on the list of those proscribed by Sulla when the **Optimātēs** gained the upper hand. When offered his life if he would divorce the daughter of Cinna, the former democratic leader, Caesar refused to comply and was forced to flee from Italy. He was allowed to return only through the intercession of friends and under the protest of Sulla that "in Caesar there was many a Marius." After his return, realizing that he had no chance of a career under Sulla, he went to Asia Minor and fought against Mithridates. There he won a civic crown for saving in battle the life of a citizen. He was not yet twenty years of age.

Sulla died in 78 B.C. Caesar then returned to Rome and gradually assumed the leadership of the popular party, **Populārēs**. After he was elected military tribune, he helped to overthrow the aristocratic constitution established by Sulla. He was next elected quaestor (68 B.C.), then aedile (65 B.C.), an office which

CAII IULII CAESARIS COMMENTARIORVM LIBER
PRIMVS DE BELLO GALLICO AB IP SO CONFECTO.

GALLIA EST OMNIS DIVISA IN PARTES
tribusquarum unam incolunt belgae: aliam aquitani:
tertiam q̄ ipsorū lingua celta: nostra galli appellantur.
It omnes lingua instituta legibus inter se differunt.
gallos ab aquitanis garunna flumen: a belgis matrona
& sequana diuidit. horū omnium fortissimu sunt belgae
propter q̄ a culis atq̄ humanitate p̄uinciae longissime abstinent: inter q̄
ad eos incitatores saepe cōmēntatq̄ easque ad efficiendos animos
peruincunt: portantū proximūq̄ sunt germanis. qui trans themum scollie
quā cum continenter bellū gerūt. quā de causa heluētū quocūq̄ reliquos
gallos virtute praecedunt: quod fere quondam belis paxūq̄ cū ger
manis contendunt: cum suis finibus eos phibent: aut p̄liū eorum
finibus bellū gerūt: eos una pars quā gallos obtineat dicitū ē: munitum
capit a flumine rhodano. cōtinetūque garunna flumē. oceanum finis
de gurgitē agriciam a sequanis & heluētū flumen themum vergit ad
septentrione belgae ab extremis galliæ oriuntur. p̄ueniunt ad itenōē
patrem fluminis themi. spectant in septentrionem & orientē solē. Aquitania
a garunna flumine ad pyrenaeos montes: & eam partem oceanique ē ad
hispaniam pertinet: spectat ad occasum solis & septentriones. Apud
heluētos lōge nobilissimu sunt & distillimus Orgētorix. J. M. Mettalla
& P. Pisene consules. is regni cupiditate seductus cū orationē nobilitatis
fecit. & citatū p̄fatus: de finibus suis cum eis copis exiit: placide
esse: cū uincere eis praestaret: totus galliæ sp̄no potit. Id hoc facilius
eis persuasit: quā dicitū loci natura toti heluētū cōmēntat. una ex parte
flumē themo latissimo: atq̄ altissimo: q̄ agunt heluētū a germanis
diuidit: altera ex parte monte itā altissimo: qui est iter sequanos & hel
uētios. tertia itē lemanno & flumine rhodano: q̄ prouinciam n̄ram ab
heluētis diuidit. his rebus fiebat: ut & minus late uagarentur: & minus
facile finibus bellū inferre possent: quā de causa hoies bellandi cupidi
magno affiebantur dolore. p̄ multitudinem autē hominum: & p̄ gloria
belli: atq̄ fortitudinis angustas se finis hīc arbitrabantur: q̄ in lōgitudine
milia passuū duēta quadraginta in latitudine centum octoginta p̄ue
bant. his rebus adducti & auiditate Orgētorix p̄mō constituenit:
ea quā ad p̄ficiendū p̄uenerat paratū. numerorum & carorū q̄ maximū
numq̄ coemere: semētes q̄ maximas facere: ut in itinere copia frumenti
suppeteret. cum proximis ciuitatibus pacem & amicitiam confirmare: ad

Gallie Septem ad & Diocle.

Celer Gallie

Aquitania
Matrona
Belgae

Heluētū.

Heluētū
Rhodanus

Aquitania.

Septentriones.

Orgētorix beluētū
M. Mettalla & P. Pisene

Montes Lemanni.

Leuētū Lemanni.
Heluētū.

gave him the opportunity to win popular favor through the magnificence of the shows which he gave the people. These left him, as he said, in need of 2,000,000 sesterces to be worth nothing. He held the office of praetor in 62 B.C. In 61 B.C. he went to Spain as propraetor. Here his military ability was tested in successful battles with the native tribes.

Caesar returned to Rome in 60 B.C. to stand for the consulship, the highest political office. He felt the need of strong friends to support him against the opposition of the Senate. He found this support already prepared. Pompey, the popular hero, who had just returned victorious from his campaign in the East, was having trouble in persuading the Senate to give a bonus to his veterans. Crassus was the richest man in Rome. Caesar joined these two and in 60 B.C. formed the First Triumvirate, a powerful alliance, because it embraced the wealth of Crassus, the popularity and prestige of Pompey, and the brains and energy of Caesar.

Caesar was elected consul for the year 59 B.C. His first act was to secure the passage of a bill giving lands to Pompey's soldiers, while he himself, as proconsul for five years, was granted the governorship of the province of Illyricum, Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul. At the age of forty-two he deliberately chose to leave Rome behind him and to bury himself as a soldier for five years (later this was extended another five years) in a province itself turbulent and menaced by restless Teutons.

The story of Caesar's nine years in Gaul has come down to us in the words of Caesar himself in *Commentārii dē Bellō Gallicō*, *Notes about the Gallic War*. This was really a political document written that the Romans might know of his great achievements in Gaul in contrast to Pompey's victories in the East; a promise of what he would do in the future. It is a truthful record. Although twenty centuries have elapsed since

the writing of the *Commentārii*, critical investigation of Caesar's account of his great adventure in Gaul has found it a singularly truthful narrative.

The Gallic War is a great story, simply told by the famous Roman who checked by force of arms a vast Helvetian migration through the Roman province; put to rout a haughty German king and his followers, who never stopped until they reached the Rhine; suppressed a widespread uprising of the Belgians; defeated the coast tribes of western Gaul in the first great sea battle on the Atlantic Ocean; twice invaded Germany; opened up Britain to the civilized world; quelled disturbances in every part of Gaul; and crowned these successes by the famous siege of Alesia when Gaul made its last stand for freedom under the dauntless leader, Vercingetorix.

While Caesar was protecting civilization from the hordes of invaders from the north, and while he was Romanizing Gaul, Crassus had died, and Pompey had gone over to the aristocratic party, thus joining Caesar's enemies in the Senate. Now that Caesar's work in Gaul was finished, he wished to run again for the consulship. But the Senate, jealous of his success and fearful of his growing power, refused to allow him to return to Italy unless he laid down the command of his army.

Caesar with his army set out for Rome. When he reached the boundary he is said to have turned to his staff and nearby soldiers and said, "Even now we may turn back, but once cross yon little bridge and the whole issue is with the sword." After a moment's hesitation, with the famous phrase, "*Alea iacta est*," "The die is cast," he crossed the Rubicon River and marched on Rome. Pompey fled. Caesar gained control of Rome, defeated the followers of Pompey in Spain, followed Pompey to Greece, defeated him in the Battle of Pharsalia in 48 B.C., set Egypt in order, and in a series of successes ending at Munda,

Spain, in 45 B.C., became complete master of the Roman world. He returned to Rome to celebrate a magnificent triumph in which he mounted the Capitol by the light of torches carried by forty elephants. The story of his achievements was briefly told on a banner borne in the triumphal procession, "**Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.**"

The personal qualities of a man who played such an important part in the history of the world constitute an interesting study. He is said to have been tall of stature, with a fair complexion, shapely limbs, a somewhat full face, and keen black eyes. He was very particular in the care of his person, being always carefully trimmed and shaved. His baldness troubled him greatly. His biographer, Suetonius, says that, because of it, of all the honors voted him by the senate and the people, there was none which he received or made use of more gladly than the privilege of wearing a laurel wreath at all times.

Caesar's preëminent success in four different fields, war, oratory, literature, and statesmanship, was due to natural brilliancy, the wisdom which consists in knowing what to do next, indefatigable energy, an indomitable will, courage, sympathy, appreciation of others' achievements, and a willingness to forgive and forget.

As a general he set an example of bravery to his soldiers. When all was confusion in the battle of the Nervii, by his personal bravery he restored order and won a great victory. He kept his men on the alert by leading them out sometimes at a moment's notice. He attacked the enemy when least expected. He was a master at moving large bodies of troops rapidly. Within two weeks after he had heard in Rome of the plan of the Helvetians to march through the province, he had collected his forces and stood on the banks of the Rhone ready to dispute their passage. When in the dead of winter Quintus Cicero's camp was besieged, in a few hours Caesar's forces and those of

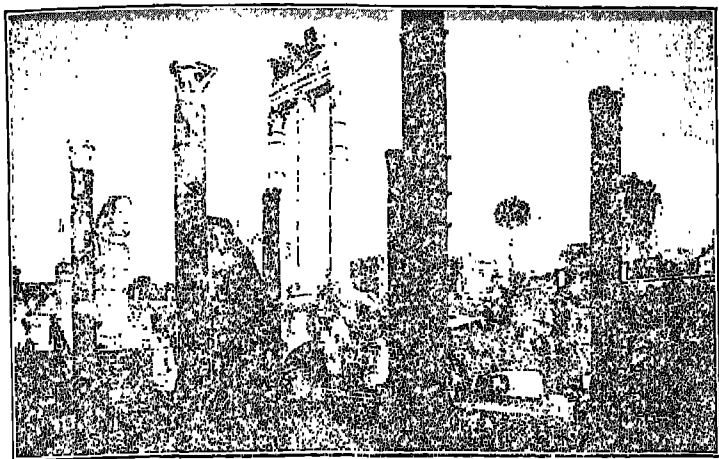
two divisions of the army from different places were rushing to the rescue. His appreciation of his soldiers is seen in his citing, with painstaking care for details, every act unusually brave. This sympathy was a great factor in developing loyalty among his men.

Some idea of Caesar's oratory may be gained from his speeches as given in the story of the Gallic War. A critic of his own time says that he would have rivaled Cicero had he had time for the practice of oratory. Cicero himself writes of him to Nepos, "What orator would you rank above him of those who have devoted themselves to nothing else? Who has more clever or more numerous epigrams? Who is purer or more picturesque in his style?"

Caesar was always keenly interested in literature. Even in the midst of his hottest campaigns in Gaul he wrote to Cicero his criticism of the latter's new Greek poem. Caesar's writings included poetry, works on grammar, astronomy, and history. All but the last, namely the Gallic and Civil Wars, have been lost. Even in his own day Roman critics regarded his language and style as most elegant. One of his generals writes, "All know how splendidly, how faultlessly, but we know also how easily and rapidly he completed his commentaries." Cicero compares these to beautiful and unadorned statues.

Caesar was great as a general, but he was even greater as a statesman. When he became supreme master at Rome, his task was to give an efficient government to a widespread nation that, rapidly losing religious, moral, economic, and industrial standards, was beginning to crave free food and free fun, or as the Romans put it, *pānem ac circēnsēs*, *bread and circuses*. The times called for a one-man government that had in view the highest welfare of all.

The few remaining years of Caesar's rule were filled with great reforms. Soldiers were settled on farms, some of the Gauls were granted citizenship, the calendar was made over, the Senate was



THE FORUM OF JULIUS CAESAR RESURRECTED

Julius Caesar added to the old Roman Forum a new one; in the center was a temple which he vowed at the battle of Pharsalus to Venus Genetrix, from whom he claimed descent. Lovely columns of this temple still stand, as shown above.

reorganized, the administration of government in the provinces was improved, and beautiful public buildings were begun.

Caesar was busily engaged with many projects when a conspiracy against him was formed by a handful of Roman citizens who, actuated by love of the republic, the old-time Roman hatred of a king, and jealousy of Caesar, feared the assumption of too much power on the part of an individual. On the Ides of March (March 15), 44 B.C., despite sickness, omens, prophecies, and a note warning him of impending disaster on that day, he entered the Senate, jokingly reminding the soothsayer who had foretold his death that the Ides of March had come. To this he received the reply, "Yes, but not passed." Struck down by the daggers of men whom he had favored, he fell at the base of Pompey's statue, "the noblest Roman of them all."

262.

ROMAN WARFARE

The Roman legion, *legiō*, was a body of infantry the full strength of which was 6,000 men. In Caesar's time, however, there were approximately 3,600 men in a legion. Theoretically these were Roman citizens, but in Caesar's army many provincials were enrolled. The legion consisted of ten cohorts, *cohortēs*, each cohort of three maniples, *manipulī*, and each maniple of two centuries, *centuriae*. A century, as the word itself shows, originally contained 100 men but, since the places of those who fell were not filled, the number probably was much less. In Caesar's day the legions were designated by numbers.

The auxiliary forces, *auxilia*, were not citizens. As their name indicates they served as "aids" and were not depended upon for heavy fighting. They included the slingers, *funditōrēs*, and archers, *sagittārii*.

Caesar's cavalry, *equitēs*, were Gauls or Germans. They were divided into squadrons, *ālæ*, troops, *turmae*, and squads, *decursiae*. They did not play an important part, as their chief duties were to skirmish, to begin the engagement, and to pursue the enemy.

OFFICERS

The commander-in-chief, *dux*, was the highest officer of the army. After he had won an important victory, he was called an *imperātor*.

The staff officers, *lēgātī*, had no definite commands as they have today but performed whatever duty the commander saw fit to assign, such as commanding a legion in battle, building a fleet, or taking charge of winter quarters. They also acted as an advisory body.

The quartermaster, *quaestor*, was second in rank. He had charge of supplies and was paymaster.

Each legion had six military tribunes, **tribūnī militum**, usually ambitious young men who were getting their first military experience, although some of the tribunes were experienced soldiers. They were often put in command of the line of march and of the camp and performed various services.

There were sixty centurions, **centuriōnēs**, to a legion. They were promoted from the ranks because of merit. The highest centurion, **prīnipilus**, led the first manipule of the first cohort.

The engineers, **fabrī**, standard bearers, **aquiliferī** and **signiferī**, scouts, **explōrātōrēs**, and spies, **speculātōrēs**, were of minor rank.

The prefects, **praefectī**, were in charge of the **ālae** of the cavalry and auxiliary forces, and decurions, **decuriōnēs**, in charge of the squads, **decuriae**.

DRESS AND EQUIPMENT

The legionary soldier wore a woolen sleeveless tunic reaching about to the knees, hobnailed shoes held on by leather thongs, and a heavy woolen cloak.

His armor consisted of a helmet, **galea**, of leather or metal surmounted by a crest; a coat of mail, **lōrica**, made of leather with metal bands; a shield, **scūtum**, which was curved, covered with leather, and measured about four by two and a half feet.

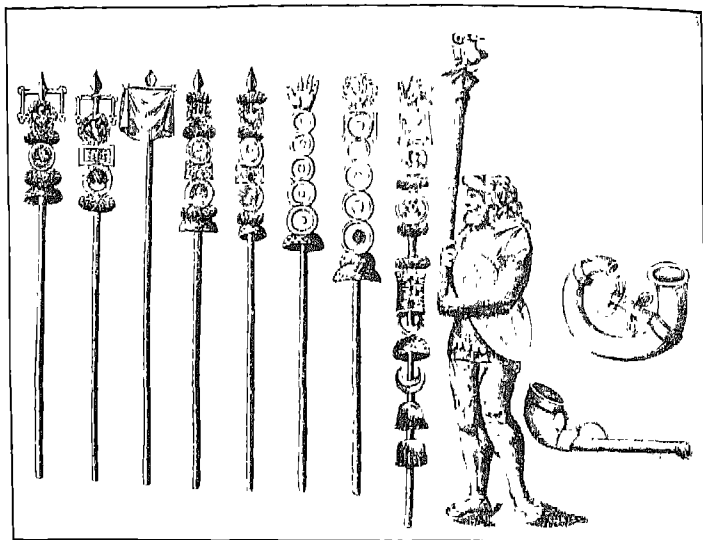
His weapons were a javelin, **pīlum**, and a sword, **gladius**. The shaft of the javelin was about four feet long, made of wood with a head of soft iron about two and a half feet long, and tipped with a hard point. The sword, about two feet



British Museum, London

BRONZE HELMET

This helmet with neck-guard and visor-mask was found in England.

*Trajan's Column, Rome*

STANDARDS AND MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

long, straight, pointed, and two-edged, was used largely for thrusting. It hung on the right side from a belt, **balteus**, suspended from the left shoulder.

STANDARDS

The standard, **signum**, of the legion was an eagle of bronze or silver. Each cohort had a standard of its own ornamented with symbolic figures and decorations which it had won. The auxiliaries carried a crimson flag on a staff.

MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

The trumpet, **tuba**, a straight instrument with a shrill sound, was used to give signals in battle. A curved horn, **cornū**, was also used.



Trajan's Column, Rome

ARMY MUSICIANS

Each of the three men at the left carries a curved horn with a crosspiece, cornū. The one leading blows his trumpet, tuba.

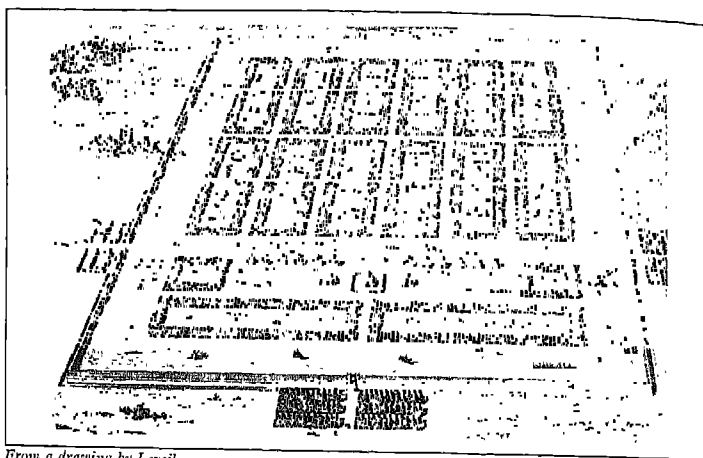


Trajan's Column, Rome ¹⁸

LEGIONNAIRES

The general is addressing a group of soldiers. Note their dress and equipment.

¹⁸ The sculptures on this column, see page 186, give valuable information concerning the Roman army, its dress, its equipment, and modes of warfare. Although Trajan lived more than a hundred years after Caesar's time, warfare had changed so little that a general idea of Caesar's army may be gained from the scenes depicted on Trajan's Column. These and other illustrations from Trajan's Column were obtained through the courtesy of the Library of the University of Pennsylvania.



From a drawing by Leveil

A TWO-LEGION CAMP

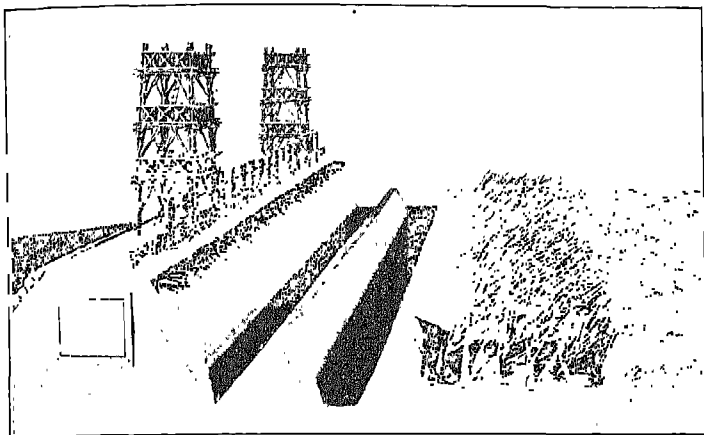
This drawing is not quite accurate, because it was drawn before the late excavations of actual Roman camps. However, it shows correctly the shape of the camp, the position of the two main roads and the four gates. Note the position of the headquarter's tent of the commander-in-chief just athwart one main road, and adjacent to the other.

THE CAMP

The army, when on the march, went into a regular camp each night. The camp, which had been laid out by an advance party, even if temporary, was made with greatest care. It was rectangular, laid out in streets, *viae*, fortified with a trench, *fossa*, a rampart, *agger*, and breast works, *valli*.

THE MARCH

The average day's march was about fifteen miles. Each soldier carried his weapons, food, clothing, cooking utensils, and tools for building the camp. This baggage, *sarcina*, was carried on a forked stick over the shoulder. The cavalry and light-armed auxiliaries usually went in advance. Each legion was usually followed by its own baggage train, *impedimenta*.



SIEGE WORKS AT ALESIA

This model shows Caesar's elaborate siege works at Alesia.

THE BATTLE LINE

The triple line, **triplex aciēs**, was the regular battle formation. In front there were four cohorts of experienced soldiers; in the second and third lines there were three cohorts each. The cavalry was usually on the wings. When the battle began the first line of cohorts advanced, threw a volley of javelins, and then used their swords in a hand to hand conflict until they were relieved by the second line.

OPERATIONS AGAINST WALLED TOWNS

Walled towns were taken by storm, **oppugnātiō**, or by a siege, **obsidiō**. In taking a town by storm, hurling engines, **tormenta**, throwing great stones or beams, drove the defenders from the walls, the ditches were then filled in, and Roman soldiers, locking their shields together in a **testūdō**, advanced to the walls and broke down the gates with battering rams or scaled the walls with ladders.

In a regular siege a huge mound, **agger**, was built up to the top of the enemy's wall. The besiegers were protected by heavy shields, **plutei**, or movable sheds, **vineae**, placed end to end. Sometimes they gained access to the town by huge towers, **turræ ambulatōriæ**, brought up on rollers to the wall.

The artillery used in storming and besieging were the **ballista**, which hurled heavy stones, and the **catapulta**, which threw great javelins.

Sometimes a besieging army blockaded a town and starved it out. Caesar's siege of Alesia was of this character. The historian Froude called it "the most daring feat in the military annals of mankind."

A MANUSCRIPT OF "THE GALIC WAR"

The illustration on page 204 is from a well-preserved and beautiful manuscript of the fifteenth century, made in Italy. The title of the book is in red capitals, the initial *G* at the beginning is blue and green on a gold background, inclosing a warrior in silver armor on a white horse. The handsome border of white and violet vine tendrils has a blue, green, and crimson background with two narrow bands of gold in the center interlaced with cupids, peacocks, hares, helmets, and winged horses.

The page shown here gives Chapters I, II, and part of III of *Liber Primus*.

BOOKS FOR REFERENCE

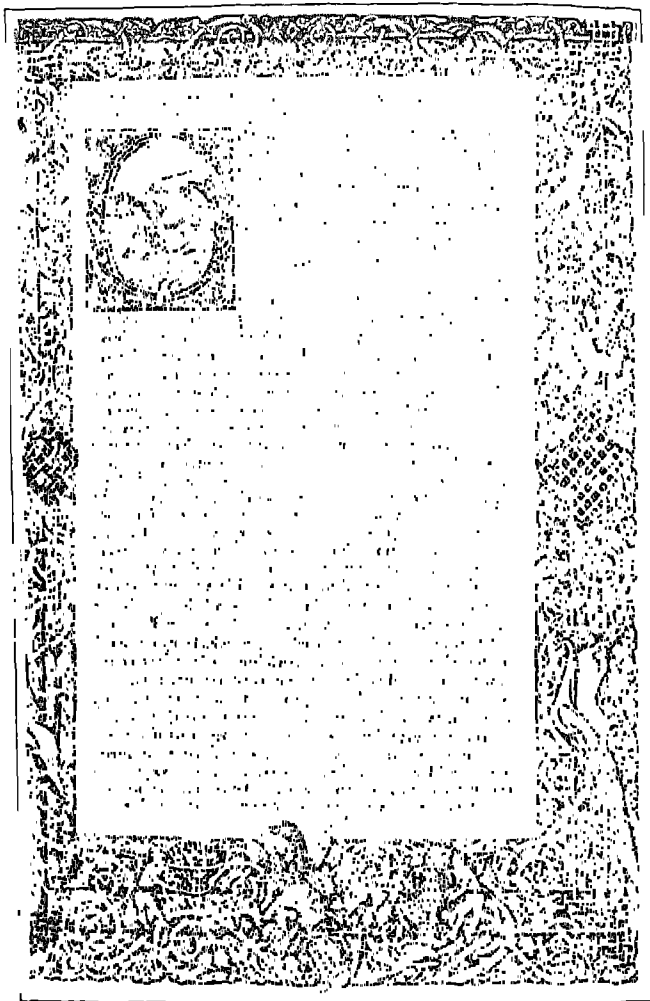
- ABBOTT, FRANK FROST, *A Short History of Rome*. Scott, Foresman and Company
- CLARKE, MICHAEL, *The Story of Caesar*. American Book Company
- DODGE, THEODORE A., *Caesar (A History of the Origin and Growth of War from the Earliest Times to the Wars of Napoleon)*. Houghton, Mifflin Company
- FOWLER, W. WARDE, *Julius Caesar*. G. P. Putnam's Sons
- FROUDE, JAMES A., *Caesar, A Sketch*. Harper and Brothers
- HAAREN, JOHN H., and POLAND, A. B., *Famous Men of Rome*. American Book Company
- HAMILTON, MARY AGNES, *Ancient Rome: The Lives of Great Men*. Oxford University Press
- HOLMES, T. RICE, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. Oxford University Press
- HOLMES, T. RICE, *Ancient Britain and Julius Caesar*. Oxford University Press
- JONES, H. STUART, *A Companion to Roman History*. Oxford University Press
- JUDSON, HARRY PRATT, *Caesar's Army*. Ginn and Company
- MCCARTNEY, E. S., *Warfare by Land and Sea*. Marshall Jones Company
- OMAN, CHARLES, *Seven Roman Statesmen of the Later Republic*. Longmans, Green and Company
- PELHAM, HARRY FRANCIS, *Outlines of Roman History*. G. P. Putnam's Sons
- SHULER, E. G., *Annals of Caesar*. G. E. Stechert & Company
- WHITE, JOHN S., *Plutarch's "Lives."* G. P. Putnam's Sons

STORIES FOR COLLATERAL READING

- ANDERSON, PAUL L., *With the Eagles*. D. Appleton and Company
- DAVIS, WILLIAM STEARNS, *A Friend of Caesar*. The Macmillan Company
- HANNAH, IAN C., *Voadice*. Longmans, Green and Company
- MITCHISON, NAOMI M., *The Conquered*. Harcourt, Brace and Company
- WELLS, R. F., *With Caesar's Legions*. Lothrop, Lee & Shepard Company
- WHITEHEAD, A. C., *The Standard Bearer*. American Book Company

LATIN PLAYS BASED ON CAESAR

- HORNER, BRITA L., *The Conspiracy of Orgetorix*. Classical Journal XIII, 61.
- LAWLER, LILLIAN B., *Rex Helvetiorum*. Classical Journal, XV, 365.
- RADIN, MAX, *Dumnorix*. Classical Journal, XIII, 314.
- SCHLICHER, JOHN J., *Latin Plays: Exitus Helvetiorum*. Ginn and Company.
- SMITH, M. D., *Exitum Caesaris*. Classical Journal, XVI, 156.
- SUTHERLAND, OLIVE R., *The Schoolboy's Dream*. Classical Journal, VII, 181.



A CAESAR MANUSCRIPT

"Surely you have splendid material for a book! What situations, what kinds of things and places, what customs, what races, what battles, and indeed what a general you have!"

From a letter of Cicero to his brother Quintus, who was on Caesar's staff

LIBER PRIMUS

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETIANS. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

58 B.C.

The geography and the inhabitants of Gaul

"There is probably no production of the ancient world that has such an emphatic modern ring as Caesar's description of his Gallic wars. . . . The very first page of the 'Gallic Wars' might almost have been written by a correspondent in the present war." WORLD'S WORK, October, 1917.

1. GALLIA est omnis ¹ divisa in partēs trēs; ūnam ² incolunt Belgae, aliam ³ Aquitānī, tertiam Gallī. Hī omnēs linguā,⁴ institūtis, lēgibus differunt. Gallōs ⁵ ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen,⁶ ā Belgīs Matrona ⁷ et Sēquana dīvidit.⁸

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae,⁹ quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte Prōvinciae ¹⁰ longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe ¹¹ commeant atque ea ¹² quae effēminant animōs important; proximique sunt Germānīs,¹³ quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Quā dē causā ¹⁴ Helvētīi ¹⁵ quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte ¹⁰ praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs procliīs ¹⁶ cum Germānīs contendunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab ¹⁷ Sēquanīs et Helvētīīs flūmen ¹⁵ Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnacōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad ¹⁸ Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum ²⁰ sōlis et septentrionēs.

1. *Gallia, omnis*: *Gaul as a whole*; including Belgium, Gallia Celtica, and Aquitania. The people of central Gaul called themselves *Celtae*, *Celts*, but the Romans called them *Galli*, *Gauls*. Study the map of Gaul and locate all places referred to in the text. Modern France, together with southern Holland, Belgium, western Germany, and Switzerland, now embraces the territory occupied by Gaul as a whole. 2. *unam*: *one (part)*. 3. *aliā*: *the second (part)*; object of *incolunt* understood. 4. *linguā*: *in respect to language* (147). 5. *Gallōs*: *the Gauls*, living in central or Celtic Gaul. 6. *Garumna flūmen*: *the Garonne river*; subject of *dividit* understood. 7. *Matrona*: *the Marne*; of special interest since the famous battle of the World War. In translating names of places, use the modern names; *Seine* for *Sēquana*. 8. *dividit*: for the use of the singular number see 568, a. 9. *Belgae*: were the modern Belgians in the World War true to their ancestral inheritance? 10. *Prōvinciae*: *i.e.*, the strip of southern Gaul which had been conquered by Rome and which was Caesar's *province*. A part of the district included in the *Prōvincia* is today called *Provence*. 11. *minimē, saepe*: *least often*; translate *very seldom*. 12. *ea*: *those things, i.e.*, wares for sale. 13. *Germānis*: (524). 14. *Quā dē causā*: *for this reason*. 15. *Helvētīi*: the Helvetians occupied part of what is modern Switzerland. 16. *ferē . . . proeliis*: *in almost daily battles*. 17. *ab*: *on the side of*. Latin prepositions have many shades of meaning. Learn to select with care the meaning that best fits the context. 18. *ad*: *near*.

263.

COMPREHENSION

1. Locate and point out the boundaries of the three divisions of Gaul; of the Roman Province. 2. What countries now comprise what was ancient Gaul? 3. What three reasons does Caesar give to account for the bravery of the Belgians? 4. What does Caesar say about the effect of civilization on the Gauls? 5. What reasons does he give for the bravery of the Helvetians?

264.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Ablative of specification (551).

Memoriae mandā: *Mirabile dictū, Wonderful to say*. VERGIL

The Latin motto found under the *Memoriae mandā* of each chapter contains a construction which illustrates the point of syntax to be given special attention in that chapter. If you will commit each one to memory, you will have at the close of the year examples of many constructions that you wish to fix in mind, and you will at the same time have stored away a collection of quotations and mottoes which are often used.

Respondē Latīnē: Quā rē Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs praecedēbant? (Always answer in a complete sentence.)

Scribē Latīnē: The Romans differed from the Gauls in institutions, language, and refinement.

265.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: alius, cotidiānus, differō, ferē, hūmānitās, initium, institūtum, lingua, mercātor, quoque, saepe.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related by derivation: *belligerent, caption, humanity, indivisible, Occident, Orient, pertinent, quorum, rebel, spectator?* Explain the meaning of each.

Determine the meaning of each, if possible, without consulting the dictionary, by applying your knowledge of (1) the meaning of the Latin word to which it is related by derivation and (2) the force of any prefix or suffix.

Orgetorix persuades the war-loving Helvetians to invade Gaul

"Roman agents in the Province were alarmed by the appearance of bands of marauders on the right bank of the Rhone. They had been sent by the Helvetii. A generation before . . . they had spread desolation along the valley of the Rhone, defeated a consular army, and compelled the survivors to pass under the yoke. Now, in their turn, they were hard pressed by the Germans; and they had formed the resolution of abandoning their country and seeking a new home." T. RICE HOLMES, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx.¹ Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōsulibus,² rēgnī cupiditatē³ inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī⁴ persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent,⁵ "Perfacile⁶ est," inquit, "tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiri."

Id facilius eis persuāsit,⁷ quod undique locī nātūrā⁸ Helvētīī continentur: ūnā ex parte⁹ flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō,¹⁰ quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō¹¹ et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prō-¹⁰ vinciam nostram¹² ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Hīs rēbus¹³ minus lātē vagābantur et minus facile finitimīs¹⁴ bellum inferēbant; quā ex parte¹⁵ hominēs bellandī cupidī¹⁶



1 mile, Georgia, N. E. of the old

growth, N. E. of the old growth, N. E. of the old growth

THE ROMAN-HELVETIAN BOUNDARY

magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō¹⁷ multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs¹⁵ habēre¹⁸ arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia¹⁹ passuum CCXL²⁰ in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

1. Apud . . . Orgetorix: the normal order of words in a Latin sentence is reversed here for the sake of emphasis. 2. M. . . cōsulibus: translate in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso; 61 B.C. (632). 3. rēgnī cupiditāte: by a desire of royal power. 4. civitatī: why dative (54)? 5. ut, exirent: that they should emigrate; translate to emigrate. 6. Perfacile: neuter; predicate adjective; imperiō potiri is the subject. 7. Id . . . persuasit: he more easily persuaded them (of) this. 8. loci nātūrā: translate by natural barriers. See map of Gaul. 9. ūnā ex parte: on one side. Which? 10. lātissimō atque altissimō: very wide and very deep (566). 11. lacū Lemannō: Lake Geneva. 12. prōvinciam nostram: whose? Why is the possessive adjective expressed? 13. His rēbus: ablative of cause. 14. finitimis: dative with the compound inferēbant. 15. quā ex parte: translate (and) for this reason. 16. bellandī cupidī: desirous of fighting; cupidī modifies hominēs. 17. Prō: in proportion to. 18. sē, habēre: that they had. 19. milia: why accusative? The Roman mile was equivalent to 4,584 feet. 20. CCXL: ducenta quadrāgintā. In reading Latin orally always express the Roman numbers in Latin words. Learn to count by hundreds from one hundred to a thousand (484).

266.

COMPREHENSION

1. What position did Orgetorix hold among the Helvetians? 2. What was his chief ambition? 3. What was his plan? 4. Why were the Helvetians easily persuaded to emigrate?

267.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Dative with special verbs (517).

Memoriae mandā: Nimium nē crēde colōrī, Do not trust too much to appearances. VERGIL.

Respondē Latinē: Quibus Orgetorix persuādet?

Scribe Latinē: Orgetorix easily persuaded the nobility, because they thought their territories were narrow.

268.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: alter, angustus, lātitudō, nōbilitās, pateō.

Word Study. The suffix *-idus* (in English *-id*), meaning in a *state* or *condition of*, is attached to verb stems to form adjectives: *cupidus* (*cup-* + *-idus*), *state of desiring*. Give the adjective formed from the stem of each of the following verbs combined with the suffix *-idus*: *placeō*, *valeō*, *vivō*. Give the English derivative of each adjective.

Give five English derivatives of *pars* and show how its meaning enters into the meaning of each word: *participate* (*pars* + *capiō*), *take part in*.

The Helvetians prepare for a great migration

"An ambitious chieftain, Orgetorix, found no difficulty in inspiring them with the desire to seek elsewhere a more fertile territory and a milder climate. They resolved to go and establish themselves in the country of the Santones."

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE III, *History of Julius Caesar*

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī¹ cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum² pertinērent comparāre. Iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum³ numerum emunt; sēmentēs quam maximās faciunt ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppetet; cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmant. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt⁴; in⁵ tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.⁶

Ad eas rēs cōficiendās⁴ Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō⁷ Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus⁸ appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret,⁹ quod pater ante habuerat; itemque¹⁰ Dumnorīgī¹¹ Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciāci, quī¹² eō tempore principātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat, idem¹³ persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātrimonium¹⁴ dat.

Perfacile esse illis probat cōnāta perficere: "Ipse meae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrus sum;¹⁵ tōtius Galliae plurimum Helvētīi possunt;¹⁶ meis cōpiīs meoque exercitū vōbis¹⁷ rēgna conciliābō."

Hāc orātiōne adductī tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse¹⁸ spērant.

1. *adducti, permoti*: agree with *Helvetii*, the subject understood of *constituerunt*.
 2. *ad proficiscendum*: for a departing, translate to an emigration (629, a). 3. *quam maximum*: translate the greatest possible. 4. *Ad . . . duxerunt*: translate for completing these preparations they considered that two years would be time enough for them; *consciendās*: (630, a). 5. *in*: for. 6. *confirmant*: they fixed; for the tense see 570, a. Give other examples in this chapter of this use of the present tense. What sequence follows each? 7. *Casticō*: why dative? 8. *amicus*: predicate nominative; this title was given by the Roman senate in recognition of a service rendered or expected. 9. *ut . . . occuparet*: to seize the royal power in his own state; substantive volitive clause with *persuadet*. 10. *itemque*: and also. 11. *Dumnorigi*: dative with *persuadet*. 12. *qui*: Dumnorix. 13. *idem*: object of *persuadet*. 14. *in mātīmōnium*: among the royalty the strengthening of alliances through marriage has been a common practice from early times. 15. *obtēturus sum*: I am going to seize (95). 16. *plūrimus . . . possunt*: translate the *Helvetians are the most powerful (people)*. 17. *vōbis*: for you. 18. *tōtius . . . posse*: translate that they could get control of all Gaul; *Galliae*, 515.

269.

COMPREHENSION

1. What three special preparations for emigration did the Helvetians make? 2. On what mission did Orgetorix go? 3. With what success? 4. How did Orgetorix strengthen his alliance with Dumnorix?

270.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Gerund and gerundive (74) (629-30).

Memoriae mandā: Aliquod crāstinus diēs ad cōgitandum dabit, *Tomorrow will give something (as food) for thought*. CICERO.

Respondē Latinē: Quod tempus proficiscendi dēlectum est?

Scribe Latinē: Influenced by the authority of the embassy, the Helvetians decide to prepare for departing, and for the purpose of accomplishing this thing, they buy wagons.

271.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: auctōritās, carrus, cōstituō, emō, item, lēgatiō, permōveō, prīncipātus, profectiō.

Word Study. The word *senate*, from the Latin word *senātus* (*senex*, *old*), originally meant a council of elders. The name *senātor* was given by Romulus to the members of his advisory council, composed of older men.

To what word in the chapter is each of these related by derivation: compare, confirmation, constitutional, fraternity, incomparable, satiate?

The conspiracy, trial, and death of Orgetorix

4. Ea rēs¹ est Helvētiis per indicium² enūntiāta. Mōribus suis³ Orgetorīgē ex⁴ vinculis causam dicere⁵ coēgērunt.

Diē cōstitūtā Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam,⁶ ad⁷ hominū mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs suos, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs sē ēripuit.⁸

Cum civīlās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur,⁹ multitudinēque hominū ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; Helvētīi arbitrantur ipsum sibi mortem cōscīvisse.¹⁰

1. Ea rēs: *this plot*. The noun *rēs* has various meanings, according to the context. 2. per indicium: translate *through spies*; what is the literal translation? 3. Mōribus suis: (537). 4. ex: translate *in*; the Latin expression is more literal than the English idiom. 5. causam dicere: translate *to plead his case*. 6. familiam: *household*, including slaves. 7. ad: *about*; with a numeral *ad* is an adverb. 8. sē ēripuit: translate *he saved himself*. 9. cōnārētur: see 61. What other verb is in the same construction? 10. ipsum . . . cōscīvisse: translate *that he committed suicide*.

272.

COMPREHENSION

1. What did Orgetorix do in preparation for his trial? 2. What action did the state take? 3. Why did the Helvetians object to the conduct of Orgetorix? 4. Tell in full the story of Orgetorix. 5. What charge could the Helvetians rightfully bring against him?

273.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Cum with the subjunctive (*Cum-circumstantial*) (597).

Respondē Latīnē: Quandō Orgetorīx mortuus est?

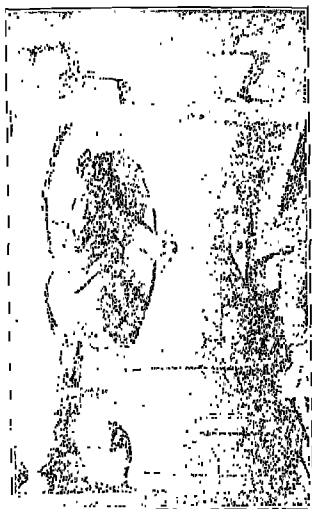
Scribē Latīnē: When the magistrates forced Orgetorix to plead his cause in chains, he led his household and clients to the same place.

274.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: cliēns, eōdem, ēripio, familia, magistrātus, vinculum.

Word Study. The English word *client* comes from *cliēns*, *clientis* (from *clueō*, to hear or to obey). A Roman *cliēns* was dependent on some influential man to whom he gave his services and in return received support and protection. What does the word *client* mean today?



Vatican Museum, Rome

A ROMAN FLOUR MILL

The Helvetians took along with them ground grain sufficient for three months. Their mills for grinding were very primitive compared with those of the Romans. Remains of Roman mills have been found at Pompeii.

The cap, *catillus*, of a stone mill, *mola*, for grinding grain was the solid piece shaped like an hour glass. The base, *mēta*, was conical at the top. The cap turned round on it, and the grain, poured in at the top, came out as meal at the lower edge of the cap.

Give English derivatives of: *cōgō*, *condūcō*, *ēnūntiō*, *iūs*, *mors*.

The Helvetians and allies burn their homes before migrating

"The resolution to burn all dwellings reveals the decisive character of a movement long entertained."

E. G. SHULER, *Annals of Caesar*

5. Post eius¹ mortem nihilō minus² Helvētiī cōnantur ē finibus suis proficīscī.

Oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod³ sēcum portātūrī erant,⁴ combūrunt,⁵ ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā,⁶ parātiōrēs ad omnia¹⁰ perīcula subeunda essent;⁷ trium mēnsium⁸ molita cibāria⁹ sibi¹⁰ quemque domō efferre iubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs utī eōdem¹⁵ cōnsiliō ūtantur; Boiōsque¹¹ sociōs sibi asciscunt.

1. eius: i.e., Orgetorix. 2. nihilō minus: nevertheless; nihilō (550). 3. quod: that which; the antecedent of a relative pronoun is often omitted. 4. portātūrī erant: translate they intended to carry (95). 5. combūrunt: burn up; contrast

the meaning with that of *incendunt* in the preceding clause. 6. *spē sublātā*: translate *if hope were taken away*; ablative absolute (545). 7. *ut, parātiorēs . . . essent*: translate *that they might be better prepared to meet all dangers*. 8. *trium mēnsium*: translate *for three months*; modifies *cibāria*; what kind of genitive (511)? This company of nearly four hundred thousand would require a great baggage train. 9. *molita cibāria*: *grain ground in a mill*; translate *meal*. 10. *sibi*: *for himself*. Why dative? Explain the case of: *domum*, l. 9; *domō*, l. 13; *quemque*, l. 13; *Rauracis*, l. 14; *cōsiliō*, l. 16; *sociōs*, l. 16. 11. *Boiōsque*: the Boii were ancestors of the Bohemians.

275.

COMPREHENSION

1. Did the death of Orgetorix have any effect upon the Helvetian migration? 2. What does this show? 3. What did the Helvetians do before they started from home? Why? 4. How long did they think the journey would take?

276.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Ablative absolute (545). Active Periphrastic Conjugation (501).

Memoriae mandā: *Fidē abrogātā, omnis hūmāna societas tollitur*, *When good faith is abolished, all human society is destroyed*. LIVY

Respondē Latīnē: *Quibus, omnibus rēbus parātis, persuasūrī sunt Helvētiū ut sēcum proficiscantur*?

Scribe Latīnē: After their private houses and all the grain, except what they were going to carry away, had been set on fire, the Helvetians set out from their villages.

277.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *aedificium, efferō, mēnsis, privātus, vicus*.

Word Study. Define the following words showing that each contains the idea expressed by *parō*: *apparatus, irreparable, parade, parasol, preparation, repair, reparation, separate*.

Find in the story the Latin word to which each of the following is related by derivation: *combustion, counsellor, semester, deportment, desperation, duo-decimal, incendiary, molar, mortality, numerator, post-mortem, mortuary*. Give the meaning of each word on the basis of its derivation.



Pas de l'Écluse

Courtesy of George R. Swan

THE ROUTE THROUGH THE TERRITORY OF THE SEQUANIANS

This narrow pass was one of the two ways open to the migrating Helvetians.

They choose the route through the Roman Province

"As the mountain chain of the Jura, stretching from the Rhine to the Rhone, almost completely closed in the Helvetic country on the west, and its narrow defiles were as ill adapted for defense, the leaders had resolved to go round in a southerly direction and to open up for themselves a way to the west at the point where the Rhone had broken through the mountain chain between the southwestern and highest part of the Jura and the Savoy mountains." THEODOR MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus ¹ itineribus domō exīre possent: ² ūnum per Sēquanōs, ³ angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā ⁴ singulī ⁵ carrī dūcerentur; ⁶ mōns autem altissimus impendēbat ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; ⁷ alterum ⁸ per prōvinciam nostram, ⁵ multō ⁹ facilius atque expeditius, ¹⁰ proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, ¹¹ Rhodanus fluit, isque ¹² nōn nullis ¹³ locis ¹⁴ vadō trānsītur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiō-
 10 rum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs parti-
 net. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,¹⁵ quod nōndum bonō
 animō¹⁶ in¹⁷ populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel
 vī¹⁸ coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt
 15 quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.¹⁹ Is diēs erat
 a. d. v. Kal. Apr.,²⁰ L. Pisōne, A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

1. quibus: *by which*. The repeated antecedent (*itineribus*) is not to be translated (560, a). 2. possent: the subjunctive is used here in a relative clause which describes (584). 3. per Sēquanōs: translate *through the territory of the Sequanians*. The name of the people is often given instead of the territory inhabited by them. 4. quā: *by which way*; adverb. 5. singuli: *one by one*. 6. dūcerentur: *could be drawn* (582). 7. possent: (587). 8. alterum (iter): *the other (route)*. 9. multō: (560). 10. facilius atque expeditius: *easier and more convenient*. 11. qui . . . erant: the Allobroges, who were first conquered in 121 B.C., had revolted and were again subdued in 61 B.C. 12. isque: *and it*; the Rhone. 13. nōn nullis: *several*; what is it literally? Double negatives are used frequently in Latin. 14. locīs: the ablative of *locus* without a preposition is used to express *place where* (552, a). 15. sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (esse): *that they would either persuade*; a principal statement in indirect discourse depending on *existimābant*. 16. bonō animō: *well disposed*; what is it literally (141)? 17. in: *toward*. 18. vī: *by force*. 19. omnēs convenient: *all were to assemble*; in a relative clause of purpose. 20. a. d. v. Kal. Apr.: *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs*; (635).

278.

COMPREHENSION

1. Which of the two ways possible to the Helvetians was the more difficult? Why? 2. Why did the Helvetians think the Allobroges might be willing to help them?

279.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iterātiō: Ablative of description (544).

Memoriae mandā: *Fac animō magnō fortique sis*, *See to it that you are of a great and courageous soul*.

Respondē Latīnē: Quō animō in Caesarem erant Allobrogēs?

Scribe Latīnē: The Rhone, a river of great depth (*altitūdō*), where it flows between these territories, is crossed by several fords.

280.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: fluō, nōn nūllus, pācō, proptereā, quā, singulī, vadum, vel.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related by derivation: *convention, dome, impending, null, riparian, superfluous, unanimous*? What is a *bonus*?

Caesar hurries to Geneva and prepares to stop the Helvetians

"Caesar, learning that the Helvetii intended to pass through the Roman province, left Rome hastily in the month of March, hurried by forced marches into Transalpine Gaul, and according to Plutarch, reached Geneva in eight days. As he had in the province only a single legion, he ordered a levy of as many men as possible and then destroyed the bridge of Geneva."

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE III, *History of Julius Caesar*

7. Caesari¹ cum id² nūtiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe³ proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus⁴ in Galliam ulteriōrem⁵ contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat⁶ (erat omnīnō in Galliā⁵ ulteriōre legiō ūna⁷); pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīū certiōrēs factī sunt,⁸ lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvītātis, quī rogārent⁹ ut iter per Prōvinciam facere eius voluntāte sibi liceret.¹⁰

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occisum¹¹ exercitumque eius ab Helvētīis pulsum¹¹ et sub iugum missum,¹¹ concēdendum¹² nōn putābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum¹³ militēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent lēgālīs respondit, "Diem¹⁴ ad dēliberandum sūmam; sī quid vultis,¹⁵ ad Id. Apr. revertiminī."

1. *Caesari*: this word is given an emphatic position because it introduces the hero of the story, Gaius Julius Caesar. The preceding chapters have set forth the situation which confronts him. 2. *id*: *it*; explained by the infinitive clause, *eōs* . . . *cōnārī*, which is used in apposition. 3. *urbe*: *i.e.*, Rome, *the city*, as distinguished from other cities in Italy. 4. *quam* . . . *itineribus*: *by marches as long*

as possible. It is said that Caesar on this journey marched ninety miles a day. 5. Galliam ulteriorem: see Map. 6. Prövinciae tötí, imperat: he levied upon the whole Province (617). 7. legiö üna: the famous Tenth Legion. 8. Ubi, Helvëtí certióres facti sunt: translate when the Helvetians were informed; certiórem faciö is one of Caesar's favorite idioms; what is the literal translation? ubi: (602). 9. quí rogärent: to ask. Why subjunctive? 10. ut . . . licëret: translate that, with his consent, permission be granted to them to journey through the Province; a substantive volitive clause, the object of rogärent. 11. occisum, pulsum, missum: esse is understood. 12. concëdendum (esse): translate he should grant the request; passive periphrastic conjugation in indirect statement with putäbat. 13. dum: until (601). 14. diem: note the meaning here, time.

281.

COMPREHENSION

1. Where was Caesar when he learned of the plan of the Helvetians?
2. What did he do? 3. What did Helvetian envoys ask Caesar? 4. Why did Caesar take so much time to consider the request of the Helvetians?

282.

EXERCITÄTIÖ

Iterätiö: Temporal clauses with *ubi* and the indicative (602).

Memoriae mandä: Ubi sölitüdinem faciunt, päcem appellant, *When they make a solitude, they call it peace.* Tacitus, a great Roman historian, thus characterized the Roman method of making peace.

Respondë Latīnë: Ubi Caesar certior dë hōc cōnsiliö factus est, quid Prövinciae imperävit? Quot legiönës erant in ulteriöre Galliä?

Scribe Latīnë: When time (a day) for deliberating has intervened, the ambassadors return.

283.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: imperö, intercëdö, lëgätus, legiö, licet, pellö, tamen, ulterior, voluntäs.

Word Study. The word *subjugate* is derived from two Latin words, *sub* and *iugum*, under the yoke. This yoke consisted of three spears, two placed upright and a third placed horizontally across so low that those passing under had to bow their heads. The ceremony of sending a conquered people under the yoke was indicative of complete submission and *subjugation*.

Define the following words derived from *pellö*, showing that each contains the idea of *driving*: *compulsory*, *dispel*, *expulsion*, *impulsive*, *propel*, *repellent*, *repulsive*.



Trajan's Column, Rome

SOLDIERS BUILDING A WALL

A wall was often built of trunks of trees and then covered with earth.

Caesar refuses a right of way to the Helvetians

"The Helvetii were kept back by evasive answers to their request for a passage; and, after a vain attempt to break through the rampart, they went into the territory of the Sequani." E. S. SHUCKBURGH, *History of Rome*

8. Intereā¹ eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex Prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIII mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perducit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit,² castella commūnit, quō³ facilius, sī trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

Ubi lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat⁴ sē mōre et exemplō⁵ populi Rōmānī posse⁴ iter ulli⁶ per Prōvinciam dare.

Helvētiū eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factis,⁷ aliī⁸ vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, perrumpere cōnātī,⁸ operis mūnitiōne⁹ et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

1. Intereā: the time during which the soldiers whom Caesar had levied were assembling and while Caesar was considering his answer to the Helvetians. 2. dispōnit: translate *he posted at intervals*; what is the force of the prefix? 3. quō: introduces a purpose clause (585, a). 4. negat sē, posse: *he said he could not*. The word *negō* is usually translated, *I say*, with *not* in the subordinate clause. 5. mōre

et exemplō: in accordance with the custom and precedent (537). 6. ūlli: why dative (516)? 7. nāvibus . . . factis: (some) fastened their boats together and made several rafts; translate an ablative absolute by a clause. 8. alii, cōnāti: others attempting; contrasted with those who tried to cross on the joined boats and rafts. 9. operis mūnitiōne: translate by the strength of the work; i.e., the fortifications made by Caesar. Caesar's statement that this wall was nineteen miles long is not to be understood literally. In his *History of Julius Caesar*, Napoleon Bonaparte III points out the fact that the left bank of the Rhone in this region is so steep that it would be unnecessary to build extensive fortifications except in a few places. It is probable that Caesar cut down the face of the bank from the top for sixteen feet, making a steep front difficult to surmount. A row of palisades may have been driven along the top of this wall.

284.

COMPREHENSION

1. What reason for refusing their request did Caesar give to the Helvetian envoys? 2. In what ways did the Helvetians try to cross the Rhone? 3. How were they kept back? 4. What was Caesar's real reason for not giving the Helvetians permission to go through the Roman province?

285.

EXERCITATIO

Iterātiō: Purpose clauses introduced by *quō* (585, a).

Memoriae mandā: *Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur*, It is fitting that a law should be brief in order that it may be the more easily grasped by the unlearned. SENECA

Respondē Latīnē: Quō cōnsiliō mūrum et fossam ā lacū ad montem fēcit?

Scribe Latīnē: In the meantime Caesar made many fortresses by which he might more easily repulse the Helvetians.

286.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: altitūdō, castellum, complūrēs, fossa, intereā, mūnitiō, mūrus, opus, ūllus.

Word Study. From the Latin word *dividere*, the English word *dividend*, the thing to be *divided*, is derived. Give five other terms used in mathematics derived from *dividere*.

To what word in the chapter is each of the following related by derivation: *dejection*, *flume*, *minimize*, *mural*, *prohibition*, *operate*? Define each English word on the basis of its derivation.

They gain permission to go through the Sequanian territory

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via,¹ quā, Sēquanīs invītīs,² propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs³ cum⁴ suā sponte⁵ persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt ut, eō dēprecātōre,⁶ ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.⁷

Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat⁸; et Helvētiis erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātīmōnium dūxerat, et cupiditatē rēgnī⁹ adductus novīs rēbus¹⁰ studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habere obstrictās¹¹ volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque¹² utī inter sēsē dent¹³ perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant;¹⁴ Helvētiū, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

1. Relinquēbātur ūna, via: what is the effect of the unusual position of the verb?
2. Sēquanīs invītīs: ablative absolute; translate by a clause expressing condition.
3. Hīs: i.e., the Sequanians; dative with persuādere. 4. cum: since. 5. suā sponte: translate by their own influence. 6. eō dēprecātōre: translate through his intercession; an ablative absolute, consisting of two substantives (540). 7. ut, impetrārent: purpose clause. 8. plūrimum poterat: translate was very influential.
9. rēgnī: (89). 10. novīs rēbus: for a revolution (517). 11. suō . . . obstrictās: to have bound through his favor; translate under obligation because of his kindness.
12. obsidēs: hostages; as a pledge of good faith, a state would give to another some of its citizens, usually children of influential men. 13. utī, dent: that they give; depends upon perficit, he brings (it) about. 14. Sēquanī, nē . . . prohibeant: the Sequanians (promising) that they will not stop the Helvetians from their march (through their territory).

287.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did the Helvetians ask permission to go through the territory of the Sequanians? 2. What was the controlling motive of Dumnorix in interceding for the Helvetians? 3. In the exchange of hostages, what did each side promise?

288.

EXERCITATIO

Ileratiō: Objective genitive (512).

Memoriae mandā: Crēscit amor nummī quantum ipsa pecūnia crēvit,
The love of money increases as fast as the money has increased. JUVENAL

Respondē Latīnē: Quā cupiditāte adductus Orgetorix novīs rēbus studēbat?

Scribē Latīnē: Dumnorix, influenced by the desire for power, of his own accord obtained his request that the Helvetians (though) unwilling give hostages.

289.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: angustiae, impetrō, invitus, malefīcium, obses, sponte, studeō.

Word Study. The word *trivial* is derived from the Latin words *trēs*, *three*, and *via*, *road*. Since crowds would gather at a crossroad to gossip, the word *trivial* was applied to unimportant or trifling affairs.

Give English words related by derivation to the following: *benefīcium*, *filia*, *grātia*, *mātrimōnium*, *perficiō*, *sponte*, *via*.

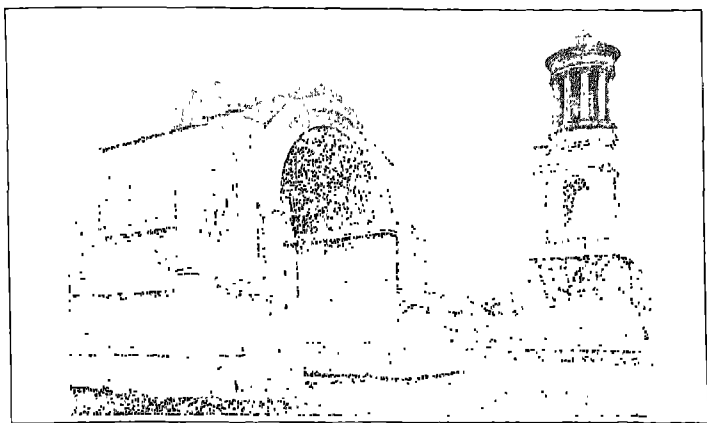
Caesar prepares to check the invaders and protect the Province

"He (Caesar) showed no hesitation. He had immediately proceeded from Geneva in person to Italy, and with characteristic speed brought up the three legions cantoned there as well as two newly formed legions of recruits." THEODOR MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*.

10. Caesarī renūtiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō¹ per agrum Sēquanōrum² et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in Prōvinciā. Intellegēbat magnō cum periculō Prōvinciae
5 futūrum³ ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs⁴ patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret.

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī⁵ quam fēcerat T.⁶ Labiēnum lēgātum praefecit; ipse in Italiā⁷ magnīs itineribus⁸ contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs,⁹ quae circum
10 Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit; et, quā¹⁰ proximū¹¹ iter in ulteriōrem Galliā per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quinq̄ue legiōnibus ire contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Com-
15 plūribus hīs proeliis¹² pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris¹³ Prōvinciae extrēmum,¹⁴ in finēs Vocontiōrum ul-



ROMAN MONUMENTS IN THE PROVINCE

© Ewing Galloway

This Roman arch and mausoleum are near Saint-Rémy, France, in Provence.

teriōris Prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā Prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

1. *Helvētiīs* . . . *animō*: translate *that the Helvetians had it in mind*; *Helvētiīs* is dative (521). What is the literal translation? 2. *agrum Sēquanōrum*: locate on the map the territories of the four peoples named. 3. *futūrum (esse)*: *it would be*; an infinitive in indirect statement; the substantive clause, *ut, habēret, to have*, is its subject. 4. *locis*: dative with the adjective *finitimōs*. 5. *ei mūnitiōni*: (27). 6. *T.*: Titum. 7. *Italiam*: northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul, which was included in Caesar's province. 8. *magnis itineribus*: an idiomatic expression for *by forced marches*. 9. *trēs*: the Seventh, Eighth, and Ninth Legions; the other two legions mentioned were the Eleventh and Twelfth. About how many legionaries did Caesar now have? 10. *quā*: *where*; the adverb. 11. *proximum*: *nearest*; translate *shortest*. Follow on the map the route taken by Caesar. 12. *Complūribus, proeliis*: ablative of means modifying the ablative absolute, *his pulsīs*. 13. *citeriōris*: *nearer to Rome*. 14. *extrēmum*: *farthest west*.

290.

COMPREHENSION

1. What was the plan of the Helvetians as reported to Caesar? 2. How did this concern the Romans? 3. What characteristics of Caesar are displayed by the activities recorded in this chapter?

291.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Dative with a compound verb (518).

Memoriae mandā: Nōn ignāra malī miseris succurrere discō, *Not unacquainted with misfortune myself, I know how to aid others in trouble.*

VERGIL

Respondē Latinē: Quem lēgātum Caesar hibernis praefecit?

Scribe Latinē: Caesar placed a lieutenant in command of the legions which had wintered in hither Gaul.

292.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: circum, ceterior, cōscribō, extrā, frūmentārius, hiberna, hiemō, inde, intellegō, praeficiō, superior.

Word Study. The suffix -ōsus (in English -ose, -ous) meaning *full of*, attached usually to noun stems, forms adjectives: *bellicus*, *bellicōsus*, *bellicose*. Give such derivatives from: *periculum*, *cōpia*, *verbum*.

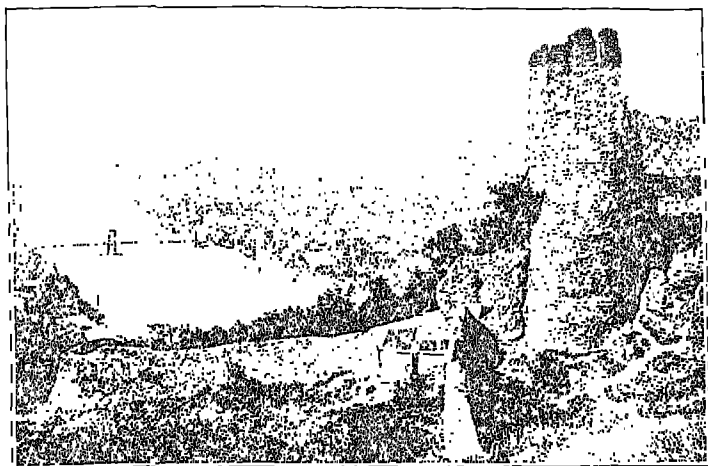
Three Gallic tribes complain of outrages of invaders

11. Helvēliū iam per angustias¹ et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque² agrōs populābantur.³ Aeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum⁴ auxilium, "Paene in cōspectū exercitūs tuī agrī nostri vāstantur, liberī in servitūtem abdūcuntur, oppida expugnantur."

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguineī⁵ Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē,⁶ dēpopulātis⁷ agris, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostiū prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs,
10 quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessionēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt⁸ et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquū.⁹

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi¹⁰ statuit dum in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.¹¹

1. angustias: what did you learn in Chapters 6 and 9 about the character of this road at the Pas de l'Écluse? 2. eōrumque: the friendship of Dumnorix with the Helvetians did not save his people from the ravages of the migrating Helvetians. 3. populābantur: were laying waste. 4. rogātum: to ask (294). 5. necessariī et



Vienne, France

THE LAND OF THE ALLOBROGES

These ruins are of a fort on the Rhone River at Vienne, Vienna, the ancient capital of the Allobroges, one of the tribes who complained that the Helvetians were devastating their lands.

cōnsanguineī: the former include connections by marriage, the latter blood relations only. 6. *sēsē*: accusative, subject of *prohibēre*. 7. *dēpopulatīs*: sometimes the perfect participle of a deponent verb has a passive meaning. 8. *fugā sē*, *recipiunt*: one of Caesar's idioms for *flee*. 9. *dēmōnstrant . . . reliquī*: *they say that they have nothing left except the bare ground*; *sibi*: (521); *reliquī* (510). 10. *nōn . . . sibi*: translate *that he ought not to wait*; *sibi* (522). 11. *pervenirent*: *should come*, anticipatory subjunctive with *dum* (601).

293.

COMPREHENSION

1. What had the Helvetians done while Caesar was mobilizing his army?
2. Follow their course on the map.
3. Was Caesar justified in proceeding against the Helvetians? Why?

294.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Purpose expressed by the supine in *-um* (631, a). In the sentence, *lĕgātōs mittunt rogātum auxiliū*, *they send ambassadors*

to ask aid, *rogātum* is a verbal noun used with *mittunt*, a verb of motion, to express purpose. Such a verbal noun, which is used only in the accusative and ablative cases, is called a *supine*. Learn the supines of the model verbs (492).

There are also other ways of expressing purpose which you have already learned. How is it expressed in each of the following sentences?

1. *Lēgātōs mittunt ut auxilium rogent.*
2. *Lēgātōs mittunt quī auxilium rogent.*
3. *Lēgātōs mittunt rogandī auxili causā.*
4. *Lēgātōs mittunt parātōs ad cōpiās rogandās.*
5. *Lēgātōs mittunt rogandī causā.*
6. *Militēs mittunt parātōs ad pugnandum.*

295.

EXERCITATIO

Memoriae mandā: Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae, They come to see, they come that they themselves may be seen. OVID

Respondē Latīnē: Quī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīserunt rogātum auxilium?

Scrībe Latīnē: The Helvetians send armies to lay waste and devastate the fields and storm the towns. Nothing is left to the Aeduans except their children.

296.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: expugnō, liberī, necessariūs, populor, praeter, statuō, vāstō.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *tradition, annihilation, sanguinary, recipe?* Explain the meaning of each.

Define the following words derived from *finis*, showing that each contains the idea of *end*: *confine, define, fine* (noun), *finally, finish, infinite, infinitive, refine*.

Caesar almost annihilates the Tigurini

“The Helvetii had moved very slowly and had occupied twenty days in bridging the Saône, which was the first considerable obstacle they met with in their progress westwards.” W. WARDE FOWLER, *Julius Caesar*

12. Flūmen est Arar,¹ quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit incrēdibilī lēnitātē.² Oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn potest. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsībant.

Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs 5 cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse,³ quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā⁴ cum legionibus tribus ē castris profectus⁵ ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus⁶ magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae¹⁰ mandārunt⁷ atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus;⁸ nam omnis cīvitas Helvētia in quatuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā⁹ L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum¹⁵ sub iugum miserat.¹⁰ Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars¹¹ cīvitatīs Helvētiae insignem calamitatem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea¹¹ princeps poenās persolvit.¹²

Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem²⁰ lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.¹³

1. Arar: the modern name of this river is the Saône. It empties into the Rhone at Lyons. Locate on map. 2. incrēdibilī lēnitātē: of smoothness past belief. 3. trādūxisse: has two objects, partēs and flūmen (528). 4. dē tertiā vigiliā: between midnight and three A.M. The night was divided into four watches of three hours each, the first beginning at sunset. 5. profectus: having set out, agreeing with the subject Caesar. 6. aggressus: attacking; perfect participles of deponent verbs are often best translated in English by present participles (626). 7. sēsē . . . mandārunt: they fled; mandārunt = mandāvērunt. 8. Tigurinus: (508). 9. memoriā: within the memory. 10. L. Cassium . . . miserat: in Chap. 7 this is given as the reason for Caesar's refusing permission to the Helvetian forces to pass through the Roman province. 11. quae pars, ea: that part which (560, a). 12. princeps . . . persolvit: was the first to pay the penalty in full; the prefix per has the force of thoroughly. 13. quod . . . interfēcerant: because the Tigurini, in the same battle in which they had killed Cassius, had killed Lucius Piso, the lieutenant-general, grandfather of his (Caesar's) father-in-law, Lucius Piso.



© Publishers Photo Service

A ROMAN AQUEDUCT NEAR LYONS

The remains of several great aqueducts built during the Roman era are among the interesting and beautiful Roman monuments in France.

297.

COMPREHENSION

1. How many of the Helvetians did Caesar attack? 2. What was the outcome? 3. What had the Tigurini done which seemed to justify their punishment?

298.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Predicate nouns and adjectives (508).

Respondē Latīnē: Caesarne certior factus est uter pāgus Rōmānōs aggressus rei publicae calamitatem insignem intulisset?

Scribe Latīnē: Caesar was informed that this was the canton which had inflicted a noteworthy disaster on the Roman people.

299.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: abdō, aggredior, calamitās, insignis, mandō, nōn solum . . . sed etiam, pāgus, pūblicus, solum, uter.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of the following related: *insignia, lenient, mandamus, mandate, republic, subpoena, vigil*? Give the meaning of each so as to show its relation to its Latin ancestor.



Trajan's Column, Rome

ARMY CROSSING A RIVER

Caesar may have made a pontoon bridge such as is shown in the illustration, when he pursued the Helvetians across the *Arar*, *Saône*.

A delegation of Helvetians comes to Caesar with promises and threats

13. *Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī fecit atque ita exercitum trādūxit.*

Helvētiū repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē lēcisse intellexerent,¹ lēgātōs ad eum mittunt;⁵ cuius lēgatiōnis Dīvicō² princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō³ dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit :

"Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiū ubi cōstitueris; sīn bellō persequī⁴ perseverābis, reminiscere⁵ et veteris incommodī⁶ 10 populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod⁷ imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum eī quī flūmen trānsierant suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōlī⁸ ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūti tribuere⁸ aut nōs dēspicere; nōs ita ā patribus maiōribusque nostrīs didicimus⁹ ut magis virtūte contendāmus¹⁵ quam dolō aut insidiīs nitāmur."¹⁰

1. *cum . . . intellexerent*: when they perceived that he (Caesar) in one day had done that which they themselves had accomplished in twenty days with great difficulty, namely the crossing of the river. 2. *Dīvicō*: in 107 B.C., he had been at the head of the Tigurini in the great migration of the Cimbri and Teutons. About how old

was he now? 3. *bellō Cassiānō*: the war with Cassius; in Latin a proper adjective is often used instead of the possessive genitive of a proper noun. 4. *persequi*: to continue in. 5. *reminiscere*: bear in mind; imperative. What case is used with this verb (514)? 6. *incommodi*: defeat. 7. *Quod*: as to the fact that; Divico's attitude is one of defiance. 8. *nōli, tribuere*: do not attribute (611, a). 9. *didicimus*: from *discō*. 10. *quam . . . nitāmur*: rather than rely upon deceit and ambushade.

300.

COMPREHENSION

1. How is Caesar's efficiency demonstrated in this chapter? 2. Was Divico successful as a diplomat? Why? 3. What points did he make in his speech?

301.

EXERCITATIO

Ablative of source (536).

Memoriae mandā: *Disce sed ā doctis*, Learn but from the learned. CATO

Respondē Latīnē: *Quid ā maiōribus didicerant*?

Scribe Latīnē: They had learned from former wars to despise ambushes. With their old-time bravery they attack and follow up the Romans.

302.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *adorior*, *dēspiciō*, *insidiae*, *magis*, *maiōrēs*, *persequor*, *prīstinus*, *repentinus*, *tribuō*, *vetus*.

Caesar's demand for satisfaction is rejected

14. His Caesar ita respondit, "Eō¹ mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās vōs commemorāvistis memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō quō minus meritō² populī Rōmānī accidērunt. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī³ vellem,⁴ num⁵ etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod,⁶ mē invitō, iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvistis, memoriam dēpōnere possum? Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrāminī, eōdem pertinent.⁷ Cōnsuēverunt enim dī immortalēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī

volunt, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniorem impūnitātem concēdere.⁸ Cum haec ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, et sī Aeduīs, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam.”

15

Dīvicō respondit, “Helvētīi ā maiōribus suis institūtī sunt utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuēverint; eius rei populus Rōmānus est testis.”

Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

1. *Eō*: on this account; the *quod* clause states the reason. 2. *eō . . . meritō*: translate *I am the more indignant, the less in accordance with the deserts*; *eō, quō*, ablatives of measure of difference. 3. *contumēliae oblivisci*: to forget the disgrace (514). 4. *vellem*: what does the imperfect subjunctive indicate as to Caesar's wish (609)? 5. *num*: indicates that the answer *no* is expected; *num iniūriarum, memoriam . . . possum*: *I cannot lay aside the memory of recent wrongs, too, can I?* 6. *quod*: the fact that; introduces substantive clauses explaining *iniūriarum*. 7. *Quod . . . pertinent*: that you boast so insolently concerning your victory, and that you wonder that you have committed wrongs so long without punishment, point in the same direction. 8. *Cōsuēverunt . . . concēdere*: for the immortal gods are accustomed, in order that men may grieve more bitterly in consequence of changes of conditions, to grant for a time more prosperous affairs and a rather long escape from punishment to those whom they wish to punish for their wickedness. Point out in the text the Latin for each expression in this English sentence. Caesar's idea of the gods' method of punishment, the result of his study of Greek dramas, does not seem to have impressed the barbarian Divico.

303.

COMPREHENSION

1. What terms of peace did Caesar propose? 2. What reply did Divico make? 3. What characterizes this reply?

304.

EXERCITĀTIŌ

Iterātiō: Ablative of measure of difference (550).

Memoriae mēdā: *Quāntō plūra parāsī, tantō plūra cupis*, *The more you have, the more you desire.* HORACE

Respondē Latīnē: Tullitne Caesar recentem contumēliam eō gravius quā minus meritō acciderat?

Scribē Latīnē: The Roman people are a witness of that which was recounted. The Helvetians were not trained to make restitution.

305.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: admīror, commemorō, contumēlia, instituō, recēns, satisfaciō, tam, testis.

Word Study. The Latin adverb *item*, *also*, was formerly used before the name of each article, except the first, on a bill or account. It gradually lost its original significance and became the English noun, *item*, which is in common use today.

To what word in the chapter is each of the following related: *admiration, date, deposit, impunity, indolent, oblivion, tempt, testimony, vex*? Define each.

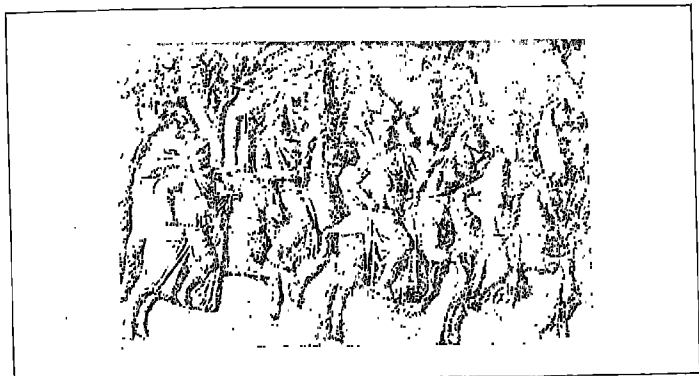
*
The Helvetians advance, and Caesar follows

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs ¹ hostēs iter faciant.²
 5 Qui ³ cupidius novissimum agmen insecutī ⁴ aliēnō ⁵ locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētīi, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn
 10 numquam et novissimō agmine ⁶ proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā ⁷ hostem rapinīs, ⁸ pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre.

Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum
 15 hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus ⁹ passuum interesset.

1. quās in partēs: *in what direction*. 2. faciant: *why subjunctive (48)?*
 3. quī: *they*. 4. cupidius . . . insecutī: *following the rear line too eagerly*.
 5. aliēnō: *unfavorable*. 6. novissimō agmine: *with their rear line (they attacked our men who were following them)*. Why does novissimum agmen mean *rear line*?
 7. ac . . . praesentiā: *and he considered it enough for the time being*. 8. rapinīs: *from plundering (534)*. 9. quīnīs . . . milibus: *an ablative of comparison*. Point out in the chapter and name four different uses of the ablative.



Trajan's Column, Rome

CAVALRY

The chief duty of the cavalry was to start an engagement and to pursue the enemy.

306.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did the Helvetians become more bold? 2. How was this shown?
3. What plan did Caesar follow for the time being? Why?

307.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Indirect question (596).

Memoriae mandā: Nōn rēfert quam multōs sed quam bonōs librōs habeās, *It is not a question of how many but how good books you have.* SENECA

Respondē Latīnē: Vidēbantne quās in partēs hostēs iter audācter facerent?

Scribe Latīnē: Did the Helvetians see why our cavalry was sent ahead into an unfavorable place?

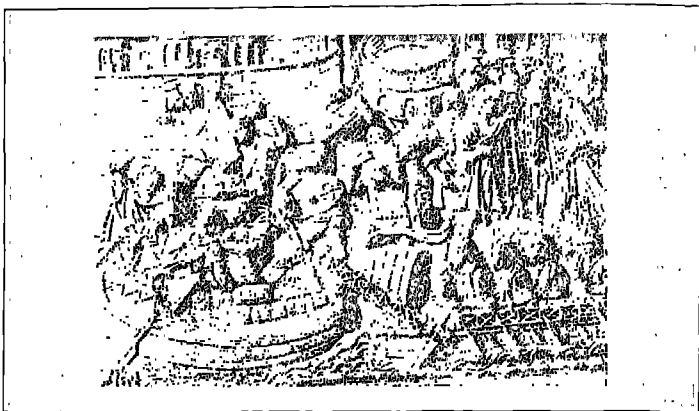
308.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: agmen, aliēnus, ampliūs, audācter, cadō, eques, equitātus, laccessō, praemittō, tantus.

Word Study. How has the Latin word *nostrum* come to be applied to a quack medicine?

To what word in the chapter is each of the following related: *alienate*, *amplifier*, *cadaver*, *deciduous*, *rapine*? Define each English word on the basis of its derivation.



Trojan's Column, Rome

TRANSPORTING SUPPLIES BY BOAT

Caesar was in need of the grain promised by the Aeduans, for when he turned from the Arar to follow the Helvetians, he could no longer use the supplies that he was bringing down the river by boat.

The Story of Chapters 16-20

Caesar learns that the Aeduans are not furnishing the grain promised, because they are being influenced by anti-Roman propaganda. The brother of Diviciacus, Dumnorix, who is rich, ambitious, unprincipled, and powerful, is the leader of the anti-Roman movement. He favors the Helvetians, through whose influence he hopes to become king. It was he who, as head of the Aeduan cavalry, had treacherously started the retreat that led to the recent Roman defeat. Caesar thinks that Dumnorix should be punished but hesitates to offend his brother Diviciacus, a loyal friend of the Roman people. Accordingly, he summons Diviciacus, relates to him all the facts, and asks him to pass judgment on his brother. Diviciacus acknowledges the truth of the accusations but makes a strong appeal for his brother's life. This Caesar grants but keeps Dumnorix under surveillance.

"In a private conference with Liscus, Caesar learns more exactly the actual domestic situation among the Aedui, particularly of the feud between the brothers, the Druid Diviciacus, and the aspirant for monarchy, Dumnorix. One learns how ambitious noblemen rose, or planned to rise among the Kelts." E. G. SIHLER, *Annals of Caesar*

"It was, indeed, good policy not to alienate the Aeduan people by any excessive severity against a man of power among them." NAPOLEON BONAPARTE III, *History of Julius Caesar*

In writing to one of Caesar's staff, Cicero jokingly refers to the Aeduans as "our brothers."

Caesar plans an attack from two sides

21. Eōdem diē ab explorātōribus certior factus¹ hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū² ascēsus, quī cognōscerent,³ misit. Renūtiātum est facilem esse.

Dē tertiā vigiliā⁴ Titum Labiēnum,⁵ lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilii sit ostendit.⁶ Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eos contendit equitātumque omnem ante se mittit.

P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris⁷ peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explorātōribus praemittitur.

1. certior factus: *informed*; modifies Caesar understood, the subject of misit.
2. in circuitū: translate *on all sides*; circuitus is a compound of what two words? Caesar planned a double attack: one division was to attack the Helvetians in front; the other was to follow a circuitous route, ascend the mountain unseen, and charge down upon them from above.
3. (explorātōrēs) quī cognōscerent: *scouts to find out*.
4. tertiā vigiliā: about what time was this?
5. Labiēnum: an interesting character to follow through the Gallic War because he plays an important part. Caesar placed him in a class by himself and seemed to have great faith in his ability. It is surprising to find that he fought against Caesar in the Civil War that followed.
6. quid . . . ostendit: *he shows what his plan is*.
7. rei militāris: (310). It is strange that one "so highly skilled in military affairs" would make the mistake that Caesar tells of in the next chapter. Explain the mood of: esset, l. 3; cognōscerent, l. 3; sit, l. 7; the case of: passuum, l. 2; cōnsilii, l. 7.

309.

COMPREHENSION

1. What was the reputation of Considius and how had he gained it?
2. Why does Caesar emphasize this reputation?

310.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Genitive with adjectives. In the phrase, *reī militāris perītissimus*, *very skillful in military science*, l. 10, *reī militāris* in the genitive case is used with *perītissimus* to specify *that in which* *Considius* is skillful. For the other adjectives with which the genitive is used, see 513.

Translate: *integer vītae, nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī, plēna cōsiliōrum.*

311.

EXERCITATIŌ

Memoriae mandā: *Vir bonus dicendī perītus*, *A good man skilled in speaking.* This definition of an orator, attributed to Cato, is often quoted by Roman writers.

Respondē Latīnē: Cuius reī erat P. Cōsidius perītissimus?

Scribe Latīnē: Caesar sent a scout who was skilled in military science.

312.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *explōrātor, militāris.*

Word Study. The suffixes *-āris* and *-ārius* (in English *-ar, -ary*), meaning *pertaining to*, added to stems, usually of nouns and adjectives, form adjectives: *mīles, milit- + -āris, militāris, military.* Give the derivation of: *January, legionary, popular, singular.*

To what word in the chapter is each of the following related: *conjugation, October, quality, renounce?* Define each on the basis of its derivation.

The mistake of Considius causes the failure of Caesar's plan

"Caesar planned to strike the migratory post in front and rear; but this design was defeated by an elderly sub-officer, who blundered through nervousness and poor eyesight. There were no field glasses then." E. G. SIHLER, *Annals of Caesar*

22. *Primā lūce*,¹ *cum* ² *summus mōns* ³ *ā Labiēnō tenērētur*, *ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentis passibus abesset, neque*,⁵ *ut* ⁴ *postea ex captivis comperit, aut* ⁵ *ipsius adventus aut* ⁵ *Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōsidius, equō admissō*,⁶ *ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit*

ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit.

Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum⁷ ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra visae¹⁰ essent, monte occupātō, nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstīnēbat.

Multō dēnique diē⁸ per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō⁹ sibi renūntiā-¹⁵ visse.

Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō,¹⁰ hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

1. *Primā luce*: translate *at daybreak*; at this time of the year in this locality, daybreak comes at about four o'clock. 2. *cum*: what verbs are introduced by this conjunction? 3. *summus mōns*: translate *the top of the mountain*. 4. *ut*: as, is followed by the indicative mood. 5. *neque, aut, aut*: *and, neither, nor*. 6. *equō admissō*: translate *with his horse at full speed*. 7. *ut . . . praeceptum*: translate *as he had been instructed*. What is it literally? 8. *Multō, diē*: translate *late in the day*. 9. *quod . . . visō*: *as seen, what he had not seen*. Caesar does not record what he then said to Considius. 10. *quō . . . intervāllō*: translate *at the usual distance*; about five miles; *intervāllō*, the antecedent of *quō* is in the relative clause; *cōnsuērat*: = *cōnsuēverat*.

313.

COMPREHENSION

1. What report did Considius make to Caesar?
2. What did Caesar do?
3. What mistake did Considius make? Why?

314.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iteratiō: Idiomatic use of adjectives to denote a part (667, a).

Memoriae mandā: *Ferunt summōs fulgura montēs*, *The lightning strikes the tops of the mountains*. HORACE

Respondē Latinē: Quandō Labiēnus summum collem occupābat? Quid Caesar multō diē ex captivīs cognōvit?

Scribe Latinē: At daybreak Labienus was on the top of the mountain, as Caesar found out late in the day.

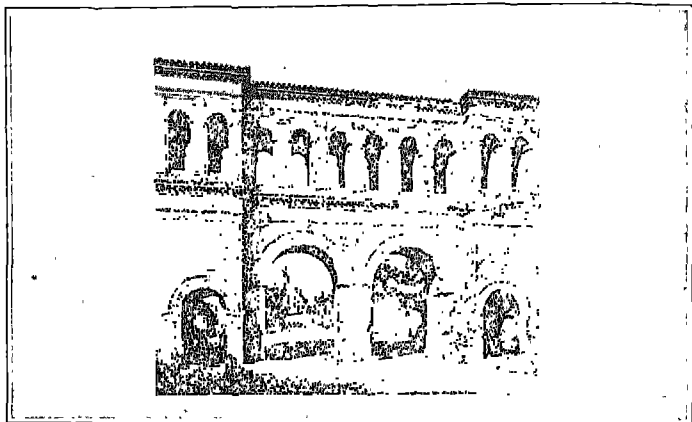
315.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *admittō, captivus, collis, comperiō, prope.*

Word Study. The suffixes *-icus, -ius, -nus*, and *-ēnsis*, denoting *pertaining to or connected with*, added to noun stems, form adjectives. *Galicus* is an example of this formation. Give the formation and meaning of the following words, derived from words that you have already studied: *rēgius, frāternus, Athēniēnsis, Italicus, forēnsis*. Show how *ēgregius* (*grex, gregis, herd*) means *remarkable*.

To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *admissible, captive, consequence, elucidate, instruction, itinerant, proximity*? Define each.



Autun, France

Courtesy of Railways of France

ROMAN GATE NEAR BIBRACTE

This is a restoration of a Roman gate at Autun, a city situated a few miles from the site of ancient Bibracte, the capital of the Aeduans.

Caesar turns to Bibracte for supplies. The Helvetians pursue

23. *Postridiē eius diē,¹ quod omninō bīduum supererat² cum exercituī frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte,³ oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus⁴ passuum xviii aberat, rei frūmentāriæ prōspiciendum⁵ existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit.*

Ea res per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis⁶ equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētīi, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent,⁷ sive quod rē⁸ frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, itinere conversō,⁹ nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequī ac lacescere coepērunt. 10

1. *Postridiē eius diēi*: on the day after this day; translate the next day. *Postridiē* is an adverb formed from *posterō* + *diē*. 2. *quod . . . supererat*: because only two days remained. 3. *Bibracte*: the site of the Aeduan capital, now called Mont Beuvray. Recent excavations show that there was once a city on this site. 4. *milibus*: an ablative of comparison. 5. *prōspiciendū*: supply *sibi* and *esse*; translate that he should look out for (74), passive periphrastic conjugation in indirect discourse. 6. *decuriōnis*: a *decuriō* was a petty cavalry officer in charge of a *decuria*. The word *decuria* suggests how many men? 7. *existimārent*: what does the subjunctive in the *quod* causal clause indicate (603, a)? What other verb in this sentence is used in the same way? 8. *rē*: ablative of separation with *interclūdī*. 9. *itinere conversō*: point out on the map the course followed by the Helvetians and by Caesar, as given from Chap. 15 to this point.

316.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did Caesar change his course and go toward Bibracte? 2. How did the Helvetians interpret his movement? 3. What change did this make in the plans of the Helvetians?

317.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Ablative of comparison (539). *He is braver than you, ille fortior est quam tū.* In this Latin sentence comparison is expressed just as in the English sentence, by a comparative *fortior* (*braver*) + *quam* (*than*) + *tū* (*you*) in the same case as *ille* (*he*). Comparison may also be expressed in Latin by the ablative case without *quam* (but only as a substitute for the nominative or the accusative case): *ille fortior tē est.*

Translate: *Haec via lātiōr illā erat; mōns altior colle est.*

318.

EXERCITATIO

Memoriae mandā: *Nihil est virtūte amābilius, Nothing is more attractive than virtue.* CICERO

Respondē Latīnē: Quod oppidum nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat?

Scribe Latīnē: Only two days remain, and he is more than eighteen miles away.

319.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *biduum*, *cōfidō*, *interclūdō*, *mētiōr*, *prōspiciō*, *supersum*.

Word Study. The suffix *-ivus* (in English *-ive*), denoting *pertaining to*, usually added to the stems of perfect passive participles, forms adjectives: from *fugiō*, *fugitivus* (*fugit-* + *-ivus*), *fugitive*. From words thus formed are derived the names for moods and cases: *indicative* from *indicātivus*; *nominative* from *nominātivus*; *dative* from *dativus*. Give other examples.

Romans and Helvetians prepare for an engagement

24. Postquam ¹ id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem ² subducit equitātumque quī sustinēret ³ hostium impetum misit.

Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instruxit legionum ⁵ quattuor veterānārum; atque suprā sē in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia ⁴ collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās ⁵ in ūnum locum cōferri et eum ⁶ ab hīs quī in superioriēre aciē cōstiterant mūniri iussit.

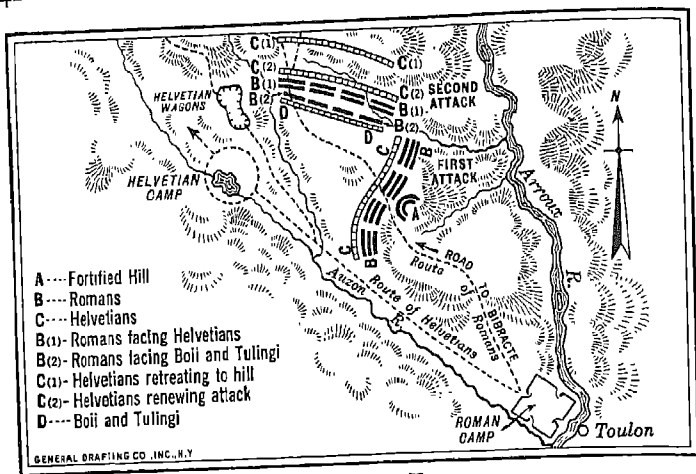
10 Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūti impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā ⁷ aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, ⁸ sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

1. *Postquam*: *after*; used with a verb in what mood? 2. *collem*: near Armecy, about eighteen miles south of Bibracte. 3. *quī sustinēret*: *to check*. 4. *auxilia*: not Romans, but from states allied to Rome (262); *auxilia collocārī* depends on *iussit*. 5. *sarcinās*: *packs*, containing personal belongings, weapons, and tools carried by the soldiers. 6. *eum*: the place just mentioned. It was fortified by a trench and rampart of earth. Traces of the trench have been found by excavators. 7. *cōfertissimā*: *very compact*. 8. *phalange factā*: a phalanx was formed by lapping shields together in front and overhead.

320.

COMPREHENSION

1. Describe the arrangement of Caesar's forces. 2. Which side had the more advantageous position?



THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

The Romans charge. The Helvetians fall back, then rally

"He sent back his horse, and the rest followed his example. This he did to prevent all hopes of a retreat, as well as show his troops that he would take his share in all the danger." PLUTARCH, *Life of Caesar*

25. Caesar, primum suō,¹ deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtīs equīs, ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus² suōs proelium commisit.

Militēs, ē locō superiōre pilīs³ missīs, facile⁴ hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt et gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fecērunt.

5 Gallīs⁵ magnō ad pugnam erat impedimētō⁶ quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs unō ictū pilōrum trānsfixīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque, sinistrā impeditā, satis com-
modē pugnāre poterant.⁶ Multī, diū iactātō⁷ bracciō, prae-
tāvērunt scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō⁸ corpore pugnāre.
10 Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre⁹ et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō¹⁰ sē recipere coepērunt.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī et Tulingī,¹¹ quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō



Trajan's Column, Rome

DISMOUNTED

Caesar sent away his own horse and those of the other officers because he wished to set his soldiers an example and at the same time to remove from his timid tribunes the temptation of running away from the fight.

aggressī circumvērunt ; id cōspicātī Helvētīi, quī in montem 15
sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt.

Rōmānī conversa signa 12 bipertītō intulērunt : prima et
secunda aciēs, ut victis 13 ac summōtis 14 resisteret ; tertia, ut
venientēs 15 sustinēret.

1. *primum suō (equō remōtō)* : first (Caesar) sent away his own horse. 2. *cohortātus* : Caesar is eager for the success of his first battle in Gaul. 3. *pilis* : many Roman javelins have been found on Caesar's battlefields. 4. *facile* : it was easy to break up the phalanx because of the weight and force of the weapons thrown from above. 5. *Gallis . . . poterant* : translate it was a great disadvantage to the Gauls in fighting that many of their shields were pierced and held together by one stroke of the (Roman) javelins, and when the iron (head) had bent, they (the Gauls) were not able to pull the javelins out, nor to fight very conveniently with their left hands hampered. 6. *Gallis, impedimentō* : (164) (106). 7. *iactātō* : they threw their arms about in an effort to pull the bent javelins from their shields. 8. *nūdō* : i.e., without a shield. 9. *pedem referre* : translate to fall back ; an idiomatic expression. What is it literally? 10. *eō* : to that place ; i.e., the hill. 11. *Boi et Tulingi* : they arrived when the Romans were pursuing the retreating Helvetians and, without

reforming, attacked the Romans on the exposed flank and began to surround them. The Helvetians, seeing this, began to fight again, and the Romans now had to divide their forces, holding two lines against the Helvetians and the third against the advancing Boii and Tulingi. **12. *conversa signa***: translate *faced about*. **13. *victis***: Explain the case of this and the following words: *fugae*, l. 2; *gladiis*, l. 4; *ictū*, l. 6; *monte*, l. 12; *novissimis*, l. 14; *praesidiō*, l. 14. **14. *summōtis***: *dislodged* (*Helvetians*). **15. *venientēs***: *those who were coming up*; a participle used substantively.

323.

COMPREHENSION

1. What did Caesar do before beginning battle? Why? 2. What effect did the arrival of reinforcements have upon the Helvetians? 3. Why did many of the Helvetians throw down their shields?

324.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Dative of purpose (523). Dative of reference (519).

Memoriae mandā: Cui bonō, *What's the use?* CICERO

Respondē Latīnē: Cui agminī erant praesidiō Boii et Tulingi?

Scribe Latīnē: Their shields and javelins were an impediment to the weary Gauls. They press forward to the open side and surround our men.

325.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *apertus*, *circumveniō*, *cōspicor*, *dēfessus*, *ferrum*, *instō*, *latus*, *pilum*, *removeō*, *resistō*, *scūtum*, *sinister*.

Word Study. The Latin word *sinister* comes down unchanged in English in its form. What is its meaning?

To what word in the chapter is each of the following related: *assignment*, *circumvent*, *emissary*, *gladiatorial*, *instant*, *integer*, *lateral*, *reference*?

The Helvetians are defeated and put to rout

26. Ita ancipiti¹ proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.² Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī³ sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī³ ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum⁴ sab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sīt, āversum⁵ hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.

Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est,

propterea quod prō vallō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre ⁶ in nostrōs venientēs tela coniciēbant,⁷ et nōn nulli inter carrōs rotāsque matarās ac trāgulas subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. ¹⁰ Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis ⁸ captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte ⁹ continenter iērunt; in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt. Propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram ¹⁵ occisōrum nostrī eōs sequi nōn potuērunt.

Cæsar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve ¹⁰ aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum.¹¹ Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis ¹² eōs sequi coepit. 20

1. *ancipiti*: translate *on two fronts*. 2. *pugnātum est*: impersonal use (502); translate using *they* or *the battle* as the subject. 3. *alteri, alteri*: the Helvetians, the Boii and Tulingi. 4. *cum*: *although*; adversative (67). 5. *aversum*: *turned*; *i.e.*, their backs. 6. *ē locō superiōre*: *i.e.*, from the rampart made of carts. 7. *coniciēbant*: *kept throwing*; note the force of the imperfect. 8. *ē filiis*: *of the sons*; instead of the genitive of the whole (510, a). *Ē plūribus ūnum* is also an example of this use. 9. *eāque tōtā nocte*: *during that whole night*; extent of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative (553, a). 10. *nēve*: *nor*. 11. *nē . . . habitūrum*: indirect discourse; *nē . . . iuvārent*: the subjunctive represents a negative command of the direct discourse (622); *iūvissent*: represents the future perfect indicative *iūveritis* (623, a, Note); *habitūrum*, the future *habēbō* (619). 12. *cōpiis*: explain the use of this word and the following: *possent*, l. 2; *cooperant*, l. 3; *venientēs*, l. 9; *esset pugnātum*, l. 11; *impedimentis*, l. 11; *finēs*, l. 14; *diē*, l. 14.

326.

COMPREHENSION

1. What praise does Cæsar bestow upon the enemy? 2. What message did he send the Lingones? 3. Why did he not follow at once?

327.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratiō: Adversative clauses with *cum* (606).

Respondē Latīnē: Quid Helvētī prō vallō obiēcērunt?

Scribe Latīnē: Although three days had intervened, the messengers with letters had not gone.

328.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: littera, nēve, nūntius, obiciō, trīdium, vāllum.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these words related:
dial, objector, obliterate, diurnal, journal, recipient, sepulchral?

The Helvetians beg for peace. One division attempts to escape

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē
 dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī¹ cum eum in itinere con-
 vēnissent suppliciterque² locūtī flentēs³ pācem petissent,² eōs
 in eō locō quō tum essent⁴ suum adventum exspectāre iussit.
 5 Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī
 ad eōs perfūgissent⁵ poposcit. Dum⁶ ea conquīruntur et
 cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia sex eius pāgī quī Verbigenus
 appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, sive spē salūtis inductī,⁷ quod
 10 ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte⁸ ē castris Helvētiōrum
 ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

1. Quī: *they* (560, c). 2. suppliciterque . . . petissent: *and speaking in suppliant manner with tears had begged for peace.* 3. flentēs: present participle, modifies quī (625). 4. essent: in direct discourse this would be estis. 5. perfūgissent: *had taken refuge*; represents perfūgērunt of direct discourse. 6. dum: *while* (600). 7. inductī: modifies mīlia but agrees in sense with hominēs understood. Point out in the chapter: three perfect passive participles; two objective genitives; two cum circumstantial clauses. 8. primā nocte: *in the first (part of the) night*; translate *at nightfall*. Give the Latin for: *late at night; early in the morning.*

329.

COMPREHENSION

1. Compare the attitude of the Helvetians with that described in Chapters 13 and 14. 2. What terms of peace did Caesar impose? 3. Why did one division flee from the camp of the Helvetians?

330.

EXERCITATIO

Iterāliō: Use of participles (625-8).

Memoriae mandā: Timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs, *I fear the Greeks even (when) bringing gifts.* VERGIL

Respondē Latīnē: Quōmodo Helvētīi pācem petivērunt?

Scribe Latinē: Caesar seeks out the deserters (fleeing ones) whose flight had been concealed or not known.

331.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *conquīrō, dēditio, fleō, ignōrō, occultō, perfugiō, poscō.*

Word Study. From the word *pāgus* comes the word *pagan*, one who lived in a *pāgus*, *village* or district away from the city. Since the *pāgāni*, people who lived in the villages, were Christianized much later than city dwellers, the term *pagan* came to have the meaning of *non-Christian*.

To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *adventure, appellation, circumlocution, convenient, feeble, ignoramus, jussive, salute?* Give the meaning of each on the basis of its derivation.



Trajan's Column, Rome

THE RETURN HOME

The Helvetians, sent back home with their wives, children, and flocks, must have presented a scene similar to the one shown in this illustration.

The fugitives are captured; the rest sent back home

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit;¹ reductōs in hostium numero² habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant s

profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod, omnibus frugibus amissis, domi³ nihil erat quō famem tolerarent,⁴ Allobrogibus imperavit ut eis frumentī cōpiam facerent;⁵ ipsōs⁶ oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

10 Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiū discesserant vacāre,⁷ nē⁸ propter bonitatem agrōrum Germānī,⁸ quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent⁸ et finitimī Galliae Prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant
15 cogniti,⁹ ut in finibus suis Boiōs collocārent, concessit.

1. Quod . . . imperāvit: *when Caesar found this out, he ordered those through whose territories they (the Verbigeni) had gone to hunt them up and bring them back if they wished to be guiltless in his sight; sibi (519).* Can you explain the subjunctives? 2. in . . . numerō: Caesar does not say what punishment he inflicted on these, but he probably sold them into slavery or had them put to death. 3. domi: locative case (555). 4. tolerārent: *could satisfy*; a descriptive clause (584). 5. ut, facerent: *to furnish*; dependent on imperāvit (81). Compare with the construction used with iussit, l. 6 (589, Note). 6. ipsōs: Helvetians. The destruction of their villages was described in Chap. 5. 7. vacāre: *to be unoccupied*. 8. nē, Germānī, trānsirent: *for fear that the Germans might cross*. Caesar here gives an additional reason for his opposition to the Helvetian migration. He was protecting the Province and Italy from the Germans. 9. quod . . . cogniti: *i.e., Boii*.

332.

COMPREHENSION

1. When Caesar discovered the flight of the Verbigeni, what command did he give? 2. Compare his treatment of the Verbigeni with that given to the rest. 3. Why were the Helvetians permitted to reestablish their homes?

333.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iterāliō: Substantive volitive clause (589). Infinitive with *iubeō* (589, Note).

Memoriae mandā: *Cūrā ut valeās, Sec to it that you are well.* CICERO

This expression was often used by Romans at the end of a letter. Its English equivalent would be: *Take care of yourself.*

Respondē Latīnē: Quid facere Allobrogēs Caesar iussit? Quid Caesar, bellō cōfectō, Helvētiū imperāvit ut facerent?

Scribē Latīnē: Caesar commands the Helvetians to restore their (own) villages and orders them to give hostages.

The number of the Helvetians and their allies

29. In castris Helvētiorum tabulae¹ repertae sunt, litteris Graecis² cōfectae, et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminatim³ ratiō⁴ cōfecta erat, quī⁵ numerus domō⁶ exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent,⁷ et item sēparatim puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum⁸ Helvētiorum mīlia CCLXIII,⁸ Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Lato-brigōrum XIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad⁹ mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

Summa omnium fuērunt¹⁰ ad mīlia CCCLXVIII.

Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar im-
perāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

1. *tabulae*: lists. 2. *Graecis*: it is probable that the Gauls had learned the Greek alphabet from traders coming from Massilia (*Marseilles*), a Greek colony. 3. *nōminatim*: translate in detail. 4. *ratiō*: record. 5. *quī*: interrogative adjective. 6. *domō*: compare with *ē suis finibus*, Chap. 28, l. 12. 7. *quī . . . possent*: a descriptive clause. 8. *Quārum . . . CCLXIII*: of all these there was a total of 263,000 Helvetians; *capitum* need not be translated. 9. *ad*: about. 10. *fuērunt*: Why plural (568, b)?

334.

COMPREHENSION

1. What per cent of the Helvetians and their allies failed to return home?

335.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iteratiō: Ablative of place from which (535).

Respondē Latīnē: Quae summa erat Helvētiorum sociōrumque quī domō exierant? Quot domum rediērunt?

Scribē Latīnē: All who go forth from their territories do not return home.

336.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: summa.

Word Study. The suffix -tus or -sus, denoting *action* or the *result of an action*, added to verb stems, forms nouns of the fourth declension: from cēnsēō, *estimate*, cēnsus (cēn- + -sus), *census*, an *estimation* of the number of people. What noun is formed with this suffix from: exeō, redeō?

Give English derivatives from: Caesar, caput, domus, exeō, ratiō, redeō, senex, summa, tabula.

Caesar sends his demands to Ariovistus

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit :

"Quoniam meō populūque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus es, hanc mihi populūque Rōmānō grātiam refers, ut in colloquium venīres invītātus gravēris neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum tibi et cognōscendum putēs, haec sunt quae ā tē postulō : prīmum, nōlī multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcere ; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēs ab Aeduīs redde Sēquanisque permitte ut quōs ipsī habent voluntāte tuā reddere illīs liceat ; nōlī Aeduōs iniuriā lacessere, aut hīs sociisque eōrum bellum inferre. Sī ita fēceris, mihi populūque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amīcitiā tēcum erit ; sī nōn impetrābō, quoniam, M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus, senātus cēnsuit utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglegam."

337.**COMPREHENSION**

1. What criticism of Ariovistus did Caesar make? 2. What five things did he demand? 3. Why did he protect the Aeduans?

Ariovistus sends a defiant reply

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit : "It is the law of war that those who have conquered shall rule over the conquered in any way they wish ; in like manner, the Roman people have not been accustomed to rule the ones whom they have conquered according to the dictates of another but in accordance with their own judgment. If I do not dictate to the Roman people how they shall exercise their rights, it is not fitting that I should be interfered with in my rights by the Roman people.

"The Aeduans became subject to payment of tribute to me, since they tried the fortune of war, contended in arms, and were

overcome. Caesar is doing a great wrong since, by his arrival, he makes the tribute less for me. I will not return the hostages to the Aeduans, nor shall I, without a reason, make war upon them and their allies, if they stand by that which has been agreed upon and pay their yearly taxes; if they do not do this, the name 'brothers of the Roman people' will be far from benefiting them.

"As to Caesar's threatening me that he will not disregard wrongs done to the Aeduans, no one has ever contended with me without his own destruction. Whenever he wants to fight let him come on; he will find out how brave are the invincible Germans, well-trained in fighting, who have not been under a roof for fourteen years."

The Story of Chapters 37-54

The Aeduans and Treveri report to Caesar that German tribes are devastating their lands, and that a horde of them is preparing to cross the Rhine. Caesar decides to meet Ariovistus before the latter can be reinforced by these German tribes.

He advances at full speed. On the third day he learns that Ariovistus plans to seize the chief town of the Sequanians, Vesontio, well-fortified and well-supplied with provisions. Caesar arrives first and seizes the town.

While awaiting supplies here, the Roman soldiers are panic-stricken because of wild stories they hear of the Germans, their great size and courage. They could kill, it was said, with a glance of their eyes. Many of the soldiers with tears and excuses beseech Caesar to allow them to go home. They even threaten mutiny. Caesar dryly remarks, "There was a general making of wills."

Chapter 39 is of especial interest in setting forth how danger was met by the young men on Caesar's staff who, appointed through friendship or politics, had gone to Gaul to gain experience of various kinds. Letters from Cicero to his friend Trebatius, who was with Caesar, throw much light on this practice, common among young Romans, of serving an apprenticeship under some great leader. In writing to Trebatius, Cicero constantly admonishes him not to be faint hearted. He twits him with avoiding danger, "I see you are a safe campaigner since you did not cross the channel to Britain and look at the British war-chariots when you never miss a two-cent show at home." Trebatius and others of his type must have been very trying to Caesar.

40-53. Caesar calls his officers together and makes a spirited speech.

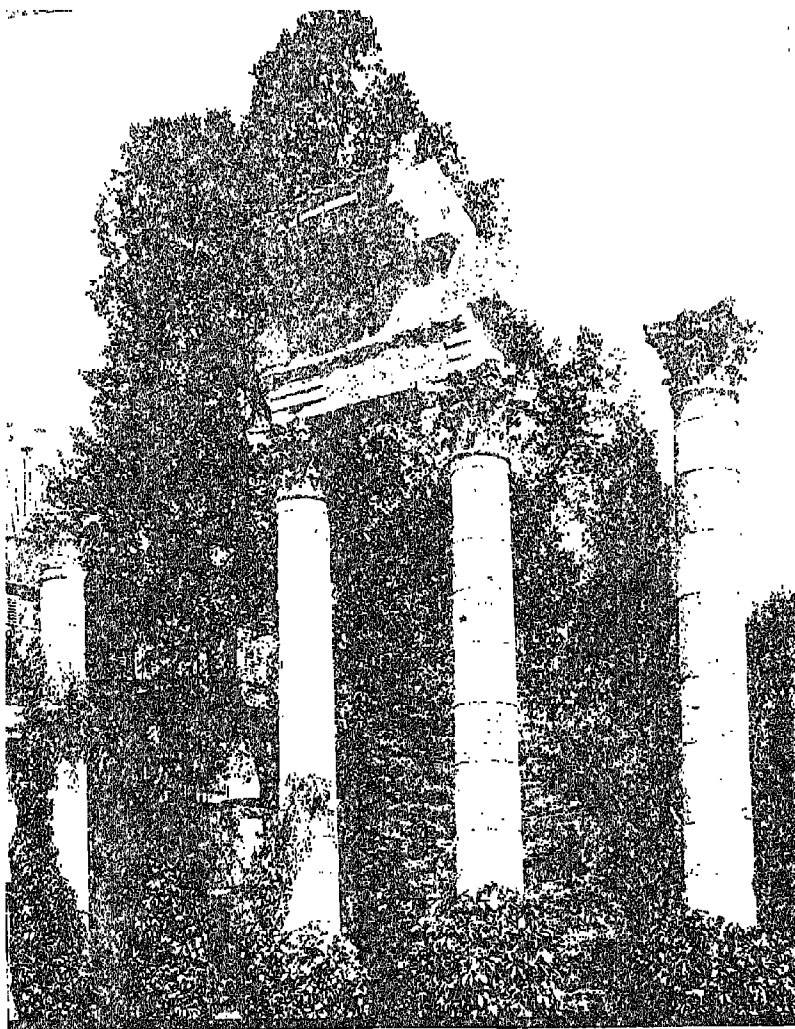


Illustration 2

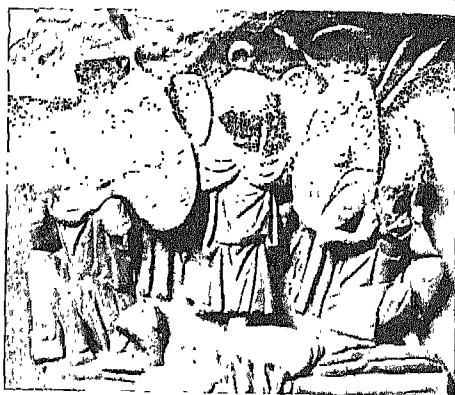
COLUMNS OF A ROMAN THEATER IN THE PROVINCE

Besançon, where columns of this theater still stand, is Vesontio of the *Gallic War*, chief city of the Sequanians, to which reference is made on page 252 in "The Story of Chapters 37-54."

He reminds them that he is still in command, and that the Germans are not invincible, having been defeated more than once by the Romans and even by the Helvetians. He rebukes their cowardice, calms their fears, and asserts that, if they will not follow, he will advance with the Tenth Legion only. Caesar's speech quells the threatened mutiny of his army. The Tenth Legion thanks him, and the others apologize.

Caesar now continues his pursuit of Ariovistus, who asks for a conference. He grants this request. At the parley he diplomatically reminds Ariovistus of the favors shown the latter, but reiterates his demands. He defends the claims of the Roman people to Gaul because of (1) their allies there, (2) the right of the Romans to Gaul by priority of time of conquest, and (3) the decision of the Senate that Gaul should observe its own laws. Ariovistus, on the other hand, lays claim to his part of Gaul and warns Caesar to withdraw.

The conference is abruptly ended by a treacherous attack by the Germans. When two days later Ariovistus asks for another conference, Caesar sends to him two trusted envoys, whom Ariovistus casts into chains. Ariovistus encamps two miles beyond Caesar to cut off his grain supplies. Each day, for five days, Caesar gives him an opportunity for battle but it is ignored. When Caesar learns from



National Museum, Rome

TROPHIES OF WAR

Trophies composed of the arms of the conquered enemy were erected to celebrate victories. What equipment is found in this?

prisoners that German matrons have prophesied that the battle would be unsuccessful if fought before the new moon, he advances on the camp of the enemy and compels them to fight. The Germans, routed, flee and do not stop until they reach the Rhine River. Caesar rescues the two envoys who had been thrown into chains. Ariovistus escapes.

54. Caesar establishes his army in winter quarters at Vesontio and goes to Cisalpine Gaul to preside over the provincial courts. In this chapter Caesar tersely summarizes the achievements of the summer in these words, "*duobus maximis bellis cōfectis.*"

REITERANDUM EST

Numquam nimis dicitur quod numquam satis discitur, *That is never too often repeated which is not sufficiently learned.* SENECA

338.

EXERCITATIO

Scribe Latīnē: Caesar's province, one part of which was next to Italy, the other next to Gaul, extended many miles in width. The Gauls were surpassed by the Belgians in bravery, because the latter did not use the things imported by Roman merchants.

The Helvetians, likewise, surpassed the rest of the Gauls in bravery, because they fought (contended in) almost daily battles with the Germans. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians to prepare for departure from their narrow territories. He, likewise, formed a plan of obtaining the leadership for himself. When this plan was reported to the state, Orgetorix killed himself.

When the Helvetians, having set fire to their villages, are about to set out, they send ambassadors to ask Caesar that they be permitted (that it be permitted to them) with his consent to (that they) go (make a way) through the Roman Province. Either because the Romans never give this right of way to anyone, or because people not subdued are of an unfriendly mind toward the Romans, Caesar says (*negō*) he cannot do this. He makes a fortification in order that he may more easily stop them, if they begin to cross (if a beginning of crossing is made by them). The Helvetians understand that, if the Sequanians are unwilling, they cannot do this because wagons can scarcely go through the narrow pass one at a time, and there is no other way.

The Helvetians, nevertheless, led on by desire for greater territories, decide to go through the territory of the Sequanians. When they wish to cross with their children and food supply, they obtain this request from the Sequanians. But they do not cross without wrongdoing.

Caesar enrolls new legions outside of Gaul and leads them from there to make war on the Helvetians. The Aeduians and their relatives send ambassadors to Caesar to say that their fields are being devastated and to ask for aid. Caesar is informed that one canton is crossing the river. He attacks this and many of them fall. The rest not only flee (betake themselves to flight) but also hide. They attribute their adversity to the treachery of the Romans rather than to their bravery. Caesar demands hostages for the Romans. The Helvetians say (*negō*) they will not make restitution

to the Romans or to the Aeduians. When the Helvetians move their camp, between their line and that of the Romans there is not more than five miles.

Caesar orders a lieutenant skilled in military science to learn who is on the top of the mountain.

Caesar turns away from the river. After the Helvetians see this, they believe they can cut off his food supply. Caesar, by his sudden arrival, repulses the Helvetians, although they resist for a long time. Their left line is not an aid to them. A few days later the Helvetians weeping come to beg (for) peace. Caesar orders that they shall not be cut off from food supplies nor from other things. Not many of so great a multitude who had set out from home return to their territories.

339.

REVIEW OF REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Each of the following words is derived from, or connected in derivation with, a word in the required vocabularies of Liber I. Give the Latin word to which each is related and its meaning. Define the English word on the basis of its Latin derivation.

Admire, admittance, aggressor, alias, alien, alter, amplify, announcement, annul, authority, bilateral, calamity, captivate, carriage, circumvention, client, collocate, colloquy, commemoration, compliment, confidential, conquest, conscript, constitute, contumely, coöperative, decadent, dementia, depopulate, despicable.

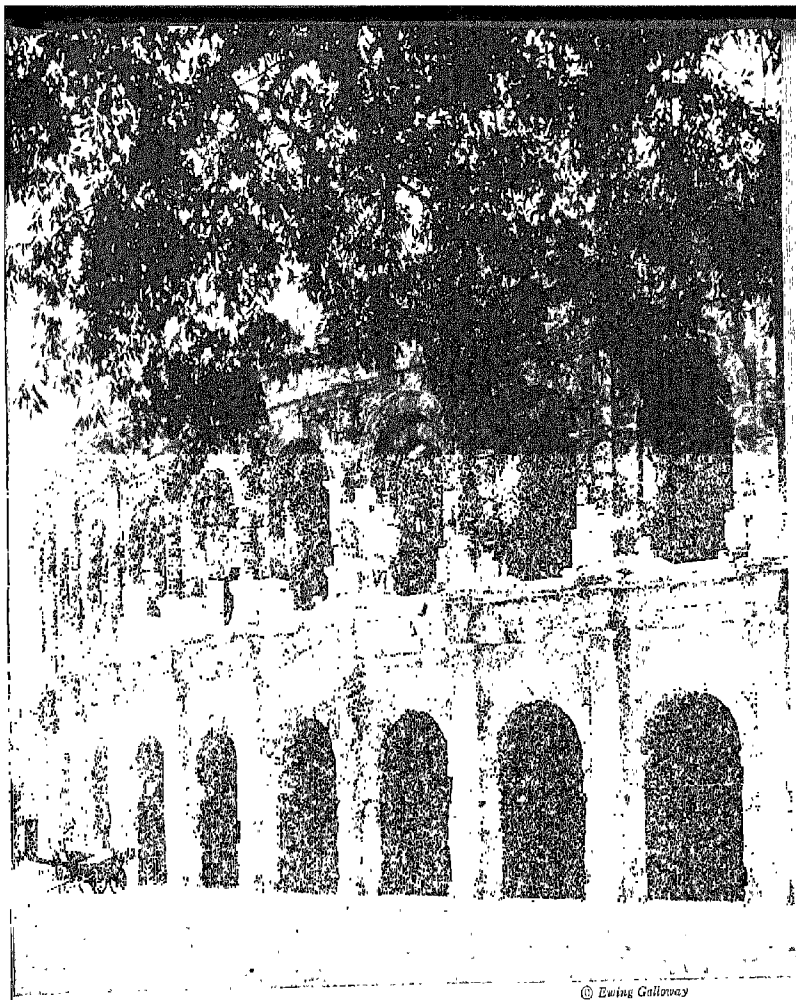
Escutcheon, explorer, extraordinary, familiar, fosse, hibernation, humanitarian, ignorant, illicit, illiterate, immure, impediment, initial, insidious, institution, instance, intellect, intercede, irresistible, itemize, legation, legate, legion, linguist, magistrate, major, mandatory, militarism, munition.

Necessary, nobility, nullify, objection, Pacific, paganism, patent, persecute, premise, principate, pristine, privacy, prospectus, publication, pulse, recently, redeem, remove, spontaneity, satisfaction, singularly, sinistrous, solitary, statute, student, summary, tantamount, tribute, vicinity, voluntary, wall.

340.

REVIEW OF LATIN WORD FORMATION

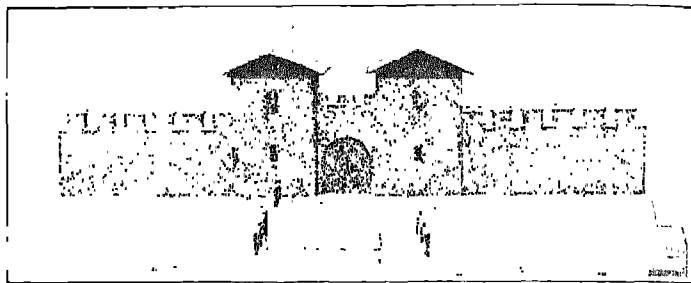
Explain the formation of each of the following words, the meaning of the word from which each is derived, the force of the prefix or suffix (637-9), and the meaning of the word as a whole: *agmen, captivus, concursus, cōpiōsus, difficilis, explorātor, fortitūdō, frūmentārius, hūmānitās, indicium, nūntius, principātus, profectiō, veterānus, victōria, vinculum, voluntās.*



© Ewing Galloway

A ROMAN STADIUM IN THE PROVINCE

This ancient Roman amphitheater accommodated more than 20,000 spectators. Bull fights are sometimes held in its arena today. In the "leave area" during World War I, it was used by American soldiers as a basketball and football playground.



Courtesy of Washington University, St. Louis

A GATE OF A ROMAN CAMP

The **Porta Sinistra** of the restored Roman camp, Saalburg, in Germany is here shown. There is an illustration of this camp on page 270.

LIBER SECUNDUS

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIANS

57 B.C.

The Belgians unite against Caesar

1. CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā,¹ ita utī suprà dēmōn-
strāvimus,² crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur,³ litterisque
item Labiēni certior fiēbat⁴ omnēs⁵ Belgās, quam⁶ tertiam esse
Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre
obsidēsque inter sē dare.⁵

Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum, quod verērentur nē,⁷
omni pācātā Galliā, ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde,
quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī,⁸ ut⁹ Ger-
mānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita⁹ populī Rōmānī
10 exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferē-
bant,¹⁰ partim quī¹¹ mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiis
studēbant;¹² ab nōn nullis¹³ etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus
atque eis quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant

vulgō rēgna occupābantur,¹⁴ quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō¹⁵ cōsequi poterant.

15

1. in . . . Galliā: Cisalpine Gaul, now northern Italy, one of Caesar's three provinces. 2. ita . . . dēmōstrāvimus: *just as we have shown above*; at the end of Liber I. Note Caesar's use of the editorial *we* when he speaks of himself as a writer. 3. afferēbantur: the imperfect tense shows that the reports were frequently brought. 4. certior fiēbat: note the skill with which Caesar summarizes the reports, and the letters of Labienus. 5. omnēs . . . dare: *that all the Belgians, who, as we had said, are a third part of Gaul, were forming a league against the Roman people and were exchanging hostages*; an indirect statement (620). 6. quam: agrees with partem and not with its antecedent Belgās. 7. nē: for translation see (342). 8. partim quī: *translate by some who*. 9. ut, ita: *as, so* (602). 10. molestē ferēbant: *were greatly annoyed*. 11. partim quī: *by others who*. 12. novī . . . studēbant: *translate were eager for new government*. 13. ab nōn nullis: *by some*; modifies sollicitārentur, l. 8. 14. eis . . . occupābantur: *kingships were commonly seized by those who had means for employing mercenaries*. 15. imperiō nostrō: *under our rule*.

341.

COMPREHENSION

1. What two reasons does Caesar give for the forming of the league of the Belgians against the Romans? 2. What three classes of Gauls were urging the Belgians to revolt?

342.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Substantive clauses with verbs of fearing. Verēbantur nē ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur, *they feared that our army would be led against them*. In this sentence, verēbantur, a verb of fearing, has as its object a substantive clause introduced by nē with its verb in the subjunctive, nē . . . addūcerētur. Used with a verb of fearing, nē introduces a clause expressing what is *not* wanted: they hope that the army *will not* be led against them, but they *fear* that it *will* be. Hence nē is translated *that (lest)*. Ut used with a verb of fearing is translated *that not*: verēbantur ut . . . addūcerētur means that they hope that the army *will* be led to them, but they *fear* that it *will not* be.

Translate: Let the army not winter in Gaul, I fear this;

I fear that the army will winter in Gaul; they feared that they did not have resources.

What is the meaning of *nē* in a purpose clause and in a substantive volitive clause? What does *ut* mean in such a clause?

343.

EXERCITATIO

Memoriae mandā: Vereor nē negligentius vivam, I fear that I shall live too carelessly. PLINY THE YOUNGER

Respondē Latīnē: Verēbantur Belgae, omnī pācātā Galliā, ut Rōmānī in Galliā versārentur?

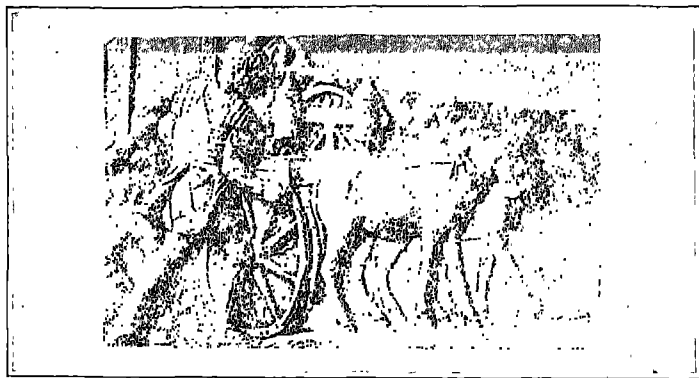
Scribe Latīnē: Caesar fears that the Belgians, excited by frequent rumors, are conspiring against the Romans.

344.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: coniūrō, crēber, facultās, partim, rūmor, sollicitō, versor.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related by derivation: *adduce, counter, faculty, molest, mobility, rumor, solicitous, vulgar?* Define each on the basis of its derivation.



Trajan's Column, Rome

MOVING THE ARTILLERY

On the march each legion was followed by its baggage wagons. This relief shows a two-wheeled cart carrying a catapult.

Caesar enlists two new legions and advances toward the territory of the Belgians

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et, initā aestāte,¹ in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret,² Q. Pedium³ lēgātum mīsīt. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet,⁴ ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus⁵ reliquisque Gallis, quī finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur⁶ cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant.

Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī,⁷ exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur.⁸ Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra¹⁰ movet diēbusque⁹ circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

Caesar rejoined his legions in person, probably at Vesontio, *Besançon*, where they had been in winter quarters. See I, 54. 1. *initā aestāte*: an ablative absolute expressing time (545). 2. *dēdūceret*: (585). 3. *Q. Pedium*: Caesar's nephew; he became consul in 43 B.C. 4. *cum primum . . . inciperet*: *as soon as there began to be a supply of fodder* (597). 5. *Dat . . . Senonibus*: *he instructed the Senones*; followed by the substantive volitive clauses, *utī . . . cognōscant . . . faciant*. 6. *gerantur*: (610). 7. *manūs cōgī*: *that forces were being mobilized*; what is the construction? 8. *Tum . . . proficiscerētur*: *then, indeed, he thought he ought not to hesitate to set out against them*. *Dubitō*, meaning *hesitate*, although usually followed by the infinitive, is here followed by a substantive clause. 9. *diēbusque*: time within which.

345.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did Caesar send Quintus Pedius into Transalpine (Farther) Gaul? 2. What did the Senones report to Caesar? 3. What did Caesar decide to do? 4. About how many miles did the army march each day?

346.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iteratiō: Ablative of time (553).

Respondē Latīnē: Quot diēbus ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit?

Scribe Latīnē: In the middle of the summer there was a supply of fodder.

347.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: aestās, pābulum.

Word Study. Define the following words derived from *movēre*, showing that each contains the idea of *moving*: *emotion*, *immovable*, *locomotion*, *mobile*, *mobilize*, *motorist*, *promoter*, *remote*.

Mob is an abbreviated form of the two Latin words, *mōbile vulgus*, *the movable common people*. What is its present meaning?

Automobile is derived from the Greek word *autos*, *self*, and the Latin word *mōbilis* (*movēre*), *movable*, and means *capable of moving itself*.

The Remi pledge allegiance and give information to Caesar

"A single canton alone, that of the powerful Remi (about Rheims), discerned in this invasion of the foreigners an opportunity to shake off the rule which their neighbors, the Suessiones, exercised over them, and prepared to take up in the north the part which the Aedui had played in Central Gaul." THEODOR MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*

3. Eō¹ cum dē imprōvisō² celeriusque omnī opīniōne³ vēnisset, Rēmī,⁴ quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis,⁵ misērunt, quī dicerent:⁶

5 Sē suaeque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittēre, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōsēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere⁷ et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre.

10 Reliquōs⁸ omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessionēs⁹ quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, 15 dēterrēre potuerint¹⁰ quā cum hīs cōsentiērent.¹¹

1. Eō: *there*; where? 2. dē imprōvisō: translate *unexpectedly*. 3. opīniōne: *than opinion*, translate *than anyone expected*; ablative of comparison. 4. Rēmī: what famous city of modern France derives its name from this people? 5. primōs civitātis: *leaders of the state*. 6. quī dicerent: *to say*; a relative purpose clause; the message carried by the envoys is given in the following indirect statements.

In translating Latin, indirect discourse should be turned into the direct form, which is more effective in English than indirect discourse. *sē*: represents *nōs* of the direct statement; *suaque, nostraque*; *permittere, permittimus*; *cōnsēsisse, cōnsēsimus*; *coniūrāsse, coniūrāvimus*; *parātōsque esse, parātique sumus* (620). 7. *recipere*: supply *Caesarem* as the object. 8. *reliquōs*: the direct form is *reliqui*. What are the direct forms for *Belgās, esse, Germānōsque, incolant, coniūnxisse, tantumque esse, furōrem, suōs, ūtantur, cum ipsis, habeant* (616-23)? 9. *Suessiōnēs*: object of *dētērrere*. 10. *potuerint*: perfect subjunctive in a result clause introduced by *ut*, l. 12 (678, a); it will still be subjunctive in the direct form, *potuerimus*. 11. *quā . . . cōnsentirent*: *from combining with these*; a substantive clause dependent on a verb of hindering (590).

348. COMPREHENSION

1. Give the substance of the message of the envoys of the Remi. 2. What was the connection between the Remi and the Suessiones?

349. EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Ablative of comparison (539).

Memoriae mandā: *Nihil est vērītātis lūce dulcius, Nothing is sweeter than the light of truth.* CICERO

Respondē Latīnē: *Quam celeriter Caesar ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit?*

Scribē Latīnē: The Remi were better (more) prepared than the rest of the (remaining) Belgians.

350.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *cēteri, coniungō, cōnsentiō, fidēs, permittō.*

Word Study. The suffix *-ātus*, attached to noun stems, forms nouns denoting office or an official body. From *magister* is formed *magistrātus*, the office of magistrate. Give the word formed with this suffix from: *cōsul, senex.*



Senlis, France

TOWER IN ROMAN WALL

Senlis, a charming town near Paris, preserves evidence of Roman times in an arena and the remains of Roman walls.

The report of the Remi on the history of the Belgians

4. Cum ab eīs quaereret quae¹ civitatēs quantacque¹ in armīs essent et quid¹ in bellō possent,² sic reperiēbat:

Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs³ ā Germānīs Rhēnumque anti-
quitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gal-
lōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum
nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque
intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint;⁴ quā ex rē fierī uti cārum
rērū memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs
in rē militārī sūmerent.⁵

10 Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta⁶ Rēmī dicē-
bant, proptereā quod, propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque con-
iūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārū
conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit⁷ cognōverint.

1. quae, quantacque, quid: introduce indirect questions; essent represents sunt of the direct form; possent, possunt. 2. quid, possent: *how much strength they had*; the neuter pronoun quid is used to express degree (530, a). 3. plērōsque . . . ortōs: represents plērique Belgae sunt orti of the direct statement; trāductōs, trāductī; ibi cōnsēdisse, hīc cōnsēdērunt; expulisse, expulērunt; sōlōsque esse, sōlique sunt; fierī, fit. Explain the use of each infinitive (616-20). Point out and explain the mood and tense of each verb in the subordinate clauses. 4. Teutonōs . . . prohibuerint: *kept the Teutons and Cimbri from entering their territories*. These terrible hordes sweeping toward Italy through Gaul were defeated by Marius in 102 B.C. 5. uti . . . sūmerent: a substantive clause of result, the subject of the impersonal verb fierī (593). 6. omnia sē habēre explorāta: *they had found out everything*; habēō used with the perfect passive participle, agreeing with the object of habēō, has the force of a past perfect tense. 7. quantam . . . sit: *how large a number each had promised in the general council of the Belgians for this war*. The various Belgian tribes promised in all 296,000 men for the war. (This is told in lines 12-28, which are not included in this text.)

351.

COMPREHENSION

1. What was the ground for the Belgians' confidence in themselves?
2. How did the Remi learn of the numbers promised by the various tribes?

352.

EXERCITATIO

Iterātiō: Indirect discourse (616-23).

Memoriae mandā: Solōn sē cotidiē aliquid addiscentem dicit senem fieri, Solon says he is growing old learning something new daily. CICERO

Respondē Latinē: Quid Caesar dē plērisque Belgis repperit?

Scribe Latinē: He asks from whom the Belgians are descended. He found out this (sic): that the Belgians were the only ones who were descended from the Germans.

353.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: concilium, plērīque, sic, sōlus.

Word Study. Define the following words, showing that each is a derivative of dicere: addict, benediction, dictation, edict, indite, interdict, prediction.



Trajan's Column, Rome

FORTIFYING A CAMP

Caesar always fortified his camp with a wall and a ditch.

Caesar encamps across the Aisne River

"Caesar did not venture to give battle to the brave enemy six times as strong." THEODOR MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*

5. Caesar, Rēmōs cohortātus liberaliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem ¹ facta sunt.

5 Ipse Diviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere rei publicae commūnisque salutis intersit manūs hostium distīnēri,² nē³ cum tantā multitudīne unō tempore cōflīgendum sit:³ id fieri posse,⁴ sī suās cōpiās Aedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint⁵ et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His man-
10 dātis, cum ab sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in unum locum coāctās ad sē venīre⁶ vīdit, neque iam longē abesse, ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen⁷ Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum⁷ trā-
15 dūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus unum castrōrum rīpis flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat⁸ et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque civitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat.⁹

20 In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium⁹ pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēviginti pedum mūnīrī iubet.

1. ad diem: on time. 2. quantō . . . distīnēri: how important it was to the state and the general welfare for the forces of the enemy to be kept apart. 3. nē, cōflīgendum sit: translate that he might not have to fight. 4. id . . . posse: an indirect statement with docet; id refers to the plan of dividing the forces of the enemy. 5. intrōdūxerint: the perfect subjunctive here represents the future perfect indicative of the direct statement. 6. coāctās . . . venīre: translate had assembled and were coming toward him. 7. flūmen, exercitum: used with trādūcere, which may have two accusatives (528); Axonam: the Aisne; near the present village of Berry-au-Bac. In the World War the German line crossed the Aisne in this region. 8. Quae . . . reddēbat: this movement fortified one side of the camp by the banks of the river and made the rear safe from the enemy. Give the literal translation. 9. Quae rēs, ut, possent, efficiēbat: (355).

354.

COMPREHENSION

1. Whom did Caesar demand as hostages from the Remi? Why?
2. What was the object in attacking the Bellovaci? 3. What three advantages did Caesar's position afford?

355.

RĒS GRAMMATICAE

Substantive clause of result (593). The result clauses that you have studied thus far have been adverbial clauses. In the sentence, *quae rēs . . . commeātus . . . ut ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat*, *this movement brought it about that supplies could be carried to him*, l. 15, result is expressed by the substantive clause *ut . . . possent*, which is the object of *efficiēbat*. A substantive clause of result is used as the *object* of a verb of *doing* or *accomplishing*, or as the *subject* of an *impersonal verb*: *faciam ut intellegās*, *I will see to it that you understand*; *fit ut adsint*, *it happens that they are present*; *accidit ut esset lūna plēna*, *it happened that the moon was full*. Often the idea of result has almost disappeared, and the clause expresses a fact.

356.

EXERCITATIŌ

Memoriae mandā: Ex quō efficitur ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum, From this it results that pleasure is not the greatest blessing. CICERO

Respondē Latīnē: Quō mandātō factum est ut cum multitudine nōn cōnfligendum esset?

Scribe Latīnē: This command brought it about that the cohorts and their supplies were safe.

357.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: cohors, commeātus, efficiō, mandātum.

The Belgians try to storm Bibrax

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum, nōmine Bibrax, aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere¹ magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.

Gallōrum cadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec.² Ubi, circumiectā multitudine hominum tōtis moenibus,³ undique; in mūrū lapidēs iaci⁴ coepti sunt, mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est,⁵ testūdine⁶ factā, portās succendunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent,⁷ in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī.⁸

10 Cum finem oppugnandi nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmūs, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi summittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.⁹

1. *ex itinere*: the Belgians, turning aside from the line of march, made an attack on the town without encamping. 2. *Gallōrum . . . haec*: the (method of)



Trajan's Column, Rome

A ROOF OF SHIELDS

The Belgians adopted the Roman method of storming a town, advancing to the wall protected by shields held over their heads in a formation, *testūdō*, named from its likeness to a turtle shell.

bonum, No man has a continuous blessing. PLAUTUS

Respondē Latīnē: Cui erat summa grātiā inter Rēmōs?

Scribe Latīnē: The Remi say, "Unless we have aid, the Belgians will attack our walls, stripped of defenders."

attack of the Gauls, the same as that of the Belgians, is as follows. 3. *moenibus*: dative with *circumiectā*. 4. *iacī*: present passive infinitive. 5. *nūdatus est*: was stripped of. 6. *testūdine*: a *testūdō* (turtle) was formed by shields held close together above the heads of the soldiers. Protected thus, the soldiers could advance close to the walls. 7. *conicerent*: why is a plural verb used here with *multitūdō* (568, b)? 8. *nūllī*: what kind of dative? 9. *posse*: why is an infinitive used? Explain the use of: *passum*, l. 2; *sustentātum est*, l. 3; *conicerent*, l. 9; *oppugnandi*, l. 10; *oppidō*, l. 11; *sibi*, *summittātur*, and *sēsē*, l. 13. Point out in the chapter an example of each of these uses of the ablative case: description, manner, time when, absolute, separation, specification.

358.

COMPREHENSION

1. Describe the Belgians' method of attack.
2. What message did Iccius send to Caesar?

359.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iterātiō: Dative of possession (521).

Memoriae mandā: Nūllī est hominī perpetuum

360.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: dēfēnsor, nisi, nūdō, oppugnātiō, oppugnō, summittō.

Caesar sends aid to Bribax. The Belgians advance toward Caesar

7. Eō dē¹ mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Iccīō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis² mittit; quōrum adventū et³ Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī⁴ accessit, et⁵ hostibus⁶ eādē dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. 5

Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī⁶ agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque quō adire potuerant⁷ incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs⁸ contendērunt et ā⁹ milibus¹⁰ passuum minus duobus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus¹⁰ passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

1. dē: translate just after. 2. subsidiō oppidānis: as an aid to the townspeople (519). 3. et, et: not only, but also. 4. studium prōpugnandī: enthusiasm for fighting. 5. hostibus: from the enemy; dative of separation. 6. morātī: having delayed; modifies the subject of contendērunt. 7. quō . . . potuerant: (to) which they could approach. 8. omnibus cōpiīs: why is no preposition used (541, Note)? 9. ā: away; an adverb. 10. milibus: why ablative (550)?

361.

COMPREHENSION

1. What effect did the reinforcements from Caesar have on the Remi? Upon their enemies? 2. What was the size of the enemy's camp?

362.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iterātiō: Ablative of accompaniment (541).

Memorie mandā: Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur, *Equals most easily gather with equals*, i.e., *Birds of a feather flock together*. PROVERB

Respondē Latīnē: Quibuscum Caesar accessit? Quibuscum Belgae?

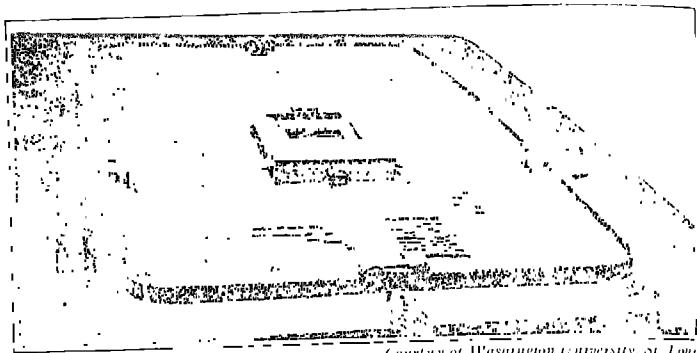
Scribe Latīnē: Having delayed a little while, the archers and slingers indicate their desire of fighting.

363.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: accēdō, funditor, moror, oppidānus, paulisper, sagittārius, significō, studium.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related: fumigate, insignificant, perfume, student?



Courtesy of Washington University, St. Louis

A REAL ROMAN CAMP

To hold the frontier against Germany, a number of camps were built by the Romans from the headwaters of the Rhine to those of the Danube. The former German Emperor had this particular camp, the Saalburg, restored at his personal expense, on the exact lines of the ruins. A model of this camp and of many objects found there is on exhibition at Washington University.

Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtūte posset ¹ et quid nostrī auderent ² periclitābatur.³

5 Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō ¹ prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō ⁴ atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ⁵ ex plānitie cēditus, tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs instructa occupāre poterat,⁵ atque ex utrāque parte lateris
10 dēiectūs ⁶ habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulatim ad plānitiem redibat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit⁷ circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās⁸ castella cōstituit ibique tormenta⁹ collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multi-

tūdine poterant,¹⁰ ab lateribus pignantēs suōs¹¹ circumvenīre¹⁵ possent.

Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in castris relictis, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent,¹² reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās¹³ instruxerant.

20

1. quid . . . posset: *what the enemy were able in courage; translate the courage of the enemy.* 2. quid . . . audērent: *translate the daring of our men.* "He wished nevertheless to ascertain what he could expect from the cavalry, which was composed of Gauls." NAPOLEON BONAPARTE III, *History of Julius Caesar.* 3. periclitabātur: *kept making trial of; for the tense, see 571.* To what Latin noun is this verb related? 4. locō, opportūnō: *as the place was suitable; ablative absolute.* Point out three examples of the ablative of specification; one of the genitive of the whole. 5. paululum . . . poterat: *rising a little from the plain, facing the enemy, extended in width over just as much (of) space as a battle line, when drawn up, would occupy.* 6. ex . . . dēiectūs: *i.e., steep slopes on each side.* 7. ab . . . obdūxit: *i.e., he made an intrenchment at right angles to the ridge of the hill.* 8. ad . . . fossās: *i.e., at the end of the ditches (567, a).* 9. tormenta: *translate hurling engines.* See p. 207. 10. quod . . . poterant: *translate because they were so numerous.* 11. pignantēs suōs: *his men (while) fighting.* 12. ut . . . possent: *so that, if there should be need at any point, they could be brought up as a reserve; subsidiō (523).* 13. ēductās: *translate led out (and) (527).*

364.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iterātiō: Ablative of means (546).

Memoriae mandā: Crēscit eundō, It increases as it goes. VERGIL

Respondē Latīnē: Quōmodo Caesar proelium facere cotidiē audet?

Scribe Latīnē: In front the plain opposite was suitable for an equestrian battle. On either side he placed hurling engines.

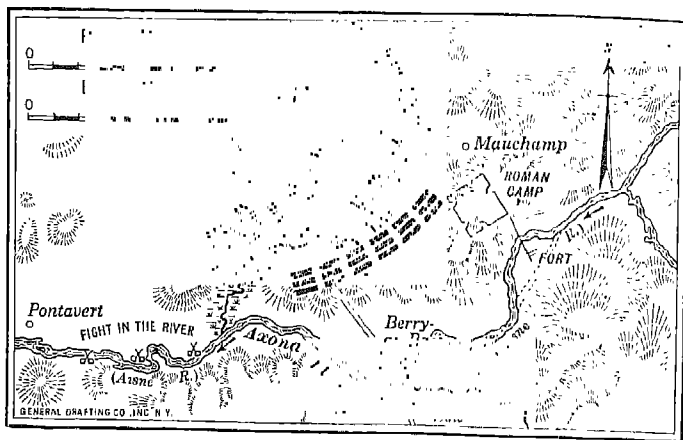
365.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: adversus, audeō, cotidiē, equester, frōns, opportūnus, plānitēs, tormentum, uterque.

Word Study. Define each of the following words derived from frōns: *affront, confront, frontier, frontispiece.*

Flounce, originally frounce, is derived from the verb frontiāre (frōns), to wrinkle the forehead. It is now applied to a ruffle.



THE BATTLE ON THE AXONA (AISNE)

The Belgians attempt to ford the river and storm the fort

"He pitched his camp on a plateau rendered almost unassailable on all sides, partly by the river and by morasses, partly by fosses and redoubts." THEODOR MOMMSEN, *History of Rome*

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc¹ sī nostrī trānsirent² hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggredierentur parātī in armīs erant.³ Interim proeliō equestri⁵ inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs,⁴ Caesar suōs in castra reduxit.

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi, vadīs repertīs, partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnālī sunt, eō cōnsiliō,⁵ ut, sī possent,⁶ castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsū⁷ ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque⁸ nostrōs prohibērent.

1. *Hanc*: what is the antecedent? 2. *trānsirent*: why is this tense used (577-8)? 3. *nostrī . . . erant*: *our men, moreover, were ready in arms to attack them at a disadvantage, if they should begin to cross.* 4. *secundiore . . . nostrīs*: *though the cavalry battle was favorable to our men.* 5. *eō cōsiliō*: *with this plan*; explained by the four substantive clauses, the verbs of which are *expugnārent, interscinderent, populārentur, prohibērent.* 6. *sī possent*: *if they could*; this represents a subordinate clause of implied indirect discourse, giving the thought of the enemy; so also does *sī . . . potuissent* (624). 7. *magnō . . . ūsui*: *translate very useful to us* (519). 8. *commeātūque*: what use of the ablative?

366.

COMPREHENSION

1. What was the Belgians' purpose in crossing the river? 2. How did the river Aisne figure in the World War?

367.

EXERCITATIO

Iterātiō: Ablative of separation (534).

Memoriae mandā: *Bonōrum vīta vacua est metū, The life of the good is free from fear.*

Respondē Latinē: *Quōmodo Belgae Rōmānōs finibus Rēmōrum prohibēre cōnātī sunt?*

Scribe Latinē: *The swamp keeps neither line from its supplies.*

368.

VERBA

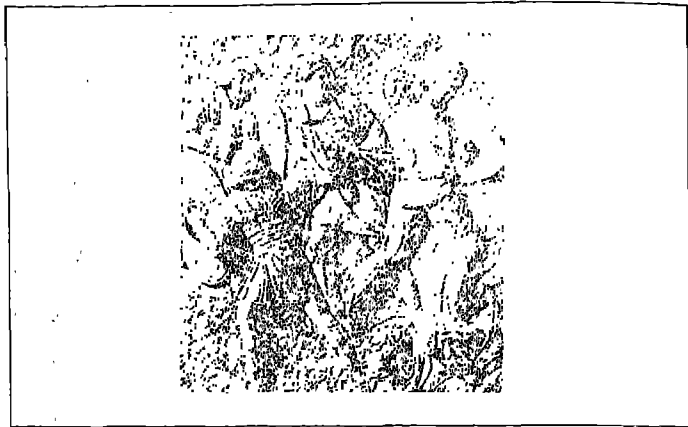
Required Vocabulary: *neuter, palūs, prōtinus.*

Word Study. The suffixes *-lus, -olus, -ulus, -culus, -ellus* (in English *-le, -cle, -cule*), attached to noun stems, form diminutives. *Castellum* is so formed from *castrum, a fortified place*, with the diminutive suffix *-ellum* and means *a little fort*. Its English equivalent is *castle*. Explain the derivation of the following: *animalcule, corpuscle, gladiolus, muscle, particle, and umbrella.*

To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *agrarian, dual, gesture, neutrality?* Define each on the basis of its derivation.

The Belgians are defeated with great losses

10. Caesar certior factus ab Tituriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae¹ Numidās, funditorēs sagittariōsque pontem² trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō locō pug-

*Trajan's Column, Rome*

A SLINGER

The figure in the center is a slinger, who carries in the fold of his cloak a full supply of stones. In his right hand he has one ready to throw.

nātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostri in flūmine aggressi magnum
 5 eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācis-
 simē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlorum reppulērunt;³
 prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.⁴

Hostēs, ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trāns-
 eundō spem sē fefellisse⁵ intellēxērunt neque⁶ nostrōs in locum
 10 iniquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs
 frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō, cōstituērunt
 optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti,⁷ et, quōrum⁸
 in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfen-
 dendōs undique convenirent ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis⁹
 15 finibus dēcertārent et domesticis¹⁰ cōpiis rei frūmentāriae
 ūterentur.

Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō¹¹
 eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum¹² atque Aeduōs finibus Bello-
 vacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. His persuādērī¹³ ut diū-
 20 tius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

1. *levis armatūrae*: translate *light-armed*; why genitive? 2. *pontem*: what other accusatives are used with *trādūcit* (523)? 3. *per . . . reppulērunt*: translate *they drove back with a storm of weapons the rest, who were attempting very boldly to cross over the bodies of these*. 4. *circumventōs interfēcērunt*: *they surrounded and killed*. The perfect participle is often equivalent to a coördinate clause (627). Point out the participles in the chapter and give the use of each. 5. *spem . . . fefellisse*: *that their hope had failed them*. 6. *neque*: = *et nōn*; translate with *prōgredi*. 7. *optimum . . . reverti*: *that it was best for each to return to his own home*. 8. *quōrum*: the antecedent is *eōs*. 9. *aliēnis*: translate *of others* (509, Note 2). 10. *domesticis*: *home*. 11. *haec, ratio*: *this consideration*; explained by the *quod* clause. 12. *Diviciacum*: he was advancing to the territories of the *Bellovac*i in order to carry out Caesar's plan of keeping the forces of the enemy separated. 13. *His persuādēri, nōn poterat*: *these (the Bellovac*i*) could not be persuaded*; the impersonal use of *persuādēri* in the passive (569).

369.

COMPREHENSION

1. Give two reasons why the Belgians decided to return home. 2. What did they plan to do when they reached home?

370.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iterāliō: Uses of the participle (625-8).

Memoriae mandā: *Avē, Caesar, moritūri tē salūtant, Iai!*, Caesar, those about to die salute thee. This salutation was addressed to the emperor by gladiators about to enter the combat.

Audentēs deus ipse iuvat, *The god himself helps those who dare*. OVID

Respondē Latīnē: *Quōs repulsōs nostrī aggressī interfēcērunt?*

Scribe Latīnē: The light-armed soldiers, using a multitude of weapons, attacked the enemy as they advanced (*use participle*) into an unfavorable place.

371.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *dēcertō, iniquus, levis, potius*.

Word Study. The suffixes *-ānus, -ēnus, -īnus* (in English *-an, -one, -ain, -ine*), meaning *pertaining to*, added to the stems of nouns, adjectives or adverbs, form adjectives: thus from *Rōma, Rōmānus* (*Rōm-* + *-ānus*), *pertaining or belonging to Rome*, is derived. Give the formation and meaning of: *aliēnus, cotidiānus, oppidānus*.

To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *ablative, elevator, false, infallible, iniquity, levity, optimist*? Define each.

Caesar routs and pursues the Belgians

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā ¹ magnō cum strepitū ² ac tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.³

5 Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explorātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium
10 Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit.

Hī, novissimōs adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecuti, magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium ⁴ concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat,⁵ cōsisterent fortiterque
15 impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent,⁶ priōrēs,⁷ quod abesse ā periculō vidērētur⁸ neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre, perturbātis ordinibus,⁹ omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent.

Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostri
20 interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium;¹⁰ sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēperunt.

1. secundā vigiliā: about what time was this? 2. magnō . . . strepitū: with great uproar; what ablative? 3. vidērētur: why subjunctive? 4. fugientium: translate as they fled. 5. ventum erat: impersonal use (502). Point out another example of this use. 6. cum . . . sustinērent: translate since those (of the enemy) on the rear, to whom (our men) had come, would take a stand and bravely sustain the attack of our soldiers. 7. priōrēs: (while) those in front; subject of pōnerent. 8. vidērētur: (610). 9. exaudītō . . . ordinibus: translate when they heard the shouting, they broke ranks. 10. quantum . . . spatium: as was the length of the day; i.e., while daylight lasted.

372.

COMPREHENSION

1. Describe the departure of the Belgians. 2. Why did Caesar fear an ambush? 3. What plan of pursuit did he follow?

373.

EXERCITATIO

Ileratio: Ablative of manner (542).

Memoriae mandā: Quid fors feret, feremus aequo animo, *Whatever fortune shall bring, we will bear with equanimity.* TERENCE

Respondē Latīnē: Quōmodo omnēs Belgae ēgressi sunt?

Scribe Latīnē: With great clamor and tumult they follow. Those in front, seeing this, are immediately thrown into confusion.

374.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: clāmor, concidō, perspicio, perturbō, prior, statim, subsequor, tumultus.

Word Study. *Perspicere*, *see through*, is formed from *per-* and *-spicere* (which appears only in compounds). Define each of the following words derived from *-spicere*, showing that each contains the idea of *seeing* or *looking*: *circumspect*, *despise*, *inspector*, *introspective*, *perspective*, *prospect*, *respectable*, *specimen*, *spectacle*, *specter*, *suspicious*.

Explain why *exaudiō* means *hear from a distance*.

Caesar besieges and takes a town of the Suessiones

"Before the cantons could concentrate their strength a second time, their untiring enemy bore down upon them one by one. He swooped upon Noviodunum, the fortress of the Suessiones; though its entrenchments were too strong to be carried at a first assault, the appearance of his artillery effected an immediate surrender." W. WARDE FOWLER, *Julius Caesar*

12. Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga recipere,¹ in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere ad oppidum Noviodunum² contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum³ ab defensibus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae mûrique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, vineas⁴ agere⁵ quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare⁶ coepit.

Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proximam nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis,¹⁰ aggere iacto turribusque⁷ constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate



Trajan's Column, Rome

ON THE MARCH

The soldiers are not expecting an attack, for they do not wear their helmets, which are suspended from their right shoulders. Note the rest of their equipment, shields, swords, coats of mail, and baggage carried on long sticks.

Rōmānōrum permōtī⁸ lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur,⁹ impetrant.

1. *reciperent*: could recover (135). 2. *Noviodūnum*: near the modern city of Soissons. 3. *vacuum*: destitute of. 4. *vineās*: sheds; made of timber or thick wickerwork with rawhides stretched over them to protect them against fire. These sheds were moved forward before an attack. A row of them formed a passageway to the front. 5. *agere*: to move up. 6. *quaeque . . . comparāre*: this was a great mound sloping gradually from the rear up toward the top of the wall of the town which was being attacked. 7. *turribusque*: these movable towers were filled with soldiers and rolled up near the walls. Sometimes they consisted of several stories. 8. *permōtī*: modifies Gallī. 9. *petentibus . . . cōservārentur*: as the Remi urged that they be spared.

375.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did the Remi intercede for the Sussions? 2. Follow on the map Caesar's route from the Axona (*Aisne*) to Noviodunum. 3. What was the last war fought over this ground?

376.

EXERCITATIO

Iterātiō: Subjunctive of anticipation (599, 601).

Respondē Latīnē: Quid fēcit Caesar priusquam hostēs in oppidum convenirent?

Scribe Latīnē: Before they can recover from their terror, he makes a rampart and moves the towers.

377.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: agger, terror, turris.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *auditory, comparison, conservatory, exaggerate, potency, turret?* Define each on the basis of its derivation.

Define the following words derived from *agere*, showing that each contains the idea of *doing* or *acting*: *actress, counteract, enact, exact, mitigate, reaction, transaction, variegated.*

The Suessiones surrender. The Bellovacī sue for peace

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditiōnem Suessionēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit.

Quī cum sē suaeque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia 5 passuum quinque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs natū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coeperunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus 10 suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Diviciacus pleads the cause of the Bellovacī

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dimissis Aeduōrum cōpiis, ad eum reverterat) facit verba: ¹

Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitatis Aeduac fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs omnēs indignitātēs 5 contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ² eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem civitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis.

Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut ¹⁰ suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in cōs utātur. ³ Quod sī fecerit, ⁴

Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua³ bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērunt.

1. *facit verba*: translate *spoke*. Give the form that would be used in a direct statement for each of the following: *Bellovacōs*, l. 3; *fuisse*, l. 4; *impulsōs*, l. 4; *dicerent*, l. 4; *redactōs*, l. 5; *dēfēcisse*, l. 6; *intulisse*, l. 7; *fuissent*, l. 7; *intellexerent*, l. 8; *profūgisse*, l. 9; *amplificātūrum* (*esse*), l. 12; *inciderint*, l. 13; *consuērunt*, l. 14. 2. *Qui*: its antecedent is *eōs* understood, the subject of *profūgisse*. 3. *ut . . . utātūr*: translate *that he exercise his usual kindness and compassion*; object of *petere*, *they ask*. 4. *fēcerit*: perfect subjunctive; represents the future perfect, *fēceris*, of the direct statement. Account for the primary sequence of tenses. 5. *si qua*: *if any*; the indefinite pronoun (559).

378.

COMPREHENSION

1. What excuses did Diviciacus offer for the conduct of the Bellovaci?
2. What reason did he give for his request?
3. What statement best shows the diplomacy of Diviciacus?

379.

EXERCITATIO

Iterātiō: Ablative with special deponents (547).

Memoriae mandā: *Suō cuique utendum est iudiciō*, *Each man must use his own judgment*.

Respondē Latīnē: *Caesarne clementiā in omnēs ūsus est?*

Scribe Latīnē: *If a war occurs, he will return and use their resources*.

380.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *incidō, ops, redigō, revertō*.

Caesar spares the Bellovaci. The Ambiani surrender. The Nervii

15. Caesar honoris¹ Diviciaci atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit; et, quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte² atque hominum multitudine praestābat, de obsidēs poposcit. His traditis omnibusque 5 armīs ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdiderunt.

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat:

Nūllum ³ aditum esse ad eōs mercātoribus; ⁴ nihil patī vīnī ⁵ reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferri, quod ¹⁰ his rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et remitti virtūtem exīstīmārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; ⁶ increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, qui ⁷ sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque ⁸ virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs. ¹⁵

1. *honōris*: with *causā*; translate as a mark of respect to. 2. *auctōritāte*: ablative of description. What other case might have been used? 3. *Nūllum . . . acceptūrōs*: indicate all changes necessary to make this a direct statement. 4. *mercātoribus*: dative of possession (521). 5. *vīnī*: modifies *nihil* (510). 6. *virtūtis*: what other case could have been used? 7. *qui*: translate *since they*; a relative clause may express cause. 8. *patriam*: here used as an adjective.

381.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did Caesar spare the Bellovaci? 2. To what does Caesar attribute the strength and courage of the Nervii? 3. What was their attitude toward the Romans? Toward the other Belgians who had surrendered?

382.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iteratiō: Genitive of description (511).

Memoriae mandā: *Homō ūnūs librī*, *A man of one book*. Thomas Aquinas thus characterized a man who had thoroughly mastered one book.

Respondē Latīnē: *Quis erat summī honōris inter Belgās?*

Scribe Latīnē: *There is no approach to the territory of those fierce men who surpass all in bravery. They are men of great bravery.*

383.

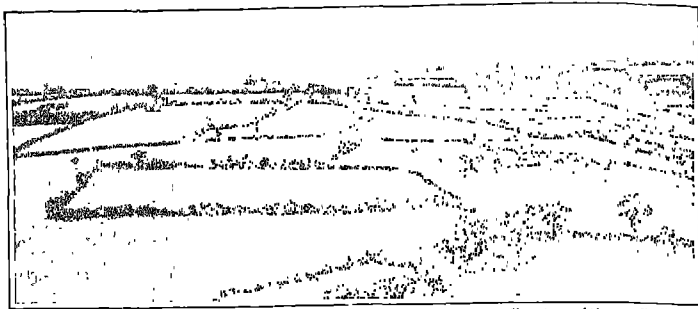
VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *aditus*, *dēdō*, *ferus*, *honor*, *praestō*.

The story of Chapters 16-19

Caesar finds the Nervii encamped across the river Sabis, *Sambre*, awaiting his army. Since the Romans have been advancing with a baggage train between each two legions, the Nervii plan to attack the legions separately and destroy them one by one as they advance with difficulty through the impenetrable hedges.

Caesar selects a place for his camp on a hill across the river from the



THE COUNTRY OF THE NERVII

Courtesy of George R. Swain

This illustration shows fields and hedges in modern Belgium. Caesar's soldiers found it almost impossible to make their way through the hedges of this country because at that time they were practically impenetrable.

Nervii. A surprise awaits the Nervii, for as Caesar approaches he changes the formation of his line so that six legions precede the baggage. These legions begin to fortify the camp, while the cavalry engages with that of the Nervii. Suddenly the host of the Nervii come out from the woods, rush across the river, and dash up the hill to the Roman camp.

Caesar's soldiers are equal to the emergency *

"Caesar, calm in the midst of the storm, recalled by hughle the fatigue parties gone in search of wood, got his men into some sort of order, and gave the signal for battle. Even so, if the men had not been veterans, capable of independent action in an emergency, there must have been a disaster." E. S. SHUCKBURGH, *History of Rome*

20. Caesarī¹ omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: ² vexillum ³ prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret; ⁴ signum tubā ⁵ dandum; ab opere revocandī milites; quī paulō longius aggeris ⁶ petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī; ⁵ acies instruenda, milites cohortandī, signum dandum.⁷ Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat.

Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus

* Read in Longfellow's *Courtship of Miles Standish* the story of the battle of the Nervii; also in A. C. Whitehead's *The Standard Bearer*.

mīlitum, quod, superiōribus proeliis exercitātī,⁸ quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis¹⁰ doceri poterant,⁹ et quod ab opere singulisque¹⁰ legiōibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitis castris vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil¹¹ iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē¹² quae vidēbantur¹³ administrābant.

15

1. Caesarī: explain the case and position. 2. erant agenda: *had to be done*; passive periphrastic conjugation (74). How many times is this construction used in this chapter? What must be supplied each time? 3. vexillum: *banner*; put up at the tent of the general as a sign of battle. 4. cum . . . oportēret: *when it was necessary to rush to arms*. 5. signum tubā: this was the signal to form in line. 6. aggeris: (*material*) *for the rampart*. 7. signum dandum: this was the signal to begin the attack. 8. exercitātī: *well trained*. 9. quid . . . poterant: *translate they could direct themselves (as to) what should be done just as easily as they could be shown by others*. 10. singulis: *respective*. 11. nihil: *translate not*. 12. per sē: *translate on their own initiative*. 13. vidēbantur: *seemed best*.

384.

COMPREHENSION

1. What impression does Caesar here give by the frequent use of the periphrastic conjugation? 2. What does this chapter tell about the training of his soldiers and of his appreciation of them? 3. How many things did Caesar have to do at one time? 4. What were they? 5. Why was he caught off his guard by the Nervii?

385.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iteratiō: Dative of agent (522). Passive periphrastic conjugation (501). *Memoriae mandā*: *Dēlenda est Carthāgō, Carthage must be destroyed*. Cato is said to have ended every speech he made in the Senate with this sentence. *Respondē Latīnē*: Quae rēs Caesarī administrandae erant? *Scribe Latīnē*: When it was necessary to advance, the signal had to be given on the trumpet by a soldier.

386.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: administrō, insigne, oportet, prōcēdō, tuba.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *administrator, document, prescription, propinquity, revoke, veto*? Explain the meaning of each on the basis of derivation.



THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVI

A word of encouragement from Caesar, and the ranks form hurriedly

21. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit,¹ decurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent² neu³ 5 perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adigi posset,⁴ proeli committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus occurrit.⁵

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad 10 dimicandum animus ut non modo ad insignia⁶ accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas⁷ induendas scutisque tegimenta detrahenda,⁸ tempus defuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit quaeque prima conspexit, ad haec constitit,⁹ ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.¹⁰

1. quam . . . obtulit: into whatever part (of the field) chance led. 2. retinerent: represents a command of the direct discourse (622). Point out other examples of this use. 3. neu: = et ne. 4. quam . . . posset: than (the distance) to which

a weapon could be thrown. 5. *pugnantibus occurrit*: he ran up to (his men) fighting. 6. *insignia*: especially the crests on their helmets. 7. *galeas*: these, when not needed, were usually suspended by a cord from the neck. 8. *scūtisque . . . dētrahenda*: and for taking the coverings from their shields; *scūtis*: dative of separation (520). 9. *Quam . . . cōstitit*: to whatever place each one by chance came from the work and whatever standards he first saw, by these he took his stand. 10. *nē . . . dimitteret*: (19).

387.

COMPREHENSION

1. What three things did Caesar enjoin upon the Tenth Legion? 2. How did he regard this legion? 3. What did he himself do?

388.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iteratiō: Adverbial purpose clauses (586).

Respondē Latīnē: Cūr quisque ad signa sua nōn cōstitit?

Scribe Latīnē: When chance offers, they hurl their weapons that time may not be lacking for fighting.

389.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *adigō*, *decimus*, *dēsum*, *dīmīcō*, *fors*, *offerō*.

Word Study. Define the following words derived from *currere*, showing that each contains the idea of running: *concourse*, *courier*, *discourse*, *excursion*, *incur*, *occurrence*, *precursor*, *recourse*, *recurrent*, *succor*.

The story of Chapters 22-24

The Romans are at a great disadvantage, because the legions are scattered, and the hedges hide them from each other.

The Ninth and Tenth Legions drive the Atrebatians across the river; the Eighth and Eleventh rout the Viromandui. The Nervii advance in mass formation. Part of them surround the Seventh and Twelfth Legions on their unprotected side, and part storm the Roman camp. Here panic prevails, and the auxiliaries flee. The situation seems hopeless.

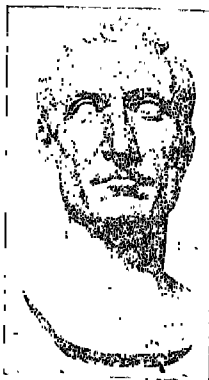
The Roman situation critical. Caesar leads the attack

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus,¹ ubi suōs urgērī, signisque in ūnum locum collātis,² xii legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus

occīsīs signiferōque interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in his primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō ³ ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs ⁴ et nōn nullōs ab novissimis, dēsertō locō, procliō ⁵ excēdere ac tēla vitāre, ⁶ hostēs ⁷ neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō ⁸ vidit, ⁹ neque ūllum esse subsidium quod summitti posset; scūtō ab novissimis ūnī militi ⁹ dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit, centuriōnibusque ¹⁰ nōminātīm ¹⁰ appellātis, reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre ¹¹ et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō ¹² facilius gladiis ūti possent.

Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, ¹³ paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

1. *profectus*: *setting out*. Caesar here takes up the thread of the story which he dropped in Chap. 21. 2. *signisque, collātis*: the first of the many ablative absolutes in this chapter; point out the others; translate by short sentences. 3. *multis . . . cōfectō*: *weakened by many severe wounds*. Baculus recovered from these wounds. Read the story of his heroic action as told in VI, 38. 4. *tardiōrēs*: *somewhat slow*. 5. *nōn nullōs . . . vitāre*: translate *that some in the rear, having deserted their positions, were withdrawing from battle and avoiding the weapons*. 6. *hostēs*: subject of *intermittere* and *instāre*. 7. *rem . . . angustō*: translate *the situation was critical*. 8. *vidit*: repeated from l. 4 because of the length of the sentence. 9. *ūnī militi*: *from a soldier (520)*. 10. *nōminātīm*: the fact that Caesar knew all his non-commissioned officers by name is one of many reasons for his success as a leader. 11. *signa inferre*: *to advance*; an idiom; military movements depended largely on movements of the standards. 12. *quō*: introduces a purpose clause (585, a). 13. *cum . . . cuperet*: translate *since each one desired to do his best in the sight of his commander, even at extreme peril to himself*.



Vatican Museum, Rome
JULIUS CAESAR

390.

COMPREHENSION

1. Give a word picture of the situation that confronted Caesar. 2. Why does he use one long and involved sentence in describing the condition of affairs? 3. What inspired the soldiers to do their best?

391.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Dative of separation (620).

Respondē Latinē: Cui Caesar scūtum dētrāxit?

Scribe Latinē: Through the work of Caesar, who seized a shield from a centurion, the attack was retarded a little.

392.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *centuriō*, *opēra*, *paulum*, *tardō*, *tardus*.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *detractor*, *dexterous*, *emperor*, *union*, *relax*, *tardy*, *urge*, *virtue*? Define each on the basis of its derivation.

Labiēnus sends the Tenth Legion to the rescue

"The dread of being cut off, which often paralyses even the best soldiers, gradually left them, and they began to fight with greater freedom and pluck."
W. WARDE FOWLER, *Julius Caesar*

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulatim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa¹ in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs² aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur,³ audācius resistere s ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus,⁴ castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs¹⁰ castrīs gererentur cōspiciātus, decimam legiōnem subsidio nostrīs misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset⁵ quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil⁶ ad celeritatem sibi reliquī⁷ fēcērunt.⁶

1. *conversa* . . . *inferrent*: translate "about face" and advance against the enemy. 2. *aliis*: to the others. 3. *nē* . . . *circumvenirentur*: that they would be surrounded in the rear (*aversi*) by the enemy (342). 4. *Labiēnus*: he had driven the Atrebatians back to their camp and, having gained possession of it, could look across to the Roman camp on the opposite hill. 5. *quō* . . . *esset*: translate at what a crisis the battle stood. 6. *nihil* . . . *fēcērunt*: translate they hurried as fast as they could. 7. *reliqūi*: give the form and use of this word and the following: *vidisset*, l. 2; *inferrent*, l. 4; *praesidiō*, l. 8; *castris*, l. 10; *gererentur*, l. 11; *nostris*, l. 12; *esset*, l. 13.

393.

COMPREHENSION

1. What did Caesar instruct the Seventh Legion to do? 2. What encouraged the soldiers? 3. What legions came to the rescue?

394.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Substantive clauses with verbs of fearing (592).

Respondē Latīnē: Signis conversis, quid militēs Rōmānī nōn iam timēbant?

Scribe Latīnē: The tribune fears that his legion will be seen by the enemy.

395.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: tribūnus.

Caesar, the victor, praises the courage of the Nervii

You all do know this mantle; I remember
The first time ever Caesar put it on;
'Twas on a summer's evening, in his tent,
That day he overcame the Nervii.

SHAKESPEARE, *Julius Caesar*

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut¹ nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent,² scūtīs innīxī³ proclium redintegrarent; cālōnēs, perterritōs hostēs cōspiciātī, etiam inermēs⁴ armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut⁵ turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pugnandō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent.⁶

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut,⁷ cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus

insisterent⁷ atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his deiectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulto,⁸ tela¹⁰ in nostros conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent;⁹ ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines iudicari deberet ausos esse¹⁰ transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.¹¹

15

1. *ut*: introduces what three clauses of result? 2. *procubuissent*: *had fallen*; attracted to the subjunctive by *redintegrarent* (610). 3. *scutis innixi*: *leaning upon their shields*. 4. *inermes*: (*though*) *unarmed*; modifies *calones*; it is emphasized by its position next to *armatis*. 5. *ut*: *in order to*. 6. *se . . . praeferebant*: *tried to surpass the legionaries, or "regulars."* The strength of the Roman army was in its legionary soldiers. 7. *ut, proximi . . . insisterent*: *that the nearest took their stand on those who had fallen*. 8. *ut ex tumulto*: *as from a mound*. 9. (*ut*) *conicerent, remitterent*: coordinate with *insisterent*. Why subjunctive? 10. *ut . . . ausos esse*: *so that it ought not to be judged that men of such courage dared in vain*. 11. *quae . . . redegerat*: *translate deeds which, although most difficult, their tremendous courage had made easy*.

396.

COMPREHENSION

1. Give a description of the battle with the Nervii. 2. What evidence is here given of Caesar's appreciation of bravery even in an enemy?

397.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Result clauses (587).

Memoria mandata: *Bellum autem ita suscipiatur ut nihil aliud nisi pax quaesita videatur*, *Let war be so carried on that nothing else but peace seems to be sought*. CICERO

Respondere Latine: *Quantam commutationem adventus decimae legionis fecit?*

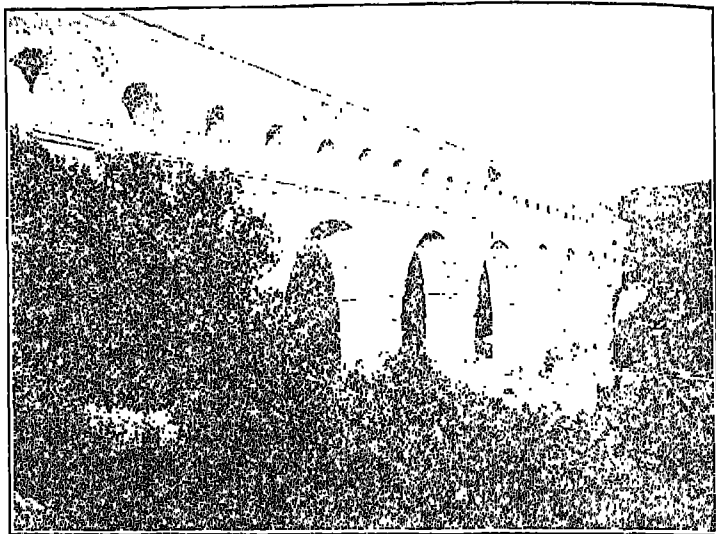
Scribe Latine: The unarmed (men) were so very brave that they ran to meet the armed.

398.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *inermis*.

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *adjacent, cadaverous, cadence, commutation, debt, preference, turpitude*? Define each.



A ROMAN AQUEDUCT IN THE PROVINCE NEAR NÎMES, FRANCE

This beautiful and imposing structure, nearly one hundred sixty feet high and nine hundred feet long, was built almost two thousand years ago. It is called the Pont-du-Gard.

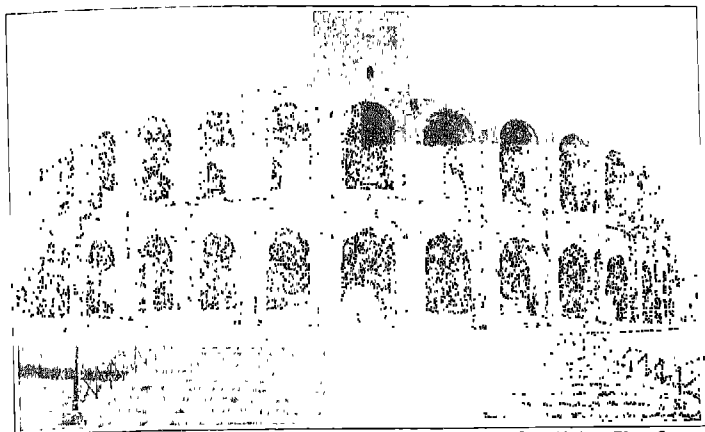
The story of Chapters 28-35

The Nervii lose 60,000 men ; Caesar mercifully spares the survivors.

Caesar now advances against the Atuatucae, who have taken refuge in a stronghold fortified by steep cliffs and a high wall. From this wall they jeer at Caesar's men and ridicule his moving towers, but when they see a tower actually approaching, terrified, they offer to surrender.

The Atuatucae beg to keep their arms, but Caesar demands an unconditional surrender. They agree to this but conceal a part of their arms with which they attempt a treacherous attack upon the Romans. They meet with defeat and are sold into slavery.

In the meantime, Crassus brings the states on the northwestern coast under Roman dominion, and German tribes offer their submission; the army goes into winter quarters and the victory is celebrated at Rome by a fifteen days' thanksgiving, "*quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.*"



Arles, France

© Publishers Photo Service

AN AMPHITHEATER IN THE PROVINCE

Many important Roman monuments are found at Arles. One of the most interesting is this amphitheater, which accommodated twenty-six thousand spectators. It was built of great blocks of stone. The tower seen above the entrance is a part of a twelfth-century building constructed in the arena. Bullfights and plays are given here each summer.

REITERANDUM EST

Multa rogā; retinē docta, *Ask many questions; hold fast to what you have learned.* COMENIUS

399.

EXERCITATIO

Scribe Latinē: Caesar was informed that all the Belgians were conspiring. Immediately enlisting two new legions, he set out with these. By forced marches he came to the territory of the Remi. They had not agreed with nor joined with the rest of the Belgians, and they entrusted themselves to the protection of the Romans. From the Remi Caesar found out what states were in arms and how great a number of men each one had.

The Belgians attacked a town of the Remi, which was less than eight miles away. These sent messengers to Caesar to ask for aid. When this had been sent, the Belgians turned away from the siege and with all their

forces set out toward Caesar. Caesar attacked them as they attempted to cross a river. The Belgians, after many of their men had been killed, decided, rather than fight to a finish, to return home. Other states surrendered immediately.

The Nervii, who were men of great bravery, suddenly made an attack before Caesar could do all the things which he had to do. This brought it about that the Romans were thrown into confusion. Caesar, calling the centurions by name, seized a shield from a soldier and advanced to the front line. Urged on by his arrival, the soldiers showed so great bravery that the enemy was repulsed. Fearing that they would be reduced to servitude, they surrendered themselves and all their possessions. Caesar ordered the other states to permit (that they permit) the Nervii to use their towns and supplies.

400.

REVIEW OF REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Each of the following words is derived from, or connected in derivation with, a word in the required vocabularies of **Liber II**. Give the Latin word to which each is related and its meaning. Define the English word on the basis of its Latin derivation.

Accession, acquisitive, administration, adversary, alleviate, centurion, clamorous, cohort, concise, conjure, consent, conversation, councilor, defensive, diversity, equestrian, fierce, frontal, honorable, incidental, infidel, iniquitous, neutral, oblation, opportunist, oppugn, opulence, paludine, permission, perturb, priority, procedure, query, retard, reverse, sagittate, signify, solicitude, solo, subsequent, tower, tribunal.

401.

REVIEW OF LATIN WORD FORMATION

Explain the formation of each of the following words, the meaning of the word from which each is derived, the force of the prefix or suffix (637-9), and the meaning of the word as a whole.

Armâtura, cohortatiô, deditiô, domesticus, incursus, liberâlis, levitâs, malefîcium, necessârius, patrius, paululum, speculâtor, tegimentum, turpitûdô.



MARTIGNY, THE STARTING POINT OF THE GREAT ST. BERNARD PASS

This modern town is near the site of Octodurus, where Galba was stationed to guard the pass through the Alps. Because the surrounding heights were held by mountaineers, Galba thought it best to retire to a less exposed position.

LIBER TERTIUS

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI

57-56 B.C.

The story of Chapters 1-6

In the fall of 57 B.C., Caesar sends Servius Galba with the Twelfth Legion to make safe for Roman traders the road through the Alps across what is now the Great Saint Bernard Pass. Galba establishes winter quarters at Octodurus, a village surrounded by high mountains.

The Alpine tribes, thinking that the Romans are preparing to gain a permanent foothold, secretly take possession of the heights. Surprised by the action of the mountaineers, Galba calls a council. The majority decide to defend the camp. The enemy in great numbers attack the Romans, who fight gallantly for six hours. Finally they decide that their one hope of safety is in a sally. T. Rice Holmes describes this as follows: "Suddenly, at a given signal, four compact little columns dashed out from all four gates, and cut their way through the loose ranks of the astounded

mountaineers. There was no time to rally. Discipline prevailed over numbers; and the mountaineers were driven with heavy loss out of the plain, and chased over the hills."

Successful, Galba decides not to tempt fortune further, but to spend the winter among the Allobroges.

The story of Chapters 7-13

Assuming quiet for the rest of the winter, Caesar has gone to Illyricum. Here he is informed of a rebellion on the Atlantic coast led by the Veneti. Resenting foreign ascendancy and repenting their recent tame submission, they detain Roman officers sent to them to arrange for a supply of grain and to demand the return of their hostages. This action of the strongest state inspires other tribes to revolt. When Caesar hears of this, he orders a fleet to be built at the mouth of the *Liger*, *Loire*, and sailors and oarsmen to be assembled. The Veneti, likewise, make great preparations. They have the advantage in position, ships, and knowledge of the coast and of the art of sailing.

Caesar feels justified in proceeding against the Veneti because of their retention of Roman envoys and their rebellion after they had surrendered and had given hostages. In order to prevent a general uprising, he distributes the legions more widely over Gaul. He places Brutus in command of the fleet, and in the spring leads the land forces in person to the land of the Veneti.

The location of the towns of the Veneti on almost inaccessible promontories makes it practically impossible for Caesar to capture them. The Veneti also have an advantage over the Romans because of the form and construction of their ships. Made of oak, with flat keels, high prows and sterns, and leather sails, they ride the storms; they are not stranded at low tide; and are not easily rammed by the bronze beaks of the low lying Roman galleys.

Caesar witnesses the first naval battle on the Atlantic Ocean

14. Complūribus expugnātis oppidīs,¹ Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam, captis oppidīs, reprimī neque eis nocērī posse,² statuit exspectandam classem.

Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnatissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnis militum cen-

turiōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtāe, cōn-
stābat ³ quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent.⁴
10 Rōstrō ⁵ enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem
excitātis,⁶ tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus⁷
superābat ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigi
possent et missa ⁸ ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī ⁹ rēs praeprārāta ā nostrīs, falcēs ¹⁰ prae-
15 acūtāe insertae affixaeque longuriīs, nōn absimili fōrmā mūrā-
lium falcium.¹¹ His ¹² cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs
dēstinābant comprēhēnsī adductique erant,¹³ nāvigiō rēmīs
incitātō, praeumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs, antemnae neces-
sariō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus ¹⁴ spēs in
20 vēlīs armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium
ūnō tempore ēriperētur.¹⁵

Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs
facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris
atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur ut nūllum paulō fortius
25 factum ¹⁶ latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra
unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

1. **Complūribus . . . oppidis**: note the different ideas expressed by the various ablative absolutes in this chapter. 2. **neque . . . posse**: *and that it was not possible to injure these*. 3. **neque satis Brūtō, cōnstābat**: *and it was not sufficiently evident to Brutus*. Later Brutus commemorated this victory on a Roman coin. 4. **quid . . . insisterent**: *what they should do, or what method of fighting they should adopt*; questions in indirect discourse (621). 5. **Rōstrō**: (546). 6. **turribus, excitātis**: ablative absolute with concessive force. Towers were raised on the front parts of the ships, and from these towers weapons were hurled over into ships close at hand. 7. **ex . . . nāvibus**: *on the foreign ships*. 8. **missa: tēla** is understood. 9. **magnō ūsuī**: dative of purpose. 10. **falcēs**: in apposition with *rēs*; these sickle-shaped hooks, which were sharpened at the ends, were inserted into and fastened to long poles. These were somewhat like wall hooks used to pry stones out of walls, and not unlike modern boat hooks. 11. **falcium**: genitive with *absimili* (513). 12. **His**: *by these (hooks)*. 13. **comprēhēnsī . . . erant**: *had been caught and drawn tight*. 14. **Gallicīs nāvibus**: (*for*) *of the Gallic ships*; dative of reference. 15. **hīs . . . ēriperētur**: *when these were cut away, all control of the ships was taken away at the same time*. Why? 16. **nūllum . . . factum**: *translate no act extraordinarily brave; what is it literally?*



THE COAST OF BRITTANY

© Little Gubinsky

The country of the Veneti is today called Brittany. The towns of this region in Caesar's time were located on promontories such as the one here pictured. How does this illustration help prove the truth of Caesar's statement of the difficulties which confronted him here?

402.

COMPREHENSION

1. Describe the manner in which the Romans attacked and boarded the ships of the Veneti. 2. Why would weapons thrown by the Gauls have the greater effect? 3. What incentive did the Romans have for showing unusual bravery?

403.

EXERCITATIO

Respondē Latīnē: Cuius in cōspectū rēs gerēbātur?

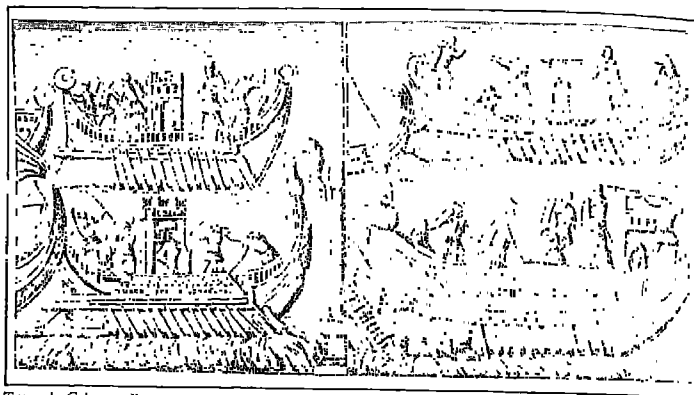
Scribē Latīnē: The fleet of the Veneti was unlike the fleet of the Romans. This was not clear to those in the near-by port to whom the ships had been assigned.

404.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: classis, comprehendō, cōstō, portus, propinquus.

Word Study. The English word *rostrum*, a speaker's platform, is the Latin word *rōstrum*, the *beak* of a ship. The speaker's platform in the Roman Forum was decorated with the beaks of ships taken as trophies in the first great naval victory won by the Romans. The name *rōstra* (*beaks*) in time came to be used to mean the platform itself.



Trajan's Column, Rome

ROMAN GALLEYS

How does this representation of Roman ships fit the description in the text? Note the size of the soldiers in proportion to the size of the ships.

To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *abrupt*, *attribute*, *class*, *comprehension*, *degenerate*, *derivation*, *funicular*, *innocent*, *latent*? Define each on the basis of its derivation.

A great victory for the Romans

15. Dēiectis, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum ¹ singulās bīnac ac ternae nāvēs ² circumsteterant, milītēs summā vī trāscendere in hostiū nāvēs contendēbant. Quod ³ postquam barbarī fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum cī rei ⁴ nullū reperirētur auxilium, fugā salutem petere contendērunt.

Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, ⁵ tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. ⁶ Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expug-
nāvērunt ut perpaucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū ⁷ ad terram pervēnerint, ⁸ cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum ⁹ pugnārētur.

1. cum: *whenever*. 2. singulās . . . nāvēs: the fact that two or three of the Roman ships would surround one ship of the Veneti does not mean that the Romans

had more ships, but that several attacked one enemy ship at a time. 3. *Quod*: *this*; a relative used as a demonstrative; subject of *feri*. 4. *ei rei*: *for this thing*; refers to the same action as *quod*. 5. *quō . . . ferēbat*: translate *toward which the wind was blowing*. 6. *tanta . . . possent*: *i.e.*, during a calm the Veneti, who relied on sails alone, were at the mercy of the Romans. 7. *noctis interventū*: *when night came on*. 8. *pervenerint*: perfect tense (578, a). 9. *ad . . . occāsum*: the battle lasted from about ten o'clock until sunset.

405.

COMPREHENSION

1. What aided the Romans in their naval battle? 2. How long did the battle last? 3. What was the outcome?

406.

EXERCITATIO

Cum temporal with the indicative — repeated action (596, a).

Respondē Latīnē: *Cum* (*whenever*) *hīnae nāvēs singulās hostium circumsteterant*, *quid hostēs faciēbant*?

Scribē Latīnē: The soldiers kept climbing upon the ships of the enemy until (up to) sunset.

407.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *binī*, *circumsistō*, *trāscendō*, *usque*.

Word Study. In what way are the following forms related to *ferō*: *afferō*, *anteferō*, *cōferre*, *distulī*, *effērō*, *illātum*, *offerre*, *praetulī*, *prōferre*, *sustulī*? Give the English equivalent of the first person, singular, indicative of each and at least one English derivative of each verb: *afferō* = *ad* (to) + *ferō* (*bring*), *I bring to*, *ATFERENT*.

To what word in the chapter is each of these related: *combination*, *opportune*, *salutation*, *transcendentalism*, *ventilate*? Define each on the basis of its derivation.

The Veneti surrender and are sold into slavery

16. *Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est*. *Nam cum* ¹ *omnis iuventūs*, *omnēs etiam graviōris* ² *aetātis*, *in quibus aliquid cōsili* ³ *aut dignitātis fuit*, ² *eō convēnerant*, *tum* ¹ *nāvium quod ubique fuerat* ⁴ *in ūnum locum coēgerant*; *quibus āmissis*, *reliqui neque quō* ⁵ *sē recipere*;

rent, neque quem ad modum⁶ oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdiderunt.

In quōs cō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō⁷ diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum⁸ cōservārētur. Itaque, omnī senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā⁹ vēndidit.

1. cum . . . tum: translate *not only . . . but also* (596). 2. graviōris . . . fuit: of more advanced age, in whom there was any wisdom or dignity. 3. cōsili: why genitive? 4. nāvium . . . fuerat: translate *what ships they had had anywhere*. 5. quō: (any place) where. 6. quem ad modum: any means by which. 7. In quōs . . . quō: Caesar decided that he should inflict more severe punishment on these for this reason, in order that. 8. iūs lēgātōrum: the protection of which was the real cause of the war. 9. sub corōnā: as a wreath was placed on the head of a captive sold at auction, this expression came to refer to the sale of a captive into slavery.

408.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did the naval battle with the Veneti end the war along the sea-coast? 2. Why did Caesar punish these people more severely than others?

409.

EXERCITATIO

Cum temporal clauses with the indicative — cum . . . tum (590).

Respondē Latīnē: Cum oppida maritima sē dēdiderunt, tum omnia sua amiserunt?

Scribe Latīnē: When the rest had surrendered, then he killed all (men) of (in whom there was any) dignity.

410.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: dignitās, maritimus.

Word Study. The word *coroner* is derived from *corōna*. In England it originally meant an officer of the crown. In *Hamlet*, Act V, Scene 1, Shakespeare refers to him as the "*crowner*."

To what Latin word in this chapter is each of these related: *coronet*, *internecine*, *vend*, *vindication*, *ubiquitous*? Define each.

The story of Chapters 17–29

While Caesar is engaging in war with the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus carries on a war in the north with the Venelli. Sabinus, pretending fear,

brings himself into contempt by refusing to fight. He sends a spy, a crafty Gaul, into the camp of the enemy to report that Sabinus intends to slip out of camp secretly that night and go to Caesar. The enemy is thus influenced to make a surprise attack on the Roman camp. Sabinus, however, surprises them and wins a decisive victory.

Meanwhile, Publius Crassus is engaged in a campaign in the south. In a hard fought battle he defeats the Sotiates, the strongest state in Aquitania. Several other states of Aquitania, alarmed by this defeat, unite against Crassus, who defeats their combined forces, after which the majority of the remaining states voluntarily surrender.

After the conquest of the Veneti, Caesar himself advances against two Belgian tribes, the Morini and Menapii. They withdraw into their marshes and forests. Caesar follows, but violent storms cause him to give up the attempt and to retire into winter quarters.

REITERANDUM EST

Prima virtus est vitio carere, The beginning of excellence is to be free from error. QUINTILIAN

411.

EXERCITATIO

Scribe Latinè: The first great battle on the sea was fought in the sight of Caesar. Two of our ships would surround a ship of the enemy. Whenever the ropes had been seized and cut, the sail-yards fell. Then the Romans would climb on the ship. When Caesar had finished the war against the maritime states, then he advanced against two states of the Belgians.

412.

REVIEW OF REQUIRED VOCABULARY

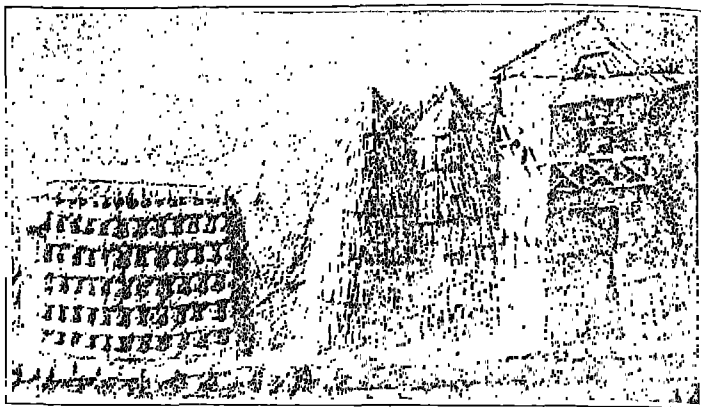
Each of the following words is derived from, or connected in derivation with, a word in the required vocabulary of **Liber III**. Give the Latin word to which each is related and its meaning. Define the English word on the basis of its Latin derivation: *attributive, binate, classical, comprehensive, constant, dignitary, incomprehensible, maritime, port, transcendent*.

413.

REVIEW OF WORD FORMATION

Explain the formation of each of the following words, the meaning of the word from which each is derived, the force of the prefix or suffix (637-9), and the meaning of the word as a whole.

Altitudō, armamenta, attribuō, certamen, cōgō, concidō, dēciō, dignitās, expugnō, maritimus, mūrālis, negōtium, perpauci.



Trajan's Column, Rome

GUARDING THE FRONTIER

A watchtower, stockade, and two thatched huts at a Roman outpost in the time of Trajan are here shown. After the conquest of Gaul, Rome found it necessary to protect her new dominions from further invasions of the Germans by a line of fortifications from the Rhine to the Danube

LIBER QUĀRTUS

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY. THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

55 B.C.

German tribes invade Gaul. Customs of the Suebi

"On the right bank, the Suebi were all-powerful, a veritable hive, from which ever new swarms of warriors issued forth, pressing to the westward. The Usipetes and Tencteri sought an asylum from this pressure." E. G. SIEHLER, *Annals of Caesar*

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī¹ fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus,² Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā cum multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit

quod, ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī, bellō premēbantur⁵ et agricultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia³ armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt;¹⁰ hī rūsus in vicem annō post⁴ in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur.⁵ Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī⁶ apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō⁷ remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.

Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem⁸ lacte atque¹⁵ pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt⁹ in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs, et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitae, quod, ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplinā assuēfactī, nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit¹⁰ et immānī corporum magnitudīne hominēs efficit. Atque in cam sē cōnsuētūdinem²⁰ addūxērunt, ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs¹¹ praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.¹²

1. quī: attracted to the gender of the predicate noun *annus*; refers to *hieme* (560, d). This was 55 B.C. 2. cōsulibus: at the conference at Luca in the spring of 56 B.C., it was arranged that Pompey and Crassus were to be the next consuls and Caesar was to have a five years' extension of his proconsulship in Gaul. 3. singula mīlia: a thousand each. 4. annō post: translate *the following year* (550). Point out and give the use of five different kinds of ablatives in this chapter. 5. neque . . . intermittitur: *neither tilling of the soil nor their system of military training is interrupted*. 6. agrī: genitive of the whole with *nihil*, *no land* (118). 7. annō: (*than*) a year (539). 8. partem: (530, a). 9. multumque sunt: translate *they are much engaged*. 10. alit: both this verb and *efficit* have as their subject *quae rēs*. 11. vestītūs: what kind of genitive? 12. laventur in flūminibus: a decided contrast to the elaborate and luxurious baths of the Romans. This chapter and the two following are valuable sources of information on the life and customs of the early Germans.

414.

COMPREHENSION

1. According to Caesar, what was the full fighting force of the Suebi?
2. What do you think of the reasons given for the size and strength of the

Germans? 3. Why were they not permitted to remain in one place more than a year?

415.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: Genitive of the whole (510).

Memoriae mandā: Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum, *Enough eloquence, too little wisdom.* SALLUST

Respondē Latinā: Num habent quicquam cibī praeter lac domī?

Scribe Latinā: A part of the strength of this tribe is brought about by exercise and training.

416.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *cibus, disciplina, exercitatio, gens, quisquam.*

Word Study. To what word in the chapter is each of these related by derivation: *alimony, cent, corporation, frigid, influx, lacteal, pell, vest, vicarious, vitumines?* Explain the meaning of each.

Additional facts concerning the customs of the Suebi

2. Mercatōribus¹ est aditus magis eō,² ut quae bellō cēperint³ quibus vendant habeant, quam quō⁴ ullam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quin etiam iumentis, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō,⁵ Germānī importātis⁶ nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt.⁷

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus⁸ proeliantur, equōsque eōdem⁹ remanēre vēstigiō⁹ assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus¹⁰ est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus¹¹ turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatōrum equitum quamvis¹² paucī adire audent.

Vinum¹³ omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmīnārī arbitrantur.

1. Mercatōribus: Caesar has several times referred to the demoralizing effect upon primitive people of the introduction by traders of the customs and habits of civilized nations (I, 1; II, 15). 2. magis eō: more on this account. 3. cēperint:

what use of the subjunctive (610)? 4. *quam quō*: *than because*; a rejected reason (603, b). 5. *pretiō*: ablative of price (548). 6. *importātis*: modifies *iūmentis*, which is in the ablative with *ūtuntur*. 7. *summī* . . . *efficiunt*: *they render them capable of enduring the greatest labor*. 8. *pedibus*: (542). 9. *eōdem, vēstigiō*: *in the same spot* (552, a). 10. *ūsus*: *need*. 11. *mōribus*: (185). 12. *quamvis*: *however*; modifies *pauci*. 13. *Vinum*: in telling of the strength and courage of the Nervii, Caesar comments on their avoidance of wine. As to Caesar himself, his biographer Suetonius says, "Even his enemies did not deny that he was sparing in his use of wine."

417.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did the Suebi permit traders to come to their country? 2. How did their cavalry compare with that of the Romans? 3. What was their attitude toward the use of wine?

418.

EXERCITATIŌ

Iterātiō: Ablative of accordance (537).

Memoriæ mandā: *Libertās est potestās faciendī id quod iūre licet*, *Liberty is the privilege of doing that which the law permits*. LEGAL MAXIM

Respondē Latīnē: *Quid mōribus Suēbōrum turpe habēbātur?*

Scribe Latīnē: According to their custom, it is disgraceful to desire wine.

419.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *dēsiderō, nāscor, turpis*.

Word Study. Define each of these words on the basis of its derivation from a word in the chapter: *delight, desideratum, effeminate, paucity, precious, situation, vend, vestige, vinegar*.

Define each of the following words derived from *nāscor*: *cognate, innate, international, naïve, nascent, natal, nation, nativity, natural, renaissance*.

The story of Chapters 3-12

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, are driven out of their homes by the powerful Suebi. In their wanderings they come to the Rhine. In spite of the resistance of the Menapii, a Gallic tribe with possessions on both sides of the river, they cross the Rhine into Gaul and settle there. Caesar, informed of this, fears the fickleness of the Gauls. His fears are confirmed when he learns that the Germans are being summoned by the Gauls. Distrusting such an alliance, he decides to begin war on the latter.

German envoys come to him pretending friendship and with arrogant boasts demand lands in Gaul. Caesar says that he cannot be a friend of

the Germans if they remain in Gaul, but that he will permit them to settle among the Ubii. The envoys ask three days' time for deliberation, which he refuses, because he thinks they are waiting for the arrival of their cavalry. In response to another request for a three days' delay, Caesar sets the following day for a conference. The Germans violate the truce by a treacherous attack upon the Roman cavalry, in which eight hundred Germans put to flight five thousand Roman horsemen.

The brave Piso brothers *

12. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur III et LXX, in his vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxiliū ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse, equō vulnerātō, dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō, sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

420.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: procul.

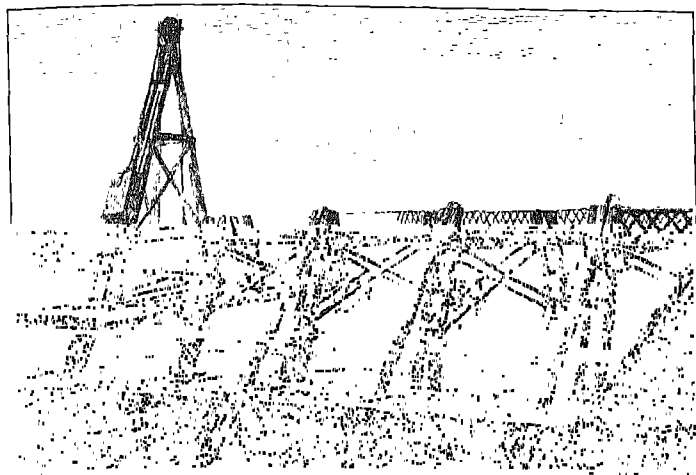
The story of Chapters 13-16

Caesar, thinking the Germans should now be given no concession, holds the envoys who come to make apologies. (This act in violation of the law of nations was later attacked in the senate by Caesar's enemy, Cato, who demanded that in return for this Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment.) Caesar makes a swift march against the German camp, surprises it, throws it into confusion, and, with little loss of his own forces but with heavy slaughter of the enemy, drives them in headlong flight to the river where great numbers perish. After this battle he decides to cross the Rhine in order to inspire fear in the Germans and to protect suppliant nations who are hard pressed by the Suebi.

Caesar's bridge across the Rhine

17. Despite the width, the rapidity, and the depth of the river, Caesar decided to build a bridge across. He regarded this means of crossing as the only

* The first paragraph of this chapter is included in the *Story of Chapters* 3-12.



CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE

safe one and the only one becoming the dignity of the Roman people. The plan and construction of the bridge is described as follows:

He joined together, with a space of two feet between, a pair of beams a foot and a half thick, sharpened a little at the lower end. When he had lowered these into the river by machinery and had fixed them firmly, and had driven them in with pile-drivers, not, like a pile, straight up and down, but leaning forward with a slant, so as to slope in the direction of the current, in a like manner he placed opposite these, two beams, joined in the same manner, at a distance of forty feet downstream, slanted against the violent force of the current. Both pairs of posts, after there had been let in from above a crossbeam two feet thick, the distance between the posts, were kept apart by a pair of braces on each side at the end; since these were held apart and braced in opposite directions, so great was the strength of the structure and such was the nature of the arrangement, that the greater the force with which the water rushed against it, the more closely were the beams held and bound together.

The trestles were bound together by timbers laid in the direction of the bridge and were covered by long poles and wicker-work; nevertheless, piles were driven in a slant on the downstream side, which, placed below like a buttress and joined with the entire structure, were to withstand the force of the current; and other piles likewise were put down at a short distance

above the bridge, so that, if trunks of trees or boats were sent by the barbarians for the purpose of destroying the work, by these defenses the force of such things would be lessened and they would not damage the bridge.

The story of Chapters 18-19

The bridge is completed within ten days. Over it the Roman army crosses into Germany and advances against the Sugambri, who flee. Caesar devastates their lands, receives hostages, and at the end of eighteen days recrosses the Rhine and destroys the bridge.

Caesar feels the lack of definite knowledge of Britain *

Caesar, the soldier, went to Britain to punish the people who had given aid to Rome's enemies in Gaul; Caesar, the man, was led on by the desire of adventure in a strange land. The story he tells of his expeditions is the first definite information concerning ancient Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā,¹ Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde sumministrāta auxilia²
 5 intellegēbat et, si tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsui fore³ arbitrābātur, si modo insulam adisset,⁴ genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō⁵ adit quisquam, neque eis
 10 ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis
 15 ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōnei portūs⁶ reperire poterat.

* Interesting books in connection with Roman occupation of Britain are:

COLLINGWOOD, ROBIN G., *Roman Britain*

HANNAIL, IAN C., *Voadica*

HAVERFIELD, FRANCIS J., *Romanization of Roman Britain*

HOLMES, T. RICE, *Ancient Britain*

WHITEHEAD, A. C., *The Standard Bearer*



ROMAN MILESTONE IN ENGLAND

From Orac

Milestones, *miliaria*, were set up on Roman roads at intervals of a mile. They usually were inscribed with the name of the emperor in whose administration the road was built, the name of the builder of the road, and the distance from the place from which the measurement was made.

The milestone shown in the illustration stands in its original position, near Vindolana, England, along an old Roman wall built during the Roman occupation of Britain, probably in the second century A.D.

1. *Exiguā . . . reliquā*: although a small part of the summer was left. 2. *inde . . . auxilia*: In III, 9 (omitted in this text) Caesar makes a brief statement to the effect that the Veneti had received aid from Britain. What reference is made to Britain in II, 14? 3. *magnō . . . fore*: that it would be very useful to him. 4. *adisset*: represents what tense of the direct statement? What other verbs are in the same construction? 5. *illō*: there; adverb. 6. *portūs*: subject of *essent*; modified by the interrogative *qui*.

421.

COMPREHENSION

1. What was Caesar's purpose in going to Britain? 2. What questions did Caesar ask the traders? 3. Why did he not get the desired information? 4. Do you think he was planning the conquest of Britain?

422.

EXERCITATIO

Tense in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse (623).

Respondē Latīnē: Arbitrāturne, si nōverit institūta illius nātiōnis, magnō sibi ūsuī fore?

Scribe Latīnē: Time will be lacking for making war if he rashly goes (shall have gone) to Britain in early winter. Rewrite this sentence making it dependent on *arbitrābātur*.

423.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *exiguus, mātūrus, nātiō, nōscō, temerē*.

Word Study. Define each of these words on the basis of its derivation from a word in the chapter: *deficient, insulator, opportunity, possible, vocabulary*.

Volusenus and Commius are sent to Britain

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā prae-mittit. Huic mandat ut, explorātis omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam primum revertātur.

5 Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus.¹ Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et quam² superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem iubet convenīre.

Interim, cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad
10 Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditis, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum re-mittit; et cum eis unā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebātibus supe-
15 rātis, rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auc-toritās in his regiōnibus magnī³ habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

20 Volusēnus, perspectis regiōnibus omnibus quantum ei facul-tātis darī potuit,⁴ quī nāvī egredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

1. trāiectus: this is in the neighborhood of modern Boulogne. 2. quam: its antecedent is *classem*. 3. magnī: translate *in high esteem* (511, c). 4. quantum

... *potuit: to the best of his ability; explained in the following qui clause, which expresses cause.*

424.

COMPREHENSION

1. On what mission was Volusenus sent? 2. Was he successful?
3. Why was the seacoast of the Morini selected as a starting point? 4. How did the Britons learn of Caesar's plans? 5. Why was Commius sent to Britain with the envoys?

425.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: brevis, fidēlis.

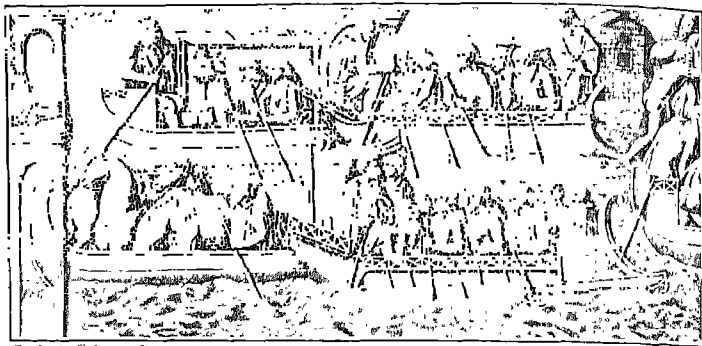
Caesar prepares to sail with eighty transports

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur,¹ ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt qui sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsārent,² quod hominēs barbari³ et nostrac cōsuetūdinis imperitī³ bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent,⁴ sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. 5

Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportunē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupatiōnēs⁵ Britanniae antepōnendās iudicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis, eōs¹⁰ in fidem recēpit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterēā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdebant⁶ XVIII onerariae nāvēs,¹⁵ quae ex cō locō ā milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quominus⁷ in eundem portum venīre possent;⁷ hās equitibus distribuit.

Reliquum exercitum Q. Tituriō Sabinō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vērunt, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpiciū Rufum lēgātum cum cō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrabatur portum tenēre iussit.



Trajan's Column, Rome

TRANSPORTING TROOPS AND HORSES

The arrival of a great fleet of ships must have caused much excitement among the barbarian Britons.

1. *Dum . . . morātur*: explain the use of the indicative (135). 2. *sē . . . excūsārent*: translate to *excuse their action of the preceding year*. See III, *The Story of Chaps. 17-29*. 3. *homīnēs barbari, imperītī*: *being uncivilized and unacquainted with*. 4. *quod . . . fēcissent* (624). 5. *hās . . . occupātiōnēs*: *this attention to trifling affairs*. Caesar had not found the subjugation of these people a "trifling matter" the year before. 6. *Hūc accēdēbant*: *in addition to this number there were*. 7. *quōminus, possent*: *so that they could not* (590).

426.

COMPREHENSION

1. Compare the number carried on one of Caesar's transports with that carried on one of our transports during the World War. 2. Did Caesar think he had conquered the Morini?

427.

EXERCITATIO

Iterātiō: *Dum* with the indicative (600).

Memoriae mandā: *Dum recitās incipit esse tuus*, *While you recite it begins to be your own*. MARTIAL

Respondē Latīnē: *Dum legātī veniunt quid fēcīt Caesar?*

Scribe Latīnē: While Caesar was assigning the warships to the prefects and quaestors, the transports were held back by the wind.

428.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *distribuō, onerārius, praefectus, praetereā, quaestor, quōminus*.

Caesar crosses the channel and seeks a safe landing place

That the people at Rome were interested in Caesar's expedition to Britain is attested by a sentence in a letter written at this time by Marcus Cicero, "The result of the war is looked forward to with anxiety, the approach to the island is guarded by great masses of rock." He ends with a joke at the expense of the barbarian Britons, "I do not fancy that you will find any musical or literary talent among them."

23. Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus, nactus¹ idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum² prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum,³ ipse hōrā diē circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi⁵ in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit.

Cuius loci⁴ haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustīs mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs cō convenirent,⁵ ad hōram¹⁰ nōnam in ancorīs expectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque militum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut⁶ rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut⁶ maritimae rēs postulārent, ut,⁷ cum celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum¹⁵ et ad tempus⁸ omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur.⁷ Hīs dīmissīs, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore⁹ nāvēs cōstituit.

1. nactus: from nanciscor; modifies Caesar, the subject understood of iussit.
2. ulteriōrem portum: Ambleteuse, the harbor eight miles away; the cavalry transports were held by unfavorable winds. 3. Ā . . . administrātum: translate while the orders were carried out with a little too much delay by these (the cavalry).
4. Cuius loci: Dover, with its high chalk cliffs. Edgar in *King Lear* says of this place. "How dizzy 'tis to cast one's eyes so low! The fishermen that walk upon the beach appear like mice." 5. dum . . . convenirent (135). 6. ut: as; its verb, postulārent, is attracted into the subjunctive by the subjunctives that follow.
7. ut . . . administrārentur: substantive clause, object of monuit. 8. ad . . . tempus: translate instantly at the word of bidding. 9. litore: the vicinity of Deal.

429.

COMPREHENSION

1. At what hour of the day did the Romans sail? 2. Compare the time taken in crossing today with the time required by Caesar. 3. Why did he not land at Dover?

430.

EXERCITATIO

Iteratio: **Clauses of anticipation (601).**

Respondē Latinē: Expectābatne Caesar dum tempus esset secundum?

Scribe Latinē: Caesar did not wait until the forces of the enemy should be drawn up.

431.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *expōnō, mōtus* (noun).

Word Study. *Secundus* (*sequor*), which originally meant *following*, has developed several other meanings. When used to indicate place in a series, it means *second*. When a wind was *following* (*secundus*) a ship, it helped it on its way and thus *secundus* came to mean *favorable*.

Define each of these words on the basis of its derivation from a word in the chapter: *explanation, quart, quarter, solve, unstable*.

Under great difficulties the Romans attempt to land

24. At barbarī, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitatū et essedāriīs, quō¹ plērumque genere¹ in proeliīs ūti cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi² prohibēbant.

5 Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui nōn poterant; militibus³ autem, ignōtīs locīs, impeditīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs,⁴ simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum
10 illī, aut ex aridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimis locīs, audācter tela conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī⁵ nōn eādē alacritātē ac studiō quō⁶ in pedestribus ūti proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.



THE CHALK CLIFFS OF DOVER

© Eving Gulloway

Why did Caesar think this was not a suitable place for landing?

1. *quō*, *genere*: a kind of fighting which. 2. *ēgredi*: from disembarking (590, Note). 3. *militibus*: dative of agent with *dēsiliendum* (*erat*) and the two following passive periphrastic forms; an emphatic contrast to the nominative *illi*, referring to the Britons. 4. *militibus . . . oppressis*: the (Roman) soldiers, however, in an unfamiliar place, with hands hampered, weighed down by a great and heavy burden of armor, had to. 5. *huius . . . imperiti*: wholly inexperienced in this kind of fighting (513). 6. *quō*: explain the case of this word and the following: *genere*, l. 2; *cōpiis*, l. 3; *nāvibus*, l. 3; *manibus*, l. 7; *onere*, l. 7; *generis*, l. 13.

432.

COMPREHENSION

1. What was the plan of the Britons? 2. At what disadvantage were the Romans? 3. In what ways did the Britons have the advantage? 4. How does Caesar indirectly praise the bravery of his men?

433.

EXERCITATIO

Respondē Latīnē: Quae nostris facienda erant?

Scrībe Latīnē: Their infantry were unencumbered by armor.

434.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: *expediō*, *pedester*.

Word Study: The word *barbarus* is connected in derivation with a word meaning to stammer. It was probably first used in an attempt to imitate the speech of peoples who did not use the Greek or Latin language.

**Roman artillery drives back the Britons. A brave Roman
standard bearer**

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās,¹ quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr² et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior³ paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpellī ac summovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō
5 ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium ligūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiōtō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum modo⁴ pedem rettulērunt.

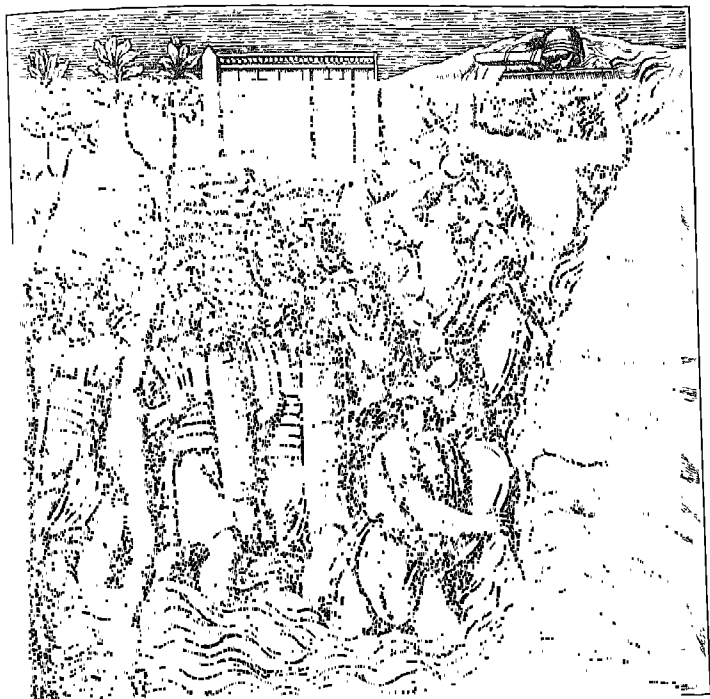
Atque nostris militibus cūctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī⁵ decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī feliciter ēvenīret, “Dēsilitē,” inquit, “commilitōnēs,⁶ nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego⁷ certē meum rei publicae atque imperatōrī officium praestiterō.”⁸

Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōlēcit atque in
15 hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī, cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur,⁹ ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis primī nāvibus¹⁰ cum cōspexissent, subsequētī hostibus appropinquārunt.

1. nāvēs longās: *war vessels*, propelled chiefly by oars; subject of what three infinitives? 2. quārum . . . inūsitiōr: *the appearance of which was quite strange to the barbarians*. They were more accustomed to sailing vessels. 3. ad . . . expeditior: *translate easier to handle*. 4. paulum modo: *just a little*. 5. quī: = is quī. 6. commilitōnēs: why was this word more effective than the word militēs would have been? 7. ego: why is the personal pronoun expressed (556)? 8. praestiterō: (575). Explain the tense of: iussit, l. 5; ferēbat, l. 10, ēvenīret, l. 11; dixisset, l. 14. 9. cohortātī . . . admitterētur: *urging one another not to allow so great a disgrace*. 10. ex . . . nāvibus: modifies eī, the subject understood of the verbs that follow.

435.**COMPREHENSION**

1. What on the Roman vessels corresponded to the guns on a modern battleship?
2. To what modern symbol does the eagle of the Roman legion correspond?
3. What made the speech of the standard bearer so effective?
4. Why does Caesar quote this speech?



Trajan's Column, Rome

UNDAUNTED BY DIFFICULTIES

The scene shown here from Trajan's Column, of soldiers crossing a river, is not unlike that described in this chapter where soldiers, following their standard bearer, jump into the sea. Note that one carries his possessions on his shield.

436.

EXERCITATIO

Respondē Latinē: Si miles aquilam Britannis prōdiderit, dēdecus admittet?

Scribe Latinē: Our men all say, "We at least shall have followed the eagle."

437.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: aquila, ūniversus.

Word Study. Define each of these words on the basis of its derivation from a word in the chapter: *decimate, decorum, expeditious, felicity, officious.*

The Romans land and rout the Britons

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsq̄ue ācrit̄er. Nostri tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvi¹ quibuscumque signis occurrerat sē aggregābat,² magnopere perturbābantur; 5 hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs³ ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equis, impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, 10 item speculātōria nāvigia, militibus complēri iussit et, quōs laborantēs cōspexerat, his subsidia summittēbat. Nostri simul⁴ in āridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius⁵ prōsequi potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam 15 capere⁶ nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

1. alius . . . nāvi: one from one ship, another from another. 2. quibuscumque . . . aggregābat: joined whatever standard they met. 3. aliquōs singulārēs: any by themselves; contrasted with plūrēs, a large number. 4. simul (atque): as soon as. 5. neque longius: but not very far. 6. capere: to reach.

438.

COMPREHENSION

1. Why did the Romans not follow the Britons farther? 2. Where was the Roman cavalry? 3. Did Caesar believe in luck (fortūna)?

439.

EXERCITATIO

Idiomatic use of *alius* (561, c).

Memoriae mandā: Aliud aliis placet, One thing pleases some, another others.

Respondē Latinē: Quibus signis alius aliā ex nāvi sē aggregābat?

Scribē Latinē: The enemy surround one at a time whatever men they see.

440.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: quicumque, singulāris.

Word Study. Distinguish between the meanings of the compounds of *sequor* found in this chapter. What does *assequor* mean? *Insequor*?

The Britons submit

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs sēsē datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum his lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā¹ dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi² ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad cōs ōrātōris modō³ Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum, proeliō factō, remīsērunt. In petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerēt⁴ petīvērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō,⁵ in continentem lēgātīs missis, pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere sē imprudentiae⁶ dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā suōs¹⁵ remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

1. *suprā*: see Chap. 21. 2. *Hunc illi*: to whom does each of these pronouns refer? 3. *ōrātōris modō*: in the capacity of envoy. 4. *ut ignōscerētur*: translate that they be pardoned; impersonal use of the verb. 5. *ultrō*: see Chap. 21. 6. *imprudentiae*: dative with *ignōscō* (517).

441.

COMPREHENSION

1. What principle of international law had the Britons violated? 2. Why was Caesar lenient with them? 3. How had Caesar treated the Veneti when they were guilty of throwing his envoys into chains?

442.

EXERCITATIŌ

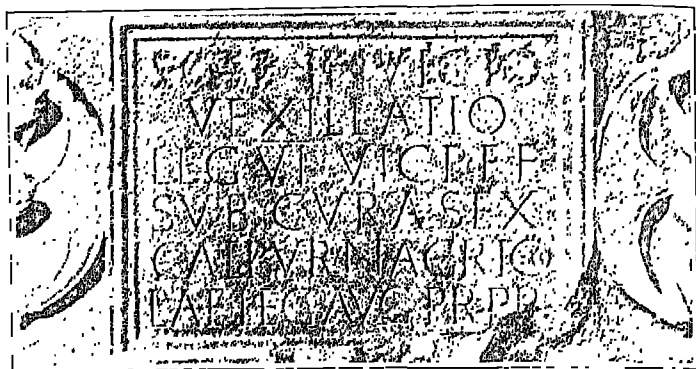
Respondē Latīnē: Cūr Caesar queritur?

Scribe Latīnē: The ambassadors, who are bringing commands, of their own accord entrust themselves to Caesar.

443.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: commendō, dēferō, queror, ultrō.



From Corioptum

Corbridge, Northumberland

A ROMAN SQUADRON IN BRITAIN

This inscription was found in 1906. It reads: **VEXILLATIO**, *squadron*, **LEG(ionis) VI**, *of the Sixth Legion*, **VIC(tricis)**, *victorious*, **P(jae)**, *loyal*, **F(elicis)**, *lucky*, **F(idelis)**, *faithful*, **SUB CURA**, *under the command*, **SEX(tu)** **CALPURN(i)** **AGRICOLAE**, *of Sextus Calpurnius Agricola*, **LEG(atl)** **AUG(usti)** **PR(o)** **PR(aetore)**, *imperial legate with the power of praetor*. There was an earlier inscription on the stone, which was chipped out partially before its later use.

A storm prevents the cavalry transports from landing

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam¹ est in Britanniam ventum,² nāvēs xviii, dē quibus suprà dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū³ lēnī ventō solvērunt.

5 Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla cārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur,⁴ aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō⁵ dēicerentur; quae, tamen ancorīs
10 iactis, cum flūctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

1. post . . . quam : on the fourth day after. 2. est, ventum : they came; impersonal use. 3. superiōre portū : see Chap. 23, Note 2. 4. referrentur : why subjunctive? 5. suō cum periculō : with danger to themselves.

The fleet is wrecked by a storm

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna,¹ quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Oceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum.² Ita unō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum³ cūrāverat, quāsque in āridum subclūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.

Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent (lūnibus, ancorīs, reliquisque armāmentis āmissis) ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent,⁴ et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

1. lūna plēna: astronomical calculations show that this date was August 30.
2. incognitum: the Romans were accustomed to the Mediterranean, where the tide is scarcely perceptible. 3. trānsportandum: used with cūrō (630, b). 4. pos-
sent: (584).

444.

COMPREHENSION

1. From statements in this and the preceding chapter, work out the date of Caesar's arrival in Britain. 2. Why had Caesar not foreseen the danger from high tide? 3. Why were the Romans so alarmed because of the disaster to the ships?

445.

EXERCITATIŌ

Respondē Latīnē: Quid erat necesse hāc nocte accidere?

Scribe Latīnē: Caesar sees to it that the shattered ships are repaired.

446.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: cūrō, frangō, lūna, necesse.

Word Study. *Lunatic*, a derivative of lūna, originally meant *moonstruck* and was applied to a form of mental derangement that was supposed to be influenced by the changes of the moon.

Define *incognito* by relating it to a word in the chapter.

The Britons plan to renew hostilities

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, principēs Britanniac, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent, et paucitatem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae
 5 hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxerunt, rebel-
 liōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hicmem prōducere; quod, hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsīs, nēmīnem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum
 10 cōfidēbant.

Itaque, rursus coniūratiōne factā, paulatim ex castris dis-
 cēdere ac suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt.

447.

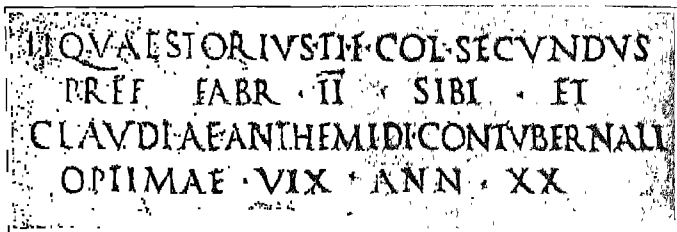
COMPREHENSION

1. What additional trouble threatened the Romans? 2. What two things did the Britons hope to accomplish?

448.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: colloquor, nēmō, prōducō.



AN ARMY ENGINEER

This inscription to the chief engineer, who superintended repairs on bridges and roads and was chief officer over the corps of mechanics in a Roman army, is: *Tiberius Quaestorius Secundus, son of Tiberius, of the Colline tribe, prefect of the engineer corps for the second time (puts up this monument), for himself and for Claudia Anthemis, his excellent wife, aged twenty.* The first two letters of the inscription are **TI**, the abbreviation for **Tiberius**. **TIF** stands for **Tiberi filius**; **COL**, **Collina**; **VIX**, **vixit**.

Caesar hastens to gather supplies and to repair the fleet

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicabatur.

Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferbat et, quae gravissime afflictae erant nave, earum materiam atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continentibus comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, XII navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commodè posset effecit.

10

449.

COMPREHENSION

1. What ground did Caesar have for suspecting the Britons? 2. How did he meet the emergency? 3. To whom does he give the credit?

450.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: eventus, materia.

The Britons attack a Roman legion which is foraging

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum¹ missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspitione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ei qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant Caesari nuntiaverunt pulverem maiorem quam consuetudo ferret² in ea parte videri quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consili,³ cohortes quae in stationibus erant secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese¹⁰ subsequi iussit.

Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque acre sustinere et, conferta legione, ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati¹⁵



Trajan's Column, Rome

SOLDIERS HARVESTING GRAIN

These soldiers are probably foraging in the enemy's territory. Some cut the grain, and others carry it away.

hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs,⁴ dēpositīs armīs, in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs, reliquōs, incertīs ōrdinibus, perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

1. frūmentātum: (631, a). 2. quam . . . ferret: translate *than usual*. What is the literal translation? 3. id . . . cōsili: translate *suspecting the truth, that some new plan had been inaugurated by the barbarians*. 4. dispersōs: modifies nostrōs understood, the object of adortī.

451.

EXERCITATIŌ

Respondē Latinē: Quibus Rōmānī cōfestim circumdātī sunt?

Scribe Latinē: When they saw the dust, those on guard reported their suspicions to Caesar.

452.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: circumdō, cōfestim, pulvis, statīō, suspiciō.

The chariot fighting of the Britons

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs¹ pugnac. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum²

et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur.

Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, sī illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant.³

Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt¹⁰ utī in dēclivī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs⁴ equōs sustinēre⁵ et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērīnt.

1. *essedīs*: Cicero jokingly writes to his friend Trebatius, "I hear there is no gold and silver in Britain. If this is so, I advise you to seize a war chariot and hurry home as soon as possible." Read *Cicero Writes to a Friend on Caesar's Staff*, p. 127. 2. *terrōre equōrum*: terror caused by the horses (512, Note). 3. *expeditum . . . habeant*: they may have an easy retreat to their (chariots). 4. *incitātōs*: translate at full speed. 5. *sustinēre*: translate control. This infinitive and the following ones are complementary, dependent upon cōsuērīnt.

453.

COMPREHENSION

1. Describe the chariot fighting of the Britons.
2. How effective was it?
3. Do you think Caesar was impressed by it?

454.

VERBA

Required Vocabulary: dēclivis, pedes.

Word Study. Define each of these words on the basis of its derivation from a word in the chapter: *expedite*, *immoderate*, *insinuate*, *insistent*, *precipice*, *reflect*, *rotary*.

Caesar comes to the rescue. The Britons plan an attack

"The Britons then watched their chance and fell upon the men of a legion sent out to cut grain; that was the last considerable tract left uncut; it was probably so left for a bait." E. G. SHILER, *Annals of Caesar*

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris¹ novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēperunt.

Quō factō, ad lacesendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuī et, brevī tempore intermissō, in castra legiōnēs redūxit.

Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī² erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent³ et
10 hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.

Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsērunt paucitatemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī⁴ liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent,⁵ dēmōstrāvērunt.
15 Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērērunt.

1. Quibus . . . nostris: *to our men, thrown into confusion by these things.* 2. quī: *i.e., the Britons (560, b); they too joined the revolt.* 3. continērent: (587). 4. suī: plural (486). 5. expulissent: represents the future perfect tense of the direct discourse.

455.

EXERCITATIO

Respondē Latinē: Quid barbarī dē Rōmānīs praedicant?

Scrībe Latinē: For several days in succession they had an opportunity of getting booty.

456.

VERBA

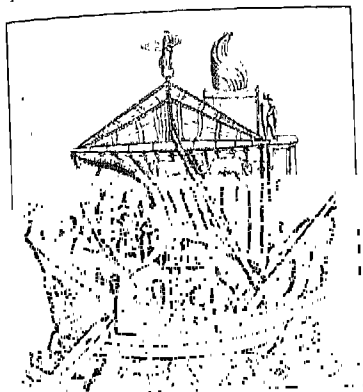
Required Vocabulary: continuus, namque, praeda, praedicō.

Caesar puts the Britons to flight

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō, diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuerunt, complūrēs ex cis occidērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsis, sē in castra recēperunt.

The Britons sue for peace. Caesar returns to Gaul

36. Eodem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod, propinquō diē aequinoctī, infirmīs nāvibus, hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn ex-
istimābat.



From an old print

Courtesy of the Imperial
Commercial Museum

A ROMAN GALLEY

This print is of a marble carving found at the old harbor of Ostia, the port of Rome. The carving represents a ship described by an ancient writer.

Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt, sed ex eis onerariae duae eōdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuerunt et paulō infā dēlatae sunt.

The Morini attack the Romans as they are landing

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī milītēs circiter CCC atque in castra contendērent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācā-

tōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī, orbe factō, sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit.

Interim nostrī milītēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāverunt; et, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs, complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs, abiectīs armīs, terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

*Trajan's Column, Rome*

VICTORY

The winged Victory is writing on the shield a record of Roman successes. The two trophies on either side are the helmets, shields, and arms taken from the enemy.

Rome celebrates Caesar's victories with a thanksgiving

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum cīs legiōnibus quās ex Britannīā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīonem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs palūdum quō sē recipere nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō crant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt.

At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

10 Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō civitatēs ex Britannīā obsidēs mīserunt, reliquae neglēxērunt.

Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

457.

COMPREHENSION, CHAPTERS 35-38

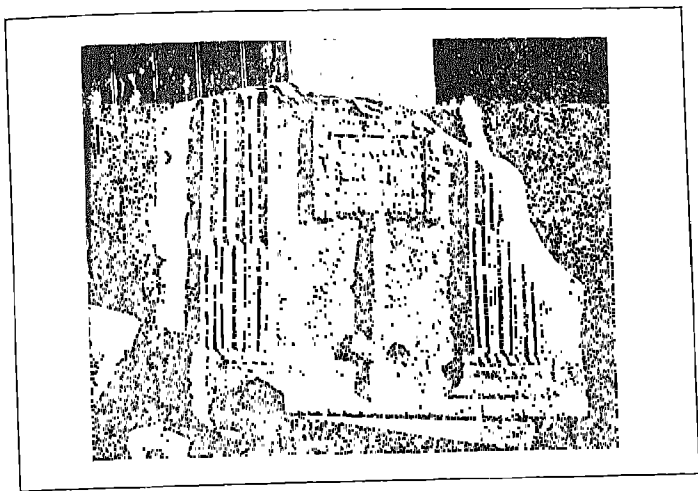
1. Who was Commius? 2. What does the word *aequinoctium* tell as to the approximate date of Caesar's sailing from Britain? 3. What did Caesar accomplish in Britain? 4. How were Caesar's suspicions concerning the Morini (*Chap. 22*) confirmed? 5. Why were the Morini so quickly defeated at this time? 6. Why did Caesar select Belgium for his winter quarters? 7. Why did Rome declare a longer thanksgiving this year than in 57 B.C.?

458.

VERBA, CHAPTERS 35-38

Required Vocabulary: *effugiō, infrā, posteāquam, vertō.*

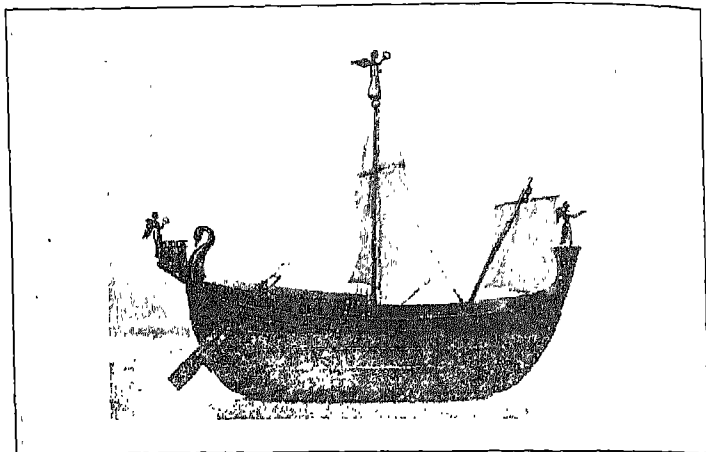
Word Study. Define the following words derived from *vertō*, showing that each contains the idea of *turning*: *advertise, anniversary, avert, converse, divorce, inverse, perverse, revert, traverse, universe, vertical.*



A FLAG BEARER'S TOMB

This stone is cut to represent the *vexillum*, *flag*, carried in the Second Roman Legion. It was found at Corstopitum, England.

"When we dig a Roman inscription out of some misty fastness in our northern moors and read of some forgotten captain who died for Rome as he made a road across the rocks, we are diving against a truth." THE MANCHESTER GUARDIAN



Photograph of a model in the Philadelphia Commercial Museum

MODEL OF A GALLEY

This ship was modeled after the one shown on page 327.

REITERANDUM EST

Memoria est thesaurus omnium rerum custos, Memory is the treasure-house and guard of all things. CICERO

459.

EXERCITATIO

Scrībe Latīnē: Although (only) a small part of the summer was left, Caesar decided to set out for Britain. He sends a faithful lieutenant to learn everything about the Britons. While he waits until this ambassador shall return, Caesar prepares a fleet. With two legions and many transports, he sets out by the shortest way.

Before our men could reach the shore, the Britons, seeing them from a distance, attacked them. Our infantry, impeded by a great load of armor, had to fight with an unencumbered enemy. When all were thrown in confusion, the one who was bearing the eagle said in a loud voice that if they did their duty, they would not surrender the eagle to the enemy. He threw himself from the ship, and the rest followed, one from one ship and one from another. In a little while they overcame the enemy.

The transports which were bearing the cavalry could not reach Britain

on account of a storm. On the same night it happened that the warships were shattered by the storm. Caesar lacked all materials for repairing these. All were thrown into confusion for no one wished to prolong the war. The Britons, encouraged by this disaster, secretly talked together (conferred) and decided to attack our men.

460.

REVIEW OF REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Each of the following words is derived from, or connected in derivation with, a word in the required vocabulary of *Liber IV*. Give the Latin word to which each is related and its meaning. Define each English word.

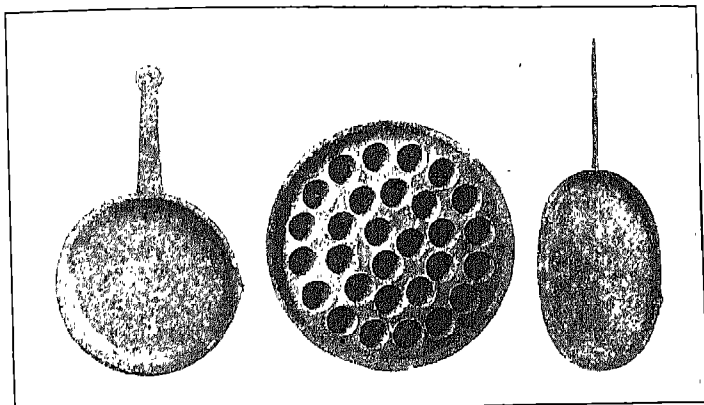
Abbreviate, accuracy, aquiline, colloquial, commendation, continuity, declivity, deference, depreciate, disciplinarian, distribution, eventually, exiguous, expedite, exponent, fidelity, gentle, lunar, matter, native, notice, onerous, pedestrian, predacious, prefect, product, pulverize, querulous, refraction, station, suspect, university, version.

461.

REVIEW OF WORD FORMATION

Explain the formation of each of the following words, the meaning of the word from which each is derived, the force of the prefix or suffix (637-9), and the meaning of the word as a whole.

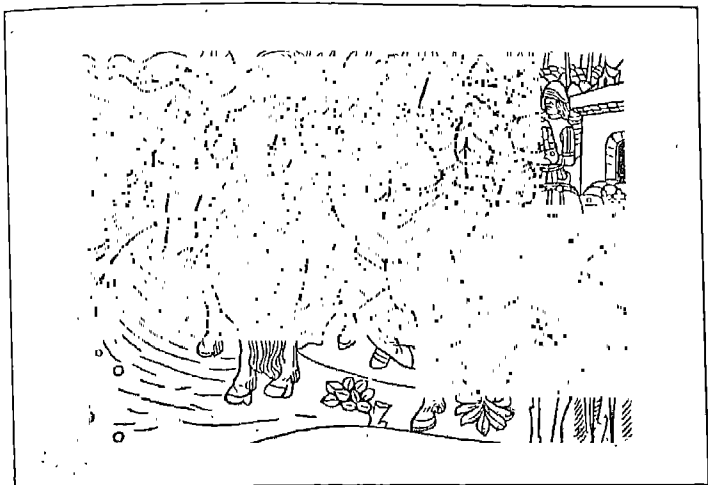
Aequinoctium, animadvertō, aridus, cultūra, essedārius, frigidus, frumentum, instabilis, nāvigium, nāvigō, onerārius, rebellō, speculātorius, stabilitās, tantulus.



Tompitt

Courtesy of Field Museum of Natural History

COOKING UTENSILS



From a medieval drawing

CAESAR EMBARKS FOR BRITAIN

Caesar is here represented as a knight. Medieval drawings illustrating ancient authors are valuable because they picture contemporary arms and armor.

LIBER QUINTUS

THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. THE REVOLT OF NORTHERN GAUL

54 B.C.

The story of Chapters 1-11

Before going into winter quarters, Caesar orders a new fleet built in preparation for a second invasion of Britain. He then goes to Illyricum and exacts punishment of the Pirustae, who menace the Province. In the course of the winter he holds courts both in Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

Returning to Gaul, Caesar visits winter quarters, inspects the fleet, praises the troops and the officers in charge of the work, and then leads a force against the Treveri, a powerful state, whom he binds through hostages to keep the peace. He now repairs to Port Itius, where he finds the fleet ready to sail. In order to avoid uprisings in his absence, he decides to

take to Britain with him some of the leading Gallic chieftains of whose loyalty he is not convinced. Among these is Dumnorix, a powerful and ambitious Aeduan, hostile to Roman influence, who protests vigorously against being taken.

Seeing that his protests and excuses are of no avail, Dumnorix tries to influence other chieftains to refuse to accompany Caesar to Britain. This is reported to Caesar. While the latter is occupied with the embarkation of the fleet, Dumnorix tries to escape, but he is captured and killed. His last words are, "I am a free man and of a free state." They justify Caesar's characterization of him as a man of high spirit, *magnī animī*.

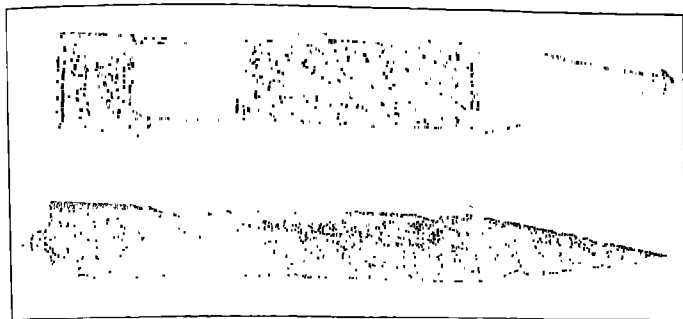
Caesar sails for Britain a second time, leaving Labienus in charge of his army in Gaul. When the Britons see a fleet of eight hundred ships, they flee, and the Romans land without opposition.

Caesar leaves his fleet at anchor, moves inland, seizes a stronghold, and on the following day advances against the enemy. He is in sight of the latter when he learns that his fleet has been wrecked by a storm. Returning to the shore, he finds forty ships shattered and others seriously damaged. He sends to the continent for help. Soldiers labor day and night for ten days repairing the fleet, which they beach and surround with a wall. Caesar continues his pursuit of the Britons, who in great numbers are mobilizing under the leadership of a capable chieftain, Cassivellaunus.

Inhabitants and products of ancient Britain

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur quōs nātōs in insulā ipsā ¹ memoriā prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab eīs quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgīō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus civitātum appellantur quibus ⁵ ortī ex civitātibus eō pervēnērunt),² et, bellō illātō, ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infīnīta multītūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōsimilia, pecorum ³ magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut acre aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ⁴ ad certum pondus exāmīnātīs prō ¹⁰ nummō.

Nāscitur ibi plumbum album ⁵ in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; acre ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem.



British Museum, London

ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

These were found in the Thames River.

Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant;¹⁵
haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque⁶ causā. Loca sunt
temperatiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frigoribus.

1. *nātōs . . . ipsā*: born on the island itself; they claimed that they were
aborigines. Many ancient nations claimed to be sprung from the soil. 2. *quibus*
. . . *pervēnērunt*: from which states having sprung they have come to this place.
3. *pecorum*: two English derivatives of this word are *pecuniary* and *peculiar*.
4. *tāleis ferreis*: some of these iron bars have been found in Sussex. 5. *plumbum*
album: tin mines are found in Cornwall, while iron is found in Sussex. 6. *animī*
voluptātisque: translate *of entertainment*. What is it literally?

Caesar's idea of the geography of Britain

13. *Insula nātūrā triquetra*, cuius ūnum latus est contrā
Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium,
quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem,
inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter milia
passuum D.

Alterum¹ vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem;
quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam
Britannia, sed parī spatiō trāsmisūsus atque ex Galliā est in
Britanniam.² In hōc mediō cursū est insula, quae appellātur
Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae insulae exīsti-¹⁰

mantur; dē quibus insulīs nōn nullī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs
xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē cō percontatiōnibus
reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aquā ³ mēnsūrīs breviorēs esse quam
in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris,
15 ut fert illōrum opīniō,⁴ dcc mīlium.

Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta
--- terra; sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat.
Hoc mīlia passuum dccc in longitūdinem esse existimātur.

Ita omnis insula est in circuitū vicīc ⁵ centum mīlium passuum.

1. Alterum (latus): the second side. 2. parī spatiō . . . Britanniam: he says that the distance between Ireland and Britain is equal to that between Britain and Gaul. 3. ex aquā: of the water clock; the Romans used water instead of sand in their hourglasses. 4. ut . . . opīniō: translate according to their report. 5. vicīc: Caesar's description is as accurate as could be expected in view of the fact that the Romans had not yet explored or sailed around the island.

Customs of the Britons

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque ¹ frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestitī.

5 Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc ² horridiōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; ³ capillōque ⁴ sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

1. Interiōrēs plērīque: the majority of the people living in the interior. 2. hōc: ablative of cause. 3. aspectū: ablative of specification. 4. capillō: ablative of description.

The story of Chapters 15-23

In a number of skirmishes the Britons show themselves to be spirited and resourceful. Both the heavily armed Roman infantry and even the more mobile Roman cavalry are at a disadvantage when confronted by the tactics of the charioteers and cavalry of the Britons.

In an attack on three legions, which are on a foraging expedition, the Britons, however, are defeated so decisively that they do not again attempt



Portchester, England

Courtesy of Roy C. Muckinger

REMAINS OF ROMAN FORT IN ENGLAND

This part of a Roman fort is still standing near Portchester.

a pitched battle. Thereafter they content themselves with guerrilla warfare, using their war chariots. Caesar crosses the Thames, scatters the forces of the enemy, receives the submission of several tribes, takes by storm a stronghold, captures great numbers of cattle, kills many men, takes captives, and devastates the country. This rapid and energetic campaign served to give information about Britain to the civilized world and to open the way for future invasions and the Romanization of Britain.

Marcus Cicero, a contemporary of Caesar, in a letter to a friend thus summarizes Caesar's achievements: "On the twenty-fourth of October I received a letter from my brother Quintus and from Caesar, dated from the nearest point on the coast of Britain on the twenty-fifth of September. Britain is settled, hostages taken, no booty, but a tribute imposed, and they are bringing back the army from that place."

The story of Chapters 24-29

On account of the shortage of the crops that summer, Caesar, on his return to Gaul, distributes his forces in various places, unusually far apart but within a radius of one hundred miles. One legion and five cohorts under Sabinus and Cotta are stationed among the Eburones; another under Quintus Cicero, among the Nervii; a third under Labienus, among the Remi. This distribution of the troops invites attacks from rebellious Gauls.

Under Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, the Eburones lead an attack against

the winter quarters of Sabinus and Cotta. Unsuccessful in their attack on the camp, they call for a parley. In this conference Ambiorix, posing as a friend because of favors he has received from the Romans, warns them that the changeable Gauls are planning to attack all the winter camps on that very day, and he advises the Romans to retire from this place and join the forces of Cicero or of Labienus. As an expression of his gratitude to Caesar, he offers to conduct them to safety.

At a council of war, Cotta and some of the leaders protest against taking advice from any enemy and vigorously affirm their belief that there is no need of abandoning their camp. A violent altercation ensues. Sabinus with some of the others trusts Ambiorix and insists that they start out at once.

Sabinus throws the responsibility of remaining in camp on Cotta

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā primisque ōrdinibus¹ ācrit̄er resisterētur:

"Vincite," inquit, "sī ita vultis," Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars militum exaudīret, "neque is sum," inquit, "quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear."² Hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit,³ abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat,⁴ perendinō diē cum proximīs hibernīs coniūctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn reiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut famē intererant.

1. *primisque ōrdinibus*: translate and the senior centurions. 2. *quī . . . terrear*: relative result clause (587). 3. *sī . . . acciderit*: for this type of condition, see 607. 4. *sī . . . liceat*: if you should permit it (608). Write Sabinus' speech in the indirect form. To whom was Sabinus really speaking? Give reasons for your answer.

Cotta yields to Sabinus

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nullam sē salūtem perspicere.

Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem

dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prō-nūtiātūr primā lūce itūrōs.

Cōnsūmītur vigilīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrū-mentō hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine periculō maneātūr et languōre militum et vigilīs periculum augeātūr.¹

Primā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsū² nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsiliū³ datum,³ longissimō agmine maximisque impedimentis.

1. quārē . . . augeātūr: *why they could not remain without danger and (why) the danger would be augmented by the exhaustion and lack of sleep of the soldiers.*
2. ut . . . persuāsū: *since they were convinced that.*
3. datum: *esse is understood.*

The story of Chapters 32-39

The Romans set out early the next morning and soon find themselves ambushed by the forces of the traitorous Gauls. They abandon their baggage and try to form a hollow square. All is confusion and disorder; soldiers shout, weep, and desert their standards. In this unexpected crisis, Sabinus also is panic stricken, but Cotta looks out for the safety of the soldiers and "does his duty as a commander and a soldier." Many of the soldiers and officers are wounded. Cotta is hit full in the face by a sling shot. Caesar says, "They did nothing unworthy of themselves."

Sabinus parleys with Ambiorix for safe conduct, an offer which Cotta refuses. Sabinus is treacherously slain, and Cotta falls fighting bravely in the midst of his troops, most of whom are slaughtered. The remnant who survive either kill themselves or escape to the camp of Labienus.

A Roman historian, Suetonius, says that Caesar let his hair and beard grow until he avenged this greatest loss of the Gallic war.

The defeat of the forces of Sabinus and Cotta encourages Ambiorix to organize a more widespread revolt. He induces the Atuatucae, Nervii, and surrounding states to join his forces in an attack upon the camp of Cicero.

Cicero is in winter quarters among the Nervii. His brother Marcus writes to a friend as follows in November of 54 B.C.: "The choice of army winter quarters has just been given Quintus. . . . If one does not fall in love with such a man (Caesar), which of the others could one love?"

Quintus Cicero's valiant defense of his besieged camp

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem¹ cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent; ² obsessīs omnibus viīs, missī³ intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā māteriā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum exx excitantur; 5 inincrēdibili celeritāte quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur.

Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus cōactīs cōpiīs, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādē ratiōne quā pridīe ā nostrīs resistitur.

Hoc idē reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus.⁴ Nūlla pars nocturni
10 temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeustae⁵ sudēs, magnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur.⁶

15 Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset,⁷ nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquebat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.⁸

1. ad Caesarem: Caesar was at Samarobriua (*Amiens*). 2. pertulissent: the object is litterās understood; why subjunctive (624)? 3. missī: (*the messengers*) sent. 4. reliquīs deinceps, diēbus: for several successive days. 5. praeustae: hardened at the end by burning. 6. pinnae . . . attexuntur: i.e., interwoven branches were attached to the towers as breastworks. 7. cum . . . esset: although he was in very poor health. 8. ut . . . cōgerētur: so that, by the soldiers who ran up and pleaded with him, he was actually forced to spare himself. That Caesar appreciated Quintus Cicero's services may be seen in an extract from a letter written by Marcus Cicero, "He loads my Quintus with honors, dignities, and favors."

Cicero scorns the protection offered by the crafty Nervii

41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviorum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum¹ causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestāte, eadē quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat commemorant: omnem Galliam esse 5 in armīs; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnārī.

Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fidei faciundae causā.² Errāre eōs³ dicunt, sī quicquam ab hīs praesidi spērent quī suis rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō,⁴ ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hibernīs discēdere⁵ et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficisci.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: Nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiціōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō eius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

1. *aliquem . . . aditum*: some excuse for an interview. 2. *ostentant . . . causā*: to inspire confidence they point to. 3. *eōs*: refers to Cicero and his men. 4. *sēsē, hōc esse, animō*: they (the Nervii) had this feeling (544). 5. *licēre . . . discēdere*: they (Cicero's forces) might retire from winter quarters unharmed, so far as they (the Nervii) were concerned. To what did the Nervii chiefly object?

The disappointed Nervii adopt Roman methods in besieging the camp

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervii vāllō pedum decem et fossā pedum quīndecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed, nullā ferramentōrum cōpiā quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiis caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire¹ cōgēbantur.

Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitudō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum trium in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad² altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdīnēsque, quās idem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac¹⁰ facere coepērunt.

1. *manibus . . . exhaurire*: translate to dig up the earth with their hands and to take (it) out with their military cloaks. 2. *ad*: in proportion to.

The Romans are undismayed by blazing darts and fire

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, ferventēs fūsili ex argillā glandēs¹ fundis et fervefacta iacula in

casās,² quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hac celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs testudinēsque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coepērunt.

At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum³ undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitudīne premerentur suaeque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent.

Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut cō diē maximus numerus hostiū vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant⁴ recessumque primīs ultimī nōn dabant.⁵

Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adactā et contingente vāllum, tertiā cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suosque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū⁶ vōcibusque hostēs, sī introire vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectis dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

1. *fervētēs . . . glandēs*: red-hot bullets of molded clay. 2. *casās*: the word *casa*, meaning *hut* or *shack*, is also the word for *house* in Italian and Spanish. 3. *cum*: introduces three concessive clauses. 4. *ut . . . cōnstipāverant*: as they had crowded themselves close to the rampart. 5. *recessumque . . . dabant*: and the rear did not give the van a chance to retire. 6. *nūtū*: why with signs?



CAESAR'S BULLET

Leaden slugs used by slingers often had on them the word *ferī*, *strike*. A few have been found inscribed, as this one is, with the name of the person for whom it was intended. **IMP** stands for *imperātor*, *victorious general*.

*Trajan's Column, Rome*

FIRST AID

The story of two brave rival centurions

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī primīs ordinibus appropinquārent,¹ T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant.

Ex his Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne, aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiis iudicābit."

Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quaeque pars hostiū cōnfertissima est vīsa, in eam irrumpit.

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur.

Mediocrī spatiō relictō, Pullō pilum in hostēs immittit atque unum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tela coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī² et verūtum³ in balteō dēfigitur. Avertit hic cāsus vāginam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.

20 Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit;
illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Vorēnus gladiō rem com-
minus gerit atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs paulum prōpellit;
dum cupidius instat, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit.
Huic rūsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō
25 incolumnēs, complūribus interfectis, summā cum laude sēsē
intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt.

Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit⁴
ut alter alteri inimicus auxiliō salūtique esset, neque dīiudicārī
posset uter utrī virtūte antefendus vidērētur.

1. quī . . . appropinquārent: *i.e.*, they were ready for promotion to the first rank of centurions. 2. scūtum Pullōnī: *Pullo's shield*; Pullōnī, dative of reference. 3. verūtum: *i.e.*, the dart that had pierced Pullo's shield struck the sword belt in such a way that the scabbard was pushed backward so that he could not easily draw his sword. 4. fortūna, utrumque versāvit: translate *the fortune of both changed*.

Cicero finally gets a dispatch through to Caesar

45. Quāto¹ erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō,
et maximē quod, magnā parte mīlitum cōfectā vulneribus, rēs
ad paucitatem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō¹ crēbriōrēs litterae
nūntiūque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa
5 in cōspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur.

Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō,
quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī
fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuādet
praemiis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō
10 illigātās effert² et, Gallus intēr Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne ver-
sātus, ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis
legiōnisque cognōscitur.

1. Quāto, tantō: (550). 2. Hās . . . effert: just how did he carry the letter?

The Story of Chapters 46-47

Caesar marches to the rescue and is joined by Crassus and Fabius with one legion each. Labienus fails to join him because of the approach of the Treveri.

A letter from Caesar brings hope of relief to Cicero

48. Caesar, cōnsiliō eius ¹ probātō, etsi opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs.

Ibi ex captivīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur; quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiis persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.

Hanc Graecīs ² cōscriptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad ammentum ¹⁰ dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; ³ hortātur ut pristinam virtutem retineat.

Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō ¹⁵ animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur; dēmpla ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum ⁴ procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

20

1. eius: *i.e.*, Labienus. 2. Graecis: why did Caesar use Greek letters instead of Roman? 3. affore: future infinitive of *adsum*. 4. incendiōrum: *i.e.*, Caesar burns buildings and crops as he advances.

The Gauls turn from the siege of Cicero's camp to attack Caesar

49. Galli, rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter milia LX.

Cicerō, datā facultāte, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit qui litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc ¹ admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar

allātis, suōs facit certiorēs eōsque ad dimicandum animō cōn-
firmat.

Posterō diē luce primā movet castra; et circiter milia pas-
sum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem magnam et rīvum
multitudinem hostium cōspiciātur. Erat magni periculi rēs
tantulis cōpiis iniquō locō dimicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne
liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē
celeritāte² existimābat. Cōsilit et quam acquissimō potest
locō castra commūnit, atque haec,³ etsi erant exigua per sē,
vix hominum milium septem,⁴ praesertim nullis cum impedi-
mentis, tamen angustiis viarum quam maximē potest⁵ contrahit,
eō cōsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat.⁶
Interim, speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dimissis, explōrat quō
commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

1. hunc: i.e., Caesar. 2. remittendum . . . celeritāte: translate *that he should slacken his speed*. 3. haec (castra): object of *contrahit*. 4. vix . . . septem: translate *accommodating scarcely 7,000 men (511)*. What was the full quota of a legion? 5. angustiis . . . potest: translate *by making the streets as narrow as possible*. 6. eō . . . veniat: *with this purpose, that he may become an object of supreme contempt to the enemy*.

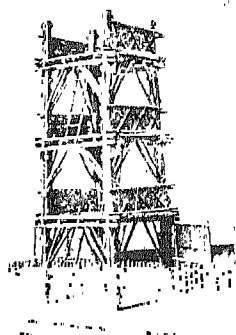
The story of Chapters 50-51

Caesar, by making a pretense of fear, lures the Gauls to attack him on his own ground. He takes them by surprise and routs them with great slaughter.

Caesar commends the gallant conduct of Cicero and his men

52. Longius prōsequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque inter-
cēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus, eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem
pervēnit.

Instītūtās turrēs, testudinēs mūitionēsque hostium ad-
mirātur; prōductā legiōne, cognōscit nōn decimum quemque¹
esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat
rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint ad-
ministrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat;



Museum of St. Germain, France

MODEL OF A TOWER

Caesar was surprised to find the enemy making use of towers and other fortifications similar to those of the Romans.

centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse 10 virtutem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognoverat.

Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē, cōtiōne habitā, rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cō- 15 sōlātur et cōfirmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritatē lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ² ferendum ³ docet, quod, beneficiō dēōrum immortālium et virtūtē eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque 20 hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquiātur.

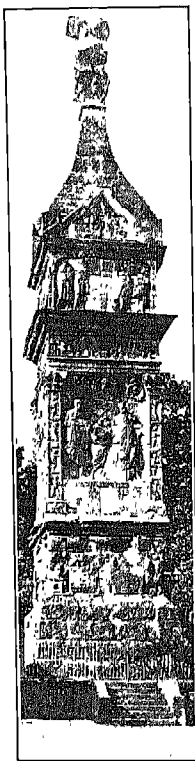
1. nōn . . . quemque: not one in ten. 2. hōc . . . animō: with greater equanimity on this account.
3. ferendum (esse): the subject is quod . . . acceptum, a substantive clause of fact (594).

The story of Chapters 53-58

Although Caesar holds in submission a great part of Gaul, there is still a deep undercurrent of insubordination. He therefore decides to spend the winter with his troops.

The Treveri under Indutiomarus solicit other states to join them in collecting armed forces to make an attack on the camp of Labienus. Informed of this, Labienus in a well fortified camp awaits the attack while giving out the impression of great fear. Indutiomarus, thus lured on, approaches the Roman camp with insults and challenges to battle. The Roman cavalry makes a sudden rush from the camp with orders to kill Indutiomarus first of all. They bring his head back into camp. Their leader lost, the Gauls are routed and return home. Caesar closes the story with the comment that after this Gaul was more peaceful.

Detailed reports of Caesar's success in the exciting campaign of 54 B.C. must have been sent to Rome. Marcus Cicero writes to Trebatius, one of Caesar's staff: "I am not surprised at your not having written anything to me since you are in the midst of such exciting events. . . . I greatly fear that you will freeze in your winter quarters. I advise you to keep a



Courtesy of German Tourist
Information Office

A ROMAN SEPUL- CHRAL MONUMENT

This monument erected by the Romans is still standing at Trier in what was the country of the Treveri.

good fire going since there is a shortage of military cloaks, yet I hear that you are having a hot enough time there, news which makes me greatly fear for you."

462. COMPREHENSION LIBER V

1. What error did Caesar make in his statements concerning the mines and trees in Britain? Account for this. 2. How nearly accurate was Caesar's idea of the geography of Britain? 3. What was an important result of the Roman invasion of Britain?

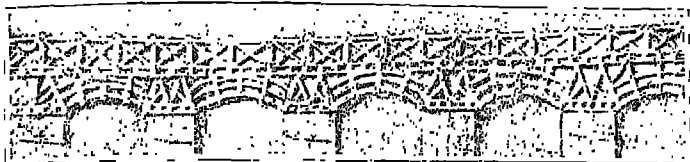
4. How did Sabinus force Cotta to take advice from the enemy? 5. Why were the soldiers not in condition to start on an expedition? 6. What kind of a commander was Cicero? Give reasons for your answer. 7. How did Cicero's reply to the Nervii show him to be a true Roman? 8. How did the Nervii learn Roman engineering methods? Describe in detail their method of attack.

9. Tell the story of Pullo and Vorenus. 10. Why did Caesar insert this story in his narrative? 11. How did Cicero get a letter through to Caesar? 12. How was Caesar's reply delivered to Cicero? 13. Why did he write in Greek? 14. What appreciation did Caesar show of the brave defense of the camp by Cicero and his men? 15. What effect do you think this had upon the soldiers' attitude toward Caesar? 16. Give examples from Liber V and preceding books which set forth the Roman ideal of courage, fortitūdō.

463. VERBA — LIBER V

Required Vocabulary: addō, admodum, aeger, aequus, augeō, circumspiciō, dētrimentum, intēreō, interior, laus, mediocris, metus, obsideō, obsidiō, occidō, pār, pecus, praesertim, prīdiē, prōnūntiō, recūsō, terreō, ultimus.

Word Study. Define the following words derived from *carō*: *carnage*, *carnal*, *carnelian*, *carnation*, *carnival*, *carnivorous*, *incarnate*.



Trasimene Bridge, Rome

ROMAN BRIDGE

Caesar built a bridge across the Rhine before each of his expeditions into Germany, although he usually crossed streams over pontoon bridges. He wished to impress the Germans with the Romans' superior knowledge of scientific method. He destroyed the first bridge but left the second, except the part that touched the east bank, standing as a warning. Both bridges were built in a few days and were not like the usual massive structures characteristic of Roman architecture.

LIBER SEXTUS

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

53 B.C.

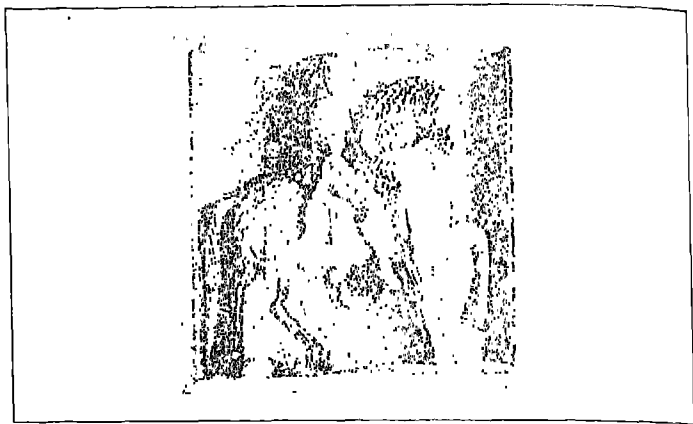
The story of Chapters 1-8

Caesar adds three more legions to his forces in the winter of 53 B.C. because he sees signs of a more serious revolt. He plans for an earlier campaign than usual because the rebellion is increasing, especially among the Treveri and Nervii, together with their allies, and the Germans on this side of the Rhine. He marches against the Nervii, devastates their territory, and receives their surrender, after which he goes into winter quarters.

In the spring his first expedition is against the Senones, who with the Carnutes surrender without a struggle. Caesar now turns to the Treveri and their leader, Ambiorix, against whom he sends Labienus. Caesar himself forces their allies, the Menapii, to surrender and sends reinforcements to Labienus. The latter leads the Treveri to believe that he is retiring and, when they follow him, he turns and defeats them. Germans, coming to the aid of the Treveri, return home.

Caesar crosses the Rhine. The Ubii sue for peace

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Trêverôs vênit, duâbus dē causis Rhênum trãsire cōstituit; quârûm ûna erat quod Germânî auxilia contrâ sê Trêverîs miserant, altera, nē ad eôs Ambiorix¹ receptum habêret. His cōstitûtis rêbus, paulum



Copy in Museum of St. Germain, France

A UBIAN CAVALRYMAN

This relief of a mounted soldier is carved on his tombstone. An inscription below says that he was a Ubian who had served in the army for twelve years and was thirty-five years of age.

5 *suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne,*² *magnō militum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur,*³ *reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit.*

10 *Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in deditiōnem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā*⁴ *ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitatē in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius*
15 *obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar*⁵ *causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirīt.*

1. *Ambiorix*: the previous year, through the treachery of Ambiorix, the Roman army had suffered the most serious loss incurred during the whole Gallic War. For this defeat Caesar had vowed vengeance. (V, *The story of Chapters 32-39.*)

2. *Nōtā . . . ratiōne*: since the plan (of such a bridge) was familiar and had been

tried. Caesar had bridged the Rhine in 55 B.C.; IV, 17. 3. *nē . . . orerētur*: that no uprising suddenly originate from them. 4. *pūrgandī . . . causā*: for the purpose of excusing themselves; *suī*: (486). 5. Caesar: the subject of *reperit*; note that it is here incorporated in an ablative absolute.

The Suebi mass their forces in the forests

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior¹ Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque eīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cognitīs rēbus, rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant⁵ suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūci; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque² apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

Illi imperāta faciunt et, paucīs diēbus intermissīs, referunt: 10

Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint,³ cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiis, quās coēgissent,⁴ penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi infīnitā magnitūdine, quae appellātur Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et, prō nātivō mūrō obiectam, Cheruscōs¹⁵ ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Cheruscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.

1. fit, certior: Caesar is the subject understood. 2. quaeque: i.e., quae + que; que connects mittant and cognōscant. 3. vēnerint: what is the tense? Why? 4. coēgissent: why is this tense used (623)?

Factions among the Gauls

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum¹ esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō² differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum princīpēs sunt quī summam auctōri-

tātem eōrum iūdiō ³ habere existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōsiliōrumque redeat.

Idque eius rei causā ⁴ antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex
 10 plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxili ⁵ egēret; suōs enim quisque op-
 primī et circumveniri nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ⁶ illam
 inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā
 tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitātēs divīsaē sunt in duās partēs.

1. allēnum: *out of place*. 2. quō: *how*; ablative of respect. 3. eōrum iūdiō: *in their judgment*. 4. eius . . . causā: *for this purpose*; explained by the nē . . . egēret clause. 5. auxili: genitive with egēret. 6. sī faciat: (608).

Caesar supports the Aeduan faction in its struggle for supremacy

12. Cum ¹ Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prī-
 cipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī ² cum per sē minus
 valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Aeduīs
 magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ario-
 15 vistum sibi adiūxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs ³ pollicitā-
 tiōnibusque perdūxerant.

Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis, ⁴ atque omnī nōbi-
 litāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ⁵ ut
 magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēs-
 10 que ab eis prīncipum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent
 nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōsiliī initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī
 per vim occupātam possidērent Galliacque tōtius prīncipātum
 obtinērent. Quā necessitatē adductus Diviciācus auxili petendi
 causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus, infectā rē, ⁶ redierat.

15 Adventū Caesaris factā commūtatiōne ⁷ rērum, obsidibus
 Aeduīs redditis, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtis, novīs per Caesarem
 comparātis, quod ei quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant
 meliōre condiciōne ⁸ atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūti vidēbant,
 reliquīs rēbus ⁹ eōrum grātiā dignitatēque amplificatā, Sēquanī
 20 prīncipātum dīmiserant.

In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre
 apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbatur, ¹⁰ ei quī propter veterēs

inimicitias nullō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientelam dicābant.¹¹ Hōs illi diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctoritātem tenēbant. Eō²⁵ tum statū rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

1. Cum: at the time when; why indicative (596)? 2. Hi: the latter. 3. magnis iactūris: through great sacrifices. 4. secundis: what two meanings of secundus are found in this chapter? 5. tantum . . . antecesserant: they had so far outstripped them in power. 6. infectā rē: translate with his purpose not accomplished. 7. commutātiōne: i.e., through Caesar's defeat of Ariovistus. See p. 253. 8. condiciōne: ablative with ūti, enjoyed. 9. reliquīs rēbus: in other respects. 10. quōs . . . intellegēbātur: translate since it was evident that these stood equally well in Caesar's favor. 11. Rēmīs . . . dicābant: translate they proclaimed themselves dependencies of the Remi.

Classes of society, common people, knights, and Druids

Caesar now interrupts his narrative of the war to give some observations concerning his impressions of the Gauls and Germans. Caesar has little to tell in the way of achievements this year, and this may account for his including this description here. It may be, too, that because he has a scholar's interest in new facts, he wishes to pass them on to the Romans. At any rate, future generations have found his account a valuable source of information on the customs of the ancient Gauls and Germans.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numero¹ atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nulli adhībētur cōsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō² aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōnobilibus; quibus³ in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs³ in⁴ servōs.

Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum,⁶ alterum equitum. Illi⁶ rēbus divinis intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur;⁶ ad hōs magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinac causā concurrīt, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversis pūblicis privātisque cōstituunt, et, si quod⁷ est facinus admissum, si

caedēs facta, si dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem⁸
 15 dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; si quī aut privātus
 aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt.⁹

Haec poena apud cōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est inter-
 dictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs
 omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē
 20 quid ex contāgiōne incommodi¹⁰ accipiant, neque hīs petentibus
 iūs redditur neque honōs ullus communicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praestāt ūnus, quī summam
 inter cōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut, si quī ex reliquīs
 excellit dignitātē, succēdit, aut, si sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō
 25 druidum, nōn numquam etiā armīs, dē principātū contendunt.
 Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius
 Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs
 undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs
 iūdicīisque pārent. Disciplina¹¹ in Britanniā reperta atque
 30 inde in Galliam trāslāta esse existimātur, et nunc quī diligentius
 eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā pro-
 ficiscuntur.

1. aliquō, numerō: of any importance. 2. aere aliēnō: debt. 3. quibus, dominis: datives of possession with sunt. 4. in: over. 5. druidum: of Druids; many huge stones found in Brittany have been thought by some to have been connected with the Druid worship. Caesar is the best source of information on Druidism. 6. Illi . . . interpretantur: the former are in charge of religious observances, regulate sacrifices, public and private, and settle religious controversies. 7. si quod: if any. 8. idem: they likewise (561, d). 9. si quī . . . interdicunt: if any person or people does not stand by this decree of theirs, they forbid him to participate in religious ceremonies. 10. incommodi: modifies quid; translate some harm. 11. Disciplina: religious system (of the Druids); the statement made here is open to question.

Exemptions granted to Druids. Their teachings

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, militiae vacatiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī praemiis¹ et suā sponte multī in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.



IN THE LAND OF THE DRUIDS

The remains of huge stone structures found in Brittany are thought to have been connected with the worship of a prehistoric people.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ² ēdiscere ³ dicuntur. Itaque 5 annōs nōn nulli vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, ⁴ cum ⁵ in reliquīs ferē rēbus, publicis privāisque ratiōnibus, Gracīs litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod ⁶ neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint, neque cōs qui discunt litteris cōn-¹⁰ fisōs minus memoriae studēre; ⁷ quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ⁸ ac memoriam remittant.

In primīs hoc volunt persuādere, ⁹ nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad¹⁵ virtutem excitārī ¹⁰ putant, metū mortis neglētō. Multa practereā dē sīderibus atque cōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē dēcōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

1. Tantis . . . praemiis: *i.e.*, exemption from civil and military duties. 2. Magnum . . . versuum: why do they learn poetry instead of prose? 3. ēdiscere: translate *commit to memory*. 4. ea . . . mandāre: to put these (teachings) into writing. 5. cum: concessive. 6. quod: the use of the subjunctive with quod

shows that the reason given is not the author's (530, *av*). 7. *velint . . . studēre*: and they do not wish those who are learning, by trusting to written forms, to give less attention to the memory. 8. *perdiscendō*: in what way do perdiscō and ēdiscō differ from discō in meaning? 9. *persuādēre*: to teach. 10. *excitārī*: *hominēs* understood is the subject.

The knights

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Illi, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsi iniuriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

Superstition and sacrifices of the Gauls

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī¹ sunt affecti graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs² immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque³ ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen placārī arbitrantur; publicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta⁴ sacrificia.

10. Alii immāni magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis, circumventi flammā exanimantur hominēs.

Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsi grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

1. quī: (ei) quī. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is often omitted (560, *b*).
2. prō . . . hominēs: *human beings as sacrifices*; *hominēs* is the object of *immolant* and of *immolātūrōs*.
3. administrisque: (as) *ministers*.
4. habent institūta: this use of *habēō* with the perfect participle has the force of a perfect or past perfect tense with emphasis on the existing state of affairs.



*Villa Farnesina,
Rome*

*From a painting by
Peruzzi*

MERCURY AND MARS

Note the winged cap, *petasus*, and the wand, *cādūceus*. Wings are on the god's ankles instead of being attached to sandals, as is often pictured.

The five gods of the Gauls

17. Deōrum¹ maximē Mercurium² colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,³ hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem⁴ et Mārtē et Iovem et Minervam.

Dē hīs candem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem:⁵ Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artifi-ciōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere.

Huic, cum proeliō dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēpe-¹⁰ rint⁵ plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālīa capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multis in civitātibus hārum rērum extrūctōs tumulōs locis cōnsecrātis cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religi-ōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret,⁶ gra-¹⁵ vissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

1. *Deōrum*: many crude images of Gallic gods have been found in France and are to be seen in museums in the provinces. 2. *Mercurium*: *Mercury*, the Roman



Street of Abundance, Pompeii

MERCURY

This Mercury on the outside wall of a house in Pompeii represents the typical Roman Mercury as the god of gain. Note the purse in his hand.

name which Caesar gave to the Gallic god who, as he thought, corresponded to the Roman god of that name. He follows this practice with all the Gallic gods whom he mentions. 3. *ferunt*: they call. 4. *Apollinem*: object of *colunt* understood. 5. *cēperint*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in implied indirect discourse. 6. *ut . . . audēret*: that anyone disregarding religious scruples dared to hide at his house the things which had been captured or to take away what had been placed (on the mound of booty).

Origin of the Gauls' unusual customs

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte patre¹ prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem 5 diēs subsequātur.²

In reliquīs vitae institūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerilī aetate in publicō in cōspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.³

1. ab Dīte patre: from Father Dis, later known as Pluto, the god of darkness.

2. ut . . . subsequātur: instead of reckoning time by days, the Gauls reckoned

it by nights. 3. *filiumque . . . dūcunt*: and they consider it disgraceful for a son of youthful age to appear in public in the presence (sight) of his father; a practice very unlike that of the Romans.

Gallic marriages and funerals

19. Virī,¹ quantās pecūniās² ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant.³ Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur;⁴ uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. 5

Virī in⁶ uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent⁶ et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatās 10 interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvis cordī⁷ fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriā⁸ servī et clientēs quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstis⁹ fūnebris 15 cōfectis, unā cremābantur.

1. Virī: *their men*, translate *husbands*; this corresponds to the provincial use of *my man* for *husband*. 2. pecūniās: *property*; what is the meaning of the root of this word? 3. aestimātiōne . . . commūnicant: *they make a calculation and add to the dowry an equal amount*. 4. coniūctim . . . servantur: *a joint account is kept and the income saved*. 5. in: has what meaning here? The Roman head of the house also had the power of life and death over his family. 6. dē uxōribus . . . habent: *they examine the wives according to the way they deal with slaves; i.e., by torture*. 7. vīvis cordī: translate *dear to them when alive*. 8. paulō . . . memoriā: translate *a little before the present time*. 9. iūstis: *regular*. How does the word get this meaning?

News censored. Freedom of speech forbidden

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem pūblicā administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,¹ sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magis-

trātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerariōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cōsiliū capere cognitum est.

Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant,² quaeque esse ex ūsū iūdicāverunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per³ conciliū loquī nōn concēditur.

1. Quae . . . sānctum: the states which are thought to conduct their public affairs unusually well have it enacted by law; explained by uti . . . commūnicet. 2. Magistrātūs . . . occultant; the magistrates conceal what seems (best). 3. per: al.

The Germans, their religion and manner of living

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam;¹ reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēperunt.²

Vita omnis in venātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis labōrī ac dūritiae student.³



Historical Museum, Frankfurt-on-the-Main, Germany
Courtesy of German Tourist Information Office

A GERMAN JUNO AND JUPITER

Although Caesar says that the Germans had no gods except those whom they could see, other gods may have come in under the influence of the Romans, or this relief may be wrongly named.

1. *Sōlem . . . Lūnam*: how do their gods differ from the Gallic gods? For their superstition about the moon see p. 253. 2. *reliquōs . . . accēperunt*: translate *they have not even heard of the others*. A hundred years later Tacitus, a Roman historian, in his *Dē Germāniā* says that Mercury was their chief god and names Hercules, Mars, and Isis as other divinities. 3. *ā . . . student*: translate *from childhood they are inured to labor and hardship*.

Agriculture among the early Germans

22. *Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquā agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; ¹ sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coīerunt, quantum et quō locō visum est agrī attribuunt, ² atque annō post aliō ³ trānsire cōgunt.*

Eius rei multās ⁴ afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōnsuetūdine captī ⁵ studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā ⁶ commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs ⁷ possessiōnibus expellant; nē accurātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedifi- ¹⁰ cent; nē qua ⁸ oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, ⁹ cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequārī videat.

1. *propriōs*: of his own. In Caesar's day the Germans were nomads. 2. in *annōs . . . attribuunt*: distribute for a year at a time to the clans and to bands of kinsmen and those who have united (for the purpose), as much ground and in whatever place seems best. 3. *aliō*: an adverb. 4. *multās*: what five reasons are given? 5. *nē . . . captī*: that, pleased with a permanent mode of life, they may not. 6. *agricultūrā*: for agriculture; an ablative of price (548). 7. *humiliōrēs*: object of expellant. 8. *qua*: any; modifies cupiditās. 9. *ut . . . contineant*: so that they may hold the common people through contentment (of mind).



Museum at Sens, France

ANCIENT BASKETS AND TUBS

The German frontiers, magistrates, brigandage, treason, hospitality

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātis finibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agris finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope audēre cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiorēs arbitrantur, 5 repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō.

Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint et vitae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrō- 10 versiāsque minuunt.

Latrōcinia nūllam habent¹ infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea² iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis³ ex prīncipibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequi velint pro- 15 fiteantur,⁴ cōsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur.⁵

20 Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent, sāctōs⁶ habent hisque omnium domūs patent victusque communicātur.

1. habent: *regard*. 2. ea: refers to latrōcinia and is the subject of fieri; translate *these raids are engaged in*. 3. quis: the indefinite pronoun *anyone*. 4. sē . . . profiteantur: *i.e.*, he makes this statement, "I will be leader, let those volunteer who wish to follow." 5. omniumque . . . dērogātur: translate *confidence is denied them afterwards in all matters*. 6. sāctōs: *inviolate*; the protection of a guest was regarded by many primitive peoples as a sacred obligation.

The story of Chapter 24

Caesar says that although the Gauls were originally superior to the Germans, because of their nearness to the Roman province, they have become softened through contact with civilization, its vices and luxuries.

Chapters 25-28

There is a question as to whether Caesar wrote these chapters describing the Hercynian forest and its strange animals. They were probably added later.

The story of Chapters 29-37

Caesar now returns to his story of his expedition into Germany in pursuit of the Suebi. He cuts down the end of the bridge on the German side, leaves a garrison to guard the Gallic side, and starts in pursuit of Ambiorix and the Eburones, who had ambushed and annihilated the forces of Sabinus and Cotta in the preceding year. He captures all the possessions of Ambiorix, but the chieftain himself escapes into the forest of the Ardennes. His followers are scattered and find refuge in inaccessible places.

Caesar leaves Quintus Tullius Cicero with one legion in charge of the baggage at Atuatuca, a town near the center of the territory of the Eburones, while he himself sets out against Ambiorix. He announces that he will be back in seven days. Because of the difficulties and dangers that his men would encounter in unknown woods and swamps, he invites neighboring tribes to help lay waste the land of the Eburones. The Sugambri, a German tribe across the Rhine, join the Gauls in these raids, but hearing of the baggage stored at Atuatuca, eager for booty, they hasten toward that place.

Although Caesar has given orders that no one is to leave camp, Cicero on the seventh day allows five cohorts and many camp followers to go out foraging. The Sugambri arrive in their absence and make a sudden attack upon the camp. Wild panic ensues but the day is saved by the heroism of Publius Sextius Baculus.

Publius Sextius Baculus gets honorable mention

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus,¹ quī primum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat,² cuius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, ac diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat.

Hic diffusus suae atque omnium salutī inermis ex tabernaculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō rem esse discrimine;³ capit arma ā proximis atque in portā cōsistit. Cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statiōe erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent.

Relinquit animus Sextium, gravibus acceptis vulneribus;



Trajan's Column, Rome

A BRAVE MAN FALLS

A wounded soldier is being carried to safety by his comrade.

10 aegrē per manūs trāditus servātur.⁴ Hōc spatiō interpositō,⁵
reliqūi sēsē cōfirmant tantum ut in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere
audeant speciemque dēlēsōrum praebeant.

1. **P. Sextius Baculus:** He had been seriously wounded in the battle of the Nervii; II, 25. 2. **quī . . . dūxerat:** *who had been under Caesar first centurion.* 3. **in . . . discrimine:** *translate the situation had reached a crisis.* 4. **relinquit . . . servātur:** Sextius fainted and was passed from hand to hand to safety. 5. **hōc . . . interpositō:** this respite gave the others confidence to return to their places.

The story of Chapters 39-44

Inspired by the bravery of Baculus, the soldiers rally. The Sugambri despair of taking the camp but attack and inflict severe losses upon the foragers who, having heard the confusion, try to return to camp. Caesar arrives that night and finds the camp in a state of panic, which is soon quieted by his presence. He then continues his devastation of the homes and crops of the Eburones, so that famine may complete the work of the army.

Meanwhile, Ambiorix continues to elude the closely pursuing horsemen. Caesar gives up the pursuit, puts his army into winter quarters in three places, and returns to Italy to hold court. The campaign of this year was Caesar's least successful venture. He must have been greatly disappointed in his failure to capture Ambiorix.

464.

COMPREHENSION — LIBER VI

1. What two reasons impelled Caesar to invade Germany a second time?
2. Of what advantage to the Romans was the factional strife of the Gauls?
3. What was the Druid teaching with respect to memorization and to immortality?
4. What gods did the Gauls have corresponding to those of the Romans?
5. Why did the Gauls reckon time by nights instead of by days?
6. Why did Gallic magistrates censor all rumors concerning public affairs?
7. Why were the early Germans not permitted to own land?
8. Why did Caesar interrupt his narrative of the war to tell of the customs of the people?
9. Why was Sextius Baculus given honorable mention?
10. How did the results of the campaign of 53 B.C. compare with those of other years?

465.

VERBA — LIBER VI

Required Vocabulary: adhibeō, aequō, caedēs, cernō, communicō, exerceō, exstruō, factiō, finiō, firmus, humilis, iūrō, iustus, minuō, mūnus, parcō, parum, pendō, plēbs, plērūque, possideō, prōdō, quoniam, regō, religiō, repente, sicut, tueor, vulgus.

Word Study. Define the following words, showing by your definition that they are related to *cor*: *accord, concord, cordial, core, discordant, encourage, recorder.*

Give Latin words formed from the present or the perfect stem of *regō* with at least five different suffixes; with five different prefixes. Give the meaning of each word thus formed, and, if possible, an English derivative.

Farm is derived from *firmus*, *firm* or *fixed*. It originally meant a piece of land held under lease for cultivation for which a *fixed* sum was paid. From this it has come to mean any tract of land devoted to agriculture. Define on the basis of their derivation: *affirmative, confirm, firmament, infirmary, infirmity.*



National Museum, Rome

A ROMAN WINGED VICTORY

This lovely winged figure, represented as Victory carrying a helmet, was part of the decoration on the wall of a Roman house.

LIBER SEPTIMUS

THE DEFEAT OF THE UNITED GAULS UNDER VERCINGETORIX 52 B.C.

The Gauls unite in a final struggle for freedom

1. QUIETĀ Galliā,¹ Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdī² caede; dē senātūsque cōsultō³ certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dilēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit.

Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Ad-⁵dunt ipsī et affingunt rūmōribus Gallī, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō⁴ mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dis-sēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse.

Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent, liberior atque audācius dē bellō cōsilia¹⁰ inīre incipiunt. Indictis inter sē principēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis⁵ morte; hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere posse dēmōstrant; miserantur cōmūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac prae-miīs dēposcunt quī belli initium faciant et suī capitis periculō¹⁵ Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōsilia effe-rantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū intercludātur:

Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant, absente imperātōre, ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque imperātor sine praesidiō²⁰ ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō in aciē praestāre interficī⁶ quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam libertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

1. QUIETĀ Galliā: the peace was only on the surface. All Gaul had been conquered, but its spirit had not been broken. The only hope of throwing off the yoke

of Rome was in union under a capable leader. 2. **Clōdī**: Clodius, a follower of Caesar, was murdered in 52 B.C. by gangsters under Milo, a supporter of Pompey. The Gauls hoped the disturbed condition of affairs at Rome would distract Caesar's attention. 3. **dē . . . cōsultō**: the substance of this decree of the senate is given in the *ut* clause, which says that all the men of military age (*iūniōrēs*, between the ages of 17 and 46) should enlist (take the oath). 4. **urbānō**: *i.e.*, Rome. 5. **Accōnis**: Acco, a leader of the rebellion of the Senones in 53 B.C., had been put to death by Caesar. 6. **in . . . interficī**: *it is better to be killed in line of battle (they said)*.

The story of Chapters 2-3

The Carnutes volunteer to take the initiative in the revolt. The other states with solemn ceremonies pledge their support and fidelity.

The Carnutes start the rebellion by the massacre of one of Caesar's officers and some Roman traders at Cenabum (*Orleans*). The news of this is spread by the Gallic custom of shouting from field to field and tribe to tribe. Caesar says, "Although the murder occurred at sunrise, the news had travelled by nightfall to the land of the Arverni, a distance of one hundred and sixty miles."

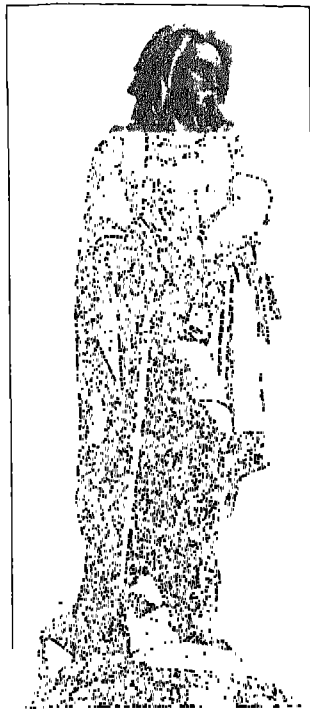
Vercingetorix, a brave and able leader, instigates a general revolt

4. *Simili ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtillī filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater principātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā cīvitatē erat interfectus, convocātis suis clientibus, facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōsiliō, ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fortunam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dilēctum gentium ac perditōrum.*

10 *Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex cīvitatē ad suam sententiam perducit; hortātur ut communis libertātis causā arma capiant, magnisque coāctis cōpiis, adversariōs suos, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitatē. Rēx ab suis appellātur. Dimittit quōqueversus¹ lēgatiōnēs; obtes-*
15 *tātur ut in fidē maneant.*

Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs,

Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andēs reliquōsque omnēs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte, omnibus hīs civitātibus obsidēs imperat,²⁰ certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domī quodque ante tempus efficiat² cōstituit; in primīs equitātūi studet.²⁵



Statue by F. Millet

Courtesy of George R. Swain

VERCINGETORIX

On the site of ancient Alesia stands this statue of a national hero, inspired by the vision of a free Gaul "whose unanimity not even the world can resist."

Summae diligentiae summam imperī sevērītātē addit; magnitudīne supplicī dubitantēs cōgit: Nam, maiōre commissō dēlictō, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs ne-³⁰ cat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs, domum remittit ut sint reliquīs documentō³ et magnitudīne poenae perterreant aliōs.

35

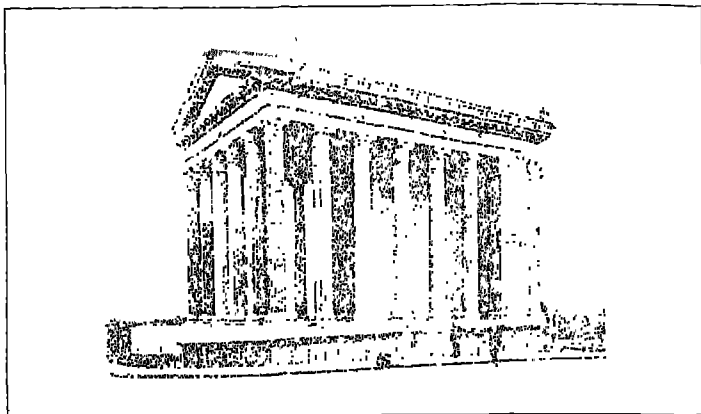
1. quōqueversus: in every direction.

2. armōrum . . . efficiat: how large a quantity of arms each state should prepare at home and before what time. 3. ut . . . documentō: that they might be an example to the rest.

The story of Chapters 5-14

The Bituriges, attacked by Vercingetorix, surrender and join the uprising. The revolt continues to spread. A large force of the enemy under Lucetius starts for the Province.

Caesar leaves Italy, rushes to Narbo, and establishes new garrisons for the protection of the Province. Then he crosses the Cevennes Mountains through deep snow and attacks the Arverni, to whose rescue Vercingetorix comes. Caesar, leaving Decimus



Vienne, France

A ROMAN TEMPLE IN THE PROVINCE

Caesar waited for reinforcements at **Vienna** (*Vienne*), where this temple of the first century A.D., dedicated to Augustus and Livia, still stands.

Brutus to raid the country of the Arverni, hastens to Vienne for cavalry reinforcements, and from there to his two legions among the Lingones.

When Vercingetorix hears this, he attacks Gorgobina, a town of the Boii. Caesar sets out to the relief of the town and en route captures Vellaunodunum, burns Cenabum, and receives the surrender of Noviodunum (*Nevers*). From there he marches toward Avaricum (*Bourges*), the largest and best fortified town of the Bituriges. Vercingetorix calls a council and urges the Gauls not to attempt to meet the Romans in open battle but to burn their towns and supplies and by this means starve and wear out the enemy.

The Bituriges burn all their towns except beautiful Avaricum

15. Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā¹ probātā, ūnō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. In omnibus partibus incendia cōspiciuntur; quae etsī magnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant, tamen hoc sibi sōlāci prōpōnēbant, quod sē, prope 5 explōrātā victōriā,² celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōfidēbant.

Dēliberātūr dē Avaricō³ in commūnī conciliō, incendi placeat an dēfendi.⁴ Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīgēs,⁵

nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius Galliae urbem, quae praesidiō et ōrnāmētō sit civitatī, suis manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē loci nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus¹⁰ partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et per-angustum aditum.

Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingetorige, post concēdente⁶ et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

15

1. hāc sententiā: refers to the proposal made by Vercingetorix at the council. 2. prope . . . victōriā: *that with victory almost assured*. 3. Avaricō: Avaricum is modern Bourges; find it on a map of France. 4. incendi . . . dēfēdi: translate *whether it seems best to burn, or defend (Avaricum)*. 5. Prōcumbunt . . . Biturīgēs: *the Bituriges throw themselves at the feet of all the Gauls (begging)*; Gallis, dative of reference. 6. dissuādente . . . concēdente: this yielding was a fatal error on the part of Vercingetorix; the capture of this town with its stores saved the Romans from starvation and lost the war for the Gauls.

The story of Chapters 16-24 and part of 25

Caesar, advancing to Avaricum, is followed and harassed by Vercingetorix, who establishes his camp sixteen miles away. Although the Boii and the Aeduans fail to furnish the Romans with the supplies promised, Caesar begins the siege of Avaricum. The soldiers are without food. "Yet," says Caesar, "no word was heard unworthy of the majesty of the Roman people and their former victories." Caesar suggests that they retire, but the starving army refuses to incur the disgrace of abandoning the siege unfinished.

Vercingetorix draws near Avaricum and diverts Caesar from the siege. Caesar finds him so strongly established on a hill surrounded by a marsh that he does not risk an encounter, but returns to the siege. The Gauls throw their whole strength and ingenuity into the defense of Avaricum. Their walls are so constructed as to withstand battering-ram and fire. They make a sally, setting Caesar's agger on fire with great danger to his siegeworks.

An example cited of the bravery of the Gauls

25. Cum in omnibus locis, cōsumptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pugnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur, eō magis, quod deustōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant nec

facile adire apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, semperque
 sipsī recentēs¹ defessīs succēderent omnemque Galliae salutem
 in illō vēstigiō temporis positam arbitrārentur, accidit, inspec-
 tantibus nobīs,² quod dignum memoriā visum³ praetereundum
 nōn existimāvimus.

Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis
 10 trāditās glēbās⁴ in ignem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne⁵
 ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex
 proximīs ūnus iacentem trāsgressus⁶ eōdem illō mūnere fungē-
 bātur; eādem ratiōne, ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō, suc-
 cessit tertius, et tertiō quārtus, nec prius ille est ā prōpugnātōribus
 15 vacuus relictus locus quam, restinctō aggere atque omni ex
 parte summōtis hostibus, finis est pugnandī factus.⁷

1. recentēs: those who were fresh; the Gauls, implied in ipsī. 2. nobīs: a personal touch which shows Caesar's admiration for bravery even in an enemy. 3. quod . . . visum: (a thing) which (as it) seemed worthy of memory. 4. per . . . glēbās: balls of suet and pitch, passed along by hand. 5. scorpiōne: the Roman machine gun, a catapult for throwing large arrows and darts. 6. Hunc . . . trāsgressus: one of those standing near stepped over the one who had fallen. 7. prius . . . quam . . . factus: for the indicative, see 598.

The story of Chapters 26-50

Avaricum finally falls after a courageous and determined defense. Only eight hundred of the forty thousand inhabitants reach the camp of Vercingetorix in safety. The loss of Avaricum is a heavy blow to the Gauls, but Vercingetorix undaunted calls a council. With youthful enthusiasm and intense patriotism he inspires the Gauls with his belief that, "Gaul united can resist the whole world."

The capture of Avaricum gives Caesar an abundant supply of provisions and saves his army from starvation. This, together with the approach of spring, leads Caesar to continue the campaign with renewed vigor. Labienus is sent north with four legions against the Senones and Parisii. Caesar moves south with six legions and fortifies two camps near Gergovia. Vercingetorix hastens to encamp on the hill opposite the town.

Caesar is called away by a report that some of the Aeduans, who pose as loyal supporters, are inciting their people to join the "League of the Gauls." He meets with them and persuades them to remain loyal to the Romans and to turn their allegiance to him. Thus, temporarily he checks their revolt.

Returning to Gergovia in time to save his two camps, which had been attacked by the Gauls, Caesar realizes that there is danger of a general Gallic uprising and therefore plans to retire from Gergovia and unite his forces with those of Labienus.

In order to withdraw without giving an appearance of flight, Caesar makes a surprise attack and captures three camps of the enemy. Having accomplished his purpose, he orders his soldiers to retreat, but, excited by victory, they push on and even climb upon the enemies' walls.

Caesar pauses in his narrative to tell the following story :

The brave self-sacrifice of Marcus Petronius

50. M. Petrōnius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excidere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipulāribus suis quī illum secūtī erant :

"Quoniam," inquit, "mē ūnā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditatē glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs, datā facultāte, vōbīs cōnsulite."

Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit, duōbusque interfectis, reliquōs ā portā paulum summōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suis : 10

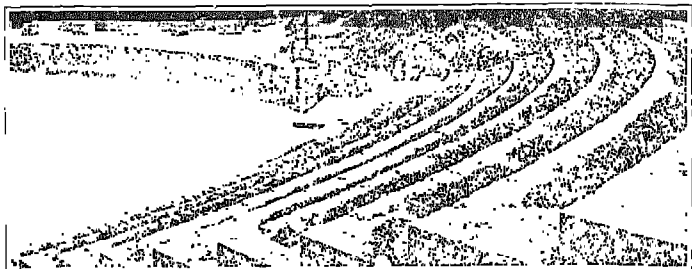
"Frūstrā," inquit, "meae vitae subvenire cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abite, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite."

Ita pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suis salūtī fuit.

The story of Chapters 51-62

In this engagement the Romans lose forty-six officers and seven hundred men. The next day Caesar reviews his troops and in an address criticizes their disobedience. He mingles equal praise with just criticism, saying that obedience and self-restraint are as essential qualities of a soldier as is bravery.

The withdrawal from Gergovia was the only serious failure that the forces led by Caesar in person suffered during the war. After his evacuation of Gergovia, Caesar withdraws to the country of the Aeduians, who now revolt and join Vercingetorix in a final struggle to drive the Romans from Gaul. They burn the town of Noviodunum, where Caesar had concentrated



Rue Monge, Paris

ROMAN ARENA IN PARIS

This reminder of the Roman occupation of Gaul perpetuates the name of the ancient capital of the Parisii, Lutecia. It is called the *Arène Lutèce*.

supplies, hostages, and baggage. When he learns of this, Caesar advances north at full speed and moves on to the territory of the Senones.

In the meantime, Labienus advances to capture Lutecia (*Paris*), a town of the Parisii on an island in the River Seine. With indomitable spirit the Parisii cut down the bridge and burn their town rather than have it fall into the hands of the Romans.

Labienus now learns of Caesar's retirement from Gergovia and of the defection of the Aeduans. He himself, beset by the Parisii and the Bellovaci, wins a decisive victory but, because of the prospect of a general Gallic uprising, he decides to join Caesar.

All Gaul in revolt. Vercingetorix is made commander-in-chief

63. Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cognitā, bellum augētur. Lēgatiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent,¹ ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs² dēposuerat, hōrum supplicio dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorige Aeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī communicet. Rē impetrātā, contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur, et, rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur.

Eōdem conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitudinis suffrāgijs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum³ omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperātōrem.

Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcīliam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutris auxilia mitterent.

Magnō dolōre Aeduī serunt sē dēiectōs principātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtatiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requirunt, neque tamen, susceptō bellō, suum cōsiliū ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae spei⁴ adulēscentēs, Eporēdorix et Viridomārus, Vercingetorigī pārent.

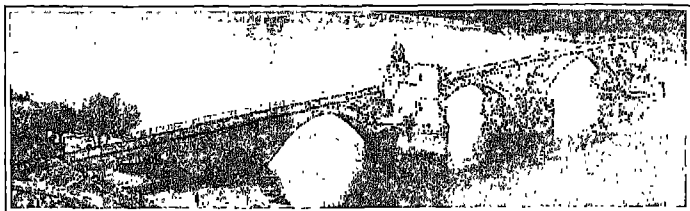
1. quantum . . . valent: translate with all the influence, prestige, and money that they have. 2. eōs: i.e., the people of Noviodunum. 3. ad ūnum: to a man. 4. spei: of ambition.

Vercingetorix plans his campaign

64. Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs itemque eī rei cōstituit diem; omnēs equitēs, xv milia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet. Peditātū¹ quem antea habuerit sē fore contentum dicit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut in aciē dīmīcātūrum; sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factūs frūmentatiōnibus pābulatiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant² aedificiaque incendiant, quā rei familiāris iactūrā³ perpetuum imperium libertātemque sē cōsequi videant.

His cōstitutīs rēbus, Aeduīs Segusiāvīsque, qui sunt finitimī¹⁰ Prōvinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs pccc. His praeficit frātre Eporēdorigis bellumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārū Arrecomicōrum dēpopulandōsmittit. Nihilōminus clandes-¹⁵ tīnis nūntiīs lēgatiōnibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum principibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtius Prōvinciae pollicētur.

1. Peditātū: with contentum. 2. aequō . . . corrumpant: translate as a direct statement just destroy your own grain without concern. 3. quā . . . iactūrā: since by this sacrifice of property.



Avignon, France

① Being Galloway

IN THE PROVINCE

This ancient bridge over the Rhone is at Avignon.

Caesar sends to Germany for cavalry

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium
xxii, quae ex ipsā coācta Prōvinciā ab L. Caesare ¹ lēgātō ad
omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum finitimīs
proeliō congressi pelluntur et, C. Valeriō Donnotaurō, Cabūrī
5 filiō, principi civitātis, complūribusque aliis interfectis, intrā
oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs, crēbris ad Rho-
danum dispositis praesidiis, magnā cūrā et diligentiā suōs finēs
tuentur.

Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat
10 et, interclūsīs omnibus itineribus, nullā rē ex Prōvinciā atque
Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit
ad eās civitātēs quās superiōribus annis pācāverat equitēsque
ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs quī inter eōs proeliārī
cōnsuērāt. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneis ² equis ūtē-
15 bantur, ā tribūnis ³ militum reliquisque equitibus Rōmānis
atque ēvocātis ⁴ equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

1. L. Caesare: a cousin of Julius Caesar. 2. idōneis: these are described
in IV, 2. 3. tribūnis: why is this in the ablative case? Explain the case of:
sponte, l. 3; filiō, l. 5; praesidiis, l. 7; cūrā, l. 7; equitātū, l. 9; annis, l. 12;
equis, l. 14. 4. ēvocātis: the ēvocāti were soldiers who, having served their time
of twenty years, had again enlisted. They seem to have been granted the privi-
lege of having a horse. Since Caesar saw that the German cavalry with their
small horses would not be a match for the well-mounted troops of Vercingetorix,
he remounted the Germans on horses taken from his own forces.

Caesar marches toward the Province. Vercingetorix plans an attack

66. Intercā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliac erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium Prōvinciae ferri posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit, convocātisque ad concilium prae-
fectis equitum, vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat:

Fugere in Prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem¹ obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquū temporis² pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici;³ maiōribus enim coāctis cōpiis reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs.

Proinde in agmine impeditōs adoriantur.⁴ Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō⁵ morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfidat, relictis impedimentis, suae salutī cōnsulant, et ūsū rerū necessariārum et dignitatē spoliā-
tum iri.⁶ Nam dē equitibus hostium, quā nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā agmen audeat,⁷ nē ipsōs quidem debēre dubitāre. Id quō maiore faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castris habitūrum et terrōri hostibus futūrum.

Conclāmant equitēs sanctissimō iūre iūrāndō cōnfirmārī oportē-
tē nētēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.⁸

1. praesentem: temporary. 2. reliquū temporis: the future. 3. parum prōfici: i.e., little will be gained by the withdrawal of the Romans because they will return with greater forces if they once reach the Province. 4. adoriantur: the subjunctive represents an imperative of the direct discourse. 5. in eō: i.e., in supporting their comrades. 6. ūsū . . . iri: they would be deprived of necessary things and of their prestige. What form of the infinitive is used here? 7. quā . . . audeat: object of dubitāre (591). 8. sanctissimō . . . perequitārit: that they ought to bind themselves by a most solemn oath that no man shall be received under a roof, or visit his children, his parents, or his wife, who has not twice ridden through the line of the enemy; perequitārit = perequitāverit, the perfect subjunctive. In the engagement that followed, the cavalry, striving in vain to keep the vow that they had sworn, fought on without support, while the infantry fell back to the camps.

The Gauls are defeated by the cavalry

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus iūre iurandō adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū, duae sē aciēs ab duōbus



Cologne, Germany

THE TOMBSTONE OF A
CAVALRYMAN

lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripartitō divīsum contrā hostem ire iubet.

Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī laborāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa inferri Caesar aciemque cōstituī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxili cōfirmābat.

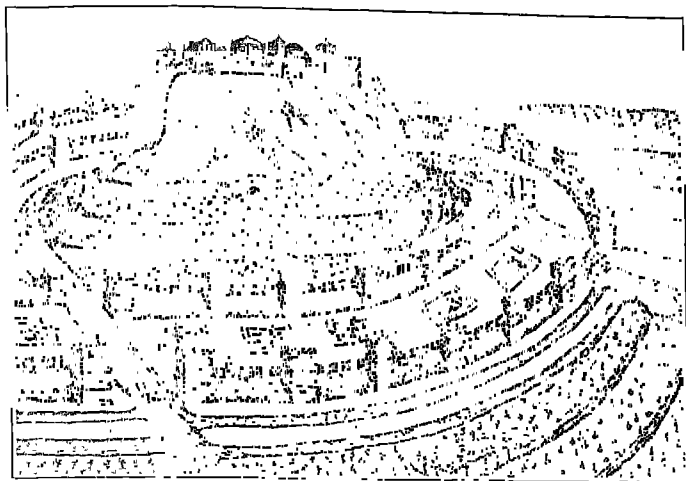
Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt; fugientēs usque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā, reliquī, nē circumīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs.

Trēs nōbilissimī Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, et Cavarillus, et Eporēdorix.

Vercingetorix takes refuge in Alesia. Caesar follows him

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū, Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castrīs ēdūci et sē subsequi iussit.

5 Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem dēductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interceptis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit.



From a sixteenth-century engraving

ALESIA AND THE ROMAN SIEGE WORKS

This old drawing shows Alesia on the hill and Caesar's two lines of fortification, an inner to protect his army from the Alesian forces in the town, an outer as a defense against the Gallic army of relief.

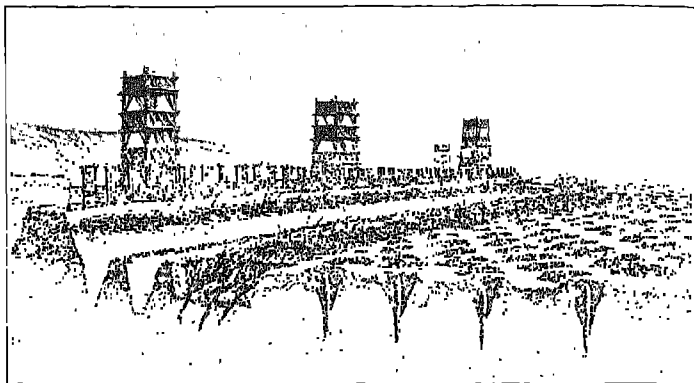
Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ¹⁰ ad labōrem militēs circumvallāre instituit.

The location of Alesia and Caesar's fortification of it

69. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia ¹ in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādīcēs ² duo duābus ex partibus flūmina ³ subluēbant.

Ante oppidum plānitīēs circiter milia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī ⁵ interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant.⁴

Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem sex pedum praedūxerant.



Model in Museum at St. Germain, France

CAESAR'S SIEGE WORKS AT ALESIA

The towers and palisades are on the rampart, which is also protected by a row of pointed stakes projecting horizontally near the top. To the right of the rampart are two ditches, sharp posts hidden by an entanglement of brushwork, and wolf-holes. These are holes in which sharp-pointed stakes are imbedded and covered with brush and brambles.

- 10 Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur circuitus
 XI milia passuum tenēbat. Castra ⁵ opportunīs locis erant posita
 ibique castella XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū stationēs
 pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō eruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū
 excubitōribus ac firmis praesidiis tenēbantur.

1. Alesia: this name still survives in *Alise-Sainte-Reine*, a town on one of the slopes of the hill which today bears the name of *Mont Auxois*. 2. *radicēs*: the *fool*; direct object of *subluēbant*. 3. *duo, flūmina*: the Osc and the Oserain. 4. *reliquis . . . cingēbant*: on all the other sides a short distance away, hills of equal height encircled the town. 5. *Castra*: here refers to more than one camp as is shown by *locis*. Traces of eight have been found.

The story of Chapters 70-87

The Gauls attempt to thwart the Romans' siege preparations, but are routed with great slaughter by the German cavalry. Vercingetorix sends out a call to all Gaul for aid. In preparation for the siege he assumes a food dictatorship, since he has barely thirty days' provisions.

Caesar builds an inner line of siegeworks to hold Vercingetorix in Alesia ; he builds an outer line to defend his army from attack, in both of which he makes use of brushwood entanglements and wolf-holes. A device similar to this was used in the World War.

In a national assembly the Gauls assign the quotas for which each state is made responsible. Two hundred and fifty thousand infantry and eight thousand cavalry march confidently to the relief of Alesia under the command of four great leaders : Commius, an Atrebatian ; Viridomarus and Eporedorix, Aeduan ; and Vercassivellanus, an Arvernian, a cousin of Vercingetorix. These are supported by a council elected from the various tribes.

In the meantime, at Alesia, the army of relief has not arrived, supplies are exhausted, and a council of war is called. Some advocate surrender, some a sortie. Critognatus, in a vigorous and eloquent speech, urges them to stand firm. Women, children, and the sick are driven out of the town. They appeal to Caesar, who refuses to give them food.

Meanwhile, the army of relief for the besieged arrives and encamps on a hill near Caesar's lines. The next day the Gallic cavalry descends into the open plain filling a space of three miles. The Roman cavalry advances to meet them. Fierce war cries fill the air. The Roman legionaries on the hill watch the hotly contested cavalry battle, which rages till sunset, when a last furious charge upon the Gauls drives them back into their fortifications.

Two days later the enemy make a concerted attack upon both the inner and outer lines, but are repulsed by the Romans. Not thwarted by this defeat, sixty thousand Gauls, supported by cavalry, make a last desperate attack. Caesar watches the conflict while both sides strain every nerve. The situation is critical for the Romans. Noting this, Caesar sends Labienus to the rescue, and he himself leads a body of reserves into the battle.

A vivid description of the battle, flight, pursuit, and slaughter

88. Eius adventū ex colōre ¹ vestitūs cognitō, quō insignī in proeliīs utī cōsueerat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequi iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt.

Utrunque clāmōre sublātō, excipit ² rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmōr.

Nostrī, omissīs pilīs, gladiīs rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur ; cohortēs aliae appropinquant.

10 Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs.

Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovīcum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militaria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numero
15 sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus rēdūcunt.

Fit prōtinus, hāc rē audītā, ex castris Gallōrum fuga. Quod ³ nisi crēbris subsidiis ac tōtius diē labōre militēs essent dēfessi,
20 omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent.⁴ Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in civitatēs discēdunt.

1. colōre: the general wore a scarlet cloak. The enemy recognized Caesar by this. 2. excipit: follows. 3. Quod: translate *and*. 4. dēlērī potuissent: *might have been destroyed* (609).

Caesar receives the surrender of the great-hearted Vercingetorix

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx,¹ conciliō convocātō, id bellum sē suscepisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortunāe cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu
5 vivum trādere velint.

Mittuntur dē his rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōsidit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur.

Reservātis Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eos civitatēs recu-
10 perāre posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōtī exercitūi capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

1. Vercingetorīx: with great dignity he makes his surrender to Caesar. He is sent to Rome as a captive. There he remains in prison for six years, saved to grace Caesar's triumph in the Civil War. He is led in chains before the victor's car in the procession, after which he is executed. Plutarch says, "He was every inch a king."



Trajan's Column, Rome

SOLDIER WITH BOOTY

The soldier's saddle bags are filled with various small articles that suggest booty. After the fall of Alesia each soldier was given a captive as booty.

The story of Chapter 90

The last tribes submit. Caesar sends his troops into winter quarters. A twenty days' thanksgiving is declared at Rome in honor of his victory.

466.

COMPREHENSION — LIBER VII

1. How did the Gauls send wireless messages? 2. What qualities made Vercingetorix a capable leader of the Gauls? 3. What was the result of Vercingetorix' consenting to save Avaricum? 4. What example of the bravery of the Gauls at the siege of Avaricum does Caesar record? Of a Roman at the siege of Gergovia? 5. Give examples from *Liber VII* and preceding books which set forth the Roman ideals of *discipline*, *disciplina*, *manliness*, *virtūs*, and *courage*, *fortitudo*.

6. What was Vercingetorix' plan of campaign as commander-in-chief of all Gaul? 7. What advantages had Alesia as a stronghold? 8. What preparations did Caesar make to lay siege to Alesia? 9. What was the final outcome? 10. Why is Vercingetorix regarded as a national hero?

11. Point out five modern French cities whose names are derived from the Latin names of Gallic tribes. 12. What was the most far-reaching effect of Caesar's conquest of Gaul?

467.

VERBA — LIBER VII

Required Vocabulary: an, his, compellō, congredior, ēruptiō, indicō, mēns, occultus, praesēns, prōficiō, quiētus, recuperō, semper, trāsgredior.

Word Study. Define the following words, showing by your definition that they are related to *manus*: *ammanensis*, *emancipate*, *legerdemain*, *manacle*, *management*, *manufacturer*, *manifest*, *manumission*.

To what Latin word in *Liber VII* do you think each of the following is related by derivation?

SPANISH	FRENCH	ITALIAN	ENGLISH
cautivo	captif	cattivo	<i>captive</i>
clamor	clameur	clamore	<i>clamor</i>
copia	copie	copia	<i>copious</i>
deber	devoir	debito	<i>debit</i>
diestra	dextre	destra	<i>dexterity</i>
gracia	grâce	grazia	<i>grace</i>
hueste	hostile	ostile	<i>hostile</i>
nombre	nom	nome	<i>nominal</i>
satisfacer	satisfaire	soddisfare	<i>satisfaction</i>
victoria	victoire	vittoria	<i>victory</i>

FĪNIS

Caesar ends his account of the Gallic War with this book. One of his generals, Aulus Hirtius, wrote an eighth book giving the history of the last two years, in which Caesar completed the subjugation of all Gaul. He quelled minor uprisings and inspired allegiance by his generous treatment of the conquered and the establishment of efficient government.

The conquest of Gaul settled the question of Teuton or Roman supremacy in southwestern Europe and opened the way to the establishment in the western world of Roman civilization, which found expression in the art, architecture, government, literature, and the speech of the people. The impress of Roman civilization still lives on.



From a Wedgwood design

Courtesy of New York Public Library

WAR AND PEACE

According to the ancients, the world was at peace when the gates of the Temple of Janus were closed. Here Peace is pleading with Mars, god of War, not to open the gates of the temple.

FORMS FOR REFERENCE

"Nōmina declināre et verba in primis sciant; neque enim aliter pervenire ad intellēctum sequentium possunt, *Children should learn to inflect nouns and especially verbs; for in no other way can they come to an understanding of what they study later.*" QUINTILIAN

NOUNS

468.

FIRST DECLENSION

terra, *f.* land

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	terra	terrae
<i>Gen.</i>	terrae	terrārum
<i>Dat.</i>	terrae	terrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	terram	terrās
<i>Abl.</i>	terrā	terrīs

The stem ends in -ā. This is short in the nominative singular, -a, and also in the accusative singular, -am.

The gender is regularly feminine. Among the exceptions are: **Matrona**, *m.*, *the (river) Marne*; **nauta**, *m.*, *sailor*.

The vocative case has the same form as the nominative. The locative singular ends in -ae: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; the plural ends in -is: **Athēnis**, *at Athens*. The dative and ablative plural of *dea* and *filia* usually ends in -abus.

469.

SECOND DECLENSION

equus, *m.* horse **puer**, *m.* boy **ager**, *m.* field **vir**, *m.* man **oppidum**, *n.* town

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	equus	puer	ager	vir	oppidum
<i>Gen.</i>	equi	puerī	agrī	virī	oppidi
<i>Dat.</i>	equō	puerō	agrō	virō	oppidō
<i>Acc.</i>	equum	puerum	agrum	virum	oppidum
<i>Abl.</i>	equō	puerō	agrō	virō	oppidō

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	equi	puerī	agrī	virī	oppida
<i>Gen.</i>	equōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	oppidōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	equis	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	oppidīs
<i>Acc.</i>	equōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	oppida
<i>Abl.</i>	equis	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	oppidīs

The stem ends in -o.

Second declension nouns ending in -us, -er, -ir are regularly masculine, those ending in -um are neuter.

The genitive singular of nouns in -ius and -ium regularly appears as -i, instead of -ii, with the accent on the penult: *fi'li, of a son; auxi'i, of aid.*

The vocative singular of nouns in -us has the ending -e: *Mārce, O, Marcus;* of nouns in -ius, -i: *fili, O, son;* the vocative form of all other nouns is the same as the nominative.

The locative case in the singular ends in -i; in the plural in -is: *Cēnabī, at Cenabum; Pompeiīs, at Pompeii.*

The plural of *deus* has irregular forms: *nom., deī, dii, dī; gen., deōrum, deum; dat. and abl., deis, diis, dis.*

THIRD DECLENSION

470.

(1) CONSONANT STEMS

a. MASCULINE OR FEMININE

	<i>dux, m.</i> leader	<i>cōnsul, m.</i> consul	<i>ōrātor, m.</i> orator	<i>lēx, f.</i> law	<i>ōrātiō, f.</i> speech
	<i>Singular</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>cōnsul</i>	<i>ōrātōr</i>	<i>lēx</i>	<i>ōrātiō</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ducis</i>	<i>cōnsulis</i>	<i>ōrātōris</i>	<i>lēgis</i>	<i>ōrātiōnis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duci</i>	<i>cōnsuli</i>	<i>ōrātōri</i>	<i>lēgi</i>	<i>ōrātiōni</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ducem</i>	<i>cōnsulem</i>	<i>ōrātōrem</i>	<i>lēgem</i>	<i>ōrātiōnem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duce</i>	<i>cōnsule</i>	<i>ōrātōre</i>	<i>lēge</i>	<i>ōrātiōne</i>
	<i>Plural</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>cōnsulēs</i>	<i>ōrātōrēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>ōrātiōnēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ducum</i>	<i>cōnsulū</i>	<i>ōrātōrū</i>	<i>lēgum</i>	<i>ōrātiōnū</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>cōnsulibus</i>	<i>ōrātōribus</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>ōrātiōnibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>cōnsulēs</i>	<i>ōrātōrēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>ōrātiōnēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>cōnsulibus</i>	<i>ōrātōribus</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>ōrātiōnibus</i>

b. NEUTER

flūmen, n. river		corpus, n. body			
	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
Nom.	flūmen	flūmina		corpus	corpora
Gen.	flūminis	flūminum		corporis	corporum
Dat.	flūmini	flūminibus		corpori	corporibus
Acc.	flūmen	flūmina		corpus	corpora
Abl.	flūmine	flūminibus		corpore	corporibus

471.

(2) I-STEMS

a. MASCULINE OR FEMININE

<i>cīvis, m.</i> citizen	<i>urbs, f.</i> city
-----------------------------	-------------------------

b. NEUTER

<i>animal, n.</i> animal	<i>mare, n.</i> sea
-----------------------------	------------------------

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Nom.</i> civis	urbs	animal	mare
<i>Gen.</i> civis	urbis	animālis	maris
<i>Dat.</i> civi	urbī	animālī	marī
<i>Acc.</i> civem	urbem	animal	mare
<i>Abl.</i> cive	urbe	animālī	marī
<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i> civēs	urbēs	animālia	maria
<i>Gen.</i> civium	urbium	animālium	—
<i>Dat.</i> civibus	urbibus	animālibus	maribus
<i>Acc.</i> civēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	animālia	maria
<i>Abl.</i> civibus	urbibus	animālibus	maribus

The stem ends in a consonant or -i. I-stems include the following: nouns ending in -is or -ēs and having the same number of syllables in the genitive, *nāvis*; nouns ending in -ns or -rs, *adulēscēns*, *ars*; neuters ending in -e, -al, or -ar, *vectigal*; and monosyllables ending in -s or -x preceded by a consonant, *urbs*, *arx*.

The locative singular regularly ends in -i: *rūri*, in the country.

Turris and a few proper nouns may have an accusative singular in -im.

Ignis, *turris*, *nāvis*, *finis*, and a few other i-stems may have either -ī or -e in the ablative singular.

472. (3) NOUNS OF IRREGULAR DECLENSION

<i>vis</i> , <i>f.</i> strength	<i>iter</i> , <i>n.</i> road	<i>senex</i> , <i>m.</i> old man	<i>Iuppiter</i> , <i>m.</i> Jupiter	<i>nēmō</i> , <i>m.</i> no one
<i>Singular</i>				
<i>Nom.</i> vis	iter	senex	Iuppiter	nēmō
<i>Gen.</i> (vis)	itineris	senis	Iovis	(nūllūs)
<i>Dat.</i> (vī)	itinerī	senī	Iovī	nēminī
<i>Acc.</i> vim	iter	senem	Iovem	nēminem
<i>Abl.</i> vī	itinere	sene	Iove	(nūllō)
<i>Plural</i>				
<i>Nom.</i> virēs	itinerā	senēs	—	—
<i>Gen.</i> virium	itinerum	senum	—	—
<i>Dat.</i> viribus	itineribus	senibus	—	—
<i>Acc.</i> virēs, -īs	itinerā	senēs	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> viribus	itineribus	senibus	—	—

473. FOURTH DECLENSION

<i>exercitus</i> , <i>m.</i> army	<i>domus</i> , <i>f.</i> house	<i>cornū</i> , <i>n.</i> horn
<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Nom.</i> exercitus	domus	cornū
<i>Gen.</i> exercitus	domūs, -ī	cornūs
<i>Dat.</i> exercituī	domuī, -ō	cornū
<i>Acc.</i> exercitum	domum	cornū
<i>Abl.</i> exercitū	domū, -ō	cornū

		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitūs	domūs	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercituum	domuum, -ōrum	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitibus	domibus	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitūs	domūs, -ōs	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitibus	domibus	cornibus

The stem ends in -u.

Fourth declension nouns ending in -us are regularly masculine except domus, īdūs, and manus; those in -ū are neuter.

The locative of domus is domī.

474.

FIFTH DECLENSION

	diēs, <i>m.</i> day			rēs, <i>f.</i> thing	
	<i>S.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>		<i>S.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs		rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	diērum		rei	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	diēbus		rei	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs		rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus		rē	rēbus

The stem ends in -ē.

The gender is regularly feminine. Diēs is masculine or feminine in the singular, but feminine only when used in the sense of an appointed day.

The genitive and dative singular ending -ēi becomes -ei when preceded by a consonant: fidei.

ADJECTIVES

475.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

a. ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -US, -A, -UM

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	lātus	lāta	lātum	lāti	lātae	lāta
<i>Gen.</i>	lāti	lātae	lāti	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	lātō	lātae	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs
<i>Acc.</i>	lātum	lātā	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta
<i>Abl.</i>	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs

b. ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -ER, -ERA, -ERUM

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

c. ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *-ER, -RA, -RUM*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

476.

THIRD DECLENSION

a. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	acer	ācris	acre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, -is	ācrēs, -is	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

b. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	omnem	omne	omnēs, -is	omnia
<i>Abl.</i>	omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus

c. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	audācēs, -is	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus

	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
<i>Gen.</i>	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
<i>Dat.</i>	potenti	potenti	potentibus	potentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	potentem	potēns	potentēs, -is	potentia
<i>Abl.</i>	potenti, -e	potenti, -e	potentibus	potentibus

477. DECLENSION OF PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

portāns carrying			
<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
<i>Gen.</i> portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
<i>Dat.</i> portanti	portanti	portantibus	portantibus
<i>Acc.</i> portantem	portāns	portantēs, -is	portantia
<i>Abl.</i> portante, -ī	portante, -ī	portantibus	portantibus

The ablative singular of a present participle, when used as an adjective, ends in -ī.

478. ADJECTIVES OF SPECIAL DECLENSION

ūnus one			alter the other		
<i>Singular</i>			<i>Singular</i>		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> ūnus	ūna	ūnum	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i> ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>Dat.</i> ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i> ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i> ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	alterō	alterā	alterō

Nine adjectives have -ūs in the genitive singular and -ī in the dative singular: alius, alia, aliud; alter, altera, alterum; neuter, neutra, neutrum; nūllus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um; tōtus, -a, -um; ūllus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um; and uter, utra, utrum. They are declined in the plural like lātus.

vetus old				plūs more		
<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	
MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER	NEUTER	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i> veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i> veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i> veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i> vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

duo two		trēs three		mille thousand	
<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER	
<i>Nom.</i> duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mille milia
<i>Gen.</i> duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mille milium
<i>Dat.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille milibus
<i>Acc.</i> duos	duas	duo	trēs, trīs	tria	mille milia
<i>Abl.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mille milibus

In the singular plūs has no masculine or feminine forms.

479. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātus, -a, -um wide	lātior, lātius wider	lātissimus, -a, -um widest
fortis, -e brave	fortior, fortius braver	fortissimus, -a, -um bravest
audāx bold	audācior, audācius bolder	audācissimus, -a, -um boldest
potēns powerful	potentior, potentius more powerful	potentissimus, -a, -um most powerful
liber, -era, -erum free	liberior, liberius freer	liberrimus, -a, -um freest
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful	pulchrior, pulchrius more beautiful	pulcherrimus, -a, -um most beautiful
acer, ācris, ācre sharp	ācior, ācius sharper	ācerrimus, -a, -um sharpest
facilis, -e easy	facilior, facilius easier	facillimus, -a, -um easiest

Adjectives ending in -er are compared like liber.

Difficilis, dissimilis, humilis, and similis are compared like facilis.

480. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus, -a, -um good	melior, melius better	optimus, -a, -um best
malus, -a, -um bad	peior, peius worse	pessimus, -a, -um worst
magnus, -a, -um great	maior, maius greater	maximus, -a, -um greatest
parvus, -a, -um small	minor, minus smaller	minimus, -a, -um smallest
multus, -a, -um much	—, plūs more	plūrimus, -a, -um most

The irregular comparison of other adjectives is indicated in the LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

481. DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE OF ADJECTIVES

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
	MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER		MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	audācior	audācius		audāciōrēs	audāciōra
<i>Gen.</i>	audāciōris	audāciōris		audāciōrum	audāciōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	audāciōri	audāciōri		audāciōribus	audāciōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	audāciōrem	audācius		audāciōrēs	audāciōra
<i>Abl.</i>	audāciōre	audāciōre		audāciōribus	audāciōribus

ADVERBS

482. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātē widely	lātius	lātissimē
miserē miserably	miserius	miserimē
pulchrē beautifully	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter bravely	fortius	fortissimē
ācritē sharply	ācius	ācerrimē
facile easily	facilius	facillimē

FORMS FOR REFERENCE

393

483.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bene well	melius better	optimē best
male badly	peius worse	pessimē worst
magnopere greatly	magis more	maximē most
multum much	plūs more	plūrimum most
parum little	minus less	minimē least
diū long (<i>in time</i>)	diūtius longer	diūtissimē longest
prope near	propius nearer	proximē next
saepe often	saepius oftener	saepissimē oftenest

484.

NUMERALS

ROMAN NUMERALS	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
I	ūnus, -a, -um one	primus, -a, -um first
II	duo, duae, duo two	secundus, -a, -um; <i>or</i> alter, altera, alterum second
III	trēs, tria three	tertius, -a, -um third
IV	quattuor four	quārtus, -a, -um fourth
V	quīque five	quintus, -a, -um fifth
VI	sex etc.	sextus etc.
VII	septem	septimus
VIII	octō	octāvus
IX	novem	nōnus
X	decem	decimus
XI	undecim	undecimus
XII	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus
XVIII	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus
XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus
XX	vīgintī	vicēsīmus
XXI	vīgintī ūnus	vicēsīmus primus
XXX	trīgintā	tricēsīmus
XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
C	centum	centēsīmus
CI	centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus (et) primus
CXXI	centum vīgintī ūnus	centēsīmus vicēsīmus primus
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
CCC	trecentī	trecentēsīmus

ROMAN
NUMERALS

CCCC

D

DC

DCC

DCCC

DCCCC

M

MC

MM

CARDINALS

quadringenti

quingenti

sescenti

septingenti

octingenti

nongenti

mille

mille centum

duo milia

ORDINALS

quadringentēsimus

quingentēsimus

sescentēsimus

septingentēsimus

octingentēsimus

nongentēsimus

millēsimus

millēsimus centēsimus

bis (= twice) millēsimus

PRONOUNS

485.

PERSONAL

	ego I	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs
<i>Gen.</i>	mei	nostrum, -trī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs

tū you

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
	tū	vōs
	tui	vestrum, -trī
	tibi	vōbīs
	tē	vōs
	tē	vōbīs

486. REFLEXIVE

suī of himself, etc.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
	suī	suī
	sibi	sibi
	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

The demonstrative *is, he, ea, she, id, it* (561, *b*) is used as the personal pronoun of the third person.

Reflexive pronouns have no nominative. In the first and second persons, they have the same forms as the gen., dat., acc., and abl. of the personal pronouns.

Meus, noster, tuus, vester, and suus, the possessive forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns, are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

487.

DEMONSTRATIVE

is this, that, he, she, it

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

hic this

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille that

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i> illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
<i>Dat.</i> illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i> illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
<i>Abl.</i> illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

Iste, ista, istud, *that (of yours)*, is declined like ille, illa, illud.

idem the same

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> idem	eadem	idem	eidem, idem	eadem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i> eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i> eidem	eidem	eidem	eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
			(isdem)	(isdem)	(isdem)
<i>Acc.</i> eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i> eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
			(isdem)	(isdem)	(isdem)

488.

INTENSIVE

ipse self

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i> ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
<i>Dat.</i> ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i> ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

489.

RELATIVE

qui who, which, that

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

490.

INTERROGATIVE

quis who? which? what?

Singular

MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> quis	quid
<i>Gen.</i> cuius	cuius
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quid
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quō

The plural of the interrogative quis is like that of the relative qui.

The interrogative adjective is qui, quae, quod. It is declined like the relative qui.

491.

INDEFINITE

Singular

MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> aliquis	aliquid
<i>Gen.</i> alicuius	alicuius
<i>Dat.</i> alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i> aliquem	aliquid
<i>Abl.</i> aliquō	aliquō

Plural

MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

Singular

MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> quidam	quaedam	quiddam
<i>Gen.</i> cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i> cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i> quendam	quendam	quiddam
<i>Abl.</i> quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

<i>Nom.</i> quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i> quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i> quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i> quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i> quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

Singular

MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> quisquam	quicquam
<i>Gen.</i> cuiusquam	cuiusquam
<i>Dat.</i> cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i> quemquam	quicquam
<i>Abl.</i> quōquam	quōquam

Singular

MASC. OR FEM.	NEUTER
quisque	quidque
cuiusque	cuiusque
cuique	cuique
quemque	quidque
quōque	quōque

The indefinite pronouns are aliquis, quīdam, quilibet, quispiam, quisquam, quisque, and quivis.

Quis and quid are used as indefinites after si, nisi, nē, and num. They are declined like the interrogative quis. Their corresponding adjective form qui is declined

like the relative *quī*, but the adjective form usually has *qua* for *quae* except in the nominative plural feminine.

The adjective form of *aliquis*, -*quid* is *aliquī*, -*qua*, -*quod*.

Quoddam is the adjective form of *quiddam*.

Quisquam has no plural. *Quisque* is seldom used in the plural. When used as an adjective, its form is *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque*.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS

492.

REGULAR VERBS

Principal Parts

Stems

1st Conj.:	<i>portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus</i>	carry	<i>portā-; portāv-; portāt-</i>
2nd Conj.:	<i>videō, vidēre, vidī, visus</i>	see	<i>vidē-; vid-; vīs-</i>
3rd Conj.:	<i>mittō, mittere, misī, missus</i>	send	<i>mittē-; mis-; miss-</i>
3rd Conj. (-iō):	<i>capīō, capere, cēpi, captus</i>	take	<i>cape-; cēp-; capt-</i>
4th Conj.:	<i>audiō, audire, audīvī, auditus</i>	hear	<i>audi-; audīv-; audit-</i>

INDICATIVE

Active Voice

PRESENT TENSE

I carry, am carry- ing, etc.	I see, am see- ing, etc.	I send, am send- ing, etc.	I take, am tak- ing, etc.	I hear, am hearing, etc.
<i>portō</i>	<i>videō</i>	<i>mittō</i>	<i>capīō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
<i>portās</i>	<i>vidēs</i>	<i>mittis</i>	<i>capis</i>	<i>audis</i>
<i>portat</i>	<i>videt</i>	<i>mittit</i>	<i>capit</i>	<i>audit</i>
<i>portāmus</i>	<i>vidēmus</i>	<i>mittimus</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>audimus</i>
<i>portātis</i>	<i>vidētis</i>	<i>mittitis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>auditis</i>
<i>portant</i>	<i>vident</i>	<i>mittunt</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>audiunt</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE

I carried, was carrying, etc.	I saw, was seeing, etc.	I sent, was send- ing, etc.	I took, was taking, etc.	I heard, was hearing, etc.
<i>portābam</i>	<i>vidēbam</i>	<i>mittēbam</i>	<i>capiebam</i>	<i>audiēbam</i>
<i>portābās</i>	<i>vidēbās</i>	<i>mittēbās</i>	<i>capiebās</i>	<i>audiēbās</i>
<i>portābat</i>	<i>vidēbat</i>	<i>mittēbat</i>	<i>capiebat</i>	<i>audiēbat</i>
<i>portābāmus</i>	<i>vidēbāmus</i>	<i>mittēbāmus</i>	<i>capiebāmus</i>	<i>audiēbāmus</i>
<i>portābātis</i>	<i>vidēbātis</i>	<i>mittēbātis</i>	<i>capiebātis</i>	<i>audiēbātis</i>
<i>portābant</i>	<i>vidēbant</i>	<i>mittēbant</i>	<i>capiebant</i>	<i>audiēbant</i>

FUTURE TENSE

I shall carry, etc.	I shall see, etc.	I shall send, etc.	I shall take, etc.	I shall hear, etc.
<i>portābō</i>	<i>vidēbō</i>	<i>mittam</i>	<i>capiam</i>	<i>audiam</i>
<i>portābis</i>	<i>vidēbis</i>	<i>mittēs</i>	<i>capies</i>	<i>audies</i>
<i>portābit</i>	<i>vidēbit</i>	<i>mittet</i>	<i>capiet</i>	<i>audiet</i>
<i>portābimus</i>	<i>vidēbimus</i>	<i>mittēmus</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>audiemus</i>
<i>portābitis</i>	<i>vidēbitis</i>	<i>mittētis</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>audietis</i>
<i>portābunt</i>	<i>vidēbunt</i>	<i>mittent</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>audient</i>

PERFECT TENSE

I have carried, carried, etc.	I have seen, saw, etc.	I have sent, sent, etc.	I have taken, took, etc.	I have heard, heard, etc.
portāvi	vidi	misi	cēpi	audīvi
portāvisti	vidisti	misisti	cēpisti	audivisti
portāvit	vidit	misit	cēpit	audivit
portāvimus	vidimus	misimus	cēpimus	audivimus
portāvistis	vidistis	misistis	cēpistis	audivistis
portāverunt, -ēre	vidērunt, -ēre	misērunt, -ēre	cēperunt, -ēre	audivērunt, -ēre

PAST PERFECT TENSE

I had carried, etc.	I had seen, etc.	I had sent, etc.	I had taken, etc.	I had heard, etc.
portāveram	vidēram	miseram	cēperam	audiveram
portāverās	vidērās	miserās	cēperās	audiverās
portāverat	viderat	miserat	cēperat	audiverat
portāverāmus	viderāmus	miserāmus	cēperāmus	audiverāmus
portāverātis	viderātis	miserātis	cēperātis	audiverātis
portāverant	viderant	miserant	cēperant	audiverant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

I shall have carried, etc.	I shall have seen, etc.	I shall have sent, etc.	I shall have taken, etc.	I shall have heard, etc.
portāverō	viderō	miserō	cēperō	audiverō
portāveris	videris	miseris	cēperis	audiveris
portāverit	viderit	miserit	cēperit	audiverit
portāverimus	viderimus	miserimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
portāveritis	videritis	miseritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
portāverint	viderint	miserint	cēperint	audiverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Active Voice

PRESENT TENSE

portem	videam	mittam	capiam	audiam
portēs	videās	mittās	capias	audias
portet	videat	mittat	capiat	audiat
portēmus	videāmus	mittāmus	capiamus	audiamus
portētis	videātis	mittātis	capiatis	audiatis
portent	videant	mittant	capiant	audiant

IMPERFECT TENSE

portārem	vidērem	mitterem	caperem	audirem
portārēs	vidērēs	mitterēs	caperēs	audirēs
portāret	vidēret	mitteret	caperet	audiret
portārēmus	vidērēmus	mitterēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
portārētis	vidērētis	mitterētis	caperētis	audirētis
portārent	vidērent	mitterent	caperent	audirent

FORMS FOR REFERENCE

399

PERFECT TENSE				
portāverim	vidērim	miserim	cēperim	audiverim
portāveris	videris	miseris	cēperis	audiveris
portāverit	viderit	miserit	cēperit	audiverit
portāverimus	viderimus	miserimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
portāveritis	videritis	miseritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
portāverint	viderint	miserint	cēperint	audiverint

PAST PERFECT TENSE				
portāvissem	vidissem	mīsissem	cēpīsem	audīvissem
portāvisseſ	vidiſſeſ	mīsiſſeſ	cēpiſſeſ	audiſſiſſeſ
portāviſſet	vidiſſet	mīsiſſet	cēpiſſet	audiſſiſſet
portāviſſēmus	vidiſſēmus	mīsiſſēmus	cēpiſſēmus	audiſſiſſēmus
portāviſſētis	vidiſſētis	mīsiſſētis	cēpiſſētis	audiſſiſſētis
portāviſſent	vidiſſent	mīsiſſent	cēpiſſent	audiſſiſſent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

portā carry (thou)	vidē see (thou)	mitte send (thou)	cape take (thou)	audi hear (thou)
-----------------------	--------------------	----------------------	---------------------	---------------------

Plural

portāte carry (ye)	vidēte see (ye)	mittite send (ye)	capite take (ye)	audite hear (ye)
--------------------	--------------------	----------------------	---------------------	---------------------

FUTURE

Singular

2nd portātō thou shalt carry	vidētō thou shalt see	mittitō thou shalt send	capitō thou shalt take	auditō thou shalt hear
3rd portātō he shall carry	vidētō he shall see	mittitō he shall send	capitō he shall take	auditō he shall hear

Plural

2nd portātōte ye shall carry	vidētōte ye shall see	mittitōte ye shall send	capitōte ye shall take	auditōte ye shall hear
3rd portantō they shall carry	videntō they shall see	mittuntō they shall send	capiantō they shall take	audiuntō they shall hear

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

portāre to carry	vidēre to see	mittere to send	capere to take	audire to hear
------------------	---------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------

PERFECT

portāviſſe to have carried	vidiſſe to have seen	mīſiſſe to have sent	cēpiſſe to have taken	audiſſiſſe to have heard
-------------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

FUTURE

portātūrus esse to be about to carry	visūrus esse to be about to see	missūrus esse to be about to send	captūrus esse to be about to take	audītūrus esse to be about to hear
--	---------------------------------------	---	---	--

PARTICIPLE

PRESENT

portāns, -antis carrying	vidēns, -entis seeing	mittēns, -entis sending	capiēns, -entis taking	audiēns, -entis hearing
-----------------------------	--------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------

FUTURE

portātūrus, -a, -um about to carry	visūrus, -a, -um about to see	missūrus, -a, -um about to send	captūrus, -a, -um about to take	audītūrus, -a, -um about to hear
--	-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> portandī of carrying	videndī of seeing	mittendī of sending	capiendī of taking	audiendī of hearing
<i>Dat.</i> portandō for carrying	videndō for seeing	mittendō for sending	capiendō for taking	audiendō for hearing
<i>Acc.</i> portandum carrying	videndum seeing	mittendum sending	capiendum taking	audiendum hearing
<i>Abl.</i> portandō by carrying	videndō by seeing	mittendō by sending	capiendō by taking	audiendō by hearing

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i> portātum to carry	visum to see	missum to send	captum to take	audītum to hear
<i>Abl.</i> portātū to carry	visū to see	missū to send	captū to take	audītū to hear

INDICATIVE

Passive Voice

PRESENT TENSE

I am carried, etc.	I am seen, etc.	I am sent, etc.	I am taken, etc.	I am heard, etc.
portor	videor	mittor	capior	audior
portāris, -re	vidēris, -re	mitteris, -re	caperis, -re	audiris, -re
portātur	vidētur	mittitur	capitur	audītur
portāmur	vidēmur	mittimur	capimur	audīmur
portāmini	vidēmini	mittimini	capimini	audīmini
portantur	videntur	mittuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

FORMS FOR REFERENCE

401

IMPERFECT TENSE

I was carried, etc.	I was seen, etc.	I was sent, etc.	I was taken, etc.	I was heard, etc.
portābar	vidēbar	mittēbar	capiebār	audiebār
portābāris, -re	vidēbāris, -re	mittēbāris, -re	capiebāris, -re	audiebāris, -re
portābātur	vidēbātur	mittēbātur	capiebātur	audiebātur
portābāmur	vidēbāmur	mittēbāmur	capiebāmur	audiebāmur
portābāminī	vidēbāminī	mittēbāminī	capiebāminī	audiebāminī
portābantur	vidēbantur	mittēbantur	capiebantur	audiebantur

FUTURE TENSE

I shall be carried, etc.	I shall be seen, etc.	I shall be sent, etc.	I shall be taken, etc.	I shall be heard, etc.
portābor	vidēbor	mittar	capiar	audiar
portāberis, -re	vidēberis, -re	mittēris, -re	capieris, -re	audieris, -re
portābitur	vidēbitur	mittētur	capietur	audietur
portābimur	vidēbimur	mittēmur	capiemur	audiemur
portābimīnī	vidēbimīnī	mittēmīnī	capiemīnī	audiemīnī
portābuntur	vidēbuntur	mittentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT TENSE

I have been (was) carried, etc.	I have been seen, etc.	I have been sent, etc.	I have been taken, etc.	I have been heard, etc.
portātus sum	vīsus sum	missus sum	captus sum	audītus sum
portātus es	vīsus es	missus es	captus es	audītus es
portātus est	vīsus est	missus est	captus est	audītus est
portātī sumus	vīsī sumus	missī sumus	captī sumus	audītī sumus
portātī estis	vīsī estis	missī estis	captī estis	audītī estis
portātī sunt	vīsī sunt	missī sunt	captī sunt	audītī sunt

PAST PERFECT TENSE

I had been carried, etc.	I had been seen, etc.	I had been sent, etc.	I had been taken, etc.	I had been heard, etc.
portātus eram	vīsus eram	missus eram	captus eram	audītus eram
portātus erās	vīsus erās	missus erās	captus erās	audītus erās
portātus erat	vīsus erat	missus erat	captus erat	audītus erat
portātī erāmus	vīsī erāmus	missī erāmus	captī erāmus	audītī erāmus
portātī erātis	vīsī erātis	missī erātis	captī erātis	audītī erātis
portātī erant	vīsī erant	missī erant	captī erant	audītī erant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

I shall have been carried, etc.	I shall have been seen, etc.	I shall have been sent, etc.	I shall have been taken, etc.	I shall have been heard, etc.
portātus erō	vīsus erō	missus erō	captus erō	audītus erō
portātus eris	vīsus eris	missus eris	captus eris	audītus eris
portātus erit	vīsus erit	missus erit	captus erit	audītus erit
portātī erimus	vīsī erimus	missī erimus	captī erimus	audītī erimus
portātī eritis	vīsī eritis	missī eritis	captī eritis	audītī eritis
portātī erunt	vīsī erunt	missī erunt	captī erunt	audītī erunt

LATIN SECOND YEAR

SUBJUNCTIVE

Passive Voice

PRESENT TENSE

porter	videar	mittar	capiar	audiar
portēris, -re	videāris, -re	mittāris, -re	capiāris, -re	audiāris, -re
portētur	videātur	mittātur	capiātur	audiātur
portēmur	videāmur	mittāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
portēmini	videāmini	mittāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
portentur	videantur	mittantur	capiantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT TENSE

portārer	vidērer	mitterer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris, -re	vidērēris, -re	mitterēris, -re	caperēris, -re	audirēris, -re
portārētur	vidērētur	mitterētur	caperētur	audirētur
portārēmur	vidērēmur	mitterēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
portārēmini	vidērēmini	mitterēmini	caperēmini	audirēmini
portārentur	vidērentur	mitterentur	caperentur	audirentur

PERFECT

portātus sim	vīsus sim	missus sim	captus sim	audītus sim
portātus sis	vīsus sis	missus sis	captus sis	audītus sis
portātus sit	vīsus sit	missus sit	captus sit	audītus sit
portātī simus	vīsī simus	missī simus	captī simus	audītī simus
portātī sitis	vīsī sitis	missī sitis	captī sitis	audītī sitis
portātī sint	vīsī sint	missī sint	captī sint	audītī sint

PAST PERFECT TENSE

portātus essem	vīsus essem	missus essem	captus essem	audītus essem
portātus essēs	vīsus essēs	missus essēs	captus essēs	audītus essēs
portātus esset	vīsus esset	missus esset	captus esset	audītus esset
portātī essēmus	vīsī essēmus	missī essēmus	captī essēmus	audītī essēmus
portātī essētis	vīsī essētis	missī essētis	captī essētis	audītī essētis
portātī essent	vīsī essent	missī essent	captī essent	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

portāre be	vidēre be	mittere be	capere be	audīre be
(thou) carried	(thou) seen	(thou) sent	(thou) taken	(thou) heard

Plural

portāmini be	vidēmini be	mittimini be	capimini be	audimini be
(ye) carried	(ye) seen	(ye) sent	(ye) taken	(ye) heard

FORMS FOR REFERENCE

403

FUTURE

Singular

2nd portātor thou shalt be carried	vidētor thou shalt be seen	mittitor thou shalt be sent	capitor thou shalt be taken	auditor thou shalt be heard
3rd portātor he shall be carried	vidētor he shall be seen	mittitor he shall be sent	capitor he shall be taken	auditor he shall be heard

Plural

3rd portantor they shall be carried	videntor they shall be seen	mittuntor they shall be sent	capiuntor they shall be taken	audiuntor they shall be heard
---	--------------------------------	---------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

portāri to be carried	vidēri to be seen	mitti to be sent	capī to be taken	audiri to be heard
--------------------------	----------------------	---------------------	---------------------	-----------------------

PERFECT

portātus esse to have been car- ried	visus esse to have been seen	missus esse to have been sent	captus esse to have been taken	auditus esse to have been heard
--	------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

FUTURE

portātum iri to be about to be carried	visum iri to be about to be seen	missum iri to be about to be sent	captum iri to be about to be taken	auditum iri to be about to be heard
--	--	---	--	---

PARTICIPLE

PERFECT

portātus, -a, -um having been carried	visus, -a, -um having been seen	missus, -a, -um having been sent	captus, -a, -um having been taken	auditus, -a, -um having been heard
---	---------------------------------------	--	---	--

FUTURE

portandus, -a, -um to be carried	videndus, -a, -um to be seen	mittendus, -a, -um to be sent	capiendus, -a, -um to be taken	audiendus, -a, -um to be heard
--	------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

493.

DEPONENT VERBS

Principal Parts

1st Conj.:	cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	try
2nd Conj.:	vereor, verārī, veritus sum	fear
3rd Conj.:	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	follow
4th Conj.:	orior, orirī, ortus sum	rise

Stems

cōnā-; cōnāt-
verē-; verit-
seque-; secūt-
orī-; ort-

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnor	vereor	sequor	orior
	cōnāria, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	oriris, -re
	cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	oritur
	cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	orimur
	cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	oriminī
	cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	oriuntur
<i>Imperf.</i>	cōnābar, etc.	verēbar, etc.	sequēbar, etc.	oriēbar, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	oriar
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	ortus sum
<i>Past Perf.</i>	cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	ortus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	cōnātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	ortus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōner, etc.	verear, etc.	sequar, etc.	oriar, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	orirer
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	ortus sim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	ortus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāre	verēre	sequere	orīre
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātor	verētor	sequitor	oritor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnārī	verērī	sequī	orīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	ortus esse
<i>Fut. Active</i>	cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	ortūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. Active</i>	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	oriēns
<i>Fut. Active</i>	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	ortūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	ortus
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	oriendus

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	cōnandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	oriendī, etc.
-------------	---------------	---------------	----------------	---------------

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	cōnātum	veritum	secūtum	ortum
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnātū	veritū	secūtū	ortū

Note that deponent verbs have the following active forms: future infinitive, present participle, future participle, gerund, and supine. The future passive par-

ticiples retains its passive meaning and sometimes the perfect passive participle does.

Future active, future passive, and perfect passive participles are declined like *lātus*, -a, -um.

494.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms in the tenses formed on the present system and passive forms with active meanings in those formed on the perfect system: *audeō, audēre, ausus sum*.

495.

IRREGULAR VERBS

sum be

Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*
Stems: es- *; fū; fut-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUT. PERFECT
<i>sum</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>fui</i>	<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuerō</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fueris</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerit</i>
<i>sumus</i>	<i>erāmus</i>	<i>erimus</i>	<i>fuimus</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>estis</i>	<i>erātis</i>	<i>eritis</i>	<i>fuistis</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>sunt</i>	<i>erant</i>	<i>erunt</i>	<i>fuērunt, -ēre</i>	<i>fuerant</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
<i>sim</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuissem</i>
<i>sis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>fueris</i>	<i>fui ssēs</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fui sset</i>
<i>simus</i>	<i>essēmus</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>	<i>fui ssēmus</i>
<i>sitis</i>	<i>essētis</i>	<i>fueritis</i>	<i>fui ssētis</i>
<i>sint</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>fuerint</i>	<i>fui ssent</i>

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
	Sing.	Pl.		
<i>Pres.</i> 2nd	<i>es</i>	<i>este</i>	<i>Pres.</i> <i>esse</i>	<i>Pres.</i> —
<i>Fut.</i> 2nd	<i>estō</i>	<i>estōte</i>	<i>Perf.</i> <i>fuisse</i>	<i>Perf.</i> —
3rd	<i>estō</i>	<i>suntō</i>	<i>Fut.</i> <i>futūrus esse, fore</i>	<i>Fut.</i> <i>futūrus</i>

496.

possum be able, can

Principal Parts: *possum, posse, potuī, —*

* The stem *es-* changes to *er-* before a vowel: *erō*.

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	possum	possumus	possim	possimus
	potes	potestis	possis	possitis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
<i>Imperf.</i>	poteram, etc.	poterāmus, etc.	possem, etc.	possēmus, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	poterimus	-----	-----
<i>Perf.</i>	potui	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
<i>Past Perf.</i>	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	potuerō	potuerimus	-----	-----

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	posse	<i>Perf.</i> potuisse
		<i>Pres.</i> potēns

497.

ferō bear, carry, endure

Principal Parts: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
Stems: fer-; tul-; lāt-

<i>Active</i>			<i>Passive</i>	
INDICATIVE				
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris, -re	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferēbam, etc.		ferēbar, etc.	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		lātus sum	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	tuleram		lātus eram	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	ferrem	ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim	lātus sim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	tulisses	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE		
<i>Pres. 2nd</i>	fer	ferite
<i>Fut. 2nd</i>	fertō	fertōte
<i>3rd</i>	fertō	feruntō
		ferre
		fertor
		fertor
		ferimini
		feruntor

INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus esse	lātum iri

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
PARTICIPLE			
<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	ferendus
GERUND		SUPINE	
<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī, etc.		lātum, -ū

498. fiō be made, become, happen (passive of faciō)

Principal Parts: fiō, fierī, factus sum
Stems: fi-; fact-

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	fiō	fīmus	<i>Pres.</i>	fiam	fīāmus
	fīs	fītis		fīās	fīātis
	fit	fiunt		fiat	fiant
<i>Imperf.</i>	fiēbam, etc.		<i>Imperf.</i>	fierem, etc.	
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam				
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum		<i>Perf.</i>	factus sim	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	factus eram				
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	factus erō		<i>Past Perf.</i>	factus essem	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>			
<i>Pres.</i>	fi	fite	<i>Pres.</i>	fieri	—
			<i>Perf.</i>	factus esse	factus
			<i>Fut.</i>	factum iri	faciendus
GERUND					
					faciendū, etc.

499. volō nōlō mālō

Principal Parts: volō, velle, voluī, — be willing, will, wish
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — be unwilling, will not
mālō, mālle, mālūī, — be more willing, prefer

INDICATIVE					
<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō		
	vis	nōn vis	māvis		
	vult	nōn vult	māvult		
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus		
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis		
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt		
<i>Imperf.</i>	volēbam, etc.	nōlēbam, etc.	mālēbam, etc.		

<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	volui	nōlui	mālui
<i>Past Perf.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imperf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	voluisssem	nōluisssem	māluisssem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres. 2nd Sing.</i>	—	nōlī	—
<i>2nd Pl.</i>	—	nōlite	—

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns	—
--------------	---------------	---------------	---

500.

eō go

Principal Parts: eō, ire, ii or iui, itus
Stems: i-; i- or iv-; it-

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

IMPERATIVE

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	eō	imus	eam, etc.	<i>2nd Pers.</i>	ī ite
	īs	itis			
	it	eunt			
<i>Imperf.</i>	ibam, etc.		irem		
<i>Fut.</i>	ibō			<i>2nd Pers.</i>	itō itōte
<i>Perf.</i>	ii		ierim	<i>3rd Pers.</i>	itō euntō
<i>Past Perf.</i>	ieram		issem		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ierō				

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

		<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	ire		
<i>Perf.</i>	isse	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
		iēns, euntis	itus
		itūrus	eundus

GERUND

SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i>	eundi, etc.	itum, -ū
-------------	--------------------	-----------------

501.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The active periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the future active participle with forms of *sum*. It expresses future or intended action: *portātūrus sum, I am going to carry; portātūrus eram, I was going to carry*, etc.

The passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the future passive participle with forms of *sum*. It expresses obligation or necessity: *portandus est, he ought to be carried; portandus erat, it was necessary for him to be carried*, etc.

502.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Some verbs are used in the third person singular and in the infinitive without a personal subject: *pluit, it rains; oportet, it is necessary*. Other verbs always used in this way are: *decet, libet, licet, miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, refert, taedet*.

Intransitive verbs are often used impersonally in the passive, third person singular: *ventum est, (it was come) they came; pugnatum est, (it was fought) they fought*.

503.

DEFECTIVE VERBS

Defective verbs lack certain forms. *Coepi* is used only in the perfect system. Its present is supplied by *incipiō*. *Memini* and *ōdi* are perfect in form but present in meaning. Some forms of *aiō* are lacking, but the following ones are in common use: *aiō, ais, ait, aiunt*. *Inquam* is also defective. It is rarely used except in the forms *inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt*.

504.

CONTRACTED FORMS

Forms of the perfect system in *-āvī, -ēvī, or -ōvī* sometimes drop *-v-* and the following vowel before *-r* or *-s*: *portāvisti, portāstī; portāvērunt, portārunt*. Similar forms in *-ivī* drop *-v-* and the following vowel before *-s*, but only *-v-* before *-r*: *audivisti, audistī; audivērunt, audiērunt*.

SYNTAX FOR REFERENCE

THE NOUN

THE APPOSITIVE

505. A noun explaining or describing the object represented by another noun or a pronoun denoting the same person or thing is called an appositive. An appositive always agrees in case with the noun or pronoun it explains: *Persuādet Casticō, Sēquanō, he persuades Casticus, the Sequanian, I, 3.*

THE VOCATIVE CASE

506. The vocative case is used to name the person or thing directly addressed: "*Habētis,*" inquit, "*militēs, quam petistis facultātem,*" "*Soldiers,*" he says, "*you have the opportunity which you have sought,*" VI, 8; "*Quid dubitās,*" inquit, "*Vorēne?*" "*Why,*" he says, "*do you hesitate, Vorenus?*" V, 44.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE

507. The subject. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. The subject of a historical infinitive is also in the nominative case: *Hostēs terga vertunt, the enemy flee, VII, 88; Hostēs ex omnibus partibus decurrere, the enemy rushed down from all directions, III, 4.*

508. The predicate nominative. A predicate nominative is connected with the subject by a form of the verb *sum* or a verb meaning *to become, to be made, to appear*. It is also used with the passive voice of verbs meaning *to call, to choose, to name*, and the like: *Fortissimī sunt Belgae, the Belgians are the bravest, I, 1; Caesar certior factus est, Caesar was informed (made certain), I, 2; Is pāgus appellabātur Tigurīnus, this canton was called Tigurinus, I, 12.*

THE GENITIVE CASE

509. The possessive genitive. The genitive is used to denote the possessor: *In Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant, they had come into the territories of the Aeduans, I, 11.*

a. The genitive with *causā* and *grātiā* is of possessive origin: *Eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur, he thought a delay was interposed on account of this thing, IV, 9.*

b. The possessive genitive is sometimes used in the predicate with *sum* or *faciō*: *Neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam esse Ariovistī, and (he said) that he did not consider that Gaul belonged to Ariovistus (was of Ariovistus), I, 45.*

Note 1. The possessive adjective is regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of a personal or a reflexive pronoun: *Suās civitātisque fortunās eius fidei permissurum, that he would entrust his own fortunes and those of the state to his protection, V, 3.*

Note 2. Instead of the possessive genitive of *alius*, the adjective *aliēnus* is used: *Suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōstāre, they see that their own safety (danger) depends upon the courage of others, VII, 84.*

510. The genitive of the whole. The genitive of the whole is used to designate the whole of which a part is indicated by a noun, pronoun, adjective, or adverb which this genitive modifies: *Milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit, he encamped at the foot of a mountain six miles (six thousand of paces) from Caesar's camp, I, 48; Quid ergō mei cōsiliū est? What then is my plan? VII, 77.*

a. Instead of the genitive of the whole, the ablative with *ē*, *ex*, or *dē* is used with cardinal numerals and *quidā*: *Quidā ex militibus decimae legiōis dixit, a certain soldier of the Tenth Legion said, I, 42.*

511. The genitive of description (quality). The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe or denote a quality: *Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominen audāciae, mittit, he sends Lucterius Cadurcus, a man of very great courage, VII, 5.*

a. The genitive of description is used to denote *measure* with words of *width, depth, and similar ideas*: *Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium, the depth of the river was (of) about three feet, II, 18.*

b. The genitive of description is sometimes used in the predicate: *Erat magni periculī rēs, the thing was extremely dangerous (of great danger), V, 40.*

c. The genitive of description is sometimes used in the predicate to express *indefinite value*: *Cuius auctoritās magni habebātur, his authority was considered great (of great value), IV, 21.*

512. The objective genitive. The genitive is used to denote the *object of an action* implied in a noun or adjective: *Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotidiē spēs, the hope of aid was increasing daily, VI, 7.*

Note. This should not be confused with the *subjective genitive*, which denotes the subject of an action: *amor parentum, love of parents.* This is subjective if it means the love felt by parents. If it means the love felt for parents, it is an objective genitive.

513. The genitive with adjectives (specification). The genitive is used to limit the application of many adjectives denoting *skill, desire, knowledge,*

fullness, memory, similarity, connection, and their opposites: *rei militaris peritissimus*, most skilled in the art of war, I, 21.

514. The genitive with verbs meaning to remember and to forget. The genitive is used with *memini* and *reminiscor* when meaning to be mindful of, and *obliscor*, to be unmindful of: *Cohortatus est Aeduus ut controuersiarum ac dissensionis obliscerentur*, he urged the Aeduans to forget disagreements and discord, VII, 34.

515. The genitive with *potior*. The genitive is sometimes used with *potior*: *Totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant*, they hope they can get possession of all Gaul, I, 3.

THE DATIVE CASE

516. The dative of indirect object. The dative of indirect object is used to denote to, or toward whom or what something is said, given, done, or felt. This use is found in connection with a direct object: *Alteram partem eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram cohortibus attribuit*, one part of this village he granted to the Gauls, the other he assigned to his cohorts, III, 1.

517. The dative with special verbs. The dative of indirect object is used with many intransitive verbs denoting a mental attitude or action; for example, verbs meaning to help, injure, please, displease, persuade, believe, command, obey, trust, distrust, favor, serve, resist, pardon, spare, envy, be angry, and threaten: *Facile hac oratione Nervius persuadet*, with this speech he easily persuades the Nervii, V, 38; *Agriculturae non student*, they do not pay attention to agriculture, VI, 22.

Note. Such verbs used in the passive are impersonal and retain the dative: *Intellēxit neque eis noceri posse*, and he knew that they could not be harmed, III, 14.

518. The dative with compound verbs. The dative of indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and sometimes *circum*: *Eī munitiōni T. Labienum legatum praefecit*, he placed Labienus, the chief of staff, in command of this fortification, I, 10.

519. The dative of reference. The dative of reference is used to denote the person or thing to whom a statement refers, or to whom it is of interest. This dative very often occurs with a dative of purpose: *Quae res magnō usui nostris fuit*, this method was of great advantage to our men, IV, 25; *Praeterita se Diviciacō fratri condonare dicit*, he says he forgives the past for the sake of his brother Diviciacus, I, 20.

a. The dative of reference often has the force of a possessive genitive: *Transfigitur scutum Pullonī*, Pullo's (for Pullo) shield is pierced through, V, 44.

520. The dative of separation. A variation of the dative of reference, called the dative of separation, is used with verbs meaning *to take away*, usually compounds, instead of the ablative of separation: *Hostibus spēs potiundī oppidī discessit*, *hope of getting possession of the town left the enemy*, II, 7.

521. The dative of possession. The dative is used with forms of *sum* to denote the *possessor*: *In mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī*, *no one could (there was power to no one) stand on the wall*, II, 6.

522. The dative of agent. The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the *agent*: *Quārum rerū omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus*, *the risk of all these things was greatly to be feared by (for) our ships*, III, 13.

523. The dative of purpose or tendency. The dative is often used to express *purpose*. This dative usually occurs in combination with a dative of reference: *Praesidiō impedimentis erant*, *they were (for) a protection to the baggage*, II, 19.

524. The dative with adjectives. The dative is used with many adjectives denoting *fitness*, *likeness*, *nearness*, *service*, and their *opposites*: *Helvētiis erat amicus*, *he was friendly to the Helvetians*, I, 9.

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

525. The direct object. The direct object of a finite verb is in the accusative case and denotes that which is produced or that which is affected by the action of the verb: *Castra ex eō locō movent*, *they move the camp from that place*, I, 15.

526. Two accusatives. Verbs meaning *to make*, *to choose*, *to call*, and the like may have a *direct object* and a *predicate accusative*: *Quōs stimulōs nōminābant*, *they called these goads*, VII, 73.

527. The accusative of the person and the thing. Verbs meaning *to inquire*, *to demand*, *to teach*, or *to conceal* may have *two accusatives*, one of the person, and the other of the thing: *Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre*, *Caesar asked the Aeduans for grain*, I, 16.

528. The accusatives with compounds. Verbs compounded with *circum* and *trans* may have *two objects*, one as object of the verb, the other, of the preposition. The accusative with the preposition is retained in the passive voice, and the accusative with the verb becomes the subject. *Exercitum Ligerim trādūcit*, *he leads his army across the Loire*, VII, 11.

529. The accusative of place to which (limit of motion). *Place to which* is expressed by the accusative with the prepositions *ad*, *in*, or *sub*. With *domus*, *rūs*, and names of towns and small islands, the accusative is used without a preposition: *In Italiā profectus est*, *he set out for Italy*, II, 35; *Viennā pervenit*, *he arrives at Vienne*, VII, 9.

530. The accusative of extent. *Extent of time (duration) and of space* is expressed by the accusative case: *Secūtae sunt complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, storms followed for several days*, IV, 34; *Perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur, continuous ditches, each five feet deep, were made*, VII, 73.

a. A neuter pronoun or an adjective of quantity is used as an accusative of extent to express degree: *Multum in rē militārī potest fortūna, fortune is very powerful in military affairs*, VI, 30. *Maximam partem* is sometimes used to express degree: *Maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, they live chiefly on milk and flesh*, IV, 1.

531. The accusative subject of an infinitive. The subject of an infinitive (not historical) is in the accusative case: *Iubet arma trādi, he orders arms to be given up*, VII, 80.

532. The accusative of exclamation. The accusative is often used in exclamations: *Heu mē miserum, alas, wretch that I am!*

533. The accusative with prepositions. The accusative is used with the prepositions *ad, ante, circum, contrā, inter, intrā, ob, per, post, prope, propter, super, trāns, and ultrā*. The accusative is used with *in* and *sub* with verbs of motion.

THE ABLATIVE CASE

534. The ablative of separation. The ablative, with or without the preposition *ā, ab, ē, or ex*, is used to express separation: *Mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, the wall was stripped of defenders*, II, 6.

535. The ablative of place from which. *Place from which* with verbs of motion is expressed by the ablative with a preposition. With *domus, rūs*, and names of towns and small islands, the ablative is used without a preposition: *Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs instrūxērunt, the enemy also led their forces forth from the camp*, II, 8; *Domō excesserant, they had set out from home*, IV, 14.

536. The ablative of source. *Source* is expressed by the ablative, with or without the preposition *ā, ab, dē, ē, or ex*, but usually without a preposition: *Amplissimō genere nātus, sprung from a most illustrious family*, IV, 12.

537. The ablative of accordance. The ablative is used with or without a preposition, *dē or ex*, to express the idea *in accordance with*: *Tum suō mōre conclāmāverunt, then according to their custom they shouted*, IV, 26.

538. The ablative of agent. The ablative with *ā or ab* is used with a passive verb to denote the agent: *Ā senātū populī Rōmāni amicus appellātus erat, he had been called by the Senate a friend of the Roman people*, I, 3.

Note. *Per* with the accusative is sometimes used instead of an ablative, when the agent is thought of as a means: *Haec quoque per explorātōrēs*

ad hostēs dēferuntur, *these things, too, are reported to the enemy by (through) scouts*, VI, 7.

539. The ablative of comparison. The ablative may be used with a comparative instead of *quam* with a nominative or accusative: *Castra amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant*, *the camp extended more than eight miles in width*, II, 7.

Note. With the comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, or *longius*, without *quam*, a word of measure or number is often used with no change in the case: *Spatium est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum*, *the distance is not more than six hundred feet*, I, 38.

540. The ablative of cause. The ablative, generally without a preposition, is used to express *cause*: *Levitāte animi novis imperiis studēbant*, *they were eager for new forms of government because of their instability of mind*, II, 1; *Rei frumentāriae commeātūque causā morātur*, *he delays on account of grain and supplies*, I, 30.

541. The ablative of accompaniment. The ablative with *cum* is used to express *accompaniment* and other ideas of *connection*: *Germāni magnā cum multitudine flūmen trānsiērunt*, *the Germans with a great number crossed the river*, IV, 1; *Cum Germānis contendunt*, *they struggle with the Germans*, I, 1; *Parvulis proeliis cum nostris contendēbant*, *they fought in minor battles with our men*, II, 30.

Note. In military phrases *cum* is often omitted if the ablative is modified by any other than a numerical adjective: *Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit*, *he himself hurried there with infantry*, III, 11.

542. The ablative of manner. The ablative, with or without *cum*, is used to express the *manner* in which an act is performed. If the ablative has an adjective modifier, *cum* may be omitted: *Incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victoriā Caesaris fāma perfertur*, *the report concerning Caesar's victory spread with incredible speed*, V, 53.

543. The ablative of attendant circumstance. The ablative, usually without *cum*, is used to denote a *circumstance attending the action* expressed by a verb: *Intellegēbat magnō cum periculō Prōvinciae futurum*, *he knew that it would be very dangerous (with great danger) to the Province*, I, 10.

544. The ablative of description (quality). The ablative with a qualifying word is used to *describe* or to *denote quality*. The ablative is regularly used to describe *physical qualities*, the genitive for measure: *Ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti*, *they were known (as men) of marked courage*, I, 28; *Capillō sunt prōmissō*, *they let their hair grow (they are of long hair)*, V, 14.

545. The ablative absolute. The equivalent of a clause may be expressed by a phrase consisting of the ablative of a noun or pronoun with a participle or adjective in agreement with it, or with another noun in the ablative case.

This phrase, called the *ablative absolute*, may express a variety of ideas: *time, cause, condition, manner, opposition, and attendant circumstance*. This construction should be translated by a clause expressing the idea which fits the context:

Rēgnō occupātō, tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant, they hope that after they have seized the royal power (the royal power having been seized) they can get possession of all Gaul, I, 3.

L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus, when Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius were consuls (L. Piso and A. Gabinius being consuls), I, 6.

Quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, ire nōn poterant, through this (way) they could not go if the Sequanians were unwilling, I, 9.

Paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit, although there were but few defenders, he was not able to take it (the town) by storm, II, 12.

546. The ablative of means. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote the means by which an act is performed: *Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit*, he fortified this place with a wall and a ditch, III, 1.

547. The ablative with special deponent verbs. The ablative is used with *ūt, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor*, and their compounds: *Sine contentiōne oppidō potitur*, he gets possession of the town without a struggle, VII, 58.

548. The ablative of price. The ablative is used to denote definite price or value, and indefinite price or value with *pretiō* or a word of similar meaning, modified by an adjective: *Quae impēnsō parant pretiō*, these they obtain at an extravagant price, IV, 2.

549. The ablative of the way by which. The ablative is used to denote the road by which one goes: *Erant omninō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent*, there were only two routes by which they could go from home, I, 6.

550. The ablative of measure (degree) of difference. The ablative is used with comparatives and other words which imply comparison to denote the measure of difference: *Alterum (iter) per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius (erat)*, the other way was through our province, much easier (easier by much) and more unobstructed, I, 6.

551. The ablative of specification. The ablative is used to denote that in respect to which a statement is made: *Erat Rōmānis nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō*, neither in place nor in number was it a fair contest for the Romans, VII, 48.

a. The ablative of specification is used with *dignus* and *indignus*: *Accidit, inspectantibus nobis, quod dignum memoriā visum*, there happened in our sight something which seemed worthy of memory, VII, 25.

552. The ablative of place where. The ablative with the preposition *in* is regularly used to express place where: *Quae civitās est in Prōvinciā*, a state which is in the Province, I, 10.

a. **Locus, pars**, and several other nouns may be used in the ablative without a preposition to denote *place where*. A preposition is rarely used with any noun modified by *tôtus*: *Vulgō tōtis castris testāmenta obsignābantur*, *everywhere in the whole camp wills were being signed*, I, 39.

b. With the names of towns and small islands and with *domus* and *rūs*, the locative case is used.

553. **The ablative of time.** The ablative without a preposition is used to express *time when* or *time within which*: *Diē septimō pervenit*, *he arrives on the seventh day*, I, 10; *Castra movet diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit*, *he moves camp and within about fifteen days reaches the territory of the Belgians*, II, 2.

a. *Duration of time* is sometimes expressed by the ablative instead of the accusative: *Omnibusque annīs dē locō summis similitudinibus contendebant*, *through all the years with the greatest rivalry they had striven for the place*, V, 44.

554. **The ablative with prepositions.** The ablative is used with the prepositions *ab*, *absque*, *cōram*, *cum*, *dē*, *ex*, *prae*, *prō*, *sine*.

THE LOCATIVE CASE

555. The locative case is used to express *place where* with the names of towns and small islands and with *domus* and *rūs*. In the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions, it has the same form as the genitive. Elsewhere, it has the same form as the ablative: *Rōmae diērum viginti supplicatiō redditur*, *a thanksgiving of twenty days is proclaimed at Rome*, VII, 90; *Illī domī remanent*, *they remain at home*, IV, 1.

THE PRONOUN

556. **The personal pronoun.** A personal pronoun is used as the subject of a finite verb only to express *emphasis* or *contrast*: *Ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō*, *I shall at least have done my duty to my country and to my general*, IV, 25.

a. The lack of a personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by a demonstrative, a relative, or the reflexive *suī*: *Ad eum in castra vēnērunt suī pūrgandī causā*, *they came into camp to him for the purpose of excusing themselves*, IV, 13.

557. **The reflexive pronoun.** The reflexive pronoun in an independent clause regularly refers to the grammatical or to the logical subject of the clause: *Sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdērunt*, *they surrendered themselves and all their (possessions) without delay*, II, 15.

a. In a dependent clause the reflexive pronoun may refer to the subject of the principal clause, if the subordinate clause expresses the thought of

the person denoted by the subject of the main clause. When so used it is called an *indirect reflexive*: *Ōrant ut sibi parcat, they beg that he spare them*, VI, 9.

558. The intensive pronoun. The intensive pronoun *ipse* is used alone or in apposition with a substantive to add *emphasis*. Often it may be translated by *self*, or *very own*, or some other expression which fits the context: *Ipse adit reliquōs, he himself goes to the others*, VII, 86.

Note. The intensive *ipse* may be used in a subordinate clause as an indirect reflexive: *Nihil quod ipsis esset indignum committēbant, they did nothing which was unworthy of themselves*, V, 35.

559. The indefinite pronoun and adjective. *Quidam*, a certain one, refers to a person or thing known but not necessary to name; *quis* or *quī*, *someone*, is very indefinite and used in Caesar only with *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and some interrogative words; *aliquis*, *someone*, is more definite; *quisquam*, *anyone*, and *ullus*, *anyone*, are used in negative sentences or interrogative sentences implying a negative: *Quidam ex his nocte ad Nervios pervēnērunt, certain ones of (from) these came by night to the Nervii*, II, 17; *Sī quī eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt, if anyone has not abided by their decrees, they exclude him from the sacrifices*, VI, 13; *Neque hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, nor within the memory of man has anyone been found*, III, 22.

560. The relative pronoun and adjective. The relative pronoun refers to an antecedent with which it agrees in gender and number. Its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands: *Hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt, men believe that which they wish (to believe)*, III, 18.

a. The relative pronoun is never omitted; sometimes its antecedent is repeated or incorporated in the relative clause in the same case as the relative pronoun: *Diem dicunt quā diē ad ripam Rhodani omnēs conveniant, they name a day when (on which day) all are to assemble on the banks of the Rhone*, I, 6.

b. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is often omitted: *Quod iussī sunt faciunt, they do that which they have been ordered*, III, 6.

c. The antecedent of a relative pronoun may be the idea expressed in a clause: *Diērum quīndecim supplicatiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli, a thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed, (a thing) which before this time has happened to no one*, II, 35.

d. When a relative clause contains a predicate noun indicating the same person or thing as the antecedent, the relative pronoun usually agrees with the predicate noun: *Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus, Cn. Pompeiō M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Rhēnum trānsiērunt, during that winter which followed, which was the year that Gnaeus Pompeius and Marcus Crassus were consuls, the Usipetes crossed the Rhine*, IV, 1.

e. A relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence to connect with and refer to an antecedent or an idea in the preceding sentence. A relative so used should be translated by a demonstrative or a personal pronoun: *Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs, when this was heard, they all shouted*, III, 18.

561. The demonstrative pronoun and adjective. The demonstrative pronouns are *hic*, *is*, *ille*, *iste*, and *idem*. They may also be used as adjectives.

a. *Hic*, *this*, refers to what is near the speaker in time, place, or thought; *ille*, *that*, to what is remote. When used to point out a contrast, *hic* refers to the latter and *ille* to the former: *Hōs illi diligenter tuēbantur, the former guarded the latter diligently*, VI, 12; *Id quod volunt, that which they wish*, III, 18.

b. *Is*, *this* or *that*, is more indefinite in its reference than *hic* or *ille*. It takes the place of the personal pronoun of the third person and often is used as the antecedent of a relative: *Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, he did it especially for this reason*, I, 28.

c. *Iste*, *that of yours*, refers to that which is near the person addressed or which concerns him. It often has a contemptuous force: *Animi est ista mollitia, that is weakness of mind on your part (that weakness of mind of yours)*, VII, 77.

d. *Idem*, *the same*, is often used with the force of *also* and *likewise*: *Haec eadem mandābant, they demanded these (same things) too*, VII, 17.

e. *Alius . . . alius* is often used idiomatically as a condensed expression for *one . . . one . . . another . . . another*: *Alii aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur, some terrified were borne in one direction and others in another*, II, 24.

THE ADJECTIVE

562. An adjective or any word used as an adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies. An adjective modifying two or more nouns may be plural or agree with the nearest noun.

563. The participial adjective. A participle which modifies a noun is classified as an adjective and agrees with the noun in gender, number, and case: *In nostrōs venientēs tela coniciēbant, they threw weapons on our men as they came (coming)*, I, 26; *Hāc oratiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iurandum dant, influenced by this speech they pledge their word and take an oath*, I, 3.

564. The possessive adjective. A possessive adjective is used only to make the meaning clear, to give emphasis, or to indicate contrast: *Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, Caesar leads his forces to the nearest hill*, I, 22.

a. *His, her, its, and their*, when not reflexive, are expressed by the genitive of the demonstrative pronoun, not by *suus*: *Dē eius adventū Helvētī certiorēs factī sunt*, *the Helvetians were informed about his arrival*, I, 7.

565. The adjective and participle used substantively. Adjectives and participles are frequently used as substantives: *Recessum primīs ultimī nōn dabant*, *those in the rear ranks did not give those in the front ranks a chance to withdraw*, V, 43.

566. The comparative and superlative. The comparative of an adjective is sometimes translated by the positive with *quite, rather, too, or somewhat*, and the superlative by the positive with *very*. The superlative with *quam* denotes the highest degree possible: *Horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū, they are quite frightful-looking in battle*, V, 11; *Constituērunt sēmentēs quam maximās facere*, *they decided to make as large sowings as possible*, I, 3.

567. Special uses of the adjective. a. An adjective is sometimes used to designate a part of the object to which it refers. The adjectives very commonly used in this way are *summus*, *infimus*, *medius*, *primus*, and *reliquus*: *summus mōns*, *the top of the mountain*; *infimus collis*, *the foot of the hill*; *ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit*, *meanwhile he himself drew up a triple line of battle half way up the hill*, I, 24.

b. In Latin an adjective is often used when in English an adverb would be used: *Eis qui primī mūrum ascendissent praemia proposuit*, *to those who first ascended the wall he offered rewards*, VII, 27.

THE VERB

AGREEMENT

568. The agreement of the verb with its subject. A finite verb and its subject agree in person and number. The participle of a compound tense form of a verb agrees with the subject in number, case, and gender: *Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum cōfectum est*, *by this battle the war of the Veneti was finished*, III, 16.

a. A verb with a compound subject may be plural or agree with the nearest subject. Two or more subjects may have a singular verb when they are thought of together, that is, as a unit: *Reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē munitiōque defendit*, *the place itself and the fortification defends the other approaches*, VI, 37.

b. A collective noun may have a singular or a plural verb; if the individuals are thought of, it is plural: *Multitudō in oppidum convēnit*, *a great number assembled in the town*, II, 12; *Civitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent*, *he persuaded the citizens (the state) to go out from their territories with all their supplies*, I, 2.

569. The impersonal use of verbs. Intransitive verbs may be used impersonally: *Ut erat ei praeceptum*, as he had been ordered (as had been ordered to him), I, 22.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

570. The present tense. The present tense corresponds to the English present tense: *Galli appellantur*, they are called Gauls, I, 1.

a. The *historical present* is used in narrative for the sake of vividness to express a past act as present. It is often best translated by a past tense: *Oppida muniunt*, they fortified (fortify) the towns, III, 9.

571. The imperfect tense. The imperfect tense represents an action as continuing, customary, repeated, or attempted in the past: *Multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitabant*, many things were urging Caesar to this war, III, 10; *Crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant*, they kept making frequent sallies from the town, II, 30; *Nostrōs intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant*, they were trying to keep our men from advancing inside the fortifications, V, 9. The imperfect is also used to denote situation under which a main act occurred: *Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter patefierī volēbat*, His reason for sending was because he wished a road opened, III, 1.

572. The future tense. The Latin future tense corresponds to the English future tense, but, since in Latin time is expressed with much more exactness than in English, the future tense is often used when in English the present tense is used: *Hic diēs dē nostris contrōversiis iudicābit*, this day will decide our quarrel, V, 44.

Note. Future time is sometimes expressed by the active periphrastic conjugation. See 501.

573. The perfect tense. The perfect tense corresponds to the (1) present perfect tense (*has, have*) in English, which represents an action completed at the present time, and (2) the past tense in English, which represents an action completed at an indefinite past time: *Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt*, for they have never waged war on other terms, VII, 77; *Caesar in Galliam vēnit*, Caesar came into Gaul, VI, 12.

574. The past perfect (pluperfect) tense. The past perfect tense corresponds to the past perfect tense in English, which represents an action as completed at or before a past time: *Ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant castris idōneum locum dēlēgit*, beyond that place in which the Germans had settled he chose a place suitable for a camp, I, 49.

575. The future perfect tense. The future perfect tense corresponds to the future perfect tense in English, but is used with much more precision and frequency than in English. It represents an action completed before some future time: *Meum rei publicae atque imperatōri officium praestiterō*, I shall have done my duty to my state and to my general, IV, 25.

576. The verbs with incomplete tenses. The perfect and past perfect tenses of *nōscō*, *cognōscō*, *cōsuēscō*, and the defectives *meminī* and *ōdi* represent a state resulting from an action and are translated by the present and imperfect respectively: *Temperantiam Diviciaci cognōverat*, he knew the self-control of Diviciacus, I, 19.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

577. The tense groups. Primary or principal tenses are those which denote present or future time. In the indicative they are the present, present perfect (definite time), future, and future perfect tenses. In the subjunctive they are the present to express incomplete action, and the perfect to express completed action.

Secondary or historical tenses are those which denote past time. In the indicative they are the imperfect, perfect (indefinite time), and past perfect tenses. In the subjunctive they are the imperfect to express incomplete action, and the past perfect to express completed action.

578. The rules of sequence. In general, a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive in the subordinate clause; a secondary tense, by a secondary tense: *Veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare*, they come promising (to promise) to give hostages, IV, 21; *Cum ab eis quaereret quae civitatēs in armis essent, sic reperiebāt*, when he asked them what states were in arms, he found this, II, 4.

a. In a result clause. In a result clause depending upon a secondary tense, the perfect tense is sometimes used: *Fuit hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus ut ad insignia accomodanda tempus dēfuerit*, the mind of the enemy was so prepared for fighting that time was lacking for fitting on their decorations, II, 21.

b. The historical present. The historical present, which is considered sometimes a primary tense and sometimes a secondary tense, is found with either the primary or secondary sequence, usually secondary: *Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat*, he commands him to go to the Remi and the rest of the Belgians, III, 11; *Dumnorigi ut idem cōnārētur persuadet*, he persuaded Dumnorix to attempt the same, I, 3.

MOOD

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

579. The indicative mood is used to state a fact or to ask a question of fact: *Vēnī, vidī, vicī*, I came, I saw, I conquered, Suetonius, *Life of Julius Caesar*; *Quid dubitās*, why do you hesitate? V, 44.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

580. The volitive subjunctive. The subjunctive is used to express an act as *willed* or *desired*. The negative is *nē*.

a. A command. The volitive subjunctive is used to express a command in the first and third persons. In conversational Latin it is sometimes used in the second person instead of the imperative. See *Imperative*, 611. In *cōsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus*, in adopting a plan let us consider all Gaul, VII, 77; *Sibi habeant arma*, let them have their arms, CICERO, *Dē Senectūte*, 58.

b. The deliberative question. The volitive subjunctive is used in questions of deliberation, perplexity or indignation, or questions asking the will or advice of the one addressed: *Quid faciam*, What shall I do? TERENCE, *Phormio*, 199.

581. The optative subjunctive. The subjunctive is used to express a wish. It is often introduced by *utinam*; the negative is *nē*. A wish that is thought of as impossible of realization is in the imperfect or the past perfect tense. *Ad senectūtem utinam perveniātis*, may you come to old age, CICERO, *Dē Senectūte*, 85; *Utinam Clōdīus viveret*, I wish Clodius were alive.

582. The potential subjunctive. The subjunctive is used to express a possibility. The negative is *nōn*. *Errāverim* fortasse quī mē aliquid putāvi, perhaps I may have made a mistake in thinking I was somebody, PLINY, *Epistula*, I, 23

a. The potential subjunctive is often used in the second person with indefinite force to express the idea *one (you) can*: *Videās*, one can see; *audirēs*, one could hear.

THE INDICATIVE AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

583. Determinative. The verb in a relative clause which merely points out *who* or *what* object is meant by an antecedent otherwise incomplete, or which states a fact about a definite antecedent, is in the indicative: *Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt*, they are nearest to the Germans, who live across the Rhine, I, 1.

584. Descriptive (characteristic). The verb in a relative clause that describes or gives a characteristic of the object named by an indefinite antecedent is in the subjunctive. Such a clause answers the question *what sort of* and follows indefinite expressions: *Sunt quī dicant*, there are those who

say; *Nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret*, nor was there anyone who was eager for booty, VII, 28.

a. A relative descriptive clause may express cause, concession, or condition: *Titūrius, qui nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre*, Titurius, since he had provided nothing beforehand, was frightened, V, 33.

585. Purpose. The verb in a relative clause expressing purpose is in the subjunctive: *Dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant*, they call for (men) to begin the war, VII, 1.

a. The ablative *quō* is frequently used as the introductory word of a purpose clause containing an adjective or adverb in the comparative: *Lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōplās sustinēre possint*, they send ambassadors to ask aid that they may more easily withstand the attack of the enemy, VII, 5.

THE ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

586. Purpose is generally expressed by a clause introduced by *ut*, *that*, or *nē*, *that not*, with its verb in the subjunctive: *Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit*, Caesar hastens that he may take part in the battle, VII, 87; *Praesidiō relicto nē quis ab hīs subito mōtus orerētur*, a garrison had been left for fear that (in order that . . . not) some uprising might suddenly start from them, VI, 9.

THE CLAUSE OF RESULT

587. Result is regularly expressed by a clause introduced by *ut*, *that*, or *ut nōn*, *that not*, with its verb in the subjunctive: *Tanta rērum commutatio est facta ut nostrī proelium redintegrarent*, so great a change of affairs was made that our men renewed the battle, II, 27. A result clause may also be introduced by a relative pronoun.

THE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE

588. A substantive clause is a clause which is used as a noun. It may be the subject of a verb or used in any other noun relation.

589. The substantive volitive clause. A clause used as the object of a verb expressing will or desire, meaning *to command, induce, advise, ask, allow, or strive*, has its verb in the subjunctive. The introductory word is *ut* or *nē*: *Universi ab eō nē id faceret petēbant*, all begged him not to do it, VII, 17.

Note. With *iubeō*, *I order*, and *vetō*, *I forbid*, the infinitive with subject accusative is used: *Titum Labiēnum summum iugum montis ascendere iubet*, he orders Titus Labienus to climb to the highest crest of the mountain, I, 21.

590. The substantive clause of hindering. A clause introduced by *nē*, *quīn*, or *quōminus*, dependent upon a verb meaning *to hinder, prevent, or*

refuse, has its verb in the subjunctive: *Nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quōminus in portum venīre possent*, the ships were kept by the wind from being able to come into the port, IV, 22.

Note. Caesar uses *prohibeō* with an infinitive.

591. The substantive clause of doubting. A clause dependent upon a word denoting *doubt* or *ignorance* in which a negative is expressed or implied has its verb in the subjunctive. It is introduced by *quīn*: *Nōn dubitāre quīn gravissimum supplicium sūmat*, (he says that) he does not doubt that he will inflict very severe punishment, I, 31.

Note. With *dubitō* meaning *to hesitate*, the infinitive is regularly used.

592. The substantive clause of fearing. A clause used as the object of a verb meaning *to fear* has its verb in the subjunctive. It is introduced by *ut*, *that not*, or *nē*, *that*: *Nē Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur*, he was afraid that he would offend the feelings of *Diviciacus*, I, 19.

593. The substantive clause of result. The subjunctive is used in a substantive clause as the object of a verb meaning *to bring about* or *to accomplish*, or as the subject of an impersonal verb meaning *to happen*: *Fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur*, they brought it about that their departure seemed like flight, II, 11; *Quod ferē plērisque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum memoriā remittant*, this, as a rule, happens to many, that through their reliance upon written records they lose their memories, VI, 14.

a. An *ut* clause in apposition with an expression such as *iūs est*, *mōs est*, or *cōnsuetūdō est*, or with a neuter pronoun or noun, has its verb in the subjunctive: *Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuetūdinis uti viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōsistere cōgant*, for this is (of) a Gallic custom to force travelers to stop, even against their wills, IV, 5.

594. The *quod* clause of fact. A substantive clause with its verb in the indicative introduced by *quod*, *the fact that*, may be used as subject, predicate, object, or appositive: *Accēdēbat quod dolēbant*, there was added the fact that they grieved, III, 2.

THE INDIRECT QUESTION

595. An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive. It is a substantive clause dependent upon a verb meaning *to ask* or *to inquire* or other expression suggestive of an interrogative idea. It is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, adverb, or particle: *Quid fieri velit* *ēdocet*, he shows what he wishes to be done, III, 18.

THE TEMPORAL CLAUSE

596. *Cum* with the indicative. A *cum* clause used to point out a definite time, often with *tum*, *eō tempore*, or a similar expression of time, has its

verb in the indicative mood. *Cum primum*, as soon as, is used in the same way: *Cum primum per anni tempus potuit*, ad exercitum contendit, as soon as the time of year made it possible, he hastened to the army, III, 9; *Cum omnis iuventūs eō convēnerant*, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat cōgerant, not only had all the young men gathered there, but they had also gathered together all the ships they had anywhere, III, 16; *Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit*, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aedui, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aeduians were leaders of the one faction, VI, 12.

a. Repeated action. A *cum* clause with its verb in the indicative may express repeated action, whenever: *Cum eius generis cōpia dēficit*, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt, whenever a supply of this kind fails, they even resort to the punishment of the innocent, VI, 16.

597. *Cum* with the subjunctive (*Cum*-circumstantial). A *cum* clause which gives the situation or circumstance under which the action of the main verb occurred has its verb in the subjunctive. The tense used is the imperfect or the past perfect: *Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā*, crābī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, when Caesar was in hither Gaul, frequent rumors kept coming to him, II, 1.

598. *Antequam* or *priusquam* with the indicative. A clause introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam* which states an actual fact has its verb in the indicative. These conjunctions are often written as two words, *ante* or *prius* in the principal clause and *quam* in the dependent: *Nec prius ille est relictus locus quam finis est pugnandī factus*, that place was not abandoned before an end of fighting was made, VII, 25.

599. *Antequam* or *priusquam* with the subjunctive. A clause introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam* has its verb in the subjunctive when it expresses an act as anticipated or foreseen: *Prius omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset*, he collected all into one place before his arrival could be reported to the Arverni, VII, 9.

600. *Dum* with the indicative. A clause introduced by *dum*, *quoad*, *quam diū*, or *dōnec*, when the introductory word means as long as, while, or until, has its verb in the indicative: *Proinde abīte dum est facultās*, go then while there is an opportunity, VII, 50.

Note. A clause introduced by *dum*, meaning while in the sense of the time during which, regularly has its verb in the present indicative regardless of the tense of the verb in the main clause: *Dum haec geruntur*, discesserunt, while these things were (are) being done, they departed, IV, 34.

601. *Dum* with the subjunctive. A clause introduced by *dum*, until, expressing anticipation or intention, has its verb in the subjunctive: *Dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent*, ad hōram nōnam expectāvit, he waited up to the ninth hour until the rest of the ships should assemble at that place, IV, 23.

602. *Postquam* with the indicative. A clause introduced by *postquam*, *simul*, *simul atque* (*ac*), *ubi*, or *ut* meaning *as* or *when*, has its verb in the indicative, usually in the historical present or the perfect tense: *Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit*, *after he noticed this, Caesar led his forces to the nearest hill*, I, 24; *Ubi ea diēs venit, Carnutēs Cēnabum concurrunt*, *when that day arrives, they rush to Cenabum*, VII, 3; *Dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est*, *about the fourth watch he set out, as he had said (that he would do)*, I, 41.

THE CAUSAL CLAUSE

603. The causal clause with *quod*. A clause introduced by *quod*, *quia*, or *quoniam* has its verb in the indicative when it states the reason of the writer or speaker: *Quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat*, *because he was nearing the enemy, according to his custom Caesar led six legions without baggage*, II, 19.

a. A causal clause giving the reason of someone other than the speaker or writer has its verb in the subjunctive: *Quod sit dēstitūtus queritur*, *he complains because he was abandoned*, I, 16.

b. *Nōn quod*, *not because*, and *quam quō*, *than because*, suggest a cause as to the truth of which a denial is made or implied.

604. The causal clause with *cum*. *Cum* meaning *since* introduces a clause with its verb in the subjunctive: *Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt*, *the Aedui, since they could not defend themselves and their property from these, sent envoys to Caesar*, I, 11.

THE ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSE

605. With the indicative. *Quamquam* or *etsi* introduces a concessive clause with its verb in the indicative: *Eī, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs*, *although they are of the same class, they are more civilized than the rest*, IV, 3.

606. With the subjunctive. *Cum*, *quamvis*, *licet*, or *ut*, with the concessive or adversative meaning *although*, introduces a clause with its verb in the subjunctive: *Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquēbat*, *Cicero, although he was in very poor health, did not leave himself time for rest even at night*, V, 40.

THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE

The two parts of a conditional sentence are called the condition (*protasis*) and the conclusion (*apodosis*). The usual introductory word of the condition is *sī*, *nisi*, or *sīn*. There are three types of conditions.

607. The condition of fact. A conditional sentence which assumes a fact to be true in present, past, or future time regularly has the verb in the indicative in both the condition and the conclusion. In the future and future perfect tenses, this condition is sometimes called the *future more vivid*: *Sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent, if anything too serious shall have happened, they will demand an account from you*, V, 30.

608. The condition of possibility (should . . . would). A conditional sentence which denotes a *possibility* in future time regularly has the verb in both clauses in the present or perfect subjunctive. This type of condition is sometimes called *future less vivid*: *Neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem, and if he should do otherwise, he would not have any authority among his people*, VI, 11.

609. The contrary to fact condition. A conditional sentence in which the idea of the condition and conclusion is represented as being *contrary to fact* has its verb in the subjunctive in both the condition and the conclusion. The tenses in a contrary to fact conditional sentence do not follow the rule for sequence of tenses. The imperfect tense regularly denotes present time and the past perfect, past time: *Ego hanc sententiam probārem, sī nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūram vidērem, I would approve of this opinion, if I saw no other loss than that of our lives*, VII, 77; *Ego hanc sententiam probāvīsem, sī nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūrum vīdissem, I would have approved of this opinion, if I had seen no other loss than that of our lives*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

610. A clause dependent upon another clause, the verb of which is in the subjunctive and forms an essential part of the whole idea, often has its verb in the subjunctive: *Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs, he orders him to visit as many states as possible*, IV, 21.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

611. The imperative mood is used to express a command in the second person: *Vōbīs cōsulite, look out for yourselves*, VII, 50. (In Latin, there is a third person in the future imperative, which is rarely used.) For the *Volitive Subjunctive*, see 580.

a. The imperative of *nōlō* (*nōllī, nōlīte*) with a complementary infinitive is regularly used to express a negative command: *Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, do not (be unwilling) rob them of your help*, VII, 77.

THE INFINITIVE

612. The infinitive, like a finite verb, has voice and tense and may be modified by an adverb. Its tenses are the present, the perfect, and the future.

613. The infinitive as subject or object. Like a noun, the infinitive is often used as the subject or object of a verb and may be modified by a neuter adjective. It is used (usually in the present) with impersonal verbs and verbal phrases, such as *decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, fās est, opus est, and tempus est*: *Hospitem violāre fās (esse) nōn putant, they do not think it is right to harm a guest*, VI, 23.

The infinitive with subject accusative is used as the object of verbs of saying, knowing, and similar meanings. For this use, see Indirect Discourse, 616-620.

614. Complementary. Many verbs such as *possum, cōnor, and coepi* have their meaning completed by a present infinitive: *Iter in ea loca facere coepit, he began to make a journey into those places*, IV, 7.

615. Historical. The present infinitive, with a subject nominative, may be used in vivid narrative with the force of a past tense: *Diem ex diē Aedui dūcere, the Aeduians put him off from day to day*, I, 16.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

616. Indirect discourse is dependent on a verb of *saying, perceiving, ascertaining, thinking, knowing, or remembering*. It represents the words or thoughts of someone, in indirect form, without quoting the exact words.

The direct quotation in the sentence, *He said, "I am going,"* when changed to the indirect, (*He said*) *that he was going*, shows that in English changes of pronoun, person, and tense must be made in quoting indirectly. In Latin, indirect discourse also involves these changes. Indirect discourse is easier to understand if it is turned into the direct form and translated as direct speech instead of indirect.

THE TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

617. The present infinitive usually denotes an action going on at the same time as that indicated by the verb on which it depends: *Dicit sē vidēre, he says that he sees; Dixit sē vidēre, he said that he saw*.

618. The perfect infinitive denotes an action that is complete at the time indicated by the verb on which it depends: *Dicit sē vīdisse, he says that he saw; Dixit sē vīdisse, he said that he had seen*.

619. The future infinitive denotes an action that is to take place after the time indicated by the verb on which it depends: *Dicit sē visūrum esse, he says that he will see; Dixit sē visūrum esse, he said that he would see.*

THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

620. The indirect statement. The verb in a principal clause of a declarative sentence becomes an infinitive (with subject accusative) in indirect discourse: *(Dicunt) id esse facile, (they say) this is easy, VII, 1.*

621. The indirect question. The verb of a real (not rhetorical) question is in the subjunctive in indirect discourse: *Cum quaereret quae civitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent, sic reperiēbat, when he asked what and how great states were in arms, he found out this, II, 4.*

622. The indirect command. The verb of a command or order, expressed by an imperative or by a volitive subjunctive in the direct discourse, is in the subjunctive in indirect discourse: *Nē sē armīs dēspoliāret, (they begged that) he should not despoil them of their arms, II, 31.* The direct form would be, *Nōli nōs armīs dēspoliāre, do not despoil us of our arms.*

The tenses of the subjunctive follow the regular rule of sequence of tenses.

623. The subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The verb in a subordinate, or dependent, clause in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive mood. Its sequence is determined by the verb governing the indirect discourse, except in the case of a clause dependent upon a perfect infinitive in which case the sequence is secondary. *(Dixerunt) sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ab eō petere vellent, they said that they had certain things that they wished to ask him, I, 30.*

If a subordinate clause is not a part of the indirect discourse, but is introduced by the author to explain or emphasize a fact, its verb is in the indicative.

a. The conditional sentence. The tense of the verb of a condition, except in a contrary to fact condition, in which the tense *never* changes, is governed by that of the verb on which the indirect discourse depends. The verb of the conclusion appears as an infinitive:

INDIRECT *(Dicit) sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre, that if he (Caesar) wishes anything of him, it is fitting for that one (Caesar) to come to him, I, 34.*

(Dixit) sī quid ille sē vellet, illum ad sē venīre oportēre, that if he wished anything of him, it was fitting for that one to come to him.

DIRECT *Sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet, if he wishes anything of me, it is fitting for him to come to me.*

Note. A future perfect indicative becomes a perfect subjunctive when dependent on a primary tense, and a past perfect subjunctive when dependent on a secondary tense:

- INDIRECT *Diviciacus facit verba: quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificātūrum (esse), Diviciacus says that if he should do this, he would increase the influence of the Aeduans among all the Belgians, II, 14.*
- DIRECT *Quod si feceris, . . . amplificābis, if you do (shall have done) this, you will increase. . . .*
- INDIRECT *Caesar respondit: sē civitatem cōservātūrum (esse), si priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent, Caesar replied that he would spare the state, if they (should have) surrendered before the battering ram (should have) touched the wall, II, 32.*
- DIRECT *Civitatem cōservābō, si . . . vōs dēdideritis, I will save the state, if you will have surrendered. . . .*

624. **Implied indirect discourse.** The subjunctive is often used instead of the indicative in a subordinate clause to indicate that the thought expressed is that of someone other than the writer or speaker: *Veniēbant Aedui questum, quod Harūdēs finēs eōrum populārentur, the Aeduans came to complain because (as they said) the Harudes were devastating their territory, I, 37.*

THE PARTICIPLE

625. **The tense and use of the participle.** A participle is a verbal adjective denoting time relative to that of the verb in its clause. It may express, according to the context, a variety of ideas, such as *time, manner, means, situation, opposition, and condition*: *Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur, there L. Cotta is killed while fighting, V, 37; Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, (having been) driven back by the cavalry, they hid in the woods, V, 9.*

626. **The perfect participle equivalent to the present participle.** The perfect participle of some deponent verbs is used with a present meaning, *veritus, arbitrātus, cōnātus, secūtus, ūsus, cōnfisus, and gāvīsus*: *Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinēri iussit, Caesar, rejoicing that these had come into his power, ordered them to be held, IV, 13.*

627. **The perfect participle equivalent to a coordinate clause.** The perfect participle is often equivalent to a coordinate clause: *Equitātū circumventōs interfecērunt, they surrounded (them) with the cavalry and killed them (they killed them having been surrounded), II, 10.*

628. **The future participle.** See *Active Periphrastic Conjugation, 501, Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, 501, and Gerundive, 630.*

THE GERUND

629. The gerund is a verbal noun, active in meaning, used in the neuter singular, and lacking the nominative case. It is never used as the subject or object of a verb. It may have an object except when it is dependent upon a preposition or is in the dative case: *Certam diem conveniendī dicit, he sets a definite day of meeting*, V, 57; *Aliōs territandō aliōs cohortandō magnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit, by terrifying some and by urging others, he kept a great part of Gaul in allegiance*, V, 54.

a. The accusative of the gerund is used as the object of a preposition, usually *ad*, to express purpose: *Lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum, he replied to the envoys that he would take time (a day) for deliberating*, I, 7.

b. The genitive of the gerund with *causā* also expresses purpose: *speculandī causā, for the purpose of spying*, I, 47.

THE GERUNDIVE

630. The gerundive is the future passive participle, used as a verbal adjective agreeing with a noun, and expressing the leading idea of the phrase of which it is a part. It is translated like a gerund with a direct object: *Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendi, these were the difficulties of waging war*, III, 10.

a. The gerundive modifying a noun in the genitive case with *causā* or in the accusative case with *ad* is used to express purpose: *Commeātūs petendī causā missi erant, they had been sent for the purpose of getting grain*, III, 2; *Ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit, Caesar sent the cavalry to pursue them*, IV, 14.

b. The gerundive also expresses purpose when used to modify the object of certain verbs, *cūrō*, *dō*, *dēdō*: *Caesar exercitum transportandum cūraverat, Caesar had had the army transported*, IV, 20.

THE SUPINE

631. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension with two forms only, the accusative and the ablative.

a. The supine in *-um* is used with verbs of motion to express purpose: *Ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt, they came to Caesar to congratulate him*, I, 30.

b. The gerundive in *-ū* is used with some adjectives to express specification: *Optimum factū esse dūxērunt, they decided that it was the best thing to do*, IV, 30.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

632. The Roman year was regularly indicated by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute construction: **M. Messalā, M. Pisōne cōsuli-bus**, *in the year when Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso were consuls*.

633. The year was divided into twelve months, and the number of days in each month, after Caesar's revision of the calendar in 46 B.C., was the same as today. Originally the Roman year began in March. Although the beginning of the year was later changed to January, the numerical names of the months remained the same, except **Quīntilis** and **Sextilis** which, in 44 B.C., were renamed in honor of Julius Caesar and Augustus respectively.

The Roman names of the months were: **Iānuārius**, **Februārius**, **Mārtius**, **Aprīlis**, **Maius**, **Iūnius**, **Quīntilis** (Jūlius), **Sextilis** (Augustus), **September**, **Octōber**, **November**, **December**. These words are adjectives and are used to modify the names of the three days in the month from which the Romans counted: **Kalendae** (the *Calends*), **Nōnae** (the *Nones*), and **Idūs** (the *Ides*).

634. The *Calends* were the first day of the month, the *Nones* the fifth, the *Ides* the thirteenth, except that in March, May, July, and October, the *Nones* were on the seventh day and the *Ides* on the fifteenth.

635. The *Calends*, *Nones*, and *Ides* were the days from which all other dates were reckoned. The day before was designated by **pridiē** and the accusative: **pridiē Idūs Iānuāriās** (**prīd. Id. Iān.**), *the twelfth of January*. Other days were indicated by **ante diem** with an ordinal and the accusative: **ante diem quārtum Nōnās Aprīlēs** (**a.d. III Nōn. Apr.**), *the second day of April*.

The Romans always counted both the first day and the last day of a given period. Thus, to turn a Roman date into an English date, add one, in the case of the *Ides* or *Nones*, to the date on which they fall, and subtract the given number; for the *Calends*, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number. For example: **A.d. VI Kal. Apr.**, add two to thirty-one, the number of days in March, and subtract six, and the date is *March twenty-seventh*; **A.d. III Nōn. Apr.**, add one to the date of the *Nones* in April, the fifth, and subtract three, and the date is *April third*.

636. A Roman day was the period between sunrise and sunset. This space of time was divided into twelve hours. In different seasons, therefore, the length of an hour varied greatly. In the army the term **vigilia** was used for one of the four watches into which the night was divided. **Prima vigilia**, *the first watch*, began at sunset.

PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES FOR REFERENCE

637. **Prefixes.** Consult the **LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY** for the meaning of prefixes. When a prefix ending in a consonant is affixed to a word

beginning with a consonant, the final consonant of the prefix is assimilated, that is, made like the following consonant: thus, *ad* + *currō* becomes *accurrō*.

638. Vowel changes. A short *a* or *e* in the stem of a verb compounded with a preposition is sometimes changed to short *i*: thus, *ex* + *faciō* becomes *efficiō*. Short *a* in such compounds usually becomes short *e* before two consonants: *per* + *factus* becomes *perfectus*.

639. Suffixes.

- ālis*, *pertaining to*, *rēg* + *ālis*; adjective from noun
- ānus*, -*ēnus*, -*īnus*, -*nus*, *pertaining to*, *urb* + *ānus*; adjective from noun
- āris*, -*ārius*, *pertaining to*, *popul* + *āris*, *legiōn* + *ārius*; adjective from noun
- ārium*, -*ōrium*, *place where*, *aqu* + *ārium*, *audit* + *ōrium*; noun from noun or verb
- ātus*, *official position*, *magistr* + *ātus*; noun from noun
- bilis*, -*ilis*, *able or capable of*, *amā* + *bilis*; adjective from verb
- ia*, -*cia*, -*tia*, -*antia*, -*entia*, *quality of or condition*, *victōr* + *ia*; noun from noun or adjective
- icus*, -*ius*, -*nus*, -*ēnsis*, *pertaining to*, *Gall* + *icus*, *Hispani* + *ēnsis*; adjective or noun from noun
- idus*, *state of or condition*, *cup* + *idus*; adjective from verb
- ilis*, -*lis*, *able to be*, *civ* + *ilis*; adjective from noun
- īnus*, *pertaining to*, *div* + *īnus*; adjective from adverb, adjective, or noun
- iō*, -*siō*, -*tiō*, *action or state of*, *ōrā* + *tiō*; noun from verb
- ium*, -*cium*, -*tium*, *action in progress*, *sacrific* + *ium*; noun from verb
- ivus*, *pertaining to*, *fugit* + *ivus*; adjective from noun or verb
- men*, -*mentum*, *means of*, *ōrnā* + *mentum*; noun from verb
- olus*, -*culus*, -*ellus*, -*lus*, -*ulus*, *little*, *nāvi* + *cula*; noun from noun
- or*, *state of*, *am* + *or*; noun from verb
- ōsus*, *full of*, *pericul* + *ōsus*; adjective from noun
- tās*, *state of*, *liber* + *tās*; noun from adjective
- tor*, -*sor*, *actor*, *agent*, *vic* + *tor*; noun from verb
- tūdō*, *state of*, *multi* + *tūdō*; noun from adjective
- tus*, -*sus*, *action*, *result of action*, *impe* + *tus*; noun from verb
- ulum*, -*bulum*, -*culum*, *means or instrument*, *vehi* + *culum*; noun from verb
- ūra*, -*sūra*, -*tūra*, *action*, *result of action*, *sepul* + *tūra*; noun from verb

Compounds of many words are formed by the combination of two words; *faciō* is frequently used in this way, *ampli* + *faciō*, *amplificō*.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES IN WRITING LATIN

Reading maketh a full man; and writing an exact man.

BACON

The Nominative Case (507, 508)* The Accusative Case (525-533)

1. A woman is queen of these beautiful islands. 2. They set fire to all their grain and private houses. 3. There remained only one way through which they could go. 4. He orders (*iubeō*) the work to be finished. 5. My father has held the greatest power of the State for many years.

6. They live in great part on flesh. 7. This famous man had been called a friend of the people by the senate. 8. They call him a friend of the people. 9. He set out for the city and on the following day came home. 10. The messenger, a faithful boy, was led to his master.

The Genitive Case (89, 118, 141, 310, 509-515)

1. The eyes of many people will look on you. 2. At how great a price (*pretium*, -ī) did the merchant buy his grain? 3. The soldiers had gone forth from the fortress for the sake of getting booty. 4. Men, though unarmed, got possession of the fortification. 5. In what thing are you most skilled?

6. The cavalry urged on its horses many miles. 7. Love of their children urged the soldiers on. 8. What plan do you have? 9. Daily exercise will make you (capable) of the greatest labor.

10. He built a wall two feet in width. 11. It was not a matter of great difficulty for unencumbered men to cross the fords. 12. We sent men of great strength to the war. 13. Of all these, the infantry is most faithful. 14. This young man has no dignity.

* The references are to sections unless otherwise indicated.

The Dative Case (27, 54, 67, 74, 106, 164, 516-524)

1. He will not give anyone the right of way through his field.
2. Weeping, they threw themselves at Caesar's feet.
3. He assigns one part of the village to the cohorts.
4. This thing was of great use to our men.
5. Hope of getting possession of the town departed from the enemy.
6. Select a place suitable for a camp.
7. Merchants had no approach to these peoples.
8. You must give the signal; I must encourage the soldiers.
9. Two things will be an aid for these difficulties.
10. The magistrates easily persuade the people.
11. Shall we place a new lieutenant in charge of the legion?

The Ablative Case (5, 118, 141, 147, 185, 534-554)

1. Military men buy their glory at a great price (*pretium*, -i).
2. These things done, the quaestor returned to the province.
3. The work will be finished within five hours.
4. The enemy did not get possession of our fortification.
5. Eight of the soldiers were killed in the river itself.
6. With my consent, hostages will not be given to you by us.
7. On the appointed day the ambassadors came.
8. Many, led on by the desire of greater territories, went forth from home.
9. The slingers and archers do not surpass the rest of the soldiers in bravery.
10. My client is descended from a former king.
11. Through that whole night our men followed the forces of the enemy.
12. The wall was stripped of its defenders.
13. The master will lead the children from the city.
14. For the sake of a friend he endured many dangers.
15. With the legions and soldiers who had assembled from the province, he built a wall.
16. At Rome, live in accordance with the customs of the Romans.
17. He himself will advance there with the infantry.
18. This path made the way shorter by a few days.
19. There was between our line and the line of the enemy not more than five miles.
20. New stories are demanded by the eager children.

21. With two legions, Caesar came to the appointed place.
22. Having used this aid, they stormed the camp. 23. A scout of remarkable bravery was selected. 24. The ship moves with great speed. 25. The diligent girl enjoys her work. 26. The tribune had done easily in one day that which they had scarcely accomplished in ten days.

Ablative Absolute (545)

1. Having made this response, he urged on his horse and hurled himself against the enemy. 2. You cannot go there if your father is unwilling. 3. When the war is finished, each one will return to his own village. 4. War was waged in the absence (*being away*) of the king. 5. After devastating many fields, the barbarians betook themselves to their territories.

6. If the king is your friend, you should not fear. 7. If no one stops them, the enemy will make their way through the province. 8. Although there were many defenders, the town was seized. 9. This was said in his hearing. 10. When this was done, he sailed.

The Pronoun (556-561)

1. They surrendered themselves and their all. 2. The woman whom you saw was their sister. 3. This is the same boy whose garments were repaired. 4. Know thyself. 5. Whose letter are you carrying?

6. Do you know the man to whom you gave the letter? 7. She wishes to see herself in her new garment. 8. You yourself know the story. 9. He killed himself with his weapons. 10. Those were heroes with whom I sailed.

11. This city in which you live is not beautiful. 12. The dangers which they endured were great. 13. Who gave you that story? Was it that friend (of yours)? 14. She did a certain (thing) which injured their cause. 15. The cause of this is known to you (*pl.*).

16. You (*sing.*) yourself must give him this. 17. Did you see her

in his palace? 18. Those are the same (men) whom we selected. 19. There are their friends; where are yours (*pl.*)? 20. You will say the same (thing) when you see him and his father.

The Participle (625-628, 630)

1. All, about to set out from the city, assemble on the following day. 2. Encouraging his comrades, a certain centurion began to bear the eagle toward the shore. 3. If God wills (*wishes*), all of us shall be safe. 4. After he had encouraged them, the master gave the signal to the boys who were eagerly waiting. 5. The wretched man cannot give all the gold which has been demanded.

6. He fell fighting for his city. 7. While he was talking, he was killed by an arrow. 8. When he had said this, the messenger departed immediately. 9. The place was not suitable for doing those things. 10. The enemy fled when repulsed.

11. The man, leaving his comrades on the shore, went into the woods. 12. I fear you bringing gifts. 13. If that danger is avoided, you will be safe. 14. While he was returning, he was killed by a wagon. 15. Did you see him running toward the town, which had been surrounded? 16. We shall follow the enemy as they flee.

17. The time was not suitable for doing these things. 18. The stag was killed running. 19. Our men attacked the enemy impeded in the river, and killed a great number as they attempted to cross.

Gerund (74, 629) Gerundive (74, 630) Supine (294, 631)

1. All things were prepared which were of use for equipping the ships. 2. They are sending ambassadors to ask aid. 3. For accomplishing these things, we have made suitable plans. 4. Who will decide on a time for departing? 5. He now has the opportunity of doing this thing.

6. The ship was made for enduring storms. 7. I come for the purpose of aiding. 8. The exercise of running is praised by the master. 9. All hope for an end of fighting. 10. Inform me about your plan of flying.

11. Let us select a day for assembling. 12. The time was suitable for setting out. 13. This is very easy to do. 14. Did you come for the purpose of seeing the city? 15. The enemy has great hopes in beginning the war. • 16. The difficulty of waging war is great.

The Active Periphrastic Conjugation (95, 501) The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (74, 501)

1. You must first cross the river. 2. They were going to storm the town. 3. Influenced by these things, Caesar decided he ought not to wait. 4. Father has to do everything. 5. They did not set fire to the grain which they were going to carry with them.

6. We must use our minds. 7. When the army was about to make an attack, the city surrendered. 8. What is he going to say about a matter so great? 9. I had to give the signal on a trumpet.

The Temporal Clause (61, 135, 596-602)

1. When they make a solitude (*sōlitūdō*), they call it peace. 2. They did not desist from running before they came to the river. 3. When he comes to my house, then I shall not be at home. 4. When he had given the signal, the soldiers assembled. 5. When day came, we set out for the camp.

6. Then when he shall see you there, he will be frightened. 7. After the barbarians saw this was being done, they sought safety in flight. 8. When the cavalry had pursued them as they fled many miles, they suddenly surrendered. 9. When eighteen days for deliberating had intervened, the ambassadors returned. 10. What will she do until her husband comes? 11. While these things were going on (*gerō*), the approach of the cavalry was reported to Caesar.

Volitive Subjunctive (81, 580) The Clause of Purpose (19, 106, 585, 586) The Substantive Clause (81, 158, 342, 355, 588-594)

1. They were kept from bringing the promised grain. 2. Let us live and love. 3. The king is sending a messenger to consult the oracle. 4. We asked for aid, so that we might more easily hold back the attack of the enemy. 5. Who persuaded the barbarians to go

forth from their territories? 6. Let us not make peace with our enemies. 7. In the meantime he will send the cavalry who are to make the attack upon the weary infantry.

8. I fear that this will be discovered. 9. On the following day it happened that they could not see the sun. 10. They ask that it be permitted them with his consent to go through the province. 11. Let us not despair. 12. We were coming to hear the messenger. 13. Let us fight until the enemy is overcome and flees. 14. Messengers come to ask for peace. (*Express the underlined phrase in five different ways.*)

Subjunctive: In Adversative Clauses (67, 606) In Anticipatory Clauses (135, 599, 601) By Attraction (610) In Causal Clauses (67, 603, 604) In Result Clauses (34, 355, 578, a, 587, 593) In Indirect Discourse (129, 623)

1. Since these things are so, they are preparing to set out. 2. Their fortresses are so small that they are easily stormed. 3. The clamor is so loud that no one can hear. 4. That one does not wish to wait until the others can come. 5. The rope was so short that it did not reach the land.

6. He said he would go with the one legion whose bravery he did not doubt. 7. He asked why those whom he had seen had fled. 8. They said that they had certain things that they wished to ask him. 9. He commanded this one to go to whatever states he could. 10. The storm was so great that the ships could not hold their course. 11. Although the fighting had gone on the whole night, the enemy did not get possession of our camp.

The Indirect Question (48, 595)

1. He indicates what he wishes to be done. 2. Will you show how this thing can be done? 3. He asked what the man was doing. 4. Do you understand why the army fled? 5. I do not understand why you are not coming to the banquet. 6. No one knew who had offered the reward. 7. He asked what states were in arms.

8. Do they know what states are in arms? 9. We all know what you are going to say. 10. I ask him where you have been and where you are. 11. I know what he is doing. 12. He knew what he was doing. 13. The others will ask why they were not praised. 14. He showed what his plan was.

Indirect Discourse (616-624)

I

1. I know that I see. 2. You know that you saw. 3. He knows that he will see. 4. I knew that he had seen. 5. I hear that you were seen. 6. He hopes that he is not seen. 7. He said that he was not seen. 8. He reported that he had been seen. 9. I say that you will be seen. 10. The scout thinks that he will not be seen.

11. They say that they will send hostages. 12. They said that hostages would be sent. 13. I have learned that my friend has many resources. 14. You know that I did not say this. 15. They say they will not return. 16. The king understands that he will be in great danger if he remains in the palace. 17. The ambassadors say that they will entrust themselves and all their (possessions) to the protection of the state. 18. They said that they were prepared to aid with food supplies. 19. We hope that they will depart immediately. 20. Do you think that his friends are faithful?

II

Diviciacus pleads with Caesar on behalf of Dumnorix

Rewrite in indirect discourse introduced by *dixit* (The expressions which will need to be changed are indicated by italics.):

Sciō ista esse vĕra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capīt, propterea quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā possem, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs non solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad pernīciem meam utitur. Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commoveor. Quod sī quid eī ā tē gravius acciderit, cum

ego hunc locum amicitiae apud te teneam, nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum; quā ex re tōtius Galliae animi ā me āvertentur.

Idioms

1. They ask that he receive them *in surrender*. 2. He sailed with five warships and two transports. 3. Armed forces were drawn up *on the top of the mountain*. 4. The unhappy father *inflicted punishment on* his son. 5. The husbands talked *to each other* about their wives and children. 6. By *forced marches* he will come into his territories. 7. When the soldiers *were informed* about Caesar's arrival they sent embassies to him.
8. *One from one* household and *another from another* ran to meet the new queen. 9. The birds flew *eighteen miles*. 10. *They fought till sunset*. 11. He *betook himself* to the ship. 12. The king escaped *late in the day*. 13. The soldier *married* the daughter of the lieutenant. 14. The *fighting* went on for a long time. 15. Will he *plead the cause* of his friend?

Writing Latin as Queen Elizabeth Did

Turn to some chapter that you like in Caesar. Make a translation which gives the exact meaning of the original in clear and idiomatic English. At some later time, without referring to your text, translate into Latin the English exercise that you have written. Compare your Latin translation with the original passage in Caesar.

Roger Ascham, the tutor of Queen Elizabeth, says that Queen Elizabeth never took a grammar in her hand after she learned her declensions and conjugations, but daily, for a period of several years, translated some portion of Cicero into English, and then later wrote it in Latin. "Few in both Universities or elsewhere in England that be comparable with her Majesty. I durst venture a good wager, if a scholar, in whom is fitness, love, diligence, and constancy, would translate after this sorte one little book in Tullie, *De Senectute*, that scholar, I say, should cum to a better knowledge of the Latin tongue than most part do, that spend four or five years in tossing all the rules of grammar in common schules."

LATIN LIVES TODAY

*Sing a song of little words, homely parts of speech,
Phrases children use at play, songs that mothers teach.
Who would think when Rome was new, they used that language then —
Table, chair, and family, map and chart and pen?*

*Clear and straight and brief their talk in country or in town,
Lucid, vivid, accurate the thoughts that they set down.
Still the world is using words that bear the Roman stamp —
Coined in forum, villa, temple, market place or camp.
Still our thoughts take day by day those shapes of long ago —
If you read the dictionary you will find it's so.**

LATIN WORDS THAT LIVE UNCHANGED IN ENGLISH TODAY

The following words are all related to Latin words in the *Latin-English Vocabulary* of LATIN SECOND YEAR. Give the literal translation of each Latin word and the meaning of each related English word.

agenda	duplex	minimum	requiem
album	emeritus	minus	senator
alias	error	neuter	stadium
alibi	fervor	nostrum	status
alumnus	forum	omnibus	tutor
animus	genus	opus	ulterior
bonus	ignoramus	par	vesper
campus	inferior	prior	veto
circus	item	propaganda	vim
curriculum	janitor	quorum	vortex
deficit	junior	quota	

LATIN PHRASES FREQUENTLY MET IN READING

The following are much-used Latin phrases. Give the literal translation of each Latin phrase. You might record in your notebook any of these phrases, as you meet them in your reading, and also the name of the book, magazine, or paper, together with the page number and the date.

LATIN PHRASE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	LITERAL TRANSLATION
Alma Mater	(one's college or university)	fostering mother
ante bellum	<i>before the war</i>	(same)
bona fide	<i>sincere</i>	with good faith
casus belli	<i>justification of war</i>	occasion of war
deo volente	<i>as it pleases God</i>	God willing
et cetera	<i>and so forth</i>	and other things

* From *Children of Ancient Rome*, by Louise Lamprey, published by Little, Brown and Company. Reprinted by permission of the author and publisher.

LATIN PHRASE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	LITERAL TRANSLATION
ex tempore	<i>on the spur of the moment</i>	out of time
in loco parentis	<i>in place of a parent</i>	(same)
in statu quo	<i>in the same condition as</i>	in the condition in which
ipso facto	<i>therefore</i>	by the fact itself
Pater Noster	<i>Lord's Prayer</i>	Our Father
pater patriae	<i>father of his country</i>	father of the country
pax vobiscum	<i>peace be with you</i>	peace with you
per annum	<i>yearly</i>	through the year
per diem	<i>daily</i>	by the day
per se	<i>by one's self</i>	(same)
post mortem	<i>after death</i>	(same)
sine die	<i>without appointing a day of meeting</i>	without a day
sine qua non	<i>indispensable</i>	without which not
pro tempore	<i>for the time being</i>	for the time
tempus fugit	<i>time flies</i>	(same)
terra firma	<i>land</i>	solid earth
verbatim et literatim	<i>word for word and letter for letter</i>	(same)
vice versa	<i>conversely</i>	the change having been turned
viva voce	<i>spoken</i>	by the living voice

ABBREVIATIONS OF LATIN EXPRESSIONS MUCH USED IN WRITING

Probably in your reading, you have seen these abbreviations many times. Select ten and use each of them correctly in a sentence: e.g., Augustus Caesar lived from 31 B.C. until 14 A.D.

ABBREVIATION	LATIN PHRASE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT
A.B.	Artium Baccalaureus	<i>bachelor of arts</i>
A.D.	annō Domini	<i>in the year of our Lord</i>
ad lib.	ad libitum	<i>at pleasure</i>
a.m.	ante meridiem	<i>before noon</i>
cf.	cōfer	<i>compare</i>
e.g.	exempli grātiā	<i>for example</i>
et al.	et alii	<i>and others</i>
etc.	et cētera	<i>and so forth (and others)</i>
ibid.	ibidem	<i>the same</i>
i.e.	id est	<i>that is</i>
loc. cit.	locō citātō	<i>in place cited</i>
N.B.	notā bene	<i>mark well</i>
p.s.	post scriptum	<i>written afterwards</i>

ABBREVIATION	LATIN PHRASE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT
Ph.D.	philosophiae doctor	<i>doctor of philosophy</i>
pro tem.	prō tempore	<i>for the time being</i>
Q.E.D.	quod erat dēmōnstrandum	<i>which was to be proved</i>
ult.	ultimō	<i>of the last (month)</i>
viz.	vidēlicet	<i>namely</i>
vs.	versus	<i>against</i>

LATIN MOTTOES OF STATES

STATE — LATIN MOTTO — ENGLISH TRANSLATION

United States	E PLURIBUS UNUM	<i>Out of many, one.</i>
District of Columbia	JUSTITIA OMNIBUS	<i>Justice for all.</i>
Arizona	DITAT DEUS	<i>God enriches.</i>
Arkansas	REGNAT POPULUS	<i>The people rule.</i>
Colorado	NIL NISI NUMINE	<i>Nothing without the Deity.</i>
Connecticut	QUI TRANSTULIT SUSTINET	<i>He who transported (us) sustains.</i>
Idaho	ESTO PERPETUA	<i>Endure forever.</i>
Kansas	AD ASTRA PER ASPERA	<i>To the stars through difficulties.</i>
Maine	DIRIGO	<i>I direct.</i>
Maryland	SCUTO BONAE VOLUNTATIS TUAE CORONASTI NOS	<i>With the shield of thy good will thou hast covered us.</i>
Massachusetts	ENSE PETIT PLACIDAM SUB LIBERTATE QUIETEM	<i>With the sword she seeks calm repose under liberty.</i>
Michigan	SI QUAERIS PENINSULAM AMOENAM, CIRCUMSPICE	<i>If you seek a beautiful peninsula, look around.</i>
Mississippi	VIRTUTE ET ARMIS	<i>By valor and arms.</i>
Missouri	SALUS POPULI SUPREMA LEX ESTO!	<i>Let the welfare of the people be the supreme law.</i>
New Mexico	CRESCIT EUNDO	<i>It grows by going.</i>
New York	EXCELSIOR	<i>Higher.</i>
North Carolina	ESSE QUAM VIDERI	<i>To be rather than to seem.</i>
Oklahoma	LABOR OMNIA VINCIT	<i>Labor conquers all things.</i>
Oregon	ALIS VOLAT PROPRIIS	<i>She flies with her own wings.</i>
South Carolina	ANIMIS OPIBUSQUE PARATI	<i>Ready in spirit and resources.</i>
Virginia	SIC SEMPER TYRANNIS	<i>Ever thus to tyrants.</i>
West Virginia	MONTANI SEMPER LIBERI	<i>Mountaineers are always freemen.</i>
Wyoming	CEDANT ARMA TOGAE	<i>Let arms yield to the toga (peace).</i>

SPANISH VIA LATIN

The Spanish language is more like Latin than any other Romance language. The following short list, chosen from the many thousands of Spanish words derived from Latin, will serve to show how valuable a foundation Latin is for the study of Spanish. You will notice, too, that all the Latin words are words with which you are familiar.

LATIN	SPANISH	LATIN	SPANISH
amō	amo	lacus	lago
amās	amas	liber	libro
amat	ama	lingua	lengua
amāmus	amamos	male	mal
amātis	amáis	pauci	poco
amant	aman	portāre	portar
bene	bien	quattuor	cuatro
caelum	cielo	quī	que
deus	dios	reducere	reducir
duo	dos	regina	reina
ego	yo	semper	siempre
errāre	errar	sōl	sol
flōs	flor	tōtus	todo
fructus	fruta	trēs	tres
grātia	gracia	ūnus	uno
honor	honor	urbs	urbe
infāns	infante	vester	vuestro
in	en		

IS THERE A DOCTOR IN THE CLASS?

Medical students will meet many scientific terms which are of Latin origin. The following are derived from words in the Latin-English Vocabulary in LATIN SECOND YEAR, pp. 1-65. Select twenty of the following words, and explain each on the basis of its Latin derivation, e.g. : *capillary* from *capillus*, *hair*, a minute, hair-like blood vessel.

abdomen	duodenum	olfactory
albumen	dura mater	osseous
afferent nerve	efferent nerve	ossiferous
alimentary	fascia	ovule
assimilate	fever	parietal
auditory	germicide	pectoralis major
auricle	hospital	pia mater
biceps	incision	pineal gland
cardiac	infection	prescription
cervical artery	infirmary	pulse
coagulate	influenza	quarantine
consumption	inject	risorius muscle
contagion	inoculate	semi lunar
cornu superius	intestine	tendon
corpuscle	joint	transfusion
cure	lacrimal	triceps
doctor	laxative	vagus nerve
dorsal	malaria	vertebra
	muscle	

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The words starred are those specified by the College Entrance Examination Board and the New York State Tentative Syllabus in Ancient Languages (1928 Revision) to be learned in the first and second years.

The principal parts of a verb of the first conjugation that is regular are not given but are indicated by the figure 1. The infinitive of a regular verb of the second, third, or fourth conjugation is not given, but the conjugation to which it belongs is indicated by the figure 2, 3, or 4 respectively.

A verb used intransitively in this book is indicated by *intr.*; one used both transitively and intransitively by *tr. or intr.*; one used transitively is not indicated in any way.

- A., *abbr. for* Aulus Au'lus, Roman praenomen
- * *ā*, ab, abs (*ā* before consonants; *ab* before vowels and consonants; *abs* in some compounds), *prep. w. abl.* from, away from, at, on, in, after, by, away
- a.d., *abbr. for* ante diem
- * *abdō*, 3, -didī, -ditus [ab + dō] put away, hide
- abdūcō*, 3, -dūxī, -ductus lead away, take away
- abeō*, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itus, *intr.* go away
- abiciō*, 3, -iēcī, -iectus [ab + iaciō] throw away, throw down, hurl
- abiēs*, -ietis, *f.* fir, spruce
- abrogō*, 1 repeal
- abscidō*, 3, -cidī, -cīsus [abs + caedō] cut away, cut off
- absēns*, -entis, *see* *absum*
- absimilis*, -e unlike
- absistō*, 3, -stiti, —, *intr.* withdraw, go away
- abstineō*, 2, -tinui, -tentus, *intr.* hold away, keep away, refrain, abstain
- * *absum*, *abesse*, *āfui*, *āfutūrus*, *intr.* be away, be absent, be distant, be lacking, be exempt from; *pres. part., as adj.*, *absēns* absent
- Absyrtus*, -i, *m.* Absyr'tus, brother of Medea
- abundō*, 1, *intr.* overflow, abound
- * *ac*, *see* *atque*
- acadēmia*, -ae, *f.* school
- Acastus*, -i, *m.* Acas'tus, son of Pelias
- * *accēdō*, 3, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.* move towards, approach, come, be added; *w. ut or quod* besides
- accersō*, *see* *arcessō*
- * *accidō*, 3, -cidī, — [ad + cadō] *intr.* fall to, fall, happen; *accidit* it happens

- * **accipio**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad + capio] take, receive, get, suffer, learn
- Accō**, -ōnis, *m.* Ac'co, a chief of the Senones
- accommodō**, 1 fit on, adjust
- accumbō**, 3, -cubui, -cubitus, *intr.* to recline or sit at table
- accūrātius**, *comp.* of **accūrātē**, *adv.* carefully
- accurrō**, 3, -curri or -cucurri, -cursus, *intr.* run to, hasten to
- accūsō**, 1 [ad + causa] blame, chide
- * **ācer**, ācris, ācre sharp, piercing
- acerbē**, *adv.* bitterly
- acerbus**, -a, -um bitter, sharp
- ācerrimē**, *sup.* of **ācriter**
- * **aciēs**, -ēī, *f.* sharp edge, battle-line, army, battle
- ācriter**, *adv.* sharply, fiercely, courageously
- āctor**, -ōris, *m.* doer
- āctus**, *p. p.* of **agō**
- * **acūtus**, -a, -um sharp, pointed
- * **ad**, *prep.* *w. acc.* toward, to the vicinity of, near, at, to, until, by; *w. gerund or gerundive* for the purpose of; *w. numerals, adv.* about
- adāctus**, *p. p.* of **adigō**
- adaequō**, 1 make equal, level
- * **addō**, 3, -didi, -ditus put to, add, join
- * **adducō**, 3, -dūxi, -ductus lead to, lead, draw tight; *in pass.* influenced
- * **adeō**, *adv.* to that point, to such a degree, so, so much, even
- * **adeō**, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itus, *tr. or intr.* go to, approach, visit
- adhaereō**, 2, -haesi, -haesurus, *intr.* stick to, cling
- * **adhibeō**, 2, -ui, -itus [ad + habeō] hold to, summon, admit, use
- adhortor**, 1, *dep.* encourage
- adhuc**, *adv.* to this point, thus far, hitherto, still
- * **adiciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectus [ad + iacio] throw to, throw up, add
- * **adigō**, 3, -ēgi, -actus [ad + agō] drive to, bring to, hurl to
- adimō**, 3, -ēmī, -ēptus [ad + emō] take away, destroy
- * **aditus**, -ūs, *m.* approach, way of approach, access
- adiungō**, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus join to, win over, annex
- adiutor**, -ōris, *m.* helper, mediator
- adiuvō**, 1, -iūvi, -iūtus help, support, aid
- administer**, -tri, *m.* assistant
- * **administrō**, 1 manage, perform, carry out
- * **admiror**, 1, *dep.* wonder at, admire
- * **admittō**, 3, -misi, -missus send to, let go, permit, incur, commit, admit
- * **admodum**, *adv.* to the limit, very, especially, at least, fully
- admoneō**, 2, -ui, -itus warn, advise
- admoveō**, 2, -mōvi, -mōtus move to, apply, bring near
- adolēscō**, 3, -olēvi, -ultus, *intr.* grow up
- * **adorior**, 4, -ortus sum, *dep.* rise, rise against, attack
- * **adsum**, -esse, affui, affuturus, *intr.* be near, be present, stand by, help
- * **adolēscēns**, -entis, *m.* young man
- adolēscētia**, -ae, *f.* youth
- adulterium**, -i, *n.* adultery
- adveniō**, 4, -veni, -ventus, *intr.* arrive

- * **adventus**, -ūs, *m.* arrival, coming, approach
adversarius, -a, -um [adversus] opposing; *as noun, m.* opponent
 * **adversus**, -a, -um turned against, opposing, opposite, unfavorable; *adversā nocte* in the face of night
adversus, *adv., or prep. w. acc.* against
 * **advertō**, 3, -tī, -versus turn, turn towards
advocō, 1 call to, call, summon
aedēs, -is, *f.* temple; *pl.* house, building, dwelling
 * **aedificium**, -ī, *n.* building, house
aedificō, 1 build
Aedui, -a, -um of the Aedui, Aeduan; *as noun, m. pl.* Aedui, -ōrum the Aedui or Aeduans (Ed'uans), a Gallic tribe
Aeētēs, -ae, *m.* Aeētes (Eē'tēs), king of Colchis
 * **aeger**, -gra, -grum sick, weak, suffering
 * **aegrē**, *adv.* painfully, with difficulty
aegrōtō, 1, *intr.* be sick
Aemilius, -ī, *m.* Lucius Aemilius (Ēmil'ius), a decurion of cavalry in Caesar's army
aēneus, -a, -um of copper, bronze
aequinoctium, -ī, *n.* the time when day and night are equal, equinox
aequitās, -tātis, *f.* firmness, intention, equality, justice
 * **aequō**, 1 [aequus] make level or equal
 * **aequus**, -a, -um level, plain, equal, favorable, just; *aequō animō* with equanimity
āer, *āeris* (*acc. āera*) *m.* air
aerumna, -ae, *f.* hardship, trouble, labor
 * **aes**, *aeris*, *n.* copper, bronze, money; *aes aliēnum* debt (*another's money*)
Aesōn, -onis, *m.* Aeson (Ē'son), father of Jason
 * **aestās**, -tātis, *f.* heat, summer
aestimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* valuation
 * **aestus**, -ūs, *m.* heat, tide
 * **aetās**, -tātis, *f.* time of life, age
aeternus, -a, -um everlasting
 * **afferō**, -ferre, attulī, allātus [ad + ferō] bring to, announce, cause
 * **afficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus do to, treat, affect
affigō, 3, -fixī, -fixus fasten to, attach
affingō, 3, -finxī, -fictus add falsely
affinitās, -tātis, *f.* relationship by marriage, alliance
affictō, 1 dash against, strand, wreck
affligō, 3, -flixī, -flictus strike against, damage, overthrow
affore = *affutūrus esse, fut. inf. of adsum*
Āfrica, -ae, *f.* Africa
āfuisse, *āfutūrus, see absum*
 † **ager**, *agrī*, *m.* land, country, field, territory
 * **agger**, -eris [ad + gerō] *m.* mound, dike, rampart
 * **aggredior**, 3, -gressus sum, *dep.* move towards, attack
aggregō, 1 join
agitātor, -ōris, *m.* driver
 * **agmen**, *agminis* [agō] *n.* marching army, column, line of march
agnōscō, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitus recognize
agnus, -ī, *m.* lamb
 * **agō**, 3, ēgī, āctus set in motion, drive, lead, push forward, discuss, do, build

- * **agricola**, -ae, *m.* farmer
agricultūra, -ae, *f.* agriculture
aiō, *defective*, aiō, ais, ait, aiunt say
āla, -ae, *f.* wing
* **alacer**, -cris, -cre lively, eager, ready
alacritās, -tātis, *f.* eagerness, spirit
Albānus, -a, -um Alban; *as noun*, Albāni, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Albans
albus, -a, -um white
Alesia, -ae, *f.* Alē'sia (*Alise-Sainte-Reine*), a town of the Mandubii
alibi, *adv.* elsewhere, at another place
* **aliēnus**, -a, -um [alius] another's, unfavorable, hostile
aliō, *adv.* to another place
aliquamdiū, *adv.* for some time, for a time
aliquandō, *adv.* at some time or other, once, at length
* **aliquis** (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), *indef. pron. or adj.* someone, any one, something, anything, some, any
aliquot, *indecl. adj.* some, several, a few
* **aliter**, *adv.* in another way, otherwise; **aliter ac** otherwise than
* **alius**, -a, -ud another, other; **alius . . . alius** one . . . another; *pl.* some . . . others
allātus, *p. p. of afferō*
alligō, *1* tie up, fetter
Allobrogēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Allobroges (Alōb'rojēz), a Gallic tribe
* **alō**, *3*, -uī, altus (alitus) feed, support, raise
Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.* the Alps
* **alter**, -era, -erum the other, second, another; **alter . . . alter** the one . . . the other
alternus, -a, -um one after the other, alternate
* **altitūdō**, -inis [altus] *f.* height, depth, thickness
* **altus**, -a, -um (*p. p. of alō*) high, tall, deep; *as noun, n.* the sea
Amāzōn, -onis, *f.* Amazon, a woman warrior
ambactus, -ī, *m.* dependent, slave
ambāgēs, -um, *f. pl.* windings
Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* Ambar'rī, a Gallic tribe
Ambiāni, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Ambia'nī, a Belgian tribe
Ambiorix, -igis, *m.* Ambia'orix, king of the Eburones
ambō, -ae, -ō, *pl. adj.* both
ambulātor, -ōris, *m.* one who walks about, idler, lounge
ambulātrix, -īcis, *f.* gadabout, lounge
ambulō, *1*, *intr.* walk, traverse
amentia, -ae, *f.* madness, insanity
* **amicitia**, -ae, *f.* friendship
* **amicus**, -a, -um [amō] friendly, devoted; *as noun, m.* friend
* **amittō**, *3*, mīsi, missus let go away, send away, lose
amentum, -ī, *n.* strap, thong
* **amō**, *1* love, like; *present participle as noun*, amāns, -tis, *m. or f.* lover
amor, -ōris, *m.* love
amphora, -ae, *f.* a large jar
amplificō, *1* increase, extend
* **amplius**, *comp. adv.* more; *as noun, n.* more
* **amplus**, -a, -um of great extent, ample, abundant
* **an**, *conj.* or; **utrum** (-ne) . . . **an** whether . . . or

- anceps**, -cipitis [ambi + caput] with two heads, double, doubtful
ancilla, -ae, *f.* maid-servant
*** ancora**, -ae, *f.* anchor
Ancus, *see* Mārcius
Andebrogius, -ī, *m.* Andebro'gius, a leader of the Remi
Andēs, -ium, *m. pl.* the An'dēs, a Gallic tribe north of the Liger River (the *Loire*)
angulus, -ī, *m.* angle, corner, bend
*** angustiae**, -ārum, *f. pl.* narrowness, narrow place, defile, difficulty
*** angustus**, -a, -um narrow, difficult; in **angustō** at a crisis
*** animadvertō**, 3, -verti, -versus, *tr. or intr.* turn attention to, notice; **animadvertere** in punish, attend to
animal, -ālis, *n.* living being, animal
*** animus**, -ī, *m.* spirit, feelings, thoughts, will, courage, pluck, consciousness, mind
Aniō, Anienis, *m.* the An'io River, a tributary of the Tiber River
annōn = an + nōn
annōna, -ae, *f.* food supply
annuō, 3, -uī, —, *intr.* nod assent
*** annus**, -ī, *m.* year
anser, -eris, *m.* goose
*** ante**, *adv.* before, previously; *prep.* *w. acc.* before, in front of
*** anteā** [ante + is] *adv.* formerly, once
*** antecēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessus, *tr. or intr.* go before, march in advance, surpass
anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus bear before, place before, prefer
antemna, -ae, *f.* sail-yard
antequam, *conj.* before
antiquitus, *adv.* from ancient times, in old times
*** antiquus**, -a, -um ancient, former
antistō, 1, -stetī, —, *intr.* excel, surpass
ānulus, -ī, *m.* ring
anus, -ūs, *f.* an old woman; *as adj.* old
ānxius, -a, -um troubled, anxious
aper, **apri**, *m.* wild boar
*** aperiō**, 4, -uī, **apertus** open, uncover
apertē, *adv.* openly
*** apertus**, -a, -um (*p. p.* of **aperiō**) open, unprotected, exposed
Apollō, -inis, *m.* Apollo, god of the sun, music, poetry, and medicine
appāreō, 2, -uī, -itūrus, *intr.* appear
apparō, 1 prepare, get ready
*** appellō**, 1 speak to, call by name, call
appellō, 3, -pulī, **pulsus** move up, bring along; *w. nāvem* land
appetō, 3, -petīvī (-iī), -petītus, *tr. or intr.* seek for, desire, approach
appōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus place near
*** appropinquō**, 1 approach
Aprīlis, -e of April
aptō, 1 fit, adjust
aptus, -a, -um ready
*** apud**, *prep. w. acc.* in the presence of, before, at the house of, among, with, near
*** aqua**, -ae, *f.* water
*** aquila**, -ae, *f.* eagle, standard of a legion, a silver eagle mounted on a staff
Aquileia, -ae, *f.* Aquilē'ia, a town in Cisalpine Gaul
aquilō, -ōnis, *m.* the north wind

- Aquitānia**, -ae, *f.* Aquitā'nia, the southwestern part of Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees
- Aquitānus**, -a, -um belonging to Aquitā'nia; *as noun, m.* an Aquitā'nian; *pl.* the Aquitā'nī or Aquitanians
- āra**, -ae, *f.* altar
- Arar**, -aris, *acc. -im, m.* the Arar River (the *Saône*)
- arbitrium**, -ī, *n.* judgment, pleasure
- * **arbitror**, ī, *dep., tr. or intr.* believe, think, consider
- * **arbor**, -oris, *f.* tree
- arca**, -ae, *f.* ark, chest, box
- Arcadia**, -ae, *f.* Arcadia
- * **arcessō**, 3, -ivī, -itus send for, invite, summon
- Arecomici**, -ōrum, *m. pl., see* Volcae
- arēna**, -ae, *f.* sand, arena
- argentum**, -ī, *n.* silver, silverware
- argilla**, -ae, *f.* white clay
- Argō**, -ūs, *f.* the ship *Argo*
- Argonautae**, -ārum, *m. pl.* Argonauts, the crew of the *Argo*
- Argus**, -ī, *m.* Argus, builder of the *Argo*
- āridus**, -a, -um dry; *as noun, n.* dry land
- ariēs**, -ietis, *m.* ram, battering ram
- Ariminum**, -ī, *n.* Arim'inum (*Rimini*), a town in northeastern Italy
- Ariovistus**, -ī, *m.* Ariovis'tus, a German chief
- * **arma**, -ōrum, *n. pl.* arms, weapons, armor, rigging
- armāmenta**, -ōrum, *n. pl.* implements, equipment
- armātūra**, -ae, *f.* armor, equipment
- * **armō**, ī arm, equip; **armātus**, -a, -um, *p. p. as adj.* armed, equipped; *m. pl. as noun* armed men
- arō**, ī plough
- Arria**, -ae, *f.* Ar'ria, a Roman woman
- arripō**, 3, -uī, reptus seize, snatch
- ars**, artis, *f.* skill, art
- artifex**, -icis, *m.* architect, builder
- artificium**, -ī, *n.* handicraft, skill, artifice, trade
- Arvernus**, -a, -um Arver'nian; *as noun, m. pl.* the Arvernians, or Arverni, a Gallic tribe
- ās**, assis, *m.* a penny
- ascendō**, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus, *tr. or intr.* climb, go aboard
- ascēnsus**, -ūs, *m.* ascent, way up
- asciscō**, 3, -scivī, -scitus attach (to oneself), receive
- asellus**, -ī, *m.* donkey
- aspectus**, -ūs, *m.* seeing, sight, look, aspect, appearance
- asper**, -era, -erum rough, hard
- aspiciō**, 3, -spexī, -spectus see
- assector**, ī, *dep.* follow
- assiduus**, -a, -um constant, continual
- assistō**, 3, astitī, —, *intr.* take a stand, stand near, assist
- assuēfaciō**, 3, -fēcī, -factus, *tr. or intr.* to accustom
- astō**, ī, astitī, —, *intr.* stand at, stand near
- * **at**, conj. but, but yet, at least, at any rate
- Athēnae**, -ārum, *f. pl.* Athens
- Atlās**, Atlantis, *m.* Atlas, a giant who held the world on his shoulders
- * **atque**, ac, conj. and, and also, and besides, and even; **alius atque** other than; **aliter ac** otherwise than; **simul atque** as soon as

- Atrebās, -ātis, m.** an Atrebatian (Atrebā'shian); *pl.*, the Atrebā'tes
or Atrebatians, a Belgian tribe
atrōciter, adv. cruelly
attexō, 3, -uī, -tus weave to, join on
 * **attingō, 3, -tigī, -tactus** [ad + tangō] arrive at, border on, get
attribuō, 3, -uī, ūtus assign, give in charge, allot
atritus, -a, -um rubbed
attulī, see afferō
 * **auctor, -ōris** [augeō] *m.* promoter, leader, adviser
 * **auctōritās, -tātis, f.** influence, power, authority, dignity
audācia, -ae, f. boldness, recklessness
 * **audācter, adv.** boldly, recklessly
 * **audāx, -ācis** bold, brave
 * **audeō, 2, ausus sum, semi-dep., tr.** *or intr.* dare
 * **audiō, 4, -ivī, -ītus** hear, hear of, listen to, obey, be obedient to
auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab + ferō] carry off
aufugiō, 3, -fūgī, —, intr. run away, escape
Augēas, -ae, m. Augeus (Ājē'as), king of Elis
 * **augeō, 2, auxī, auctus** increase
Augustus, ī, m. Augustus, a title of Octavius Caesar as emperor; *as adj.* of Augustus
Aulercī, -ōrum, m. pl. the Aulerci (Auler'sī), a Gallic tribe
aura, -ae, f. air, wind
aureolus, -a, -um golden
aureus, -a, -um of gold, golden
auriga, -ae, m. charioteer, driver
auris, -is, f. ear
auritus, -a, -um having ears; *w.* testis carwitNESS
aurum, -ī, n. gold
Aurunculeius, -ī, m. Lū'cius Aurunculē'ius Cotta, one of Caesar's legates
ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of audeō
 * **aut, conj.** or; **aut . . . aut** either . . . or
 * **autem, conj.** on the other hand, but, furthermore, now, moreover
auxilior, ī, dep., intr. give aid, help
 * **auxilium, -ī** [augeō] *n.* aid, support; *pl.* auxiliaries, reserves
Avaricum, -ī, n. Avar'icum (*Bourges*), a town of the Bituriges
avāritia, -ae, f. greed, avarice
āvehō, 3, -vexī, -vectus carry away
Aventinus, -a, -um Av'entine; *w.* mōns one of the seven hills of Rome
āversus, -a, -um turned, in the rear, retreating
āvertō, 3, -tī, -versus turn away, alienate
avidus, -a, -um greedy
avis, -is, f. bird
Avitus, -ī, m. Avī'tus, Roman cognomen
avus, -ī, m. grandfather
Axona, -ae, m. the Ax'ona River, (*the Aisne*)
Babylōnia, -ae, f. Babylon
Bacchus, -ī, m. Bacchus, god of wine
Bacēnis, -is, f. Bacenis (Basē'nis), a forest in Germany
Baculus, -ī, m., see Sextius
Balbus, -ī, m. Cornelius Balbus, an intimate friend of Caesar

- Baleāris**, -e Balearic, of the Balearic Islands. The best slingers came from this island
- balteus**, -ī, *m.* sword-belt
- * **barbarus**, -a, -um (*not Greek or Roman*), barbarous, uncivilized; *as noun, m.* native, barbarian
- basilica**, -ae, *f.* a public building used for business and courts
- beātus**, -a, -um blessed, happy
- Belgae**, -ārum, *m. pl.* the Belgians
- Belgium**, -ī, *n.* Belgium
- bellicōsus**, -a, -um warlike, fond of war
- bellicus**, -a, -um warlike
- bellō**, ī, *intr.* carry on war, fight
- Bellovacī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Bellovacī (Bellov'asi), a powerful tribe of the Belgians
- * **bellum**, -ī, *n.* war
- * **bene**, *adv.* well, successfully
- * **beneficium**, -ī [bene + faciō] *n.* favor, kindness, service, benefit
- bēstia**, -ae, *f.* beast
- bi-**, **bis-**, *insep. prefix* two
- bibō**, 3, bibī, —, *tr. or intr.* drink
- Bibracte**, -is, *n.* Bibrac'te, the chief town of the Aeduians
- Bibrax**, -actis, *f.* Bi'brax, a town of the Remi
- biceps**, **bicipitis** [bi + caput] two-headed
- * **biduum**, -ī [bis + diēs] *n.* period of two days, two days
- biennium**, -ī [bi + annus] *n.* two years
- * **binī**, -ae, -a [bis] *pl. adj.* two at a time, two apiece
- bipertitō**, *adv.* in two divisions
- * **bis**, *adv.* twice
- Biturigēs**, -um, *m. pl.* the Bituriges (Bituri'jēz). a tribe of central Gaul
- Boīī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Boi'i, a Gallic tribe
- bonitās**, -tātis [bonus] *f.* goodness, fertility
- * **bonus**, -a, -um good, faithful, reliable, favorable, friendly, kindly
- bōs**, **bovis**, *m. or f.* ox, cow; *pl.* cattle
- bracchium**, ī, *n.* forearm, arm
- Bratuspantium**, -ī, *n.* Bratuspantium (Bratuspan'shium), a town of the Bellovaci
- * **brevis**, -e short, brief
- brevitās**, -tātis, *f.* shortness, brevity
- Britannī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Britons
- Britannia**, -ae, *f.* Britain
- brūma**, -ae, *f.* winter solstice, winter
- Brūtus**, -ī [brutus, dull] *m.* Decimus Junius Brutus, an able officer under Caesar, but later one of his assassins; Lucius Junius Brutus, first consul; Marcus Junius Brutus, also one of Caesar's assassins
- C.**, *abbr. for* Gāius Cā'ius, a Roman praenomen
- Cabūrus**, ī, *m.*, *see* Valerius
- cadāver**, -eris [cadō] *n.* corpse
- * **cadō**, 3, cecidi, cāsūrus, *intr.* fall, be slain
- Cadurci**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Cadurci (Kader'si), a Gallic tribe near the Province
- Caeciliānus**, -ī, *m.* Caecilianus (Sēsi-liā'nus), a Roman cognomen
- Caecina**, -ae, *m.* Caecina Paetus (Sēsi'na Pē'tus), husband of Arria
- caecus**, -a, -um blind
- * **caedēs**, -is, *f.* cutting down, killing, massacre

- * caedō, 3, cecīdī, caesus cut, cut down, kill
 caelestis, *e* of heaven, heavenly;
as noun, m. pl. gods
 Caelius, *a, um* Caelian (Sē'lian);
ac. mōns one of the hills of Rome
 caelum, -ī, *n.* sky, heaven
 caeruleus, *a, um* sky-blue, blue
 Caesar, -aris, *m.* Gaius Julius
 Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul and
 author of the *Commentaries*
 caespes, -itis, *m.* cut sod, turf
 Calais, -is, *m.* Calais, one of the
 Argonauts
 * calamitās, -tātis, *f.* loss, disaster,
 defeat
 calcar, -āris, *n.* spur
 calceus, -ī, *m.* shoe
 calidus, *a, um* warm
 callidus, *a, um* cunning, shrewd
 cālō, -ōnis, *m.* servant, camp-
 follower, driver
 * campus, -ī, *m.* open country, field,
 plain
 candidus, *a, um* white
 candor, -ōris, *m.* splendor, brilliancy
 canis, -is, *m. or f.* dog
 Cannae, -arum, *f. pl.* Cannae
 (Can'ae), a town in Italy
 canō, 3, cecini, cantus, *tr. or intr.*
 sound, sing
 Cantium, -ī, *n.* Cantium (Kent),
 a district in England
 cantō, 1, *tr. or intr.* sing
 capillus, -ī, *m.* hair
 * capio, 3, cēpī, captus take, receive,
 seize, capture, deceive, reach, ar-
 rive at, move
 Capitōlium, -ī, *n.* the Capitoline,
 one of the hills of Rome; capitol
 capra, -ae, *f.* goat
 * captivus, -a, -um taken, captured;
as noun, m. captive
 * caput, -itis, *n.* head, mouth (*of a*
river), life
 careō, 2, -uī, -itūrus, *intr.* be with-
 out, go without
 carmen, -inis, *n.* song, prophecy
 Carnutēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Car'nutēs,
 a Gallic tribe
 carō, carnis, *f.* flesh, meat
 carpō, 3, carpsi, carptus pick, blame,
 divide
 * carrus, -ī, *m.* cart
 Carthāginiēnsis, -e Carthaginian;
as noun, m. a Carthaginian
 Carthāgō, -inis, *f.* Carthage
 cārus, -a, -um dear, beloved
 casa, -ae, *f.* hut, cabin
 Casca, -ae, *m.* Cas'ca, a Roman name
 cāseus, -ī, *m.* cheese
 Cassiānus, -a, -um of Cassius
 Cassius, -ī, *m.* Lucius Cassius Lon-
 ginus (Lū'shius Cash'ius Lonj'i-
 nus), consul in 107 B.C.
 * castellum, -ī, *n.* little fort, post,
 fortress, small camp
 Casticus, -ī, *m.* Cast'icus, a chief of
 the Sequanians
 Castor, -oris, *m.* Castor, brother of
 Pollux
 * castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.* camp
 * cāsus, -ūs [cadō] *m.* fall, chance,
 calamity, fate, emergency
 catēna, -ae, *f.* chain, fetter
 Caturigēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Caturi-
 ges (Catur'i'jēs), a tribe in the Alps
 cauda, -ae, *f.* tail
 caupō, -ōnis, *m.* innkeeper
 * causa, -ae, *f.* cause, reason; causā,
with a preceding genitive for the
 sake of, for the purpose of

causatus, -a, -um (*p. p. of causor*)
giving as reason

causidicus, -i, *m.* pleader

cautē, *adv.* carefully

Cavarillus, -i, *m.* Cavaril'lus, a
chieftain of the Aeduians

caveō, 2, **cāvī**, **cautus**, *tr. or intr.* take
care, be on guard, be cautious

caverna, -ae, *f.* cave

* **cēdō**, 3, **cessi**, **cessus**, *intr.* move,
retreat, obey, yield

celebrō, 1 **celebrate**, announce, pro-
claim

* **celer**, -eris, -ere *swift, sudden*

* **celeritās**, -tātis, *f.* swiftness, speed

celeriter, *adv.* quickly, swiftly

cēlō, 1 **hide**, conceal

Celtillus, -i, *m.* Celtillus (Seltil'us),
an Arvernian, father of Vercinge-
torix

cēna, -ae, *f.* dinner

Cēnabum, -i, *n.* Cenabum (Sen'a-
bum), (*Orleans*), a city of the
Carnutes

* **cēnseō**, 2, **cēnsuī**, **cēnsus** estimate,
think, decree, be of an opinion

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.* enumeration, census

Centaurus, -i, *m.* Centaur, a crea-
ture half man and half horse

* **centum**, *indecl. adj.* one hundred

* **centuriō**, -ōnis, *m.* commander of a
century, captain, centurion

cēra, -ae, *f.* wax

Cerberus, -i, *m.* Cerberus, the dog
guarding the door of Hades

Cerēs, -eris, *f.* Ceres, goddess of
fruits and grains

* **cernō**, 3, **crēvī**, **crētus** [certus]
separate, discern, see

certāmen, -inis [certō, *struggle*] *n.*
battle, contest, rivalry

certē, *adv.* surely, at least

certō, *adv.* surely, at least

* **certus**, -a, -um determined, defi-
nite, sure, appointed, well-estab-
lished; **certiōrem facere** inform

cervix, -icis, *f.* neck

cervus, -i, *m.* stag

* **cēteri**, -ae, -a, *pl. adj.* the others,
the rest

Ceutronēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Ceu-
trones (Sū'tronēz), a Gallic tribe
in the Province

Cherusci, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Cherusci
(Kerus'i), a German tribe

Christianus, -i, *m.* a Christian

Christus, -i, *m.* Christ

cibārius, -a, -um relating to food;
us noun, n. pl. food, supplies

* **cibus**, -i, *m.* food

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.* Quintus Tullius
Cicero (Sis'ero), brother of Cicero
the orator, was one of Caesar's
officers

Kimber, -brī, *m.* Kimber (Sim'ber),
one of the assassins of Caesar

Kimbrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Kimbri
(Sim'brī), a German tribe

Cinnātus, -i, *m.* Lucius Quinctius
Cinnatus (Sinsinā'tus), a famous
Roman

cingō, 3, **cinxi**, **cinctus** surround,
inclose, invest

cinis, -eris, *m.* ashes

* **circiter** [circus, *circle*] *adv.* about;
prep. w. acc. around, near

circuitus, -ūs, *m.* going around, dis-
tance around, circuit

* **circum**, *prep. w. acc.* around, about,
near

circumagō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus go out of
the way

- circumcīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus cut around
 * circumdō, 1, dedī, -datus put around, surround, encompass
 circumcō, -īre, īī (-īvi), -itus *tr. or intr.* go around, surround, visit
 circumiciō, 3, ieci, iectus [circum + iaciō] throw around, place around
 circummitto, 3, misi, missus send around
 * circumsisto, 3, steti, -- take a stand around, surround
 circumspiciō, 3, spexi, -spectus look around at, consider, examine
 circumvallō, 1 surround with a rampart, blockade
 * circumveniō, 4, vveni, -ventus come around, beset, circumvent, deceive
 Circus, 1, *m.* Circus Maximus
 cis, *prep. w. acc.* this side, on this side of
 * citerior, -ius, *adj. comp.* on this side, nearer, hither
 cithara, -ae, *f.* cithara, lute
 citharoedus, 1, *m.* harpist
 citissimē, *sup. of citō, adv.* most swiftly
 citō, *adv.* quickly
 citrā, *prep. w. acc.* on this side
 * civis, -is, *m. or f.* citizen, fellow-citizen
 * civitas, -tatis [civis] *f.* citizenship, state, nation, city
 * clam, *adv.* secretly
 clāmitō, 1 call repeatedly, cry out
 * clāmō, 1 call out
 * clāmor, -ōris, *m.* shout, uproar, clamor
 clandestinus, -a, -um secret, clandestine
 clārus, -a, -um clear, bright, loud
 * classis, -is, *f.* fleet
 Claudius, -ī, *m.* Claudius, a Roman emperor; Appius Claudius Pulcher, consul in 54 B.C.
 * claudō, 3, clausi, clausus shut, close
 clāvis, -is, *f.* key, lock
 clēmētia, -ae, *f.* mercy, kindness
 * cliēns, -entis, *m.* dependent, client
 clientēla, -ae, *f.* clientship, protection
 cloāca, -ae, *f.* sewer
 Clōdīus, -ī, *m.* Publius Clodius Pulcher, who was killed by Milo in 52 B.C.
 Cn., *abbr. for* Gnaeus Gnaeus (Nē'us), Roman praenomen
 coacervō, 1 heap together, pile up
 coactus, *p. p. of cōgō*
 coccinus, -a, -um scarlet
 coctus, *p. p. of coquō*
 coemō, 3, -ēmi, -ēptus purchase, buy up
 coeō, -īre, -īī (-īvi), -itus, *intr.* go together, come together
 * coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *defective (used in perfect system only) tr. or intr.* began, undertook
 coercoō, 2, -ercui, -ercitus restrain, hold in check
 coetus, -ūs, *m.* assembly
 * cōgitō, 1 consider thoroughly, think, plan
 cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.* blood-relationship
 * cognōscō, 3, -gnōvī, -gnitus learn, find out about, investigate; *in perf. system* know
 * cōgō, 3, coēgi, coactus [con + agō] drive together, bring together, get together, collect, compel, oblige, force
 * cohors, -ortis, *f.* cohort, company

- cohortātiō, -ōnis, f.** encouragement
cohortor, i, dep. encourage, address
Colchī, -ōrum, m. pl. Colchians
(Kol'kians), inhabitants of Colchis
Colchis, -idis (acc. -ida) f. Colchis
(Kol'kis), a country east of the
Black Sea
collātus, p. p. of cōnferō
collaudō, i praise
colligō, i tie together, fasten to-
 gether
*** colligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus** gather to-
 gether, collect
*** collis, -is, m.** hill
*** collocō, i** place, station, settle
*** colloquium, -ī, n.** conference, in-
 terview, conversation
*** colloquor, 3, -locūtus sum, dep.,**
intr. talk, converse, confer
colō, 3, -uī, cultus till, cherish, wor-
 ship, dwell in
colōnia, -ae, f. colony
color, -ōris, m. color
columba, -ae, f. dove
coma, -ae, f. hair, rays
combūrō, 3, -ussī, -ustus burn up,
 consume
comedō, 3, -ēdī, -ēsus or -ēstus eat,
 consume
comes, -itis, m. companion
comitia, -ōrum, n. pl. assembly of
 the people for voting, election
comitor, i, dep. accompany, follow
*** commeātus, -ūs, m.** going to and
 fro, trip, supplies
*** commemorō, i** bring to mind,
 mention
commendātiō, -ōnis, f. recommen-
 dation
*** commendō, i** put under one's pro-
 tection, intrust, recommend
commeō, i, intr. go back and forth,
 go about, go
commilitō, -ōnis, m. fellow-soldier
comminus, adv. hand to hand, at
 close range
*** committō, 3, -mīsī, -missus** put
 together, join, unite, risk, intrust,
 allow, admit
Commius, -ī, m. Com'nius, an
 Atrebatian
commodē, adv. well, suitably, con-
 veniently, easily
commodum, -ī, n. convenience,
 profit, blessing
*** commodus, -a, -um** suitable, con-
 venient, favorable, easy, useful
*** commoror, i, dep., intr.** delay,
 stay
*** commoveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus** dis-
 turb, excite, agitate, impel
*** communicō, i** communicate, im-
 part, share, unite, consult
commūniō, 4, -īvī, -ītus fortify on
 all sides, build
*** commūnis, e** common, belonging
 to all
commūtātiō, -ōnis, f. change, re-
 versal
commūtō, i change wholly, exchange,
 replace
*** comparō, i** prepare, procure, buy
*** compellō, 3, -pulī, pulsus** drive
 together, collect
*** comperiō, 4, -perī, -pertus** learn,
 detect, find out
complector, 3, -plexus sum, dep. em-
 brace, include
*** compleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētus** fill up, fill,
 crowd
*** complūrēs, -a or -ia, pl. adj.** many,
 several

- comportō, 1 carry together, collect, bring in
 * comprehendō, 3, -dī, -hēnsus lay hold of, seize
 compulsus, -a, -um, *p. p. of compellō*
 con- [cum] *prefix* with, completely
 cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* attempt
 * concēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus, *tr. or intr.* go away, grant, submit
 concidō, 3, -cidī, - , *intr.* fall down, be slain
 * concidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsus cut to pieces, intersect, kill
 conciliō, 1 call together, reconcile, win over, gain
 * concilium, ī, *n.* assembly, meeting
 concinō, 3, -uī, - , *tr. or intr.* sing in concert
 concitō, 1 rouse, incite
 conclāmō, 1, *tr. or intr.* cry out, shout
 concordia, ae, *f.* harmony, concord
 concrēdō, 3, -idī, -itus intrust
 concurrō, 3, -curri or -cucurri, -cur-
 sus run together, run up, hurry
 concursus, -ūs, *m.* running together, encounter, collision, attack
 * condiciō, -ōnis, *f.* terms, proposition, situation
 condō, 3, -didi, -ditus found, put away, bury
 conducō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus lead together, assemble, hire
 * cōnferō, -ferre, -contulī, -collātus bring together, consider, collect, convey, put off, ascribe; sē cōnferre betake oneself, go
 * cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense
 * cōnfestim, *adv.* at once, immediately
 * cōnficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus complete, finish, exhaust
 * cōnfidō, 3, -fīsus sum, *semi-dep., intr.* have confidence in, rely upon, trust, believe, hope
 * cōnfirmō, 1 strengthen, encourage, state, appoint, establish
 cōnfisus, *p. p. of cōnfidō*
 cōnflagrō, 1, *intr.* be on fire, burn
 * cōnfigō, 3, -fixī, -flictus, *intr.* fight together, contend, clash
 * cōngredior, 3, -gressus sum, *dep., intr.* meet, meet in arms
 * coniciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus throw together, hurl, station, put
 cōniūctim, *adv.* together, jointly
 * cōniungō, 3, -iūnxī, -iūctus join together, unite
 cōniūnx, -iugis, *m. or f.* husband, wife
 cōniūratiō, -ōnis, *f.* conspiracy, plot
 * cōniūrō, 1, *intr.* take oath together, conspire, plot
 Conōn, -ōnis, *m.* Cō'non
 * cōnor, 1, *dep., tr. or intr.* attempt, try; *p. p. used as noun*, cōnāta, -ōrum, *n. pl.* plans
 * cōnquirō, 3, -quisivī, -quisitus seek for, hunt up, bring together
 cōnsanguineus, -a, -um related by blood; *us noun, m.* kinsman
 * cōnscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus climb, scale, embark
 cōnsciscō, 3, -scivī, -scītus approve of, decide upon, decree
 * cōnscribō, 3, -scripsī, -scriptus write, levy, enlist
 cōnsecrātus, -a, -um sacred, hallowed
 cōnsector, 1, *dep.* follow closely, overtake, pursue
 cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* consent, agreement
 * cōnsentiō, 4, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, *intr.* agree together, conspire

- * **cōsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, *dep.* follow up, overtake, attain, pursue, follow
- cōservō**, 1 spare, protect, keep
- Cōsidius**, -ī, *m.* Pub'lius Cōsidi'us, an officer in Caesar's army
- * **cōsīdō**, 3, -sēdī, -sessus, *intr.* take a seat, settle, pitch camp
- * **cōsīlium**, -ī, *n.* plan, decision, purpose, design, consent, authority, judgment, council
- cōsimilis**, -e very similar, much like
- * **cōsistō**, 3, -stiti, —, *intr.* take a stand, be stationed, halt, stay, settle, ground, anchor, depend, be
- cōsōlor**, 1, *dep.* comfort, encourage
- * **cōspectus**, -ūs, *m.* sight, appearance
- * **cōspiciō**, 3, -spexī, -spectus get sight of, see
- * **cōspicor**, 1, *dep.* get sight of, see, notice
- cōspirō**, 1 agree together, conspire
- cōstanter**, *adv.* unanimously, firmly
- cōstipō**, 1 crowd together, pack
- * **cōstituō**, 3, -stitui, -stitūtus station, put, set up, halt, anchor, appoint, make, finish, form, decide
- * **cōstō**, 1, -stiti, -stāturus, *intr.* stand together, be agreed, appear, cost; *impers.*, * **cōstat** it is agreed, it is known, it is certain
- * **cōsuēscō**, 3, -suēvi, -suētus, *intr.* become accustomed; *in perf. system* be accustomed
- * **cōsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.* custom, habit, way of life
- * **cōsul**, -ulis, *m.* consul, the highest magistrate of the Roman state
- cōsulātus**, -ūs, *m.* consulship
- * **cōsulō**, 3, -suluī, -sultus, *tr. or intr.* hold a consultation, consult for, spare
- cōsultō**, 1, *tr. or intr.* take counsel, deliberate, consult
- cōsultum**, -ī, *n.* decree, decision
- * **cōsūmō**, 3, -sūmpsī, sūmptus use up, consume, waste, destroy, spend
- cōsurgō**, 3, -surrēxi, -surrēctus, *intr.* rise, stand up
- contabulō**, 1 build of boards, erect
- contāgiō**, -ōnis, *f.* contact, evil association
- * **contemnō**, 3, -tempsi, -temptus despise
- contemptiō**, -ōnis, *f.* scorn, contempt
- * **contendō**, 3, -tendī, -tentus, *tr. or intr.* strain, strive for, press forward, fight, insist, make haste
- contentiō**, -ōnis, *f.* effort, struggle, rivalry
- conterō**, 3, -trivī, -tritrus use up
- contestor**, 1, *dep.* call to witness, invoke
- contextō**, 3, -ui, -tus join together, weave
- continēns**, -entis contiguous, continuous; *as noun, f.* continent
- continenter**, *adv.* continuously, continually
- continentia**, -ae, *f.* self control, moderation
- * **contineō**, 2, -ui, -tentus hold together, keep, check, hem in, bound, hold, comprise, fill, restrain; **sē**
- continēre** stay, remain: *p. p. as adj.* content, satisfied
- contingō**, 3, -tigī, -tactus, *tr. or intr.* touch, reach, extend to, happen
- * **continuus**, -a, -um continuous, successive, without interruption
- cōtiō**, -ōnis, *f.* speech, assembly

- * *contrā*, *adv.* fronting, on the other hand, in opposition; *contrā*, *atque* opposite to, otherwise than; *prep.* *re. acc.* contrary to, opposite, against, facing, in spite of, in reply to, towards
contrahō, 3, *trāxī*, *tractus* bring together, collect, contract
contrārius, a, *um* on the other side, opposite, opposing
 * *controvērsia*, *ae, f.* dispute, quarrel
 * *contumēlia*, -*ae, f.* insult, abuse, disgrace, outrage
 * *conveniō*, 4, *vēnī*, -*ventus, tr. or intr.* come together, assemble, be suitable, meet, agree upon; *impers.* *convenit* it is agreed
conventus, *ūs, m.* meeting, assembly, court
conversio, *onis, f.* revolution
 * *convertō*, 3, *vertī*, *versus, tr. or intr.* turn, turn about; *conversa signa inferre* wheel and charge
Convictolitavis, *is, m.* Convictolitavis, a prominent Aeduan
convocō, 1 *call together, summon*
coorior, 4, *ortus sum, dep., intr.* arise, break out, spring up
cophinus, *i, m.* casket
 * *cōpia*, *ae [co + ops] f.* plenty, abundance, supply; *pl.* supplies, resources, soldiers, forces
cōpiōsus, a, *um* abundantly supplied, rich
coquō, 3, *coxi*, *coctus* cook
cor, *cordis, n.* heart
cōram [co + ōs] adv. present, face to face, in person
Corinthus, *i, f.* Corinth, a city in Greece
Coriolānus, -*i, m.* Coriolanus
 * *cornū*, -*ūs, n.* horn, antler, wing (of an army), flank
corōna, -*ae, f.* wreath, circle (of men); *sub corōnā* at auction
 * *corpus*, -*oris, n.* body, person, corpse
corrumpō, 3, -*rūpī*, -*ruptus* break up, destroy, spoil
corvus, -*i, m.* raven
 * *cotidianus*, -*a, -um* daily, usual
 * *cotidiē* [quot + *diēs*] *adv.* daily, every day
Cotta, -*ae, m.* a Roman cognomen; see *Aurunculeius*
Cotus, -*i, m.* Cōtus, a prominent Aeduan
coxī, see *coquō*
Crassus, -*i, m.* Marcus Licinius Crassus, triumvir with Caesar, 55 B.C.; Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's officers
crātis, -*is, f.* faggot; *pl.* wickerwork
 * *crēber*, -*bra, -brum* thick, crowded, frequent, numerous
 * *crēdō*, 3, *crēdidī*, *crēditus, tr. or intr.* intrust, trust, believe, consider, think
cremō, 1 *burn, consume*
creō, 1 *appoint, elect*
Creōn, -*ontis, m.* Crēon, king of Corinth
crēscō, 3, *crēvī*, *crētus, intr.* grow, increase
crēta, -*ae, f.* chalk
Crēta, -*ae, f.* Crete, an island
Crētēnsēs, -*ium, m. pl.* Cretans
Crētēs, -*um, m. pl.* Cretans
 * *cruciātus*, -*ūs, m.* torment, torture
crūdēlis, -*e* cruel
cubiculum, -*i, n.* bedroom

cubō, 1, -uī, -itus, intr. recline, lie sick

culpa, -ae, f. fault, error, blame

cultūra, -ae, f. tillage, cultivation

cultus, -ūs, m. care, way of living, civilization

* **cum, prep. w. abl.** with

* **cum, conj.** when, while, after, at the time when, whenever, as often as, as, since, because, although, while; **cum primum** as soon as;

* **cum . . . tum** as . . . so, both . . . and, not only . . . but also

cūnābula, -ōrum, n. pl. cradle

cūnctor, 1, dep., intr. hesitate

cūnctus, -a, -um all collectively, all

cupidē, adv. eagerly, ardently

* **cupiditās, -tātis, f.** eagerness, greed, desire

cupidō, -inis, f. desire, eagerness

Cupidō, -inis, m. Cupid, god of love

* **cupidus, -a, -um** eager, desirous

* **cupiō, 3, -ivī, -itus, tr. or intr.** desire, wish, long for

* **cūr, interr. adv.** why? wherefore?

* **cūra, -ae, f.** care, anxiety, diligence

cūria, -ae, f. senate house

Curius, -ī, m. M'. Curius Dentatus (Manius Cū'rius Dentā'tus), victor over the Samnites

* **cūrō, 1** take care of, see to, cause

* **currō, 3, cucurrī, cursus, intr.** run

currus, -ūs, m. cart, wagon, chariot

* **cursus, -ūs, m.** running, speed, course

custōdia, -ae, f. watch, guard

custodiō, 4, -ivī, -itus guard, hold in custody

* **custōs, -ōdis, m.** guard, sentinel

Cyzicus, -ī, f. Cyzicus (Siz'ikus), a city in Asia Minor

D., abbr. for Decimus Decimus (Des'imus), Roman praenomen

Daedalus, 1, m. Daedalus (Ded'alus), first flier

damnō, 1 find guilty, convict

damnōsus, a, um injurious, destructive

* **dē, prep. w. abl.** down from, from, down, away from, out of, about, concerning, of, during, in regard to, because of, in consequence of, for

dea, -ae, f. goddess

* **dēbeō, 2, uī, itus** owe; *w. inf.* ought, should, must; *pass.* be due

dēcēdō, 3, -cessī, cessus, intr. go away, withdraw, die

* **decem, indecl. adj.** ten

* **dēcernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētus, tr. or intr.** decide, determine, resolve

* **dēcērtō, 1, intr.** fight, fight to a finish, decide by battle

dēcessus, -ūs, m. going away, ebbing, death

dēcidō, 3, -cidī, - , intr. fall down, fall off

* **decimus, a, um** tenth

dēcipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus deceive

* **dēclivis, e** sloping, downward; *as noun, n. pl.* slopes

decōrus, -a, um beautiful

dēcrescō, 3, -crēvī, -crētus, intr. decrease, grow less

dēcētum, 1, n. decree, decision

dēcētus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēcernō

decuriō, -ōnis, m. decurion, commander of a troop of ten horsemen

dēcurrō, 3, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, intr. run down, hurry

dēdecus, -oris, n. disgrace, reproach

dēditicius, -a, -um surrendered; *as noun, m. pl.* captives

- * *dēditō*, -ōnis, *f.* surrender
 * *dēdō*, 3, -didī, -ditus give up, surrender, devote
 * *dēdūcō*, 3, -dūxī, -ductus lead down, draw out, launch, lead
dēfatigō, 1 tire out, exhaust
dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* desertion, revolt, rebellion
 * *dēfendō*, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus drive off, avert, protect
dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* defense
 * *dēfēnsor*, -ōris, *m.* protector; *pl.* guards, defenses
 * *dēferō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus carry off, drive down, bring, carry, confer, offer, report, propose; *pass.* drift, be turned aside
 * *dēfessus*, -a, -um worn out
 * *dēficiō*, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr. or intr.* revolt, fail, cease; *dēficere* ab desert
dēfigō, 3, -fixī, -fixus set, fasten, drive down
dēfodiō, 3, -fōdī, -fossus dig down, bury
dēfōrmis, -e deformed, ugly
dēfugiō, 3, fūgī, — run away, flee from, avoid
dēfungor, 3, *dēfūctus sum*, *dep.*, *intr.* finish, die; *p. p. as noun*, *dēfūctus*, -ī, *m.* dead person
dēiciō, 3, iēcī, iectus throw down, hurl, destroy, drive away
dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* declivity, descent
deinceps, *adv.* successively
 * *deinde*, *adv.* afterwards, next, then
dēlābor, 3, -lāpsus *sum*, *dep.*, *intr.* sink, descend
dēlātus, *p. p. of dēferō*
dēlectō, 1 delight, please
dēlēctus, *see* *dilēctus*
 * *dēlēō*, 2, -ēvī, -ētus blot out, destroy, annihilate
dēlibērō, 1, *tr. or intr.* consider, discuss
dēlictum, -ī, *n.* fault, crime
dēligō, 1 tie down, fasten, moor
 * *dēligō*, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus select
dēlitescō, 3, -litui, —, *intr.* hide away
Delphī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* Delphi, a city in Greece, the home of the oracle of Apollo
dēmētō, 3, -messui, -messus harvest, gather
dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* move away, go from home
dēmō, 3, *dēmpsi*, *dēemptus* take down, remove
 * *dēmōnstrō*, 1 show, designate, explain
dēmum, *adv.* at last, finally
dēnique, *adv.* finally, after all, at least
 * *dēns*, *dentis*, *m.* tooth
dēnsus, -a, -um thick, crowded
dēnūntiō, 1 announce, order, threaten
deorsum, *adv.* down
dēpellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus drive away, avert
dēpendeō, 2, -dī, —, *intr.* hang from, hang down, be dependent on
 * *dēpōnō*, 3, -posui, -positus lay down, lay aside, give up
dēpopulor, 1, *dep.* lay waste, plunder
dēportō, 1 carry away, win
dēposcō, 3, -poposci, — call for, demand
dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.* intercessor
dēprehendō, 3, -dī, -hēnsus seize, catch, overtake
dēripiō, 3, -ui, -reptus snatch, tear away

dērogō, 1 take away

* dēscendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsus, *intr.*
climb down, descend, lower one-
self, resort to

dēsecō, 1, -uī, -sectus cut off

* dēserō, 3, -uī, -tus leave, abandon,
fail

* dēsiderō, 1 desine, wish for, de-
mand, miss; *pass.* be lost

dēsidia, -ae, *f.* idleness

dēsīdō, 3, -dī, —, *intr.* fall

dēsiliō, 4, -uī, -sultus, *intr.* jump
down, dismount

dēsīnō, 3, -sī, -situs, *intr.* desist,
stop

* dēsistō, 3, -stitī, -stitus, *intr.*
stand away, desist, give up, cease

dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* downward look,
view

* dēspērō, 1, *intr.* be hopeless,
despair of

* dēspiciō, 3, -spexī, spectus look
down on, despise

dēstinō, 1 make fast, bind, appoint

dēstringō, 3, -strinxī, strictus un-
sheathe

* dēsūm, -esse, -fui, futūrus, *intr.*
fail, be lacking, be needed

dēsūper, *adv.* from above

dēterreō, 2, -uī, -itus frighten off,
hinder, prevent

dētrahō, 3, -trāxī, -tractus take
off, pull off, detract, remove

* dētrimentum, -ī, *n.* loss, injury,
defeat

dēturbō, 1 drive down, overthrow,
dislodge

Deucaliōn, -ōnis, *m.* Deucālion,
Greek survivor of the flood

dēūrō, 3, -ussī, -ustus burn down

* deus, -ī, *m.* god, deity

dēvehō, 3, vexī, vectus carry
down, carry away, bring, convey

dēveniō, 4, vēnī, ventus, *intr.*
come, arrive

dēvertō, 3, -tī, —, *tr.* or *intr.* turn
a side, lodge

dēvexus, -a, -um sloping; *cy noun*,
n. pl. slope, fall, slide

dēvoveō, 2, vovī, vōtus sacrifice

* dexter, -tra, -trum on the right,
right; *cy noun*, *f.* dextra, -ae
the man's right hand

Dīana, -ae, *f.* Diana, goddess of
the moon and the chase

dicō, 1 dedicate, offer

* dicō, 3, dixī, dictus speak, say,
plead, appoint; *act.* iūs dicere
pronounce judgment

dictātor, -ōris, *m.* dictator

* dies, -ei, *m.* or *f.* day, daytime;
in dies from day to day

* differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus,
tr. or *intr.* parcel, catter, put
off, differ

* difficilis, -e hard, laborious, peril-
ous

* difficultas, -tatis, *f.* difficulty,
hardship

diffido, 3, fraxī, sum, remi dep.,
intr. or *intr.* despoil

diffundo, 3, fudi, fusus spread
out, extend

* digitus, -i, *m.* finger

* dignitas, -tatis, *f.* worth, char-
acter, honor, authority, prestige

* dignus, -a, -um worthy, deserving

diūdicō, 1 decide

dilectus, -ūs, *m.* election, levy,
conspicuous choice

* diligens, -entis *adj.* faithful

diligenter, -er *adv.* with pains, carefully

- diligentia, -ae, *f.* industry, care
 diligō, 3, -lēxi, lēctus single out,
 value, love
 diluvium, ī, *n.* flood
 * dīmīcō, 1, *intr.* fight
 dīmidius, a, um half; *as noun,*
n. half
 * dīmīttō, 3, mīsi, missus send in
 different directions, send out, send
 away, let slip, give up
 Diomēdēs, is, *m.* Diomedes
 (Diomē'dēz), a king of Thrace
 * dirīgō, 3, rēxi, rēctus drive
 * diripiō, 3, -ui, reptus tear to
 pieces, plunder
 dīrus, -a, um dreadful
 dis-, *insep. prefix* apart, not
 Dis, Dītis, *m.* Dis or Pluto, the
 god of the underworld
 * discēdō, 3, cessi, cessus, *intr.* go
 away, divide, open; *ex. ab* abandon
 discessus, ūs, *m.* departure, march-
 ing away
 * disciplina, -ae, *f.* instruction,
 training, education, doctrine
 discipulus, i, *m.* pupil
 discō, 3, didici, -tr. or *intr.* learn,
 be taught
 Discordia, -ae, *f.* Discor'dia, god-
 dess of discord
 discrimen, inis, *n.* decisive move-
 ment, crisis
 * dispergō, 3, spersi, -persus
 scatter, disperse
 dispōnō, 3, posui, positus place,
 arrange, post, station here and there
 disputātiō, ōnis, *f.* argument, dis-
 cussion
 disputō, 1 discuss, argue
 dissēnsiō, ōnis, *f.* difference of
 opinion, strife
 dissuādēō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsus, *tr.*
 or *intr.* advise against, dissuade
 distineō, 2, -ui, -tentus keep
 apart, hold back, hinder
 * distribuō, 3, -ui, -ūtus divide,
 assign
 distuli, *see* differō
 disyllabus, -a, -um of two syllables
 ditissimus, -a, -um, *sup.* of dives
 richest, very rich
 * diū, *adv.* a long time; *quam diū*
 as long as
 diūtinus, -a, -um permanent
 diūtius, diūtissimē, *comp. and sup.*
of diū
 diūturnus, -a, -um long, enduring
 * diversus, -a, -um scattered, sepa-
 rate, distant, different
 dives, -itis rich
 Diviciācus, -ī, *m.* Diviciacus (Di-
 vishā'kus), an Aeduan, friendly
 to the Romans; a king of the
 Suessiones
 Divicō, -ōnis, *m.* Div'ico, a leader
 among the Aeduans
 * dividō, 3, -visi, -visus separate,
 scatter, divide
 divinus, -a, -um belonging to the
 gods, sacred, divine
 divus, -a, -um deified, holy; Divus
 Salvātor San Salvador
 * dō, dare, dedī, datus give, grant,
 assign, allot, cause, give up; *inter*
sē dare exchange
 * doceō, 2, -ui, doctus teach, show,
 tell
 doctrīna, -ae, *f.* knowledge, learning
 doctus, -a, -um learned; *as noun,*
m. learned man, sage
 documentum, -ī, *n.* lesson, example,
 warning

- * **doleō**, 2, -uī, -itūrus, *intr.* suffer, grieve, lament
dolor, -ōris, *m.* pain, grief, annoyance, indignation
dolus, -ī, *m.* device, deceit, trickery
domesticus, -a, -um belonging to a home, civil, native
domina, -ae, *f.* mistress
dominicus, -a, -um belonging to the master; *w.* diēs Sunday
dominor, 1, *dep.*, *intr.* master
* **dominus**, -ī, *m.* master, lord
* **domus**, -ūs, *f.* house, family, home, country; **domī**, *loc.* at home
dōnec, *conj.* until
Donnataurus, -ī, *m.* Donnataurus; *see* Valerius
dōnum, -ī, *n.* gift, present, bribe
dormiō, 4, -ivī, -itus, *intr.* sleep
dorsum, -ī, *n.* back, ridge
dōs, dōtis [dō], *f.* marriage portion, dowry
dracō, -ōnis, *m.* dragon
Druidēs, -um, *m. pl.* Druids, priests of Gaul and Britain
dubitatiō, -ōnis, *f.* doubt, hesitancy
* **dubitō**, 1, *tr. or intr.* doubt, be uncertain, hesitate
dubium, -ī, *n.* doubt
dubius, -a, -um doubtful
ducentī, -ae, -a, *pl.* two hundred
* **dūcō**, 3, dūxī, ductus lead, lead out, bring, take, construct, extend, put off, consider; in **mātrīmonium dūcere** marry
dulce, *adv.* agreeably, delightfully
dulcis, -e sweet
* **dum**, *conj.* while, as long as, until
Dumnorix, -īgis, *m.* Dum'norix, an Aeduan, brother of Diviciacus
* **duo**, -ae, -o two
duodecim, *indecl. adj.* twelve
duodecimus, -a, -um twelfth
duodēviginti, *indecl. adj.* eighteen
duplicō, 1 double
dūritia, -ae, *f.* hardness, hardship
* **dūrus**, -a, -um hard, severe, adverse
* **dux**, ducis, *m.* leader, guide, commander
* **ē**, *see* **ex**
Ēchō, Ēchūs, *f.* Echo, a nymph who pined away for love of Narcissus
ecquis, -quid, *inter. pron.* anyone, anything
ēdiscō, 3, -didici, — learn thoroughly
* **ēditus**, -a, -um elevated, rising high
* **ēdō**, 3, -didī, -ditus put forth, display, give out, utter
edō, 3, ēdī, ēsus eat
ēducō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus lead out, lead forth
effector, -ōris, *m.* a maker, producer
effēminō, 1 make effeminate, weaken
* **effērō**, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry out, take away, make public, report, tell, lift up, raise, encourage, elate
effervēscō, 3, -ferbui, —, *intr.* boil
* **efficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus do, finish, complete, effect, bring about, produce, make, construct, muster, furnish
effodiō, 3, -fōdī, -fossus dig out, tear out
* **effugiō**, 3, -fūgī, —, *tr. or intr.* escape, shun
effundō, 3, -fūdī, -fūsus pour out

- egēns, -entis needy; *as noun, pl.*
 the poor, the destitute
 egeō, 2, egui, —, *intr.* be in want,
 lack, need
 ēgerō, 3, gessi, -gestus carry out
 * ego, mei, *pers. pron.* I
 * ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum, *dep.*,
tr. or intr. go out, march out,
 leave, disembark, land
 ēgregiē, *adv.* excellently
 * ēgregius, -a, -um excellent, ad-
 mirable, remarkable
 ēgressus, *p. p. of ēgredior*
 ēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus drive out,
 expel, banish, strand; *sē ēicere*
 rush out, break out
 ēlātus, *p. p. of efferō*
 eligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus choose
 ēloquor, 3, ēlocūtus sum, *dep.* de-
 clare
 ēmineō, 2, -minuī, —, *intr.* stand
 out, project
 ēmittō, 3, -misi, -missus send forth,
 throw, let go
 * emō, 3, ēmi, ēemptus buy
 ēmptor, -ōris, *m.* buyer, purchaser
 * enim, *conj.* in fact, to be sure,
 for
 Ennius, -ī, *m.* En'nius, an early
 Roman poet
 * ēnūntiō, 1 tell in public, announce
 * eō, ire, īi (īvi), itus, *intr.* go,
 walk, march, travel
 * eō, *adv.* thither, to that place, so,
 far, there, thereon, to this or that
 end
 * eōdem, *adv.* to the same place,
 to the same end
 ehippiātus, -a, -um using saddles
 ehippium, -ī, *n.* saddle-cloth, saddle
 epistula, -ae, *f.* letter
 Eporēdorix, -igis, *m.* Eporē'dorix,
 an Aeduan general
 * eques, -itis, *m.* horseman, mem-
 ber of the equestrian order, knight;
pl. cavalry
 * equester, -tris, -tre equestrian,
 cavalry
 equidem, *adv.* truly, indeed
 * equitātus, -ūs, *m.* cavalry, body
 of horsemen
 equitō, 1, *tr. or intr.* ride
 * equus, -ī, *m.* horse
 ērēctus, -a, -um upright, lofty
 ergō, *adv.* then, therefore
 Eridanus, -ī, *m.* Erid'anus (River)
 * ēripiō, 3, -uī, -reptus tear away,
 seize, rescue; *pass.* be lost, be
 destroyed, be rescued
 errō, 1, *intr.* wander, be mistaken
 * ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* breaking forth,
 sally, rush
 Erymanthius, -a, -um Eryman'thian,
 of Eryman'thus, a chain of moun-
 tains in Greece
 Ēsquilius, -a, -um Es'quiline;
w. mōns one of the hills of Rome
 essedārius, -ī, *m.* fighter in an esse-
 dum, charioteer
 essedum, -ī, *n.* war chariot used
 by the Britons
 * et, *conj.* and; *after a negative*
 but, also, even; et . . . et both
 . . . and, not only . . . but also
 etenim, *conj.* because, since, for
 * etiam, *adv.* even now, still, also,
 besides, even
 * etsī, *conj.* even if, although
 Eucliō, -ōnis, *m.* Euclio (Ū'clio),
 a miser
 Eurystheus, -ī, *m.* Eurystheus
 (Ūris'thoos), king of Mycenae

- ēvādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsus, *intr.* go out, escape, evade
 ēvellō, 3, -velli, -vulsus pull out
 ēveniō, 4, -vēni, -ventus, *intr.* come out, turn out, happen
 * ēventus, -ūs, *m.* outcome, event, result, accident; Bonus Œventus god of good fortune
 ēvocō, 1 call away, summon, invite, challenge
 * ex, ē (*ē* before consonants, *ex* before vowels and consonants), *prep.* w. *abl.* out of, from, from among, of, after, since, in accordance with, in consequence of, by, of (*made of*), in, on
 exāctus, *p. p.* of exigō
 exagitō, 1 drive about, harass
 exāminō, 1 weigh, test
 * exanimō, 1 exhaust, kill
 exārdēscō, 3, -ārsī, -ārsus, *intr.* blaze forth, rage
 exaudiō, 4, -ivī, -ītus hear clearly, hear
 * excēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.* go forth, withdraw, depart, retire
 excellō, 3, -celluī, -celsus, *intr.* be eminent, be superior, surpass
 excidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsus cut out, destroy
 * excipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, *tr. or intr.* take out, capture, intercept, receive
 excitō, 1 call forth, rouse, incite, build up, raise
 exclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus shut out, hinder, prevent
 excōgitō, 1 think out, consider
 excrucio, 1 torture, rack
 excubitor, -ōris, *m.* watchman, sentinel
 excūsō, 1 excuse
 exemplum, 1, *n.* example, precedent, way, manner
 exeō, 4, ire, ii (i vi), itus, *intr.* go out, march out, depart
 * exerceō, 2, uī, itus drive on, occupy, train, exercise
 * exercitātiō, ōnis, *f.* exercise, training, experience, skill, practice
 exercitātus, a, -um trained, experienced
 * exercitus, -ūs, *m.* army, infantry
 exhaustō, 4, hausī, haustus draw out, remove
 exigō, 3, ēgī, āctus drive out, spend, pass, demand
 exiguitās, tātis, *f.* scantiness, shortness, smallness
 * exiguus, a, -um small, short
 eximius, a, -um distinguished, uncommon
 existimātiō, ōnis, *f.* judgment, opinion, thought, repute
 * existimō, 1 think, suppose, estimate, consider
 exitium, 1, *n.* destruction
 * exitus, ūs, *m.* departure, exit, end, conclusion, outcome
 * expediō, 4, ivī, itus extricate, make ready, put in order
 expeditus, a, -um light-armed, without luggage, unimpeded (*or* open)
 expellō, 3, pulī, pulsus drive out, remove
 * experior, 4, pertus sum, *dep.* try, experience
 expiō, 1 atone for, expiate
 * explorātor, -ōris, *m.* explorer, scout
 † explorō, 1 search out, explore, investigate, reconnoiter

- * **expōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positus put out, disembark, expose, set forth, tell, show
- exprimō**, 3, pressī, -pressus force out, extort, imitate, represent
- * **expugnō**, 1 take by storm, capture, overcome
- exsequor**, 3, -secutus sum, *dep.* follow up, enforce
- exsiliō**, 4, siluī, -, *intr.* leap up
- exsistō**, 3, stiti, -, *intr.* come forth, appear, arise, spring up
- * **expectō**, 1 look out for, await, wait for, expect, hope for, wait
- * **exstruō**, 3, -struxī, -structus pile up, heap up, build
- extendō**, 3, -tendi, -tentus extend, spread out
- * **extrā**, *prep. w. acc.* outside of, beyond
- extrahō**, 3, trāxī, -tractus draw out, waste in delay
- * **extrēmus**, a, um [*sup. of exterus*] most distant, farthest, last, extreme, frontier
- extrūdō**, 3, -trūsī, -trusus thrust out, shut out
- Fabius**, ī, *m.* Caius Fā'bīus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army; Lucius Fabius, a centurion of the Eighth Legion
- fābula**, -ae, *f.* story
- * **facile**, *adv.* easily, safely
- * **facilis**, -e easy to do, practicable
- facinus**, -oris, *n.* deed, crime
- * **faciō**, 3, fecī, factus (*for pass. see fiō*) *tr. or intr.* make, do, act, cause, incite, appoint
- * **factiō**, -ōnis, *f.* faction, party
- * **factum**, -ī, *n.* deed, act, measure
- * **facultās**, -tātis, *f.* ability, occasion, leave, supply; *pl.* resources
- fācundus**, -a, -um eloquent, fluent
- fāgus**, -ī, *f.* beech tree
- falcātus**, -a, -um cut with a scythe
- * **fallō**, 3, fefellī, falsus deceive, fail
- falsus**, -a, -um false, groundless
- falx**, falcis, *f.* wall-hook, scythe
- * **fāma**, -ae [*for, speak*] *f.* story, report, reputation
- * **famēs**, -is, *abl. famē*, *f.* hunger, want
- * **familia**, -ae, *f.* collection of slaves, household, family
- * **familiāris**, -e belonging to a house or family, private; *as noun, m.* friend
- fās**, *found only in nom. and acc.* [*for, speak*] *n.* justice, right
- fascis**, -is, *m.* bundle
- fastigātus**, -a, -um sloping, descending
- fastigium**, -ī, *n.* summit, slope
- fātum**, -ī [*for, speak*] *n.* destiny, fate, ill fortune
- faucēs**, -ium, *f., pl.* throat, jaws
- faveō**, 2, fāvī, fautus, *intr.* well disposed toward, favor
- fax**, facis, *f.* torch, firebrand
- febris**, -is, *f.* fever
- fēlicitās**, -tātis, *f.* good fortune, happiness
- fēliciter**, *adv.* fortunately, happily
- fēlis** (fēlēs), -is, *f.* cat
- fēlix**, -icis happy, fortunate
- * **fēmina**, -ae, *f.* woman, female
- fenestra**, -ae, *f.* window
- * **ferē**, *adv.* almost, about, generally
- * **ferō**, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr. or intr.* bear, carry, endure, suffer, win,

- report, offer; *pass.* rush, flow; *flectō*, 3, *flexi*, *flexus* bend, turn
signa ferre advance; *w. graviter* * *fleō*, 2, *flēvi*, *flētus*, *intr.* weep,
 resent bewail
- ferrāmenta*, -ōrum, *n. pl.* tools *Flōra*, -ae, *f.* Flora, goddess of
 made of iron flowets
- ferreus*, -a, -um made of iron *flōrēns*, -entis flourishing, influ-
 * *ferrum*, -i, *n.* iron, sword ential
- fertilitās*, -tātis, *f.* fertility *flōreō*, 2, *uī*, - blossom, flourish
 * *ferus*, -a, -um wild, savage, cruel *flōs*, *flōris*, *m.* blossom, flower
fervefaciō, 3, -fēcī, -factus make *flūctus*, ūs, *m.* wave
 hot
- fervēns*, -entis red-hot, hot * *flūmēn*, -inis, *n.* running water,
fēstus, -a, -um festal; *w. diēs* river
 holiday
- figtus*, *p. p.* of *figō* * *fluō*, 3, *flūxi*, *flūxus*, *intr.* flow
figus, -i, *m. or f.* fig *focus*, -i, *m.* hearth
- * *fidēlis*, -e trustworthy, faithful *fōns*, *fontis*, *m.* fountain, source
 * *fidēs*, -eī, *f.* trust, faith, loyalty, *forceps*, -cipis, *f.* shears
 protection, word, pledge *fore* = *futūrus esse*, *see* sum
- * *fidūcia*, -ae, *f.* trust, confidence *foris*, -is, *f.* door; *foris*, *adv.* out
fidus, -a, -um faithful of doors
- * *figō*, 3, *fixi*, *fixus* drive, affix * *fōrma*, -ae, *f.* beauty, shape, ap-
figūra, -ae, *f.* form pearance
- * *filia*, -ae, *f.* daughter *formica*, -ae, *f.* ant
 * *filius*, -i, *m.* son
- figō*, 3, *finxi*, *fictus* make, imagine * *fors*, *fortis*, *f.* chance, fortune
 * *finiō*, 4, -ivī, -itus bound, end, *fortasse*, *adv.* perhaps
 mark off, define *forte* [*fors*] *adv.* by chance
- * *finis*, -is, *m.* boundary, end; *pl.* *fortis*, -e brave, manly
 borders, territory
- * *finitimus*, -a, -um, adjacent, neigh- *fortiter*, *adv.* bravely
 boring; *as noun. m. pl.* neighbors *fortitūdō*, -inis, *f.* courage, bravery
- * *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*, *pass. of faciō* * *fortūna*, -ae, *f.* fortune, chance,
 be made, be done, happen, result; fate, good fortune; *pl.* posses-
certior fierī be informed sions
- firmiter*, *adv.* steadfastly, immovably *forum*, -i, *n.* public square, market-
 * *firmus*, -a, -um strong, stable, place
 firm
- Flāminius*, -a, -um Flāmin'ian * *fossa*, -ae, *f.* ditch, trench
flamma, -ae, *f.* flame, fire
- flammeum*, -i, *n.* bridal veil * *frangō*, 3, *frēgi*, *frāctus* break,
 dash to pieces
- * *frāter*, -tris, *m.* brother; *pl.* allies *fraus*, *fraudis*, *f.* deceit, imposition
frēquēns, -entis in great numbers
frētus, -a, -um relying on, trust-
 ing in

frigidus, -a, -um cold
 frigus, oris, *n.* cold, frost, wintry weather; *pl.* cold seasons
 * frōns, frontis, *f.* forehead, front
 fructus, ūs, *m.* enjoyment, fruit, interest, reward
 frūgi, *indec. adj.* honest, frugal
 * frūmentārius, a, um of grain, abounding in grain, fertile; * rēs frūmentāria grain supply, provisions
 frūmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* foraging
 frūmentor, i, *dep. intr.* collect grain, forage
 * frūmentum, -ī, *n.* grain; *pl.* standing grain, grain crop
 furor, 3, fructus sum, *dep., intr.* enjoy
 * frūstrā, *adv.* in vain
 frūx, frūgis, *f.* fruit, produce; *pl.* crops
 * fuga, -ae, *f.* flight, rout; sē fugae mandāre take to flight; in fugam dare put to flight, rout
 * fugiō, 3, fūgi, fugitūrus, *tr. or intr.* flee, shun, avoid
 fugitivus, a, um fugitive; *as noun, m.* runaway, deserter
 fugō, i put to flight, rout
 fulgor, ōris, *m.* lightning, splendor
 fulmen, inis, *n.* thunderbolt
 fūmus, ī, *m.* smoke
 funda, -ae, *f.* sling, sling-stone
 * funditor, ōris, *m.* slinger
 * fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus pour, scatter
 fūnebris, -e of a funeral
 fungor, 3, fūnetus sum, *dep.* perform, execute
 fūnis, is, *m.* rope
 fūnus, -eris, *n.* funeral, funeral rites
 fūr, fūris, *m.* thief

furor, -ōris, *m.* madness, frenzy
 fūrtum, -ī, *n.* theft
 fūsilis, -e molten, red-hot
 futūrus, *see* sum
 Gabali, -ōrum, *m.* the Gab'alī, a tribe in southern Gaul
 Gabinus, -ī, *m.* Aulus Gabin'ius, consul in 58 B.C.
 Gādēs, -ium, *f. pl.* Gā'des (*Cádiz*), a city in Spain
 Gāius, -ī, *m.* Gā'ius, a Roman praenomen
 Galba, -ae, *m.* Ser'vius Sulpicius (Sulpish'ius) Gal'ba, one of Caesar's legates; a king of the Suesiones
 galea, -ae, *f.* helmet
 Gallia, -ae, *f.* Gaul
 Gallicus, -a, -um Gallic
 gallīna, -ae, *f.* hen
 Gallus, -ī, *m.* a Gaul; *pl.* the Gauls
 garriō, 4, —, — chatter
 Garumna, -ae, *m.* the Garum'na (*Garonne*), a river in Gaul
 gaudeō, 2, gāvisus sum, *semi-dep., intr.* rejoice, be glad
 gaudium, -ī, *n.* joy [name
 Gellius, -ī, *m.* Gellius, a Roman
 gelō, i chill, freeze
 gemitus, -ūs, *m.* sigh, complaint
 gemma, -ae, *f.* gem, precious stone
 gemō, 3, -uī, —, *tr. or intr.* groan, creak
 Genava, -ae, *f.* Genava (*Geneva*), a city of the Allobroges
 generālis, -e general
 * gēns, gentis, *f.* race, tribe, nation
 * genus, -eris, *n.* descent, race, kind, rank, species, family, nation

- Gergovia**, -ae, *f.* Gergovia (Jergō'-via), a city of the Arvernians ·
- Germānia**, -ae, *f.* Germany
- Germānus**, -ī, *m.* a German; *pl.* the Germans; *as adj.* Germānus, -a, -um German
- * **gerō**, 3, gessī, *gestus* carry, administer, manage, conduct, do, hold; *pass.* go on, take place
- Géryōn**, -onis, *m.* Geryon (Jē'rion), a monster with three bodies
- gigās**, -antis, *m.* a giant
- gignō**, 3, genuī, *genitus* give birth to; *pass.* be born, spring up
- gladiātōrius**, -a, -um of gladiators, gladiatorial
- * **gladius**, -ī, *m.* sword ·
- glāns**, *glandis*, *f.* acorn, sling-bullet, missile
- Glaucē**, -ēs (*acc.* Glaucēn), *f.* Glaucē
- glēba**, -ae, *f.* clod, mass
- * **glōria**, -ae, *f.* renown, fame, glory
- glōrior**, 1, *dep.*, *intr.* boast, take pride
- Gobannitiō**, -ōnis, *m.* Gobannitio (Gobanish'yo), an Arvernian
- Gracchus**, -ī, *m.* Gracchus (Grak'-us), Roman cognomen
- Graecia**, -ae, *f.* Greece
- Graecus**, -a, -um Greek; *as noun*, *m.* a Greek
- Graioceli**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Graioceli (Grāyō'seli), a Gallic tribe in the Alps
- graphum**, -ī, *n.* writing-stylus
- * **grātia**, -ae, *f.* gratitude, thanks, favor; *grātiām habēre* feel grateful; *grātiām referre* make return; *grātiās agere* express thanks; *grātiā with preceding gen.* for the sake of
- * **grātis**, *adv.* for nothing, free
- * **grātulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* rejoicing, joy
- * **grātus**, -a, -um pleasing, grateful; *as noun*, *n.* favor
- * **gravis**, -e heavy, burdensome, serious
- graviter**, *adv.* heavily, bitterly, severely
- gravor**, 1, *dep.*, *intr.* be unwilling, hesitate
- grūs**, *gruis*, *m. or f.* crane
- gustō**, 1 taste
- gutta**, -ae, *f.* drop
- Gygēs**, -ae, *m.* Gyges (Gī'jēz), a shepherd
- * **habēō**, 2, -uī, -itus have, hold, possess, regard, consider, count, make (*a speech*)
- habitō**, 1, *intr.* inhabit
- haesitō**, 1, *intr.* stick fast, hesitate
- Hamilcar**, -aris, *m.* Hamil'car, a Carthaginian leader
- Hannibal**, -alis, *m.* Hannibal, a Carthaginian general
- Harpŷiae**, -arum, *f. pl.* Harpies
- haruspex**, -icis, *m.* soothsayer
- Helena**, -ae, *f.* Helen, wife of Menelaus
- Helvātius**, -a, -um Helvetian (Helv'ashian); *as noun*, *m.*, a Helvetian; *pl.* the Helvetians, a powerful Gallic tribe in what is now Switzerland
- Helvī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Hel'vī, a small Gallic tribe in the Province
- hem**, *interj.* indeed, ha
- herba**, -ae, *f.* grass, herb, plant
- herbidus**, -a, -um grassy
- Herculēs**, -is, *m.* Hercules, a Greek hero

hērēditās, -tātis, f. inheritance

hērēs, -ēdis, m. heir

Hesperidēs, -um, f. pl. Hesperides
(Hesper'īdēz)

hesternus, -a, um yesterday's

heu, interj. alas, oh

Hibērēs, um, m. pl. Spaniards

Hibernia, -ae, f. Ireland

* *hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl.* winter
quarters

Hibērus, -i, m. the river Ebro

* *hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron.* this,
this man, he, the following, the
latter (contrasted with *ille*)

hic, adv. here, in this place, there,
in that place (of a place just men-
tioned), at this point, then

* *hiemō, ī, intr.* winter, be in winter
quarters

* *hiems, emis, f.* winter, storm

hinc, adv. from here, hence

Hispānia, -ae, f. Spain

Hispānus, -a, um Spanish

Homērus, ī, m. Homer, celebrated
Greek poet

homicidium, -i, n. homicide, murder

* *homō, inis, m. or f.* human being;
pl. men, people

honestē, adv. honorably

honestus, a, um respected, honorable

* *honor (honōs), ōris, m.* repute,
distinction, office

* *hōra, ae, f.* hour

Horātius, ī, m. Horatius, the famous
Roman poet Horace

horribilis, e hideous

horridus, a, um savage, frightful

* *hortor, ī, dep.* urge, encourage, impel

hortus, -i, m. garden

hospes, itis, m. guest-friend, guest,
host

hospitium, -i, n. tie of hospitality;
in *hospitiō* being entertained

Hostilius, see Tullus

* *hostis, -is, m. or f.* enemy, foe;
pl. the enemy

* *hūc, adv.* to this place, to this, to
these

* *hūmānitās, -tātis, f.* civilization,
refinement

hūmānus, -a, -um civilized, refined

* *humilis, -e* low, humble

humus, -i, f. ground; *humī, loc.* on
the ground

Hydra, -ae, f. Hy'dra

Hylās, -ae, m. Hy'las, one of the
Argonauts

Hymēn, -enis, m. Hy'men, god of
marriage

Hymenaeus, -i, m. Hymen

iaceō, 2, iacui, —, intr. lie, lie dead

* *iaciō, 3, iēcī, iactus* throw, hurl,
cast, construct; *ancorās iacere*
cast anchor

iactō, 1 throw, hurl, toss about

iactūra, -ae, f. throwing, sacrifice,
loss

iaculum, -i, n. dart, javelin

* *iam, adv.* by this time, already,
now, at length, even, in fact

* *iam dūdum, adv.* a long time ago

* *iam pridem, adv.* long ago

Iāniculum, -i, n. Janic'ulum, one
of the hills of Rome

iānuā, -ae, f. door

Iānus, -i, m. Jā'nus, god of doors;

Iānus Quirīnus temple of Janus

Iāsōn, -onis, m. Jā'son

* *ibi, adv.* there, at that time, then

Īcarus, -i, m. Ic'arus

Īcarius, -a, -um Icarian

- Iccius**, -ī, *m.* Iccius (Ic'shius), leader of the Remi
- ictus**, -ūs, *m.* stroke, blow, shot
- Ida**, -ae, *f.* mountain near Troy
- * **idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, *dem.* *pron.* that same one, the same
- ideō**, *adv.* so, therefore
- * **idōneus**, -a, -um suitable, fit
- Idūs**, -uum, *f. pl.* the Ides. *Sec* 634
- igitur**, *conj.* then, therefore
- * **ignis**, -is, *m.* fire
- ignōrantia**, -ae, *f.* ignorance
- * **ignōrō**, *ī* not know, be ignorant of, overlook
- ignōscō**, 3, -gnōvī, -gnōtus, *intr.* overlook, pardon, excuse
- * **ignōtus**, -a, -um unknown, strange
- illātus**, -a, -um, *p. p. of* inferō
- * **ille**, *illa*, *illud*, *dem. pron.* that, that one, he, she, it, the former (*contrasted with hic*)
- illīc**, *adv.* in that place, there
- illigō**, *ī* tie to, tie, bind fast
- illō**, *adv.* to that place
- illūstris**, -e splendid, distinguished
- Illyricum**, -ī, *n.* Illyr'icum, a country on the eastern shore of the Adriatic
- imāgō**, -inis, *f.* likeness, statue
- imber**, *imbris*, *m.* rain, storm
- immānis**, -e monstrous, huge
- immineō**, 2, —, —, *intr.* hang over, threaten
- immittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus send in, insert, let down, send against
- immō**, *adv.* on the other hand, no, yes
- immolō**, *ī* offer sacrifice, sacrifice
- immortālis**, -e immortal
- immūnitās**, -tātis, *f.* exemption
- * **impedimentum**, -ī, *n.* hindrance; *pl.* baggage, baggage train
- * **impediō**, 4, -īvī, -ītus [*in* + *pēs*] entangle, obstruct, hinder
- * **impellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsus drive in, drive on, urge, influence
- impendeō**, 2, —, —, *intr.* hang over
- impēnsa**, -ae, *f.* charge, expense
- impēnsus**, -a, -um heavy, excessive
- imperātor**, -ōris, *m.* leader, general, emperor
- * **imperātum**, *ī*, *n.* order, command
- imperitus**, -a, -um unskilled, not experienced
- * **imperium**, -ī, *n.* military authority, power, command, government, control
- * **imperō**, *ī*, *tr. or intr.* rule, command, order, levy
- * **impetrō**, *ī* accomplish, obtain a request
- * **impetus**, -ūs, *m.* attack, violence, force
- impius**, -a, -um impious, undutiful, wicked
- implicō**, *ī*, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-itus) enfold, entwine, catch
- implōrō**, *ī* beg, entreat
- * **impōnō**, 3, -posuī, positus put in or upon, impose
- importō**, *ī* bring in, import
- imprōvisō**, *adv.* unexpectedly
- imprōvisus**, -a, -um not foreseen; de *imprōvisō* suddenly
- imprudentia**, -ae, *f.* ignorance
- impulsus**, *p. p. of* impellō
- impūne**, *adv.* without punishment
- impūnitās**, -tātis, *f.* freedom from punishment
- * **in**, *prep. w. acc.* into, to, against; *w. abl.* in, within, on, among, of, at, in the case of, in the time of, during

- in-, *insep.* prefix not, un-
 inānis, -e empty, groundless
 incēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessus, *intr.*
 go, proceed, enter
 incendium, -ī, *n.* fire
 *incendō, 3, -cendi, -census set
 fire to, burn, arouse
 incertus, -a, -um not certain,
 doubtful, in disorder, untried
 *incidō, 3, -cidi, —, *intr.* fall upon,
 happen
 *incipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus, *tr. or*
 intr. take hold of, begin
 *incitō, 1 hurry on, drive on, rouse,
 excite
 inclūdō, 3, -clūsi, -clūsus shut in
 incognitus, -a, -um unknown
 incohō, 1 begin
 incola, -ae, *f.* inhabitant
 *incolō, 3, -ui, —, *tr. or intr.* in-
 habit, dwell, live in
 *incolumis, -e uninjured, safe
 incommodum, -ī, *n.* inconvenience,
 trouble, injury, defeat
 incredibilis, -e marvelous, wonder-
 ful, incredible
 increpitō, 1, —, — find fault with,
 rebuke
 incursiō, -ōnis, *f.* invasion, raid
 incursus, -ūs, *m.* approach, attack
 incūsō, 1 accuse, censure
 *inde, *adv.* from there, next, then
 indicium, -ī, *n.* information, evidence
 indicō, 1 reveal, point out
 *indicō, 3, -dixi, -dictus declare
 publicly, proclaim
 indictus, -a, -um unsaid
 Indicus, -a, -um of India
 indignitās, -tātis, *f.* insult, outrage
 indignor, 1, *dep., tr. or intr.* be in-
 dignant, deem unworthy
 indoctus, -a, -um untaught
 *inducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus lead
 in, influence
 indulgentia, -ae, *f.* indulgence, favor
 induō, 3, -dui, -dūtus put on, impale
 *ineō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itus go into,
 enter upon, begin, gain
 *inermis, -e unarmed
 iners, -ertis without skill, lazy
 infāmia, -ae, *f.* evil repute, dis-
 grace, dishonor
 infandus, -a, -um unspeakable
 infāns, -antis not speaking; *as*
 noun; m. or f. little child, infant
 infectus, -a, -um not done
 infēlix, -icis unhappy
 *inferior, -ius, *comp. of* inferus
 lower, inferior
 *inferō, -ferre, intuli, illātus im-
 port, bring, inflict, cause
 inferus, -a, -um low
 inficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus stain, paint
 *infimus (imus), -a, -um, *sup. of*
 inferus lowest; *infimus collis* the
 foot of the hill
 infinitus, -a, -um endless, countless
 infirmus, -a, -um not strong, weak
 inflectō, 3, -flexi, -flexus bend down
 influō, 3, -flūxi, -flūxus, *intr.* flow in
 *infrā, *adv.* below, farther on; *prep.*
 w. acc. below, smaller than
 infundō, 3, -fūdī, -fūsus pour in
 ingenium, -ī, *n.* nature, disposition
 ingēns, -entis not natural, enor-
 mous, vast
 ingrātus, -a, -um displeasing
 *ingredior, 3, -gressus sum, *intr.*
 enter, advance
 iniciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus throw in,
 put on, inspire, cause
 inimicitia, -ae, *f.* enmity

- * **inimicus**, -a, -um unfriendly, hostile; *as noun, m.* personal enemy
- * **iniquus**, -a, -um unequal, unfair, hard, unfavorable, uneven
- * **initium**, -i, *n.* entrance, beginning
initus, *p. p. of inēō*
- iniungō**, 3, -iūnxi, -iūctus join to, impose on
- * **iniūria**, -ae, *f.* injustice, insult, injury
- iniussū**, *adv.* without orders
- innitor**, 3, -nixus (-nisus) sum, *dep. intr.* rest on
- innocens**, -entis harmless, innocent
- * **inopia**, -ae, *f.* need, scarcity, lack
- inopināns**, -antis surprised, off one's guard
- * **inquam**, *defective* say; **inquit** says, said, says he, said he; *always stands after one or more words in a direct quotation*
- inquirō**, 3, -quisivī, -quisitus seek, inquire
- insciēns**, -entis unaware
- * **insequor**, 3, -secutus sum, *dep.* follow on, pursue
- inserō**, 3, -serui, -sertus put in, insert
- inserō**, 3, -sēvi, -situs plant
- * **insidiae**, -arum, *f. pl.* snare, ambush, treachery
- * **insignis**, -e remarkable, conspicuous; *as noun, n.* emblem, ornament
- insinuō**, 1 wind in
- insistō**, 3, -stiti, —, *tr. or intr.* take a stand upon, stand upon, stand
- insolenter**, *adv.* in an unusual way, haughtily, insolently
- inspectō**, 1 look on, watch
- instabilis**, *e* unsteady
- * **instituō**, 3, -stitui, -stitutus put in position, draw up, begin, decide upon, establish, build, furnish, provide, prepare, teach
- * **institutum**, i, *n.* custom, habit
- * **instō**, 1, -stiti, -stāturus, *intr.* press on, approach, impend, be near, threaten
- instrumentum**, i, *n.* implement, equipment
- * **instruō**, 3, -struxi, -structus build, set up, marshal, fit out, draw up
- insuefactus**, -a, -um accustomed, trained
- * **insula**, -ae, *f.* island
- * **integer**, gra, -grum [in + tangō] not touched, unhurt, entire, pure
- * **intellegō**, 3, -lexi, -lectus [inter + legō] find out, come to know, know, understand, see
- intentus**, a, um fixed, intent
- * **inter**, *prep. acc. acc.* between, among, with, during, within
- * **intercedō**, 3, -cessi, -cessus come between, intervene, pass, occur
- intercipiō**, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus take on the way, catch up, cut off
- * **intercludō**, 3, -clūsi, -clusus shut off, cut off, prevent
- interdicō**, 3, -dixi, -dictus, *tr. or intr.* forbid, prohibit, exclude
- interdiū** [inter + diēs] *adv.* in the daytime
- interdum**, *adv.* sometimes
- * **intereā** [inter + is] *adv.* meanwhile, in the meantime
- * **intereō**, -ire, -iī (-ivi), -itus perish, be killed, be destroyed
- * **interficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus destroy, kill

- intericiō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus throw between, put among, set, intersperse
 * interim, *adv.* meanwhile
 * interior, -ius inner, interior of, inland; interiōrēs, *as noun, m. pl.* those within
 interitus, -ūs, *m.* fall, destruction, death
 * intermittō, 3, -misi, -missus, *tr. or intr.* let go between, omit, stop, leave vacant, allow to intervene, neglect, interrupt
 interpellō, 1 interrupt, interfere with
 interpōnō, 3, -posui, -positus put between, introduce, cause, allege
 interpretor, 1, *dep.* explain, interpret
 † interrogō, 1 ask, question
 interscindō, 3, -scidi, -scissus cut through, break down
 * intersum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *intr.* be between, be present, take part, attend to; interest it concerns, it is of advantage
 * intervallum, -i, *n.* space, distance, interval
 interventus, -ūs, *m.* coming between, intervention
 † intrā, *prep. w. acc.* within, among, inside, during
 intrō, 1 enter
 intrō, *insep. prefix* within
 intrōducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus lead in, bring in
 introeō, -ire, -iī (-īvi), -itus, *intr.* go in, enter
 intrōsus, *adv.* within, inside
 intueor, 2, -tuitus sum, *dep.* look upon
 intulī, *see* inferō
 intus, *adv.* within, inside
 inundō, 1 overflow
 inūsitātus, -a, -um unusual
 inūtilis, -e useless
 * inveniō, 4, -veni, -ventus come upon, find, learn, find out
 inventor, -ōris, *m.* discoverer, author
 invertō, 3, -verti, -versus invert, turn about, change, upset
 invēstigō, 1 find out, investigate
 inveterāscō, 3, -veterāvī, —, *intr.* grow old, become established
 invictus, -a, -um unconquered
 invidia, -ae, *f.* envy, ill will
 invidus, -a, -um envious
 invitō, 1 urge, induce, attract, invite
 * invitus, -a, -um against one's will, unwilling
 invocō, 1 call upon, invoke
 iō, *interj.* ho, hallelujah
 Iōhana, -ae, *f.* island of Cuba, named for the Princess Juana (Johanna)
 * ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive pron.* self, himself, in person, the very
 ira, -ae, *f.* wrath
 irāscor, 3, irātus sum, *dep., intr.* be angry
 irātus, -a, -um angry
 irrideō, 2, -risi, -risum, *tr. or intr.* laugh at
 irrumpō, 3, -rūpi, -ruptus, *tr. or intr.* break in
 * is, ea, id, *dem. pron.* that, this, he, she, it; *w. comp.* the (by this); eō magis the more
 * iste, ista, istud, *demon. pron.* this, that, that of yours, such
 istic, istaec, istoc, *demon. pron.* that, that of yours
 * ita, *adv.* thus, so, in this way, so far; ita ut just as

Italia, -ae, *f.* Italy

* itaque, *conj.* accordingly, consequently, and so

* item, *adv.* also, besides, likewise

* iter, itineris, *n.* way, journey, course, road; iter facere march; magnum iter forced march

iteratiō, -ōnis, *f.* review, repetition

iterum, *adv.* a second time, again

* iubeō, 2, iussi, iussus order, command

iucundus, -a, -um, *adj.* delightful

iūdex, -icis, *m. or f.* judge

iūdicium, -i, *n.* judgment, opinion, trial

* iudicō, 1 judge, decide, think

iugulum, -i, *n.* neck, throat

* iugum, -i, *n.* yoke, ridge, summit

Iūlius, -a, -um Julian

Iūlius, -i, *m.* Julius; see Caesar

iumentum, -i, *n.* beast of burden

* iungō, 3, iūnxī, iūunctus join, put together

iūnior, -ius younger; as noun, iūniōrēs, -um, *m. pl.* men of military age

Iūnius, -i, *m.* Junius, a Roman nomen; see Brūtus

Iūnō, -ōnis, *f.* Juno, sister and wife of Jupiter and queen of the gods

Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* Jupiter, son of Saturn, king of the gods of the Romans

Iūra, -ae, *m.* Jura, a range of mountains

iūrātor, -ōris, *m.* a juror

iūridicus, -a, -um pertaining to court

* iūrō, 1, *tr. or intr.* take oath, swear

* iūs, iūris, *n.* constitution, law, rights, authority, right

* iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandi, *n.* oath

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* uprightness

* iūstus, -a, -um lawful, proper, due, regular

iuvenis, e young; as noun young person, youth

iuventūs, tūtis, *f.* youth, young men, men of military age

* iuvō, 1, iūvi, iūtus help, aid

iūxtā, *adv.* close by

Kal., *abbr. for* Kalendae

Kalendae, ārum, *t. pl.* the Calends, the first day of the month. See 634

L., *abbr. for* Lūcius Lucius (Lū'shius), Roman praenomen

Labiēnus, -i, *m.* Titus Atius Labiēnus, Caesar's most trusted officer in the Gallic War

lābor, 3, lāpsus sum, *dep., intr.* fall into error

* labor, -ōris, *m.* work, suffering

labōriōsus, a, -um laborious, toilsome, full of labor

* labōrō, 1, *intr.* exert oneself, strive, labor, be troubled, suffer

labrum, i, *n.* lip, edge, brim

labyrinthus, i, *m.* labyrinth

lac, lactis, *n.* milk

Lacedaemōn, onis, *f.* Sparta

laccerna, ae, *f.* cloak

* laccessō, 3, -ivī, itus harass, attack

lacrima, -ae, *f.* tear

lacrimō, 1, *intr.* shed tears, weep

lacus, ūs, *m.* lake

laedō, 3, laesi, laesus injure, break, violate

laetitia, -ae, *f.* joy, delight

laetus, -a, -um joyful, exultant

languēō, 2, -i, -i, *intr.* be listless, be sick

- languor, -ōris, *m.* feebleness, weariness, sluggishness, languor
lānx, lāncis, *f.* dish, scale
* lapis, -idis, *m.* stone
laqueus, -ī, *m.* noose
Lār, Laris, *m.* household god
largitiō, -ōnis, *f.* bribery
lassitūdō, -inis, *f.* exhaustion
lassus, -a, -um exhausted, tired out
lātē, *adv.* widely; longē lātēque far and wide
lateō, 2, latui, —, *intr.* lurk, escape notice
Latinē, *adv.* in Latin
Latinus, -a, -um Latin; *as noun, m.* a Latin
lātiō, -ōnis, *f.* bearing, bringing
* lātitūdō, -inis, *f.* width, extent
Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Latobrigi (Latobri'ji), a tribe near the Helvetians
lātrō, 1, *tr. or intr.* bark
latrōcinium, -ī, *n.* brigandage, raid
lātus, -a, -um wide, broad
lātus, *p. p. of ferō*
* latus, -eris, *n.* side, flank, wing (*of an army*)
* laudō, 1 praise
* laus, laudis, *f.* praise, glory, fame
lavō, 1, lāvī, lautus or lōtus wash; *pass.* bathe
laxō, 1 extend, open out
lectica, -ae, *f.* litter, sedan
lectus, -ī, *m.* couch, bed
* lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* embassy
* lēgātus, -ī, *m.* envoy, messenger, lieutenant, deputy, lieutenant general
* legiō, -ōnis, *f.* body of troops, legion
legiōnārius, -a, -um belonging to a legion, legionary
* legō, 3, lēgī, lēctus select, gather, read
Lemannus, -ī, *m.*; *w.* lacus Lake Geneva
Lemovicēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Lemovices (Lemovi'sez), a tribe near the Arvernians
* lēnis, -e soft, gentle, favorable
lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* smoothness, gentleness
lēniter, *adv.* gently, moderately
leō, -ōnis, *m.* lion
lepus, -oris, *m.* hare
Leuci, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Leuci (Lū'sī)
* levis, -e light, slight, trifling, untrustworthy
levitās, -tātis, *f.* lightness, changeableness
* lēx, lēgis, *f.* statute, law
libenter, *adv.* willingly, gladly
* liber, -era, -erum free, unrestricted, unhindered
Liber, Liberī, *m.* Bacchus, god of wine
* liber, libri, *m.* book
liberālis, -e honorable, liberal
liberāliter, *adv.* kindly, generously
liberē, *adv.* freely, boldly
* liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* children
* liberō, 1 free, exempt
* libertās, -tātis, *f.* freedom, independence, permission
libet, 2, libuit or libitum est, *impers., intr.* it is pleasing
libra, -ae, *f.* pound
* licet, 2, licuit or licitum est, *impers., intr.* it is permitted; *w. inf.* may
limen, -minis, *n.* threshold
Lingonēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Lin'gonēs, a tribe in northeastern Gaul
* lingua, -ae, *f.* tongue, language

- linter, -tris, *f.* boat, skiff
 linteum, -ī, *n.* linen cloth
 liquidus, -a, -um liquid, flowing
 lis, litis, *f.* dispute
 Litavicus, -ī, *m.* Litavicus, a young Aeduan noble
 litigō, ī, *intr.* quarrel, dispute
 * littera, -ae, *f.* letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.* epistle, letter, message, dispatch, writing
 * litus, -oris, *n.* shore, beach
 * locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*) place, station, rank, condition, occasion, region
 longē, *adv.* far, at a distance, very much, by far
 longinquus, -a, -um distant, protracted
 longitudō, -inis, *f.* length
 longurius, -ī, *m.* long pole
 * longus, -a, -um long
 * loquor, 3, locūtus sum, *dep., tr. or intr.* talk, speak, say
 lōrica, -ae, *f.* coat of mail, breast-work
 lucerna, -ae, *f.* lamp
 * lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum, *intr.* play
 Lūdvicus, -ī, *m.* Louis
 lūds, -ī, *m.* game, public exhibition, sport, school
 lūmen, -inis, *n.* light
 * lūna, -ae, *f.* moon, moon-goddess, Diana
 lupus, -ī, *m.* wolf
 * lūx, lūcis, *f.* light
 lūxuria, -ae, *f.* high living, extravagance
 Lympha, -ae, *f.* goddess of water
 M., *abbr. for* Mārcus Marcus, Roman praenomen
 M', *abbr. for* Mānius Mānius, Roman praenomen
 māceria, ae, *f.* wall
 Machāōn, onis, *m.* a Roman doctor
 maculō, ī spot, stain
 maestus, a, um sad, despondent
 magicus, a, um magic
 * magis, *comp. adv.* more, rather
 * magister, trī, *m.* teacher, tutor
 * magistrātus, ūs, *m.* public office, magistrate
 magnificus, a, um splendid
 * magnitūdō, inis, *f.* greatness, size, force, might
 * magnopere, *adv.* greatly
 * magnus, -a, um large, great, abundant, important, intense
 maior, -ius, *comp. of* magnus; maior nātū older; *as noun, m. pl.* * maiōrēs, um ancestors, forefathers; maiōrēs nātū elders
 Maius, -ī, *m.* month of May
 malacia, ae, *f.* calm
 male, *adv.* badly; unsuccessfully, ill
 * maleficium, ī, *n.* wicked deed, harm
 * mālō, mālle, māluī, *tr. or intr.* wish rather, prefer, choose
 mālum, -ī, *n.* apple
 malum, -ī, *n.* evil, mischief
 * malus, -a, -um bad
 mālus, -ī, *m.* beam, mast
 * mandātum, -ī, *n.* order, commission, command
 * mandō, ī intrust, charge, order, command; fugae sēsē mandāre take to flight
 Mandubī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Mandūbī, a tribe north of the Aeduians
 māne, *adv.* in the morning
 * maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsus, *intr.* stay, remain, abide (*in or by*)

- manipulāris, -e belonging to a
 manipule; *as noun, m.* soldier of
 a manipule, comrade
 manipulus, -ī, *m.* handful (*of hay*),
 manipule
 mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* kindness, mercy
 * manus, -ūs, *f.* hand, hold, grasp,
 power, band, force, division of an
 army
 Mārcellus, -ī, *m.* Marcellus, a
 Roman cognomen
 Mārcius, -a, -um Marcian (Mar'-
 shian)
 Mārcius, -ī, *m.* Ancus Marcius,
 fourth king of Rome
 * mare, maris, *n.* sea; *mare nos-*
trum the Mediterranean
 * maritimus, -a, -um maritime,
 naval, bordering on the sea
 maritus, -ī, *m.* husband
 Marō, -ōnis, *m.* Mārō, a Roman
 cognomen
 Mārs, Mārtis, *m.* Mars, the war god
 Mārtius, -a, -um of Mars, of March
 mās, maris masculine; *as noun* male
 matara, -ae, *f.* javelin, spear
 * māter, -tris, *f.* mother
 * māteria, -ae, *f.* timber, matter
 mātrimonium, -ī, *n.* marriage
 mātṛōna, -ae, *f.* wife, woman
 Matrōna, -ae, *m.* the Mat'rona
 (River) (*the Marne*)
 mātūrō, *r, tr. or intr.* hurry
 * mātūrus, -a, -um ripe, early
 māvolō = mālō
 maximē, *adv., sup. of magis* most,
 in the highest degree, especially,
 exceedingly, chiefly, very
 maximus, *sup. of magnus* greatest,
 largest
 Maymundus, -ī, *m.* Maymun'dus
 mēcum = cum mē
 Mēdēa, -ae, *f.* Mēdē'a
 medicīna, -ae, *f.* medicine, drug
 medicus, -ī, *m.* physician
 * mediocris, -e moderate, ordinary
 mediterrāneus, -a, -um inland
 * medius, -a, -um middle; *in mediō*
colle half-way up the hill
 mel, mellis, *n.* honey
 melior, -ius, *comp. of bonus* better
 melius, *adv., comp. of bene* more
 successfully
 membrum, -ī, *n.* limb, member
 meminī, meminisse, *defective (perf.*
translated as pres.) remember,
 keep in mind
 memor, -oris mindful
 * memoria, -ae, *f.* recollection, re-
 membrance
 Menapii, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Menā'pii,
 a Belgian tribe
 mendācium, -ī, *n.* falsehood
 Menelāus, -ī, *m.* Menelā'us, king
 of Sparta, husband of Helen
 * mēns, mentis, *f.* mind, thought,
 sense
 * mēnsa, -ae, *f.* table
 * mēnsis, -is, *m.* month
 mēnsūra, -ae, *f.* measure
 mentiō, -ōnis, *f.* mention
 * mercātor, -ōris, *m.* trader
 mercātūra, -ae, *f.* trade
 mercēs, -ēdis, *f.* pay, hire
 Mercurius, -ī, *m.* Mercury, the
 god of trade and gain, patron of
 merchants; he was also the mes-
 senger of the gods, especially of
 Jupiter
 * mereō, *2, -uī, -itus; also dep.*
mereor, -ēri, -itus sum merit,
 deserve, earn

- * *meridiēs*, *defect.*, *acc.* -em, *abl.* -ē, *m.* midday, noon, south
meritō, *adv.* deservedly
meritum, -i, *n.* worth, deserts, kindness, service, fault
meritus, -a, -um deserved, fit
Messāla, -ae, *m.* Marcus Valerius
Messāla, consul in 61 B.C.
metallum, -i, *n.* metal
Metellus, -i, *m.* Metellus, a Roman family name
* *mētiōr*, 4, *mēnsus sum*, *dep.* measure
Mētius, -i, *m.* Marcus Metius (Mē'shius), whom Caesar sent as an envoy to Ariovistus
metō, 3, *messui*, *messus* reap, harvest
* *metus*, -ūs, *m.* fear, dread, terror
* *meus*, -a, -um my, mine
mī = *mihi*
Midās, -ae, *m.* Mī'das, a Phrygian king
* *miles*, -itis, *m.* soldier
mīlia, *see* *mille*
* *militāris*, -e of a soldier, belonging to military service, military; ¹ *rēs militāris* the art of war, military science
militia, -ae, *f.* military service, warfare
* *mille* (M), *indecl. adj. in sing.* thousand; *as noun*, *mīlia*, -ium, *n. pl.* thousands; *mīlia passuum* thousands of paces, miles
Minerva, -ae, *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom
minimē, *adv.*, *sup. of parum* least, by no means
minimus, -a, -um, *sup. of parvus* smallest, least; *quam minimum* as little as possible
minor, 1, *dep. tr. or intr.* threaten
minor, *minus*, *comp. of parvus* smaller, less; *minor nātū* younger
Minōs, *Minōis*, *m.* Mī'nos, king of Crete
Minōtaurus, 1, *m.* the Min'otaur
Minucius, -a, -um Minucian (Minu'shian)
¹ *minuō*, 3, *minui*, *minūtus* lessen, reduce, diminish
minus, *adv.*, *comp. of parum* less, not; *nihilō minus* no less, still, nevertheless
mirāculum, 1, *n.* miracle, wonder
* *miror*, 1, *dep. tr. or intr.* wonder at; *ful. pass. part. as adj.* mirandus, a, um wonderful, remarkable
* *mirus*, a, um wonderful, strange
¹ *miser*, *era*, *eram* wretched, unhappy, poor, insignificant
miserē, *adv.* wretchedly
miserīcordia, -ae, *f.* pity, compassion, mercy
miseror, 1, *dep.* deplore, lament
* *mittō*, 3, *misi*, *missus* let go, send, throw, hurl
mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* ease of movement, quickness, changeableness
moderātor, -ōris, *m.* ruler, director
moderor, 1, *dep.* guide, control, check
* *modo*, *adv.* simply, only, merely, even, just now, lately, now; ¹ *nōn modo . . . sed etiam* not only . . . but also
* *modus*, 1, *m.* amount, extent, capacity, measure, manner, kind, method; *quem ad modum* how, as
moenia, -ium, *n. pl.* walls of defense, city walls, walls
molestē, *adv.* with vexation; *mo-*

- lestē ferre be annoyed at, be indignant
 molestia, -ae, *f.* nuisance, annoyance, trouble
 molestus, -a, -um annoying
 molō, 3, uī, -itus grind
 Mona, -ae, *f.* Mō'na, an island near England
 * moneō, 2, uī, -itus remind, warn, advise
 * mōns, montis, *m.* mountain, hill
 mōnstrō, 1 show
 mōnstrum, -ī, *n.* monster
 * mora, -ae, *f.* delay, hesitation
 mōrātus, -a, -um constituted, mannered
 morbus, -ī, *m.* illness, disease
 Morinī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Mor'inī, a Belgian tribe on the seacoast
 morior, 3, mortuus sum, *dep., intr.* die
 * moror, 1, *dep., tr. or intr.* delay, wait, stay, check
 * mors, mortis, *f.* death
 mortālis, -e, *adj.* subject to death; as *noun, m. or f.* man, human being
 mortifer, -a, -um death-bringing, deadly
 mortuus, -a, -um [morior] dead
 mōrum, -ī, *n.* mulberry
 mōrus, -ī, *f.* mulberry tree
 * mōs, mōris, *m.* custom; in *pl.* manners, character
 * mōtus, -ūs, *m.* moving, political movement, disturbance, uprising
 * moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus move, influence, affect
 mox, *adv.* soon
 * mulier, -eris, *f.* woman
 muliercula, -ae, *f.* mere woman
 * multitudō, -inis, *f.* great number, multitude, throng, crowd
 multō [abl. of multus] *adv.* much, by far
 multum, *adv.* much, greatly
 * multus, -a, -um much, great; *pl.* many; multā nocte late at night; multum posse (valēre) have much power
 mūlus, -ī, *m.* mule
 Mulvius, -a, -um Mul'vian (*bridge*)
 Munda, -ae, *f.* Mun'da, city in Spain
 mundus, -a, -um neat, clean
 mundus, -ī, *m.* world, universe
 * mūniō, 4, -īvī, -itus fortify, protect, guard, build; iter mūnīre construct a road
 * mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.* fortifications, ramparts, defensive strength
 * mūnus, -eris, *n.* service, duty, favor, gift, game
 mūrālis, -e of a wall
 * mūrus, -ī, *m.* wall, city wall, earthwork
 mūs, mūris, *m. or f.* mouse
 Mūsa, -ae, *f.* Muse
 * mūtō, 1, *tr. or intr.* change
 mūtuum, -ī, *n.* as a loan
 Mýsia, -ae, *f.* Mys'ia, a district in Asia Minor
 nactus, -a, -um, *p. p. of* nanciscor
 * nam, *conj.* for
 * namque, *conj.* for indeed, for
 * nanciscor, 3, nactus or nāctus sum, *dep.* get, obtain, secure, meet with, find
 nārrō, 1 tell
 * nāscor, 3, nātus sum, *dep., intr.* be born, be produced, arise, spring up, be found

- nātālis**, -e of birth; **dies nātālis** birthday
 * **nātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* race, tribe, people, nation
nātīvus, -a, -um natural, native
natō, *i*, *intr.* swim, float
 * **nātūra**, -ae, *f.* nature, natural situation, disposition, character
nātus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of **nāscor**
nātus, -ūs, *m.* birth; see **maior**
 * **nauta**, -ae, *m.* sailor
nauticus, -a, -um of sailors, of ships, nautical, naval
nāvālis, -e of ships, for ships, naval
nāvicula, -ae, *f.* small boat, skiff
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* sailing, navigation, voyage
nāvigium, -i, *n.* vessel, boat
 * **nāvigō**, *i*, *tr.* or *intr.* sail
 * **nāvis**, -is, *f.* ship; **nāvis longa** warship, galley; **nāvis onerāria** transport
nāvō, *i* do earnestly; **operam nāvāre** do one's utmost
 * **nē**, *adv.* not; *used with quidem*, with the emphasized word or words between not even, not . . . either; **nōn mōdo . . . sed nē . . . quidem** not only not . . . but not even; *conj.* that . . . not, lest; after expressions of fearing that; **nē quis** that no one
 * **-ne**, *enclitic interrog.*, as *adv.* sign of a question; as *conj.* in indirect questions whether
 * **nec**, see **neque**
necessāriō, *adv.* unavoidably, inevitably
 * **necessārius**, -a, -um necessary, indispensable; as *noun*, *m.* kinsman, friend
 * **necesse**, *indecl. adj.* necessary, needful, inevitable
necessitās, **tātis**, *f.* necessity, compulsion, need
 * **necō**, *i* slay, destroy
nectar, **aris**, *n.* nectar
nefās, *indecl. n.* something contrary to divine law, sin, wrong
 * **neglēgō**, *3*, **lēxī**, **lēctus** disregard, neglect, overlook
 * **negō**, *i*, *tr.* or *intr.* say no, say . . . not, refuse, deny
negōtiū, *i*, *dep.*, *intr.* carry on business
 * **negōtium**, -i [nec + ōtium] *n.* business, affair, concern, trouble, difficulty
Nemea, -ae, *f.* Nē'mēa, a valley in Greece
 * **nēmō** [nē + homō], *dat.* nēmīni, *acc.* nēmīnem, *m.* or *f.* no one, nobody, not one; **nōn nēmō** somebody, some
nepōs, **ōtis**, *m.* grandson
Neptūnus, *i*, *m.* Neptune
nēquāquam, *adv.* in no way, not at all
 * **neque** or **nec**, *conj.* and not, nor, but not; * **neque** (nec) . . . **neque** (nec) neither . . . nor
nequeō, *4* (nequire), -ivī, —, *intr.* not be able
nēquīquam, *adv.* in vain
Nēreis, -idis, *f.* sea nymph
Nēreus, -eī, *m.* a sea god, father of Thetis
Nervius, -ī, *m.* a Nervian; *pl.* the Ner'vii or Nervians, a powerful tribe of the Belgians
nervus, -ī, *m.* sinew, muscle; *pl.* power, resources

nesciō, 4, ī (ivī), — not know
neu, *see* nēve

⁴ neuter, -tra, -trum neither; *as noun, m. pl.* neither party

* nēve or neu, *conj.* and not, nor

nex, necis, *f.* death, murder

niger, nigra, nigrum black

¹ nihil, *indecl. n.* nothing; *as adv.* not, not at all; nōn nihil somewhat

nihilum, ī, *n.* nothing; nihilō by nothing; nihilō minus none the less, nevertheless

nīl = nihil

Nīlus, -ī, *m.* Nile River

Nīnus, -ī, *m.* Nīnus, mythical founder of Babylon

* nīsi, *conj.* if not, unless, except, but

nītīdus, -a, -um shining

nītor, 3, nīxus or nīsus sum, *dep., intr.* strive, endeavor, rely on

nīx, nīvis, *f.* snow

* nōbīlis, -e well known, noted, famous, of high birth; *as noun, m. pl.* nobles

* nōbilitās, tātis, *f.* nobility, rank, nobles, aristocracy

nocēns, -entis, *adj.* harmful, guilty

* nocēō, 2, nocui, nocitus, *intr.* injure, harm

* noctū, *adv.* in the night

* nocturnus, -a, -um nocturnal, during the night

* nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *tr. or intr.* be unwilling, wish . . . not

* nōmen, -inis, *n.* name, reputation; suō nōmine in his (*their*) own name

nōminātim, *adv.* by name

nōminō, 1 name

* nōn, *adv.* not, not at all, by no means

Nōnae, -ārum, *f. pl.* Nones, ninth day before the Ides. *See* 634

nōnāgintā (xc), *indecl. adj.* ninety

* nōndum, *adv.* not yet

nōnne, *interrog. adv.* not (*answer* "yes" expected)

* nōnus, -a, -um ninth

Nōricus, -a, -um Nor'ican; *as noun, f.* a Norican woman

nōs, *pl. of ego*

* nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtus get knowledge of, learn; nōvī I have learned, hence I know

* noster, -tra, -trum our, ours; *as noun, m. pl.* our men

* nōtus, -a, -um well known, famous

* novem (viii or ix), *indecl. adj.* nine

Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.* Nōviōdūnum, the name of several towns in Gaul
novissimus, -a, -um, *sup. of novus* last, latest; *as noun, m. pl.* soldiers in the rear

novitās, -tātis, *f.* newness, strangeness

* novus, -a, -um new, fresh, recently acquired, novel, strange, unusual; novae rēs revolution

* nox, noctis, *f.* night; primā nocte at nightfall; media nox midnight

noxia, -ae, *f.* wrong act, harm, offense, crime

nūbēs, -is, *f.* cloud, mist

nūbō, 3, nūpsī, nūptus, *intr.* veil oneself, be married (*said of a woman*)

* nūdō, 1 strip, uncover, expose

nūdus, -a, -um naked, bare, unprotected

* nūllus, -a, -um not any, none; *as noun, m.* no one; * nōn nūllus some; *as noun, pl.* some persons

* **num**, *interrog. adv.* implying and expecting a negative answer, *conj.* introducing an indirect question whether, if

Numa, *see* Pompilius

nūmen, -inis, *n.* divine will, divinity

* **numerus**, -ī, *m.* number, quantity

Numida, -ae, *m.* a Numidian, native of Numidia

nummus, -ī, *m.* piece of money

* **numquam**, *adv.* never; *nōn* numquam sometimes

numquid, *adv.*, introducing a question, an emphatic *num*

* **nunc**, *adv.* now

* **nūntiō**, *r* bring news, tell

* **nūntius**, -ī, *m.* messenger, news

nūper, *adv.* lately, recently

nūptus, -a, -um, *p. p. of* nūbō; *as noun, f.* bride

nūptiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* marriage

nūptiālis, -e of a marriage, nuptial

nusquam, *adv.* nowhere

nūtriō, 4, -īvi, -ītus nourish, rear

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* nod

nympha, -ae, *f.* nymph

Ō, *interj.* O, Oh

* **ob**, *prep. w. acc.* before, on account of, because of, for; **quam ob rem** wherefore, therefore, why? *In compounds* toward, against, before

obducō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus lead against, lead to meet; *w. fossam* construct

offerō, *see* offerō

* **obiciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectus throw before, cast in the way, expose, set up, lie opposite

oblātus, *see* offerō

oblinō, 3, **lēvi**, **litus** daub, smear
obliviscor, 3, **litus sum**, *dep. tr.* or *intr.* forget, be forgetful of

obsecrō, *r* beseech, implore, beg

observō, *r* observe, watch, respect

* **obses**, **sidis**, *m. or f.* hostage

* **obsideō**, 2, **sēdi**, **sessus** beset, besiege, blockade, occupy

* **obsidiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* siege

obstringō, 3, **strinxī**, **strictus** bind, lay under obligations

obtemperō, *r* obey, yield to

obtestor, *i, dep.* call as a witness

* **obtineō**, 2, **ui**, **tentus** hold, keep, occupy, maintain, get possession of

obtuli, *see* offerō

obvolvō, 3, **volvī**, **volūtus** wrap around

* **occasiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* [ob + cadō] opportunity, fit time, surprise

* **occāsus**, **ūs**, *m.* going down, setting

* **occidō**, 3, **cidi**, **cūsus**, *intr.* fall, be killed, set; **sōl occidēns** setting sun, west

* **occidō**, 3, **cidi**, **cisus** kill, destroy

* **occultō**, *r* hide, conceal

* **occultus**, **a**, **um** covered up, hidden, secret

occupātiō, **ōnis**, *f.* business, employment

* **occupō**, *r* seize, master, occupy

* **occurrō**, 3, **curri** or **cucurri**, **cursus**, *intr.* run against, meet, resist, occur

Ōceanus, **i**, *m.* the ocean

Ocelum, **i**, *n.* Ocelum (Os'elum), a town in Cisalpine Gaul

ocius, *adv.* more quickly

- * octāvus, -a, -um eighth
 † octō (VIII), *indecl. adj.* eight
 octōgintā (LXXX), *indecl. adj.* eighty
 oculātus, a, -um having an eye;
 w. testis eyewitness
 † oculus, -ī, *m.* eye
 ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *defective* hate
 odium, -ī, *n.* hatred, animosity
 * offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus bear
 to, put in one's power, offer, confer
 * officium, -ī, *n.* duty, obligation,
 allegiance, favor
 oleō, 2, -uī, --- smell of
 oleum, oleī, *n.* oil, ointment
 ōlim, *adv.* formerly, once on a time
 olivētum, -ī, *n.* olive orchard
 ōmen, ōminis, *n.* omen
 omittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus lay aside,
 give up, neglect
 † omnīnō, *adv.* wholly, only, at all
 † omnis, -e every, all
 † onerārius, -a, -um of burden, for
 freight; nāvis onerāria transport
 * onus, oneris, *n.* load, burden,
 weight
 † opera, -ae, *f.* effort, work, services;
 dare operam exert oneself, do
 one's utmost
 operiō, 4, operuī, opertus cover
 * opiniō, -ōnis, *f.* guess, opinion,
 reputation, renown
 opinor, 1, *dep., intr.* suppose
 † oportet, 2, oportuit, *impers., intr.*
 it is necessary or proper, it be-
 hooves, it ought
 * oppidānus, -a, -um of a town; *as*
noun, m. townsman, inhabitant
 of a town
 † oppidum, -ī, *n.* town, stronghold
 Oppius, -a, -um Oppian (*of a law*
proposed by C. Oppius)
 oppōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus oppose
 opportunē, *adv.* opportunely
 opportunitās, -tātis, *f.* fitness, occa-
 sion, opportunity
 * opportunus, -a, -um fit, con-
 venient, opportune, fortunate
 oppositus, -a, -um (*p. p. of oppōnō*)
 lying opposite
 * opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus bur-
 den, overthrow, fall upon, sur-
 prise
 * oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* assault, siege,
 method of attacking
 * oppugnō, 1 attack, besiege
 * ops, opis, *f.* aid, assistance; *pl.*
 resources, power, influence
 optimus, -a, -um, *sup. of bonus* best
 * opus, operis, *n.* work, labor, struc-
 ture, fortification
 opus, *indecl. n.* necessity, need
 ōra, -ae, *f.* shore, coast
 ōrāculum, -ī, *n.* oracle
 * ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* speech, plea;
 ōrātiōnem habēre make a speech
 ōrātor, -ōris, *m.* speaker, envoy
 orbis, -is, *m.* circle; orbis terrārum
 the whole earth or world
 Orcus, -ī, *m.* Pluto, the Lower World
 * ōrdō, -īnis, *m.* row, series, layer,
 position, class, company of
 soldiers; prīmī ōrdinēs first cen-
 turians
 Orgetorix, -īgis, *m.* Orgetorix
 (Orjet'orix), a Helvetian noble
 origō, -īnis, *f.* beginning; Originēs
 name of a book by M. Porcius Cato
 * orior, 4, ortus sum, *intr., dep.*
 arise, appear, begin, be born;
 sōl oriēns rising sun, the east
 oriundus, -a, -um sprung from,
 descended

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* honor, ornament, decoration

ōrnātus, -ūs, *m.* ornament, decoration

ōrnō, 1 *fit out, honor*

* **ōrō**, 1 *speak, plead, implore*

Orpheus, -ī, *m.* Orpheus, famous musician

ōs, ōris, *n.* mouth, face

os, ossis, *n.* bone

ōsculum, -ī, *n.* kiss

* **ostendō**, 3, -tendī, -tentus *point out, show, declare, make known*

ostentō, 1 *display*

ōtium, -ī, *n.* leisure, quiet, peace

ovis, ovis, *f.* sheep

ōvum, -ī, *n.* egg

P., *abbr. for Pūblius* Pub'lius, Roman praenomen

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* foraging

* **pābulor**, 1, *dep., intr.* forage, get fodder

* **pābulum**, -ī, *n.* food, fodder

* **pācō**, 1 *make peaceful, conquer*

Pactōlus, -ī, *m.* Pac'tolus River

* **paene**, *adv.* nearly, almost

Paetus, -ī, *m.* Pactus (Pē'tus), a Roman, husband of Arria

* **pāgus**, -ī, *m.* district, canton

pāla, -ae, *f.* set gem

palam, *adv.* openly, publicly

palaestra, -ae, *f.* gymnasium

Palātinus, -a, -um *Palatine; w. mōns* the Palatine Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome

palla, -ae, *f.* cloak

palma, -ae, *f.* palm, hand, palm tree

* **palūs**, -ūdis, *f.* swamp, marsh, marshy stream

pandō, 3, -dī, *passus* spread out, extend

pānis, pānis, *m.* bread

Papīrius, ī, *m.* Papir'ius, a Roman name

* **pār**, paris equal, like, same

parātus, a, um ready, prepared

* **parcō**, 3, peperci, *parsus, intr.* spare, protect

parēns, entis, *m. or f.* parent

* **pāreō**, 2, pāruī, obey, submit, comply

pariēs, ietis, *m.* partition, wall

pariō, 3, peperī, *partus* give birth to, produce, gain, effect

Paris, idis, *m.* Paris, son of Priam

Parisiū, ōrum, *m. pl.* the Paris'iī, a tribe on the Sequana (*Seine*) near modern Paris

pariter, *adv.* equally, like

Parnāsus, ī, *m.* Mt. Parnas'sus

* **parō**, 1 *prepare, provide*

* **pars**, partis, *f.* part, portion, faction, direction, respect

* **partim**, *adv.* partly, in part

partus, a, um, *p. p. of pariō*

* **parum**, *adv.* too little

parvulus, a, -um very small, petty, slight, young

* **parvus**, a, um small, little

passus, *p. p. of pandō*

* **passus**, -ūs, *m.* step, double step (*five Roman feet*); mille passūs

or mille passuum mile

pāstor, ōris, *m.* shepherd

patefaciō, 3, -feci, *factus* lay open, open

patēns, -entis open, accessible, passable

* **pateō**, 2, uī, *intr.* be open, be accessible, be free, extend

- * *pater, -tris, m.* father; *pl.* fore-fathers, ancestors, senators
 * *patior, 3, passus sum, dep., tr. or intr.* suffer, permit
 * *patria, -ae, f.* fatherland, native land
patrius, -a, -um ancestral, fatherly
patruus, -ī, m. paternal uncle
 * *pauci, -ae, -a, pl. adj.* few, only a few
paucitas, -tātis, f. small number, few
 * *paulatim, adv.* little by little, a few at a time
 * *paulisper, adv.* for a short time
 * *paulō, adv.* by a little, somewhat, a little
paululum, adv. a very little
 * *paulum, -ī, n.* a little; *as adv.* a little, somewhat
pauper, -eris poor
 * *pāx, pācis, f.* treaty of peace
peccō, 1, intr. do wrong
pectus, -oris, n. breast
 * *pecūnia, -ae, f.* property, wealth, money
 * *pecus, -oris, n.* cattle, flock
 * *pedes, -itis, m.* foot soldier; *pl.* infantry
 * *pedester, -tris, -tre* of foot soldiers, of infantry, overland; *pedestrēs cōpiae* infantry
peditatus, -ūs, m. foot soldiers, infantry
Pedius, -ī, m. Pē'dius, a Roman nomen; Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's staff
peior, -ius, comp. of malus worse
Pēleus, -ī, m. Pēleus (Pē'lēūs), father of Achilles
Peliās, -ae, m. Pē'liās, king of Thes-saly
pellis, -is, f. skin, hide, leather
 * *pellō, 3, pepulī, pulsus* drive away, rout, defeat
Penātēs, -ium, m. pl. Penates (Pēnā'tēz), the household gods
 * *pendō, 3, pependī, pēnsus* hang, weigh, pay
penitus, adv. far within
 * *per, prep. w. acc.* through, across, by means of, on account of, by the agency of, because of, by; *of time* during, along, on; *per vim* by violence; *per sē* of himself (*themselves*), of his (*their*) own accord
pēra, -ae, f. bag, wallet
perangustus, -a, -um very narrow
percipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus [per + capiō] get, reap, hear, learn, feel
percontatiō, -ōnis, f. questioning, investigation
percurrō, 3, -cucurri or -curri, -cur-sus run through, run along
percutiō, 3, -cussi, -cussus strike through, transfix
perdiscō, 3, -didici, — learn thoroughly
perditus, -a, -um lost, desperate, corrupt
perdō, 3, -didī, -ditus lose, destroy
 * *perducō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus* lead through, conduct, persuade, pro-long, construct
perendinus, -a, -um after to-morrow
 * *pereō, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itus, intr.* die
perequitō, 1 ride through
perfacilis, -e very easy
 * *perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus* bear through, bear, endure, suffer, re-port

- * **perficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus make thoroughly, bring about, finish, arrange
- * **perfidia**, -ae, *f.* treachery
- perfodiō**, 3, -fōdī, -fossus pierce through
- perfringō**, 3, -frēgī, -fractus break through
- perfuga**, -ae, *m.* deserter
- * **perfugiō**, 3, -fūgī, —, *intr.* flee for refuge, escape, desert
- perfugium**, -ī, *n.* place of refuge
- pergō**, 3, **perrēxi**, **perrēctus**, *intr.* press on, proceed
- periclitor**, 1, *dep., tr. or intr.* put to the test, try to find out, be endangered
- periculōsus**, -a, -um dangerous
- * **periculum**, -ī, *n.* trial, attempt, danger, risk
- * **peritus**, -a, -um experienced, acquainted with, skilled
- perlātus**, *p. p. of perferō*
- perlegō**, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus read through
- * **permaneō**, 2, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, *intr.* remain, continue, hold out
- * **permittō**, 3, -misi, -missus give up, intrust, permit
- * **permovereō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus move deeply, influence, induce, disturb, frighten
- perpauci**, -ae, -a, *pl. adj.* very few
- * **perpetuus**, -a, -um continuous, entire, perpetual; in perpetuum forever
- perquirō**, 3, -quisivī, -quisitus inquire about
- perrumpō**, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, *tr. or intr.* break through
- perscribō**, 3, -scripsi, -scriptus write in full, write out
- * **persequor**, 3, **secūtus sum**, *dep., tr. or intr.* follow up, hunt down, proceed against, avenge
- perservō**, 1 preserve
- perseverō**, 1, *intr.* persist, persevere
- persolvō**, 3, **solvī**, -solūtus pay in full, settle
- * **perspicio**, 3, **spexī**, **spectus** look through, examine, perceive, understand
- perstō**, 1, -stitī, **staturus**, *intr.* stand firmly, persist
- * **persuadeō**, 2, **suāsī**, **suāsus**, *tr. or intr.* persuade, convince
- * **perterreō**, 2, **uī**, **itus** frighten thoroughly, terrify, alarm
- pertinācia**, -ae, *f.* persistence, obstinacy
- * **pertineō**, 2, **uī**, —, *intr.* reach, extend, pertain, tend
- pertuli**, *see perferō*
- perturbātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* confusion, alarm
- * **perturbō**, 1 throw into confusion, alarm
- pervādō**, 3, **vāsī**, —, *tr. or intr.* spread through, go through
- * **pervenio**, 4, **vēnī**, **ventus**, *intr.* come through, arrive, come
- * **pēs**, **pedis**, *m.* foot, a foot (as a measure, slightly shorter than the standard English foot)
- pessimus**, -a, -um, *sup. of malus* worst
- * **petō**, 3, **ivi**, **itus** strive for, seek, beg, ask, aim at, attack
- Petrōnius**, 1, *m.* Marcus Petrō'nus, a centurion of the Eighth Legion
- Phaethōn**, **ontis**, *m.* Phaëthon (Fä'ethon), son of Apollo
- phalanx**, -angis, *f.* phalanx, a com-

- pact body of troops in battle array
 Phâsis, -idis, *acc.* -im, *m.* Phasis
 (Fâ'sis), a river flowing into the
 Black Sea
 Philērōs, ōtos, *m.* Phil'eros, a man's
 name
 Phineus, -ī, *m.* Phineus (Fin'eūs),
 blind king of Thrace
 Phrixus, -ī, *m.* Phrixus (Frik'sus),
 brother of Helle
 Phrygia, -ae, *f.* Phrygia, in Asia
 Minor
 Pictonēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Pictones
 (Pic'tōnēz), a tribe in western Gaul
 piger, pigra, pigrum lazy
^b pilum, -ī, *n.* javelin
 pilus, -ī, *m.* century (of soldiers)
 pinna, -ae, *f.* feather, battlement
 pinus, -ūs, *f.* pine, pine tree, ship
 piscis, -is, *m.* fish
 Pīsō, ōnis, *m.* (1) Lucius Calpur-
 nius Pī'sō, consul in 58 B.C., father-
 in law of Caesar; (2) Lucius Cal-
 purnius Piso, grandfather of (1);
 (3) Marcus Pupius Piso, consul
 in 61 B.C.; Piso, an Aquitain
 of high rank
 pius, -a, -um pious, devout, kind
 pix, picis, *f.* pitch
 * placeō 2, uī, itus, *intr.* please,
 be pleasing, seem best; placuit
 he or they decided
 placō, 1 appease, propitiate, placate
 * plānitūs, -ēī, *f.* level ground,
 plain
 planus, -a, -um even, level, flat
 Platō, ōnis, *m.* Plato, Greek philos-
 opher
 * plēbs (plēbēs), plēbis, *f.* common
 people, populace, plebeians
 plēnus, -a, -um full, complete
 * plērīque, -aeque, -aque, *pl. adj.*
 most, majority, a very great part
 * plērūmque, *adv.* for the most part
 Plīnius, -ī, *m.* Pliny, a Roman
 writer
 plōrō, 1, *tr. or intr.* weep, wail
 plūma, -ae, *f.* feather, down
 plumbum, -ī, *n.* lead; plumbum
 album tin
 pluō, 3, pluī, —, *impers., intr.* rain
 plūrimum, *adv., sup. of multum* very
 much
 plūrimus, -a, -um, *sup. of multus;*
pl. very many, a great many;
 quam plūrimī as many as pos-
 sible; as *noun*, plurimum, -ī, *n.*
 very much, a great deal
 plūs, plūris, *comp. of multus more;*
in sing., as noun, n. the greater
 part; *m. pl.* plūrēs more, a good
 many; plūs is sometimes used
 as an *adverb*
 pluteus, -ī, *m.* breastwork
 * poena, -ae, *f.* punishment, penalty
 * poēta, -ae, *m.* poet
 * polliceor, 2, pollicitus sum, *dep.*
 offer, promise
 pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* promise, pledge
 pollicitus, *p. p. of polliceor*
 Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.* Polyphemus
 (Polyf'e'mus)
 Pompeius, -ī, *m.* Gnaeus Pom-
 pē'ius Magnus, the friend and
 son-in-law and later the rival of
 Caesar
 Pompilius, -ī, *m.* Nū'ma Pompil'ius,
 second king of Rome
 pondus, -eris, *n.* weight, mass
 * pōnō, 3, posuī, positus put down,
 place, pitch, make depend (*on*),
 lay down; *pass.* depend (*on*)

- * **pōns, pontis, m.** bridge
popīna, -ae, f. low tavern
poposcī, see *poscō*
populātiō, -ōnis, f. laying waste, plundering
*** popular, i, dep.** lay waste, pillage
*** populus, -ī, m.** people, nation
pōpulus, -ī, f. poplar tree
Porcius, -ī, m. Porcius Cato (*Por'-shyus Cā'to*)
porcus, -ī, m. pig
*** porta, -ae, f.** gateway, gate
*** portō, i** bring, carry
*** portus, -ūs, m.** harbor, port
*** poscō, 3, poposcī, —** demand, request, call for, need
positus, -a, -um (p. p. of pōnō) situated
possessiō, -ōnis, f. occupation, possession, property
*** possideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessus** have and hold, occupy, own
*** possum, posse, potuī, —, intr.** be able, can (*with inf.*); **plūrimum posse** be most powerful
*** post, adv.** afterwards; *prep. w. acc.* after, behind
*** posteā, adv.** after that, afterwards
*** posteāquam, conj.** after
*** posterus, -a, -um** following, next, later; in **posterum** to the next day; as *noun, m. pl.* posterity
posthāc, adv. after this
*** postquam, conj.** after, when
postrēmō, adv. finally, last of all
postrēmus, -a, -um, sup. of posterus last, final
*** postridiē, adv.** on the next day
postulātum, -ī, n. demand, request
*** postulō, i** demand, request, require, call for
*** potēns, -entis** powerful, influential
potentia, -ae, f. power, authority, influence
*** potestās, tātis, f.** power, civil authority, opportunity, chance
pōtiō, -ōnis, f. drink
*** potior, 4, itus sum, d. p., intr.** get possession of, become master of
*** potius, adv.** rather, more, sooner
prae, prep. w. abl. before, in comparison with
praeacūtus, -a, -um sharpened at the end, pointed
*** praebeō, 2, -uī, itus** hold out, furnish, present, cause
praeceveō, 2, cāvī, cautus, tr. or intr. take care beforehand, be on guard against
praeceđō, 3, -cessī, cessus, tr. or intr. go ahead of, surpass
praeceps, -cipitis headlong, steep
praeceptum, -ī, n. order, injunction, direction
*** praeicipiō, 3, cēpī, ceptus** take in advance, anticipate, suspect, order, direct
praeicipitō, i throw headlong, hurl down
praeicipuē, adv. especially
praeclārus, -a, -um distinguished, noble, glorious
*** praeda, -ae, f.** booty, plunder
*** praedicō, i** announce, assert, boast
praedicō, 3, dixī, dictus foretell
praedūcō, 3, -dūxī, ductus lead forward, construct before, construct
*** praefectus, p. p. of praeficiō; as noun, m.** overseer, prefect
praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus bear before, put before, prefer; **sē praeferre** surpass

- * *praeficiō*, 3, *fēcī*, *fectus* set over, put in command of
 * *praemittō*, 3, *misi*, *missus* send ahead, send forward
 * *praemium*, *n.*, *a* reward, prize, bribe
praepo, *1*, choose rather, prefer
praeparō, *1*, make ready, beforehand, prepare
praepōnō, 3, *posui*, *positus* place in front of, set over, put in charge of
praerumpō, 3, *rūpi*, *ruptus* tear away in front, break off
praesaepe, *in. m.* answer
praescribō, 3, *scripsi*, *scriptus* write beforehand, direct, dictate
 * *praesens*, *entis* present, existing
praesentia, *ae, i*, present, presence
 * *praesertim*, *ad. v.* especially, chiefly
praesideo, 3, *sedī*, *sed*, *tr. or intr.* to sit before, guard
 * *praesidium*, *n.*, *a* defence, aid, guard, protection, protection
praestans, *stantis* *q. n.* part of *praestō* remarkable
 * *praesto*, *1*, *steti*, *stitus*, *tr. or intr.* stand before, excel, perform, show; *praestat* *a* better
praesto, *1*, *steti* at hand, present
 * *praesum*, *1*, *sumi*, *sum*, *intr.* be before, be set over, be in command of
praesumo, 3, *sumpsi*, *sumptus* take for granted, presume
 * *praeter*, *post*, *tr. or intr.* beyond, except, besides, in addition to
 * *praeterea*, *adv.* in addition, furthermore, besides
praeterē, *ire*, *in. m.* *tr.* *tr. or intr.* pass by, regard, pass over
praeternitō, 3, *nitō*, *nitus* let go by, overlook, lose
praetextatus, *-a, -um* wearing the purple bordered toga of youth
praetor, *-ōris, m.* praetor
praeustus, *-a, -um* charred or burned at the end
precor, *1, tr. or intr.* pray
 * *prehendō*, 3, *-hendī*, *-hēnsus* grasp, seize
 * *premo*, 3, *pressi*, *pressus* press hard, crowd, drive, burden
pretiosus, *-a, -um* costly, valuable
pretium, *-ī, n.* value, price
 * *prex*, *precis, f.* request, prayer
Prīamus, *-ī, m.* Priam, last king of Troy
 * *pridī*, *adv.* on the day before
primipilus, *-ī, m.* first centurion (of a legion), chief centurion
 * *primō*, *adv.* at first
 * *primum*, *adv.* first; *cum primum* or *ubi primum* as soon as; *quam primum* as soon as possible
 * *primus*, *-a, -um* first, first part of; *as noun, m. pl.* the van; in *primis* among the first things, especially, chiefly
 * *princeps*, *-cipis* first, chief; *as noun, m.* leader, noble, prince
 * *principatus*, *-ūs, m.* first place, leadership
 * *prior*, *prius* former, in advance, first; *as noun, m. pl.* those in front, the van
Priscus, *see* *Tarquinius*
 * *pristinus*, *-a, -um* former, preceding, original, pristine
prius, *adv.* before, earlier, first
 * *priusquam*, *conj.* earlier than, before, sooner than; *also prius . . . quam*

- * **privātus**, -a, -um personal, individual; *as noun, m* private person
- * **prō**, *prep. w. abl.* before, in front of, in behalf of, for, in place of, instead of, as, just as, because of, in return for
- * **probō**, *r* approve, command, show, prove
- * **prōcēdō**, 3, -cessi, -cessus, *intr.* go forward, advance
- * **procul**, *adv.* at a distance, far away
- prōcumbō**, 3, -cubui, -cubitus, *intr.* fall forward, fall, sink down
- prōcūrō**, *r* take care of, attend to
- prōcurrō**, 3, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum, *intr.* run forward, charge
- prodeō**, 4, -i (-ivi), -itūrus, *intr.* go or come forth
- prōditor**, -ōris, *m.* traitor
- * **prōdō**, 3, -didī, -ditus give forth, hand down, give up, betray
- * **prōdūcō**, 3, -dūxi, -ductus lead out, bring forward, produce, protract
- proelior**, *1, dep., intr.* join battle, fight
- * **proelium**, -i, *n.* battle, combat
- * **profectiō**, -ōnis, *f.* setting out, departure
- prōferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus carry out, bring out, postpone
- professor**, -ōris, *m.* professor
- * **prōficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr. or intr.* advance, accomplish
- * **proficiscor**, 3, -fectus sum, *dep., intr.* set out, depart, march
- profiteor**, 2, -fessus sum, *dep.* avow, promise, offer
- profugiō**, 3, -fūgi, —, *intr.* flee forth, escape
- prōgnātus**, -a, -um [prō + (g)nātus, *p. p. of* (g)nāscor] sprung, descended
- * **prōgredior**, 3, gressus sum, *dep., intr.* advance, proceed
- * **prohibeō**, 2, -ui, -itus hinder, check, prevent, keep off, cut off
- * **prōiciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectus hurl forward, throw, throw down, abandon, reject, leap
- proinde**, *adv.* therefore, so
- prōmittō**, 3, -misi, -missus let go forward, let grow, promise
- prōmoveō**, 2, -mōvi, -mōtus move forward
- * **prōnūntiō**, *r* announce, pronounce, tell, order
- prōpāgō**, *r* bring, spread
- * **prope**, *adv.* almost, nearly; *prep. w. acc.* near
- prōpellō**, 3, -puli, -pulsus drive away, keep off, dislodge
- properō**, *1, intr.* hasten
- propinquitās**, -tātis, *f.* nearness, vicinity, relationship
- * **propinquus**, -a, -um near, neighboring, at hand, related; *as noun, m. or f.* relative
- propius**, *adv.* nearer
- * **prōpōnō**, 3, -posui, -positus place before, display, propose, offer, present, relate, explain, intend
- proprius**, -a, -um individual, belonging to, characteristic
- * **propter**, *prep. w. acc.* on account of, because of
- * **propterea**, *adv.* on that account; **propterea quod** for the reason that, because
- prōpugnātor**, -ōris, *m.* defender
- prōpugnō**, *1, intr.* fight on the offensive, repel an attack, resist
- prōpulsō**, *r* beat back, repel
- prōra**, -ae, *f.* bow, prow

- * *prōsequor*, 3, *secūtus sum*, *dep.* follow up, exhort, honor
Prōserpina, *ae, f.* Proserpine
prōsiliō, 4, *ui, -*, *intr.* leap forward, spring up, spring forth
prōspiciō, 3, *spexī, spectus, intr.* watch, provide, use foresight
prōsum, *prōdesse, prōfui, -*, *intr.* be of advantage, help
prōtegō, 3, *tēxī, tēctus* cover over, protect, shield
 * *prōtinus*, *adv.* immediately
prōvehō, 3, *-vexī, -vectus* carry forward; *pass.* advance, sail out
prōvideō, 2, *vīdī, -visus, tr. or intr.* foresee, take precautions, provide, prepare
 * *prōvincia*, *ae, f.* province, territory governed by a magistrate from Rome, official duty
proximē, adv. next, most recently, last
proximus, *a, um, sup. of prope* nearest, latest, following
 * *prūdēns, entis* knowing, wise
prudentia, *ae, f.* foresight, judgment
Psychē, Psychēs, f. Psyche
publicē, adv. in the name of the state, publicly
 * *pūblicus*, *a, -um* of the people, public, official; *as noun, n.* public place, public view; * *rēs pūblica, f.* public interest, public welfare, the state (*especially Rome*)
pudor, *ōris, m.* shame, conscientiousness
 * *puella*, *-ae, f.* girl
 * *puer, -erī, m.* boy; *pl.* children
puerilis, -e boyish, childish
 * *pugna*, *-ae, f.* fight, battle
 * *pugnō*, *1, intr.* fight; *impers. in* *pass., pugnātur* it is fought, they fight
pulcher, -chra, -chrom beautiful, honorable, illustrious
pulchritūdō, -inis, f. beauty
Pullō, -ōnis, m. Titus Pul'lō, a brave centurion in Caesar's army
pullus, -ī, m. or f. young animal, young chick
pulsus, p. p. of pellō
 * *pulvis, -eris, m.* dust, cloud of dust
pūmex, -icis, m. rock, pumice stone
pūniō, 4, *-ivī, -itus* punish
puppis, -is, f. stern, ship
pūrgō, 1 cleanse, excuse, justify
purpura, -ae, f. purple
pūrus, -a, -um pure, clean, unstained
puteus, -ī, m. well
 * *putō, 1* consider, judge
Pŷramus, -ī, m. Pyr'amus
Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um; w. montēs the Pyrenees Mountains
Pŷrrha, -ae, f. Pyr'rha, wife of Deucalion
Pŷrrhus, -ī, m. Pyr'rhus, a king of Epirus
Q., abbr. for Quīntus Quin'tus, Roman praenomen
 * *quā (abl. f. of quī; = quā viā), adv.* by which way, where, on which side
quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um fortieth
quadrāgintā (XL), indecl. adj. forty
quadrīngentī, -ae, -a (CCCC), pl. adj. four hundred
 * *quaerō, 3, -sivī, -sītus* seek, inquire, investigate, ask

- quaestio, -onis, *f.* questioning, judicial investigation
- * quaestor, -ōris, *m.* quaestor
- quaestus, -ūs, *m.* gain, profit
- quālis, -e of what sort? what? of which kind?
- * quam, *adv.* to what degree? how? as, than, rather than; *quam* with a superlative with or without some form of *possum* in the highest degree, as . . . possible; *quam primum* as soon as possible
- quamvis, *adv.* as you will, however
- quandō, *adv.* when? after *sī* at any time, ever
- * quantus, -a, -um how great? how much? as great, as much, as, as great as, as much as; *tantus . . . quantus* as great . . . as, as much . . . as; *quantō . . . tantō* by how much . . . by so much, the . . . the
- quārē (quā rē), *adv.* wherefore? why? therefore, for that reason
- * quārtus, -a, -um fourth
- quasi, *conj.* as if, just as if
- quassō, *x* shake, toss, shatter
- quatiō, *3, —*, quassus shake, brandish
- * quattuor (*III or IV*), *induct. adj.* four
- * -que, *enclitic conj.* and, and in fact
- quem ad modum, *interrog. adv.* in what way? how? as
- quēō, *4* (quire), quīvi, quitus, *intr.* be able, can
- * queror, *3*, questus sum, *dep., tr. or intr.* wail, lament
- * quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.* who, which, that
- quī, quae, quod, *interrog. adi.* which? what?; *quam ob rem* for what reason? why?
- quī, quae or qua, quod, *induct. adj.*, *and after sī, nisi, nē, num* any, some
- quī, *conj.* become
- quicquam, *see quisquam*
- * quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *induct. rel. pron. or adj.* whoever, whatever, whichever
- quid, *interrog. adi.* what?
- * quidam, quodam, quiddam (*adj.*, *quoddam*), *induct. pron. or adj.* a certain one, certain, somebody
- * quidem, *adv.* certainly, in fact, indeed, yet, however; * *nē . . . quidem* not even
- quidlibet, *re.* something, everything
- quidnam, *wh.* in the world?
- * quies, *etc.*, *re.* repose, rest, sleep
- * quietus, -a, -um peaceful, tranquil
- quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, *induct. pron.* whom you will, anyone
- * quin, *conj.* *after neg. expressions of doubt* that . . . not, that; *quin etiam* who even, in fact
- Quinctius, *re.* Quinctius
- quindecim *xv*, *induct. adj.* fifteen
- quingenti, -a, -um, *num. adj.* five hundred
- quini, -a, -i, *pl. induct. adj.* five each, by fives
- quinquaginta *lv*, *induct. adj.* fifty
- * quique *v.*, *induct. adj.* five
- quinquēns, *adv.* five times
- * quintus, -a, -um fifth
- quippe, *adv.* of course
- Quirinalis, *re.* Quirinal; *re.* collis one of the seven hills of Rome

- Quirinus, -ī, *m.* name given to Romulus; Iānus Quirinus temple of Janus
- * quis, quid, *interrog. pron.* who? what?; quid why? how much?
- * quis, quid, *indef. pron.* anyone, anything; *after si, nisi, nō, num* anyone, anything, someone, something
- quispīam, quae pīam, quid pīam (*adj. quod pīam*), *indef. pron. or adj.* anyone, any, someone, some; *as adj.* any
- * quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron. or adj.* anyone at all
- * quisque, quaeque, quidque (*adj. quodque*), *indef. pron. or adj.* each, everyone, everybody, all
- quīvis, quaevis, quidvis (*adj. quodvis*), *indef. pron. or adj.* any one you please; *adj.* any you please, whatever
- † quō, *adv. rel.* to which place, as far as, anywhere; *interrog.* where?; *indef. after si* to any place
- quō, *conj.* that, thereby, in order that
- quoad, *conj.* until, as long as, as far as
- quōcumque, *adv.* wherever
- * quod, *conj.* that, in that, because, since, as to the fact that, the fact that; * quod si but if
- * quōminus or quō minus, *conj.* that . . . not, but that, from
- quōmodo, *adv.* in what manner, how, as
- quondam, *adv.* formerly, once
- * quoniam, *conj.* since, because, after
- * quoque, *adv.* also, too
- quōqueversus, *adv.* in all directions, everywhere
- quōquō, *adv.* wherever, to whatever place
- quot, *indecl. adj.* how many? as many as, as
- quotannis, *adv.* every year, annually
- quotiēns, *adv.* how often? how many times? as often as
- rādix, -icis, *f.* root, base; *pl.* foot of a hill or mountain
- rādō, 3, rāsī, rāsus *scrape, shave*
- rāmus, -ī, *m.* branch, bough, prong
- rāpa, -ae, *f.* turnip
- rapīna, -ae, *f.* robbery, plundering
- * rapiō, 3, rapuī, raptus *seize*
- rāsilis, -e *polished*
- rāsus, *p. p. of rādō*
- * ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* reckoning, account, list, report, art, science, manner, fashion, reason
- ratis, -is, *f.* raft, float
- ratus, *p. p. of reor*
- raucus, -a, -um *hoarse*
- Rauracī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Rauraci (Rau'rasī), a Gallic tribe near the Rhine
- re- or red-, *insep. prefix* again, back
- rebellīō, -ōnis, *f.* revolt, uprising
- recēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.* go back, retire
- * recēns, -entis *fresh, vigorous*
- receptus, -ūs, *m.* retreat, way of retreat, place of refuge, shelter
- recessus, -ūs, *m.* retreat, chance to retreat
- recidō, 3, -cidī, -cāsūrus, *intr.* fall back, be thrown back
- * recipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus *take back, lead back, retreat, admit, accept;*
- sē recipere *recover, betake oneself,*

recitō, *i* read aloud, recite
rectē, *adv.* rightly, well
rectus, -a, -um straight, direct
recumbō, 3, -ui, -, *intr.* lie down
 * **recuperō**, *i* get back, recover
 * **recūsō**, *i*, *tr.* or *intr.* make objections, refuse
redāctus, *p. p. of redigō*
 * **reddō**, 3, -didī, -ditus give back, restore, give, render, make
 * **redeō**, 4, -ī (ivī), -itus, *intr.* go back, return, be referred
 * **redigō**, 3, -ēgī, -actus bring down, cause to be, render, make
redimō, 3, -ēmī, -emptus buy back, purchase
redintegrō, *i* make whole, restore, renew, begin again
reditō, -ōnis, *f.* return
reditus, -ūs, *m.* return
redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus lead back, draw off, draw back, extend back
refectus, *p. p. of reficiō*
 * **referō**, -ferre, rettuli, relātus carry back, bring, carry, report, refer
 * **reficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus repair, refresh
refulgeō, 2, -fulsī, -, *intr.* gladden, shine
rēgia, -ae, *f.* palace
 * **rēgina**, -ae, *f.* queen
 * **regiō**, -ōnis, *f.* direction, line, region, country
rēgnō, *i*, *intr.* reign
 * **rēgnum**, *i*, *n.* kingly power, kingdom, throne
 * **regō**, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus make straight, direct, govern
reiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus [re + iaciō] throw, hurl or drive back, drive away, reject

relanguescō, 3, -langui, -, *intr.* become weak
relātus, *p. p. of referō*
relegō, *i* remove, banish
 * **religiō**, -ōnis, *f.* sense of duty, duty to the gods, *p. pl.* religious matters, rites
relinquō, 3, -liqui, -lictus leave behind, leave abandoned, *pass.* remain
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, the rest of, the rest, the other; *as noun, a* the rest
remaneo, 2, -mānia, -, *intr.* be left, remain, stay, continue
remedium, *i*, *n.* remedy
Remi, -ōrum, *m. pl.* Remi, a Belgian tribe near modern Reims
remigo, *i*, -igō, -igō
remigro, *i*, *intr.* remove, return
reminscor, 3, -, *dep.* remember
remissus, -a, -um lax, gentle, mild
 * **remitto**, 3, -misi, -missus send back, relax, haul back, relax, remove, return
remolleco, 3, -, -, *intr.* become weak
remotus, -a, -um remote, retired
 * **removeo**, 2, -mōvi, -motus move back, remove, diminish
 * **remus**, *i*, *m.* row
Remus, *i*, *m.* one of the Remi
Remus, *i*, *m.* brother of Romulus
 * **renuntio**, *i* bring back word, announce
reor, -eri, ratus sum, *dep.* think, suppose
repellō, 3, -reppuli, -repulsus drive back, repel, repulse
 * **repente**, *adv.* suddenly
 * **repentinus**, -a, -um sudden, unexpected

- * **reperiō**, 4, **repperi**, **repertus** find, meet with, discover, ascertain, learn
repetō, 3, -**i** (-**ivi**), -**itus** seek again
 * **repleō**, 2, -**plēvi**, -**plētus** replenish, supply fully
reportō, 1 carry back
reposcō, 3, —, — demand back, require
reppulī, *see* **repellō**
reprimō, 3, -**pressi**, -**pressus** drive back, suppress, stop
repudiō, 1 repudiate, divorce
repulsus, *p. p. of* **repellō**
requiescō, 3, -**quiēvi**, -**quiētus**, *intr.* be at rest, repose
requirō, 3, -**quisivī**, -**quisitus** demand
 * **rēs**, **rei**, *f.* thing, matter, object, affair, event, business, fact, circumstance; **rēs gestae** deeds, occurrences
rescindō, 3, -**scidi**, -**scissus** cut down, break down, tear apart
resciscō, 3, -**scivi** (-**scii**), -**scitus** find out, learn
reservō, 1 keep back, reserve, keep
residō, 3, -**sēdi**, —, *intr.* settle down again, become calm
 * **resistō**, 3, -**stiti**, —, *intr.* halt, make a stand, withstand, oppose
respicō, 3, -**spexi**, -**spectus**, *tr. or intr.* look back, look at, regard, be mindful of, consider
 * **respondeō**, 2, -**spondi**, -**spōnsus**, *tr. or intr.* reply
 * **respōnsum**, -**i**, *n.* answer
restringō, 3, -**stinxi**, -**stinctus** put out, extinguish
restiti, *see* **resistō**
 * **restituō**, 3, -**ui**, -**utus** restore, renew, reinstate, return, rebuild
retineō, 2, -**ui**, -**tentus** hold back, keep, restrain
rettuli, *see* **referō**
 * **revertō**, 3, -**verti**, —, *intr. (regularly in perf. tenses only)*; **revertor**, 3, -**versus sum**, *dep., intr.* turn back, go back, return
revocō, 1 recall, call off, call away, invite in return
 * **rēx**, **rēgis**, *m.* king
Reynardus, -**i**, *m.* Reynard, a name given to a fox
Rhēnus, -**i**, *m.* the Rhine River
Rhodanus, -**i**, *m.* the Rhone River
rideō, 2, **risi**, **risus**, *intr.* smile, laugh
rīma, -**ae**, *f.* crack
 * **ripa**, -**ae**, *f.* bank
rīte, *adv.* with due rites
rivus, -**i**, *m.* stream, brook
rōbigō, -**inis**, *f.* mildew
Rōbigus, -**i**, *m.* **Rōbī'gus**, the god who averted mildew
rōbur, -**oris**, *n.* oak, strength
rogātiō, -**ōnis**, *f.* proposed law, bill
 * **rogō**, 1 ask, beg
Rōma, -**ae**, *f.* Rome
Rōmānus, -**a**, -**um** Roman; *as noun*, **Rōmānus**, -**i**, *m.* a Roman
Rōmulus, -**i**, *m.* Romulus, founder of Rome
rosa, -**ae**, *f.* rose
rōstrum, -**i**, *n.* beak, ship's beak, ram
rota, -**ae**, *f.* wheel
ruber, **rubra**, **rubrum** red
rubus, -**i**, *m.* bramble
rudis, -**e** rude, unpolished
Rūfus, -**i**, *m.* Rufus; *see* **Sulpicius**
 * **rūmor**, -**ōris**, *m.* report, hearsay
 * **rumpō**, 3, **rūpi**, **ruptus** break, destroy
rūpēs, -**is**, *f.* cliff, rock

* *rûrsus*, *adv.* again, in turn
rûsticus, -a, -um of the country,
 rural
rûsticus, -i, *m.* countryman, rustic
Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Rutē'nī, a
 tribe on the borders of the Province

Sabidius, -ī, *m.* *Sabid'ius*, a Roman
 name

Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Sabines

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.* *Sabinus*; *see Titū-*
rius

sacculus, -ī, *m.* bag

sacer, *sacra*, *sacrum* sacred; *as noun*,
n. pl. sacred rites

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. or f.* priest,
 priestless

sacerdōtium, -ī, *n.* priesthood

sacrāmentum, -ī, *n.* oath, rites

sacrificium, -ī, *n.* sacrifice

sacrōsānctus, -a, -um sacred, in-
 violable

* *saepe*, *adv.* often; *minimē saepe*
 very seldom; *comp. saepius*; *sup.*
saepissimē

saevus, -a, -um savage, harsh

* *sagitta*, -ae, *f.* arrow

* *sagittārius*, -ī, *m.* bowman, archer

sagulum, -ī, *n.* military cloak, cloak

Salmydēssus, -ī, *m.* *Salmydes'sus*, a
 town in Thrace

saltō, *r* dance

saltus, -ūs, *m.* pass, glen

* *salūs*, -ūtis, *f.* health, safety, wel-
 fare, prosperity

salūtō, *r* pay respects to

Salvātor, -ōris, *m.* the Saviour

Samnītēs, -īum, *m. pl.* the Sam'nītes,
 a people of Italy

sānctus, -a, -um sacred, inviolable

sanguis, -inis, *m.* blood

Santonēs, -um, *or* *Santonī*, -ōrum,
m. pl. the Santones (*San'tonēz*),
or *Santonī*, a tribe in western Gaul

sānus, -a, -um sound, well, sensible

sapiēns, -entis wise

sapientia, -ae, *f.* wisdom

sapiō, 3, -ivi, *intr.* savor of,
 taste, be discreet, be wise

sarcina, -ae, *f.* bundle, soldier's pack

Sardanapallus, -ī, *m.* *Sardanapallus*

Sardinia, -ae, *f.* island of Sardinia

* *satis* *or* *sat*, *indecl. adj. and noun*,
nom. and acc., n. enough, quite

sufficient; *adv.* enough, fully,
 somewhat

* *satisfaciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus*, *intr.* do
 enough for, give satisfaction, make
 restitution, placate

satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* apology

Saturnus, -ī, *m.* Saturn, god of agri-
 culture

satus, *p. p. of serō*

* *saxum*, -ī, *n.* large stone, rock

scālae, -ārum, *f. pl.* flight of steps,
 scaling ladder

scapha, -ae, *f.* ship's boat, skiff

scelerātus, -a, -um wicked

scelus, -eris, *n.* wicked deed, crime

scientia, -ae, *f.* knowledge, skill

* *sciō*, 4, *scivī*, *scītus* understand,
 know

scorpiō, -ōnis, *m.* scorpion

* *scribō*, 3, *scripsi*, *scriptus* write

Scribōniānus, -ī, *m.* *Scriboniā'nus*

* *scūtum*, -ī, *n.* shield

sē- *or* *sed*, *insep. prefix* from

sē, *acc. and abl. of suī*

sēbum, -ī, *n.* fat, tallow

sēcēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.*

withdraw

sēcēssiō, -ōnis, *f.* insurrection

sēcum = cum sē

secundum, *prep. w. acc.* following, along, beside, in addition to;
secundum nātūram flūminis down-
stream

* secundus, -a, -um following, second, successful, favorable;
secundō flūmine downstream

Secundus, -ī, *m.* Secundus, a Roman name

secūtus, *p. p. of sequor*

* sed, *conj.* but, on the contrary, yet, however, but in fact, but indeed

sēdecim (xvi), *indecl. adj.* sixteen

sedeō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *intr.* sit

sēditō, -ōnis, *f.* dissension, insur-
rection

sēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus draw aside

Sedulius, ī, *m.* Sedulius, a chieftain of the Lemovices

Segusiāvi, ōrum, *m. pl.* the Segusiavi (Segūshia'vī), a Gallic tribe
sella, -ae [sedēō], *f.* chair

sēmen, inis, *n.* seed

sēmentis, is, *f.* sowing; sēmentēs
facere sow

sēmita, ae, *f.* path, byway

* semper, *adv.* always, ever

senātor, ōris, *m.* senator, councilor

* senātus, ūs, *m.* senate, council of elders

senectūs, -tūtis, *f.* old age

senex, senis old; *comp.* senior, -ōris older, elder; *as noun* old man, aged person

sēnī, ae, -a, *pl. adj.* six each, six

Senonēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Senones (Sen'onēz), a tribe in central Gaul

sēnsus, -ūs, *m.* feeling, sentiment, sense

* sententiā, -ae, *f.* way of thinking,

opinion, decision, purpose, official judgment, sentence, vote

sentēs, -ium, *m. pl.* thorns, briars

* sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, find out, feel, experience, think, know

sēparātim, *adv.* separately

sēparō, 1 separate, divide

* septem (vii), *indecl. adj.* seven

September, -bris, *m.* of September, of the seventh month

septentrionēs, -um, *m. pl.* seven plow-oxen, the seven stars of the constellation "Great Bear," north

* septimus, -a, -um seventh

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um seventieth

sepultūra, -ae, *f.* burial

Séquana, -ae, *f.* the Sequana (Sek'-wana) River (Seine)

Séquanus, -a, -um Sequā'nian; *as noun, m.* a Sequanian; *pl.* the Sequani (Sek'wani), or Sequanians, a tribe west of the Jura Mountains

* sequor, 3, secūtus sum, *dep., tr. or inth.* pursue, follow, accompany, conform to

sera, -ae, *f.* bar, bolt

sermō, -ōnis, *m.* talk, conversation

serō, 3, sēvī, satus sow, plant

sērō, *adv.* late

serpēns, -entis, *m. or f.* snake, serpent

servilis, -e of a slave, slavish, servile

serviō, 4, -ivī, -itus, *intr.* serve

* servitūs, -tūtis, *f.* servitude, slavery, subjection

Servius, -ī, *m.* Servius; Servius Tullius, sixth king of Rome

* servō, 1 protect, preserve, save, lay up, store

servolus, -ī, *m.* slave, young slave

- * **servus**, -ī, *m.* slave, servant
sēsē, *acc. and abl. of suī*
sēstertius, **sēsterti**, *m.* sesterce, a small Roman coin worth about five cents
seu, *see sive*
sevēritās, -tātis, *f.* severity, sternness
sēvocō, *r* call aside or away
* **sex** (VI), *indecl. adj.* six
Sextius, -ī, *m.* Publius Sextius
Baculus, a brave centurion in Caesar's army
* **sextus**, -a, -um sixth
* **sī**, *conj.* if, whether; **quod sī** but if; * **sī quis**, *see quis*
sibi, *dat. of suī*
* **sic**, *adv.* in this way, thus, so; **sic . . . sic** as . . . so
siccitās, -tātis, *f.* dryness, drought
siccus, -a, -um dry
* **sicut** or **sicutī** [**sic** + **ut** (utī)], *adv.* just as, as if
Sidōn, -onis, *f.* Sidon, a Phoenician city
sidus, -eris, *n.* star, constellation
signifer, -ferī, *m.* standard bearer
* **significō**, *r* make signs, indicate
* **signum**, -ī, *n.* sign, signal, military standard
* **silentium**, -ī, *n.* stillness
* **silva**, -ae, *f.* forest, wood
silvestris, -e wooded
* **similis**, -e like, resembling, similar
* **simul**, *adv.* at the same time, also; **simul atque** (ac) as soon as
simulācrum, -ī, *n.* likeness, image, statue
* **simulō**, *r* counterfeit, pretend
simultās, -tātis, *f.* rivalry, jealousy
sīn [**sī** + **ne**], *conj.* but if
* **sine**, *prep. w. abl.* without
singillatim, *adv.* one by one
singularis, -e single, singular, matchless, one by one
* **singulī**, -ae, -a, *pl. adj.* one at a time, single, one apiece
* **sinister**, -tra, *trum* left; *as noun, f.* (sc. manus) left hand
sinō, *3, sivi, situs* be quiet, allow
sitis, *sitis, f* thirst
situla, -ae, *f.* bucket
situs, -ūs, *m.* situation, site
* **sive** or **seu**, *conj.* or if, or; **sive** (seu) . . . **sive** (seu) whether . . . or, either . . . or
socer, -eri, *m.* father-in-law
* **socius**, -ī, *m.* comrade, ally
* **sol**, **sōlis**, *m.* sun
sōlācium, -ī, *n.* comfort, solace
soleō, *2, solitus sum, semi dep., intr.* be wont, be accustomed
sōlitudō, -inis, *f.* loneliness, lonely place, wilderness
solitus, -a, -um accustomed
solemniter, *adv.* solemnly
* **sollicitō**, *r* urge, incite to revolt, excite, rouse
solum, -ī, *n.* bottom, ground, soil
* **sōlum**, *adv.* alone, only, **nōn sōlum** . . . **sed etiam** not only . . . but also
* **sōlus**, -a, -um only, alone, single
* **solvō**, *3, solvi, solūtus* loose, cast off; *sc. nāvem* or *nāvis* set sail
somnium, -ī, *n.* dream
somnus, -ī, *m.* sleep
sonus, -ī, *m.* sound, noise
* **soror**, -ōris, *f.* sister
sors, **sortis**, *f.* lot, decision by lot
spargō, *3, sparsi, sparsus* scatter, fling, sprinkle

- * spatium, -ī, *n.* space, length, distance, interval, extent, course
 * speciēs, -ēi, *f.* appearance, sight, pretense, show, form
 spectāculum, -ī, *n.* show, public games, exhibition
 * spectō, 1 look, face, look to, lie, be situated
 speculātor, -ōris, *m.* spy
 speculātōrius, -a, -um for observation; speculātōrium nāvigium spy boat
 * spērō, 1 hope, look for, expect
 * spēs, spei, *f.* hope, expectation
 spīritus, -ūs, *m.* spirit, courage; *pl.* arrogance, pride
 spoliō, 1 strip, rob, deprive
 spoliū, -ī, *n.* skin; *pl.* spoils, booty
 * sponte, *abl. sing., f. (nom. spōns obsolete)* free will; * suā sponte of his (*their*) own accord
 Spūrinna, -ae, *m.* Spurin'na, a soothsayer
 stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* firmness, stability
 stabulum, -ī, *n.* stable
 * statim, *adv.* at once, on the spot
 * statio, -ōnis, *f.* station, post, guard, reserve, sentry, picket
 statua, -ae, *f.* statue
 * statuō, 3, -uī, -ūtus erect, decide, decree, think, place
 status, -ūs, *m.* condition
 stella, -ae, *f.* star, planet
 * stipendium, -ī, *n.* [stips, contribution + pendō] tax, tribute
 * stō, 1, steti, status, *intr.* stand, stand by
 strāgulum, -ī, *n.* bed-covering
 strāmentum, -ī, *n.* thatch, straw, packsaddle
 strangulō, 1 choke, strangle
 strepitus, -ūs, *m.* confused noise, din
 stringō, 3, strinxi, strictus draw tight, bind, compress
 struō, 3, strūxi, strūctus contrive, devise
 * studeō, 2, -uī, —, *intr.* give attention to, strive for, wish, care for
 * studium, -ī, *n.* eagerness, enthusiasm, zeal, exertion, pursuit, good will, devotion
 stultus, -a, -um foolish; *as noun, m.* fool
 stupeō, 2, stupui, —, *intr.* be astounded, be struck
 Stympālīcus, -a, -um Stympāl'lian
 Stympālīs, -idis, *adj.* Stympāl'lian, of Stympalus, a town in Arcadia
 Styx, Stygis, *f.* the River Styx
 suāviter, *adv.* agreeably
 * sub, *prep. w. acc. (implying motion)* under, beneath, near to, just before, about; *w. abl. (implying rest)* under, beneath, at the foot of, near
 * subducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus lead up, withdraw, beach (a ship)
 subeō, -īre, -īi (-īvi), -itus, *tr. or intr.* go under, enter, come up, approach, submit to, endure, undergo
 subiciō, 3, -iēci, -iectus place under, make subject, throw from beneath
 subigō, 3, -ēgi, -actus subdue, constrain
 * subitō, *adv.* suddenly
 subitus, -a, -um sudden, unexpected, surprising, quick
 sublātus, *p. p. of tollō*
 * sublevō, 1 raise up, support, lighten, assist
 subluō, 3, —, -lūtus wash
 submergō, 3, -mersi, -mersus plunge under, submerge

- subruō, 3, -rui, -rutus dig under, undermine
- * subsequor, 3, -secutus sum, *dep., tr. or intr.* follow up, follow closely
- * subsidium, -i, *n.* aid, protection, reserve, auxiliary troops
- subsiliō, 4, -ui, —, *intr.* leap up
- subsistō, 3, -stiti, —, *intr.* make a stand, stand firm, resist
- subsum, -esse, —, —, *intr.* be near or under
- subveniō, 4, -vēni, -ventus, *intr.* come to help, assist, relieve
- * succēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessus, *tr. or intr.* march up, approach, come next, take the place of, prosper
- succendō, 3, -cendi, -census set on fire
- successiō, -ōnis, *f.* succession
- successus, -ūs, *m.* advance, approach
- succurrō, 3, -curri, -cursus, *intr.* run to help, assist
- sūcus, -i, *m.* juice
- sudis, -is, *f.* stake
- Suēbus, -a, -um Sueban (Swē'han); *as noun, m. or f.* a Sueban; *pl.* the Suē'bans or Suē'bī, a powerful German tribe
- Suessiōnēs, -um, *m. pl.* the Suessiōnes (Swessiō'nēz), a Belgian tribe
- sufficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr. or intr.* be sufficient, suffice
- suffrāgium, -i, *n.* vote
- * sui, *gen. of reflex. pron.* him, her, it, them, itself, themselves
- Sulla, -ae, *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla, leader of the aristocratic party
- Sulpicius, -i, *m.* Publius Sulpicius (Sulpish'us) Rufus, one of Caesar's officers
- * sum, esse, fui, futūrus, *intr.* be, come to pass, happen, be engaged, belong to, be the duty of
- * summa, ae, *f.* leadership, control, whole, amount, sum
- sumministrō, 1, -idi, -idus, *trans.* supply
- * summittō, 3, -misi, -missus send to help, reinforce, send, submit
- summoveō, 2, -mōvi, -mōtus drive off, drive back
- * summus, -a, -um, *sup. of superus* highest, greatest, summit of, first, best, utmost, extreme, most important, perfect
- * sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūmptus take, obtain, spend, use, assume; supplicium sūmere dō inflict punishment
- sūmptuosus, -a, -um very expensive, sumptuous
- sūmptus, ūs, *m.* expense, cost
- super, *adv.* above, over, on
- * superior, -ius, *comp. of superus* higher, former, more distinguished, superior, better, stronger
- * superō, 1, *tr. or intr.* rise above, surpass, conquer, survive
- superscriptiō, -ōnis, *f.* inscription
- supersedē, 2, -sēdi, -sessus, *intr.* preside over, refrain from, keep from
- * supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *intr.* be left, remain, survive
- * superus, -a, -um upper
- suppetō, 3, -petivi, -petitus, *intr.* be at hand, be available, be sufficient, hold out
- supplicatiō, -ōnis, *f.* public prayer, thanksgiving (*for victory*)
- suppliciter, *adv.* suppliantly, humbly

- * supplicium, -ī, *n.* punishment, penalty, torture, suffering
 supplicō, 1, *tr. or intr.* supplicate
 suppōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus put under
 * supportō, 1 bring up, convey, supply
 * sup̄rā, *adv.* above, before; *prep. w. acc.* above, before
 suprēmus, -a, -um, *sup. of superus* last
 surculus, -ī, *m.* twig, branch, sprout
 surgō, 3, surrēxī, —, *intr.* rise, get up
 * suscipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus undertake, take, enter upon
 suspendō, 3, -pendī, -pēnsus suspend, hang
 * suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.* suspicion
 * suspicor, 1, *dep.* suspect
 sustentō, 1, *tr. or intr.* sustain, endure
 * sustineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus hold up, check, withstand, sustain, endure, hold out
 sustulī, *see tollō*
 * suus, -a, -um, *reflex.* his (her, its, their) own, his, her, its, their; *as noun, suī, m. pl.* his (their) men; *as noun, sua, n. pl.* his (their) possessions
 Symmachus, -ī, *m.* Sym'machus
 Symplēgades, -um, *f. pl.* the Symplegades, the Clashing Rocks
 T., *abbr. for Titus Tī'tus*, Roman. praenomen
 tabernāculum, -ī, *n.* tent
 tabula, -ae, *f.* board, list
 taceō, 2, tacuī, tacitus, *tr. or intr.* be silent, keep silent, be silent about, keep secret
 tacitus, -a, -um silent
 tactus, -ūs, *m.* touch
 tālea, -ae, *f.* stake, rod, block, bar
 talentum, -ī, *n.* a talent, about \$1100
 tālis, -e such, of such a sort
 * tam, *adv.* so, so very
 * tamen, *adv.* yet, however, still, nevertheless
 tandem, *adv.* at length, finally
 * tangō, 3, tetigī, tactus touch, border on
 tantulus, -a, -um so little, trifling, unimportant
 tantum, *adv.* so far, only
 * tantus, -a, -um so great, so much; tantum . . . quantum so much (*as much*) . . . as
 tardē, *adv.* tardily, slowly, late
 * tardō, 1 delay, hinder, check
 * tardus, -a, -um slow, late
 Tarquinius, -ī, *m.* Priscus Tarquin'ius, Tarquin, fifth king of Rome; Lucius Tarquinius Superbus, seventh and last king of Rome
 Tartarus, -ī, *m.* Tar'tarus, Hades
 taurus, -ī, *m.* bull
 tēctum, -ī [tegō], *n.* roof, house
 tegimentum, -ī, *n.* covering, cover
 * tegō, 3, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect, conceal
 Tellūs, -ūris, *f.* Tel'us, earth
 * tēlum, -ī, *n.* weapon, missile, spear
 temerārius, -a, -um rash, heedless, imprudent
 * temerē, *adv.* without plan, rashly
 temeritās, -tātis, *f.* rashness, temerity
 tēmō, -ōnis, *m.* pole of a chariot
 temperātus, -a, -um moderate, temperate
 * tempestās, -tātis, *f.* weather, stormy weather, storm

- tempestivē, *adv.* in proper season
 templum, -i, *n.* temple
 * temptō, 1 try, test, make trial of, attack
 * tempus, -oris, *n.* time, season, occasion
 Tēneterī, ōrum, *m. pl.* the Tene-terī, a German tribe
 * tendō, 3, tendi, tentus stretch out, pitch (*tents*), encamp
 tenebrae, -arum, *f. pl.* shadows, darkness, gloom
 * teneō, 2, -uī, - hold, keep, retain, occupy, control, hold back, check, hold under obligation; sē tenēre stay, remain
 tenuis, -e thin, trifling, feeble, poor
 ter [trēs], *adv.* three times
 * tergum, -i, *n.* back; ā tergō be hind; terga vertere turn in flight
 ternī, -ae, -a, *pl. adj.* three at a time, three apiece
 * terra, -ae, *f.* earth, land, country
 * terreō, 2, -uī, -itus frighten, deter by frightening, prevent
 terribilis, -e terrible, frightful
 territō, 1 alarm, fill with terror, threaten
 * terror, -ōris, *m.* fear, alarm, panic
 * tertius, -a, -um third
 testāmentum, -i [testor, *call as a witness*], *n.* will
 testimōnium, -i, *n.* evidence, proof
 * testis, -is, *m. or f.* witness
 testūdō, -inis, *f.* tortoise, testudo, shed
 tetigī, *see* tangō
 Teutonēs, -um or Teutonī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Teu'tonēs, a people of Germany
 theātrum, -i, *n.* theatre
 thesaurus, -i, *m.* treasury
 Thēseus, -i, *m.* Theseus, mythical king of Athens
 Thessalia, -ae, *f.* Thessaly, in northern Greece
 Thetis, -idis, *f.* Thetis, a sea nymph, mother of Achilles
 Thisbē, -ēs, *f.* Thisbe
 Thrācia, -ae, *f.* Thrace, a country north of Greece
 Tiberis, Tiberis, *m.* Tiber River
 tibia, -ae, *f.* leg
 Tigurinus, -i, *m.* Tiguri'nus, one of the cantons of the Helvetians; *pl.* the Tiguri'ni
 * timeō, 2, -uī, - *tr. or intr.* fear, dread
 * timidus, -a, -um fearful, timid, afraid, cowardly
 * timor, -ōris, *m.* fear, dread
 tingō, 3, tinxī, tinctus moisten, dye
 tintinnābulum, -i, *n.* bell
 Titōrius, -i, *m.* Quintus Tituri'us Sabinus, one of Caesar's officers
 * toga, -ae, *f.* toga
 tolerō, 1 endure, support
 * tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātus take up, lift up, raise, weigh (*anchor*), encourage, carry off, ruin, destroy
 Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m. pl.* the Tolosates (Tolosā'tēz), a tribe in the Province
 tondeō, 2, totondī, tōnsus shear, clip, mow
 * tormentum, -i, *n.* engine (*for hurling missiles*), artillery
 torqueō, 2, torsi, tortus torture
 torreō, 2, -uī, tostus parch, scorch, burn
 torus, -i, *m.* couch
⁴ tot, *indecl. adj.* so many

- ⁴ *totidem, indecl. adj.* just as many, the same number
totiens, adv. so often, as many times
⁴ *tōtus, -a, -um* whole, all, entire
^{*} *trabs, trabis, f.* beam, timber
^{*} *trādō, 3, -didi, -ditus* give over, pass along, surrender, intrust, yield, leave, transmit, teach, relate
trādūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus lead across, bring over, win over
trāgula, -ae, f. javelin, dart
⁴ *trahō, 3, trāxī, tractus* drag, drag along
Trāianus, -ī, m. Trajan, Roman Emperor 98-117 A.D.
trāiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, tr. or intr. throw across, strike through, transfix
trāiectus, -ūs, m. crossing
tranquillitās, -tātis, f. stillness, calm
tranquillus, -a, -um calm, still; as *noun* peace, tranquillity.
^{*} *trāns, prep. w. acc.* across, over, beyond
Trānsalpinus, -a, -um across the Alps, Transalpine
trāscendō, 3, -scendī, —, tr. or intr. pass over, board (*a ship*)
⁴ *trānseō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itus, tr. or intr.* go across, march through, pass by, translate
trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus carry over, transfer
trānsfigō, 3, -fixī, -fixus pierce through, transfix
trānsgridior, 3, -gressus sum, dep. step across, across
trānsmisus, -ūs, m. crossing, passage
trānsportō, 1 carry over, take across, transport
trānsversus, -a, -um crosswise, transverse
Trebātius, -ī, m. Gaius Trebatius Testa, a young man on Caesar's staff, an intimate friend of Cicero
trecēni, -ae, -a three hundred each
trecentī, -ae, -a (ccc) three hundred
trepidō, 1 hurry in alarm, be agitated
^{*} *trēs, tria (iii)* three
Trēverī, -ōrum, m. pl. the Trev'eri, a tribe in northeastern Gaul
^{*} *tribūnus, -ī, m.* tribune
^{*} *tribuō, 3, tribui, tribūtus* assign, concede, attribute, ascribe, give credit
tribūtum, -ī, n. contribution, tribute
triceps, -cipitis three headed
tricēsīmus, -a, -um thirtieth
^{*} *trīduum, -ī, n.* a period of three days
trīgintā (xxx), indecl. adj. thirty
trīni, -ae, -a, pl. adj. three at a time, threefold
tripertitō, adv. in three parts
triplex, -icis threefold, triple
triquetrus, -a, -um triangular
tristis, -e sad, sorrowful, gloomy
tristitia, -ae, f. sadness, dejection
triumphus, -ī, m. triumph
Trōia, -ae, f. Troy
truncus, -ī, m. trunk of a tree
^{*} *tū, tui, pers. pron.* thou, you
^{*} *tuba, -ae, f.* trumpet
^{*} *tueor, 2, tūtus sum, dep.* watch, care for, guard
tulī, see ferō
Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl. the Tulingi (Tulin'ji), a German tribe north of the Helvetians
Tullius, see Servius

- Tullus, -ī, *m.* Tullus Hostilius, the third king of Rome
- * **tum**, *adv.* then, at that time, next, besides; * **cum** . . . **tum** not only . . . but also, both . . . and
- * **tumultus**, -ūs, *m.* uproar, noise, disturbance, revolt
- * **tumulus**, -ī, *m.* mound, hill, tomb
- tunc**, *adv.* then, on that occasion
- turba**, -ae, *f.* crowd, turmoil, uproar
- turma**, -ae, *f.* troop of cavalry
- Turonī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Tu'ronī, a Gallic tribe
- * **turpis**, -e, *adj.* unseemly, disgraceful, ugly
- turpitūdō**, -inis, *f.* disgrace
- tūs**, **tūris**, *n.* incense
- * **turris**, -is, *f.* tower
- * **tūtus**, -a, -um safe, secure
- * **tuus**, -a, -um [tū] thy, thine, your, yours
- * **ubi**, *adv.* where, in which place; *conj.* when, as; **ubi primum** as soon as
- Ubīi**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Ubīi, a German tribe
- ubique**, *adv.* everywhere, anywhere
- ulciscor**, 3, **ultus sum**, *dep.* take vengeance on, punish, avenge
- * **ūllus**, -a, -um any; *as noun, m. or f.* anyone, anybody
- * **ulterior**, -ius [ultrā] farther, more distant; Gallia Ulterior Transalpine Gaul
- * **ultimus**, -a, -um [ultrā] farthest, most remote
- ultor**, -ōris, *f.* avenger
- * **ultrā**, *prep. w. acc.* on the farther side of, beyond
- * **ultrō**, *adv.* to the farther side, besides, voluntarily
- ultus**, *p. of ulciscor*
- ululātus**, ūs, *m.* yell, wailing
- umbra**, ae, *f.* shadow, shade, ghost
- umerus**, ī, *m.* shoulder
- * **umquam**, *adv.* ever, at any time
- * **ūnā**, [abl. *f. of unus*], *adv.* at the same time, together; **ūnā cum** together with
- ūnanimus**, a, um beloved, concordant, unanimous
- * **unde**, *adv.* from which place, whence
- * **undique**, *adv.* from all sides, on all sides, everywhere
- ūnicus**, a, um only
- * **ūniversus**, a, um all together, in a body, whole, entire; *as noun, m. pl.* the whole body, all
- * **ūnus**, -a, um (1) one, alone, sole, only, one and the same
- urbānus**, a, um of the city
- * **urbs**, **urbis**, *f.* city, town
- urgeō**, 2, **ursī**, press, push, press hard
- urna**, ae, *f.* urn
- ūrō**, 3, **ussī**, **ustus** burn
- Usipetēs**, -um, *m. pl.* the Usipetes (Usip'etēz), a German tribe
- * **usque**, *adv.* all the way, even, continually
- ūsus**, *p. of ūtor*
- * **ūsus**, ūs, *m.* use, employment, experience, practice, custom, familiarity, necessity
- * **ut or uti**, *adv.* how? as, just as, as if; *conj.* when, as soon as, as, although; *with subjunctive of purpose* in order that, that, to; *with subjunctive of result* so that, that; *with expressions of fear* that . . . not

- * *uter, utra, utrum, interrog. adj. or pron. which (of two)?; indef. whichever one*
- * *uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), either, both*
- ŭti, see ŭtor*
- * *ŭtilis, e useful, expedient*
- * *ŭtor, 3, ŭsus sum, dep., intr. employ, make use of, accept, abide by, enjoy, have, practise, show*
- utrimque, adv. from each side, on both sides*
- utrum, conj. whether*
- ŭva, ae, f. grape, bunch of grapes*
- * *uxor, ōris, f. wife*
- vacātiō, -ōnis, f. freedom, exemption*
- vacō, 1, intr. be uninhabited, be vacant, lie waste*
- * *vacuus, -a, -um empty, deserted, unoccupied*
- vādō, 3, -, -, intr. go*
- * *vadum, -i, n. shallow place, ford*
- vāgīna, ae, f. scabbard*
- * *vagor, 1, dep., intr. wander about, roam*
- valē, imperative of valeō farewell, good-by*
- * *valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus, intr. be strong, have influence, be able, deserve*
- Valerius, -i, m. Gaius Valē'rius Donnotaurus, a Romanized Gaul; Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Romanized Gaul of high rank*
- valētūdō, -inis, f. health*
- * *vallēs, -is, f. valley*
- * *vāllum, -i, n. palisades, rampart, wall*
- varius, -a, -um different, various*
- vās, vāsis, n. vessel, dish*
- * *vāstō, 1 lay waste, devastate*
- vāstus, -a, -um unoccupied, waste, vast*
- ve, enclitic conj. or*
- * *vehēmēns, -entis very eager, impetuous*
- * *vehementer, adv. vigorously, greatly, exceedingly*
- * *vehō, 3, vexī, vectus bear, carry*
- * *vel [volō], conj. or; vel . . . vel either . . . or*
- vellus, -eris, n. fleece*
- vēlōciter, adv. swiftly, quickly*
- vēlum, -i, n. sail*
- velut, adv. just as, even as, as*
- vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. hunt, hunting expedition*
- vēndō, 3, -didī, -ditus sell*
- venēnum, -i, n. poison, magic charm*
- veneror, 1, dep. worship, pray*
- Veneti, -ōrum, m. pl. the Ven'eti, a tribe in western Gaul*
- Veneticus, -a, -um of the Veneti*
- venia, -ae, f. favor, pardon*
- * *veniō, 4, vēnī, ventus, intr. come, arrive; used impers. in pass., ventum est he comes, they come, etc.*
- ventitō, 1, intr. come often, keep coming*
- * *ventus, -i, m. wind*
- Venus, -eris, f. Venus, goddess of love and beauty*
- Vērānius, -i, m. Vera'nus, a Roman name*
- verber, -eris, n. blow, flogging*
- Verbigenus, -i, m. Verbigenus (Verbij'enus), a canton of the Helvetians*
- verbōsus, -a, -um full of words, wordy*
- * *verbum, -i, n. word*
- Vercassivellaunus, -i, m. Vercassivellau'nus, an Arvernian general*

- Vercingetorix**, -īgis, *m.* Vercingetorix (Versinjet'orix), an Arvernian noble
- vērē**, *adv.* truly
- * **vereor**, 2, veritus sum, *dep.* fear, be afraid of, dread, be anxious, hesitate, shrink
- vergō**, 3, —, —, *intr.* turn, slope, lie, be situated
- veritas**, -tātis, *f.* truth, sincerity
- veritus**, *p. p. of vereor*
- * **vērō**, *adv.* in truth, in fact, indeed, certainly, but, but in fact, however
- versō**, 1 keep turning, change the circumstances of
- * **versor**, 1, *dep., intr.* busy oneself, be engaged, be busy, live, be
- versus**, *adv., or prep. w. acc.* in the direction of, toward
- versus**, -ūs, *m.* line, verse
- Verticō**, -ōnis, *m.* Vertico, a Nervian
- * **vertō**, 3, verti, versus turn, turn about
- vērūm**, *adv.* but
- * **vērus**, -a, -um true, right, just; as a noun, *n.* truth, faith
- verūtum**, -ī, *n.* javelin, dart
- vēscor**, 3, vēscī, —, *dep., intr.* eat, feed upon
- * **vesper**, -erī (-eris), *m.* evening
- * **vester**, -tra, -trum your, yours
- vestibulum**, -ī, *n.* vestibule, entrance
- vestigium**, -ī, *n.* footprint, track, instant; in vēstigiō on the spot, instantly
- vestiō**, 4, -ivī, -itus clothe, cover
- * **vestis**, -is, *f.* clothing
- vestitus**, -ūs, *m.* clothing
- Vesuvius**, -ī, *m.* Mt. Vesuvius
- veterānus**, -a, -um old, veteran; as noun, *m. pl.* veterans
- vetō**, 1, -uī, -itus forbid
- * **vetus**, veteris old, ancient, former
- * **vetustus**, -a, -um aged, old, ancient
- vexillum**, -ī, *n.* banner, flag
- vexō**, 1 harass, trouble, ravage
- * **via**, ae, *f.* way, road, pass, march
- viātor**, -ōris, *m.* traveler
- vicēni**, ae, a, *pl. adj.* twenty each
- vicēsīmus**, a, um twentieth
- vicīs**, *adv.* twenty times
- * **vicinus**, a, -um neighboring; as noun, *m.* a neighbor
- vicis**, *gen. f.*; in vicem in turn
- vicissitūdō**, -inis, *f.* change, vicissitude
- victima**, ae, *f.* sacrifice, victim
- * **victor**, -ōris, *m.* conqueror, victor
- * **victōria**, ae, *f.* victory
- victus**, -ūs, *m.* food, way of living, living
- * **vicus**, -ī, *m.* village, street
- * **videō**, 2, vidī, visus see, perceive; often in pass. seem, appear, seem good
- * **vigilia**, ae, *f.* wakefulness, keeping guard, watch (as a measure of time)
- * **viginti** (XX), *indeed adj.* twenty
- vīlica**, ae, *f.* housekeeper
- vīlicus**, -ī, *m.* overseer, manager
- * **villa**, -ae, *f.* house, villa
- vīmen**, -inis, *n.* plant twig, osier
- Viminālis**, -e Viminal; *ae. collis* one of the seven hills of Rome
- vinciō**, 4, vīnxī, vīctus bind, fetter
- * **vincō**, 3, vici, victus conquer, subdue, surpass; victi, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the conquered
- * **vinculum**, -ī, *n.* chain, fetter, bond
- vindicō**, 1 assert a claim, maintain, inflict punishment

- vinea, -ae [vinum], *f.* a shed used in sieges
 vinum, -i, *n.* wine
 violentus, -a, -um violent, vehement
 violō, *1* injure, ravage
 * vir, viri, *m.* man, husband
 virēs, *pl. of vis*
 virga, -ae, *f.* twig, wand
 virgō, -inis, *f.* maiden, girl
 Viridomārus, -i, *m.* Viridomā'rus, a leader of the Aeduians
 * virtūs, -tūtis [vir], *f.* manliness, worth, courage
 * vis (vīs), *f.* strength, power, force, influence, violence; *pl.*, virēs strength
 visō, *3*, visī, visus see, behold, go to see
 vīsum, -i, *n.* vision
 vīsus, *p. p. of videō*
 * vīta, -ae, *f.* life, mode of living
 vītis, -is, *f.* vine
 vitium, -i, *n.* fault, defect
 * vitō, *1* avoid, evade
 vitrum, -i, *n.* woad, a plant furnishing a blue dye
 * vivō, *3*, vixī, victus, *intr.* live
 * vīvus, -a, -um alive, living
 * vix, *adv.* with difficulty, scarcely
 Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.* Voccio (Vok'shyō), a king of the Norici
 * vocō, *1* summon, challenge, call
 Vocontii, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Vocontii (Vocon'shyi), in the Province
 Volcae, -ārum, *m. pl.* the Volcae (Vol'sē), a Gallic tribe in the Province consisting of two branches, Arecomici (Areko'mesi) and Tectosages (Tectos'ajēz)
 * volō, velle, volui, —, *tr. or intr.* will, be willing, wish, plan, resolve
 volō, *1*, *intr.* fly
 Volsci, -ōrum, *m. pl.* the Volsci (Vol'si), a people south of Rome
 * voluntās, -tātis, *f.* will, wish, desire, inclination, good will
 voluptās, -tātis, *f.* pleasure, enjoyment
 Volusēnus, -i, *m.* Gaius Volusē'nus
 Quadratus, a tribune of soldiers in Caesar's army
 Vorēnus, -i, *m.* Lū'cius Vorē'nus, a brave centurion of Caesar's army
 vōs, *pl. of tū*
 voveō, *2*, vōvī, vōtus promise solemnly, vow
 * vōx, vōcis, *f.* voice, cry, word
 Vulcānus, -i, *m.* Vulcan, god of fire and of workers in metal
 vulgō, *adv.* commonly, everywhere
 * vulgus, -i, *n.* multitude, crowd, the people
 * vulnerō, *1* wound
 * vulnus, -eris, *n.* wound, injury, blow
 vulpēs, -is, *f.* fox
 vultus, -ūs, *m.* countenance, face
 Zētēs, -ae, *m.* Zē'tēs, one of the Argonauts
 Zōilus, -i, *m.* Zo'ilus, Roman name
 zōna, -ae, *f.* girdle

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

Proper nouns and the principal parts of verbs are not given in this vocabulary. They may be found in the LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

about, <i>prep.</i> circum, circiter, <i>w.</i>	anger ira, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>acc.</i> ; dē, <i>w. abl.</i>	animal animal, -ālis, <i>n.</i>
accident cāsus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>	any ūllus, a, -um; anyone, <i>pron.</i>
accomplish cōnficiō, faciō	ūllus, aliquis, quisquam; (<i>after si</i>)
accord, of his (their) own suā sponte,	quis
ultrō	appearance speciēs, -ēī, <i>f.</i>
accustomed, be cōnsuēscō	appointed cōnstitūtus, -a, -um
admire mīror	approach, <i>noun</i> aditus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
advance prōgredior	approach, <i>verb</i> appropinquō
adversity adversa rēs; calamitās,	approve probō
-tātis, <i>f.</i>	archer sagittārius, -ī, <i>m.</i>
advise praecipō	arm, equip, <i>verb</i> armō
affect afficiō	armor, arms arma, -ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>
after, <i>prep.</i> post, <i>w. acc.</i> ; <i>conj.</i>	army exercitus, ūs, <i>m.</i>
postquam	arrival adventus, ūs, <i>m.</i>
afterwards post	arrow sagitta, ae, <i>f.</i>
again rursus	as ut; as soon as simul ac
against, <i>prep.</i> ad, contrā, in, <i>w. acc.</i>	ask quaerō, rogō; ask for petō
agree cōnsentiō	assign attribuō, distribuō
aid, <i>verb</i> iuvō; <i>noun</i> subsidium, -ī,	assemble conveniō
<i>n.</i> ; auxilium, -ī, <i>n.</i>	at least certē
air āēr, āeris, <i>m.</i>	attack, <i>verb</i> adior, oppugnō, ag-
alive vivus, -a, -um	gredior; <i>noun</i> impetus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
all omnis, omne; all together ūni-	attempt cōnor
versus, -a, -um	attribute tribuō
almost paene, ferē	authority auctoritās, -tātis, <i>f.</i>
along with, <i>adv.</i> ūnā	avail valeō
although etsi, <i>w. indic.</i> ; cum, <i>w.</i>	avoid vitō
<i>subjunctive</i> ; sometimes an <i>abl. abs.</i>	
or <i>participle</i>	back tergum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
altogether, <i>adv.</i> omninō	baggage impedimenta, -ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>
ambassador lēgātus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	banquet, dinner cēna, -ae, <i>f.</i>
ambush insidiae, -ārum, <i>f. pl.</i>	barbarians barbari, -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>
anchor ancora, -ae, <i>f.</i>	battle proelium, -ī, <i>n.</i> ; light a
ancient vetustus, -a, -um	battle proelium faciō
and et, -que, atque	be sum; be away absum

- beach, *verb* subducō
 bear ferō, vehō; bear it ill aegrē ferō
 beautiful pulcher, -chra, -chrum
 beauty fōrma, -ae, *f.*
 because cum, quod, propterea quod
 become fiō
 before, *adv.* ante; *prep.* ante, *w.* acc.; *conj.* priusquam
 beg ōrō, petō
 begin incipiō, coepi *def.*
 beginning initium, -ī, *n.*
 behind, *prep.* post, *w. acc.*
 believe cōfidō
 betake one's self cōferō, *w. reflex.*
 between, *prep.* inter, *w. acc.*; be between intersum
 beyond, *prep.* ultrā, *w. acc.*
 bird avis, -is, *f.*
 booty praeda, -ae, *f.*; get booty praedam facio
 boy puer, -ī, *m.*
 bravery virtus, -tūtis, *f.*
 bring afferō, ferō, inferō, perducō, dēferō; bring back referō; bring about efficiō
 bronze aes, aeris, *n.*
 build aedificō
 bury condō, sepeliō
 but sed
 buy emō
 by, *prep.* ā, ab, *w. abl. of agent*

 call (by name) appellō
 camp castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
 can possum
 canton pāgus, -ī, *m.*
 carry ferō, portō; carry out facio
 cause causa, -ae, *f.*
 cavalry equitātus, -ūs, *m.*; equitēs, -um, *m. pl.*
 cave caverna, -ae, *f.*
 centurion centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
 certain, a quidam, quaedam, quiddam
 chain vinculum, -ī, *n.*; in chains ex vinculis
 chance cāsus, -ūs, *m.*; fors, fortis, *f.*
 change convertō
 charge, be in praesum
 chariot currus, -ūs, *m.*
 children liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
 city urbs, urbis, *f.*
 clamor, shout clāmōr, -ōris, *f.*
 clear, be, *verb* cōstō
 client cliēs, -entis, *m. or f.*
 climb on transcendō
 cling to adhaereō
 close claudō
 cohort cohors, -hortis, *f.*
 collect comportō, conquirō
 come veniō, perveniō; come together concurrō
 command, *noun* imperātum, -ī, *n.*; *mandātum*, -ī, *n.*; *verb* imperō; be in command praesum
 compact cōnfertus, -a, -um
 comrade socius, -ī, *m.*
 conceal occultō
 congratulation grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 consent voluntās, -tātis, *f.*
 conspire coniūrō
 consult cōsulō
 contend contendō
 continue permanēō
 course cursus, -ūs, *m.*
 cover (overflow) inundō
 cross transeō
 cry aloud conclāmō
 custom mōs, mōris, *m.*; cōnsuetudō, -inis, *f.*
 cut abscidō; cut off intercludō
 daily cotidiānus, -a, -um

- danger *periculum*, -ī, *n.*
 daughter *filia*, -ae, *f.*
 day *diēs*, *diēi*, *m. or f.*; on the following day *postridiē*
 daybreak, at *primā luce*, *ortā luce*
 death *mors*, *mortis*, *f.*
 decide *dēcernō*, *cēnsēō*, *cōstituō*
 decorate *ōrnō*
 defender *dēfēnsor*, -ōris, *m.*
 delay, *noun* *mora*, -ae, *f.*; *verb* *moror*
 deliberate *dēlibērō*
 demand *postulō*, *poscō*
 depart *dēcēdō*, *excēdō*, *proficiscor*
 departure *profectiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
 depth *altitudō*, -inis, *f.*
 descend *dēscendō*; (spring from) *orior*
 deserved *meritus*, -a, -um
 desire *cupiditās*, -tātis, *f.*; *studium*, -ī, *n.*; *verb* *dēsiderō*
 desist *dēsistō*
 despair *dēspērō*
 despise *dēspiciō*
 destruction *exitium*, -ī, *n.*
 devastate *vastō*
 differ *differō*
 differently *aliter*
 difficult *difficilis*, -e
 difficulty *difficultās*, -tātis, *f.*
 dignity *dignitās*, -tātis, *f.*
 diligence *diligentia*, -ae, *f.*
 diligent *diligēns*, -entis
 diaster *calamitās*, -tātis, *f.*; *even-tus*, -ūs, *m.*
 discover *reperiō*
 disgraceful *turpis*, -e
 do *faciō*, *agō*; do not *nōlī*, *w. inf.*; do one's duty *praestō officium*
 dog *canis*, -is, *m. or f.*
 doubt *dubitō*
 drag *trahō*
 dragon *dracō*, -ōnis, *m.*
 draw up *expōnō*
 dust *pulvis*, -eris, *m.*
 duty *officium*, -ī, *n.*
 each one *quisque*, *quidque*
 eager *alacer*, *cris*, *cre*
 eagle *aquila*, -ae, *f.*
 early *mātūrus*, -a, -um
 easily *facile*
 eight *octō*
 eighteen *duodēviginti*
 either *uterque*, *traque*, -trumque
 either . . . or *aut . . . aut*, *vel . . . vel*
 embassy *lēgatiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
 emergency *cāsus*, -ūs, *m.*
 empty *vacuus*, -a, -um
 encourage *hortor*, *cohortor*
 end *finis*, -is, *m.*
 endure *perferō*
 enemy *hostis*, *hostis*, *m.*
 enjoy *fruo*
 enlist *cōscribō*
 enroll *cōscribō*
 entrust *permittō*, *commendō*
 equestrian *equester*, -tris, *tre*
 equip *armō*
 escape *ēvadō*, *effugiō*
 even, not *nē quidem*
 evening *vesper*, -erī, *m.*
 ever *umquam*
 everything *omnia*, -ium, *n. pl.*
 except, *prep.* *praeter*, *w. acc.*
 excite *sollicitō*
 exercise *exercitātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
 expel *expellō*
 extend *pateō*
 eye *oculus*, -ī, *m.*
 faithful *fidēlis*, -e

- fall *cadō*
 famous *clārus*, -a, -um
 farther *longius*
 father *pater*, -tris, *m.*; *parēns*, -entis, *m.*
 favor *faveō*
 fear, *noun* *timor*, -ōris, *m.*; *verb* *vereor*, *timeō*
 feed *alō*
 few *pauci*, -ae, -a
 field *ager*, -grī, *m.*; *campus*, -ī, *m.*
 fierce *ferus*, -a, -um
 fight *pugnō*, *contendō*, *prōpugnō*, *dimicō*; fight to a finish *dēcertō*
 fill *compleō*
 find *inveniō*; find out *comperiō*, *reperiō*
 finger *digitus*, -ī, *m.*
 finish *cōficiō*, *perficiō*
 fire *ignis*, -is, *m.*
 first, at first, *adv.* *prīmum*, *primō*
 five *quīque*
 flee *fugiō*, *perfugiō*
 fleecy *vellus*, -eris, *n.*
 fleet *classis*, -is, *f.*
 flesh *carō*, *carnis*, *f.*
 flight *fuga*, -ae, *f.*
 flow *fluō*
 flower *flōs*, *flōris*, *m.*
 fly *volō*, *i*
 fodder *pābulum*, -ī, *n.*
 follow *sequor*, *subsequor*; follow up *cōnsequor*
 following *posterus*, -a, -um
 food supply *rēs frūmentāria*, *f.*
 foot *pēs*, *pedis*, *m.*
 for, often expressed by the dative case; (toward) *ad*, *w. acc.*; *conj.* *namque*
 force *cōgō*
 forced march *magnum iter*, *n.*
 forces *cōpiae*, -ārum, *f. pl.*
 ford *vadum*, -ī, *n.*
 form *ineō*, *capiō*, *faciō*
 former *vetus*, -eris; *prīstinus*, -a, -um
 formerly *olim*, *anteā*
 fortification *mūnitio*, -ōnis, *f.*
 fortress *praesidium*, -ī, *n.*; *castellum*, -ī, *n.*
 free *liberō*
 friend *amicus*, -ī, *m.*
 frighten *perterreō*
 from, *prep.* *ē*, *ex*, *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *w. abl.*; from a distance, *adv.* *procul*; from there *inde*
 front *frōns*, *frontis*, *f.*; in front *ā fronte*; those in front *prīorēs*, *m. pl.*; front line *prīma acies*, *f.*
 garment *vestis*, -is, *f.*
 gate *porta*, -ae, *f.*
 get possession of *potior*, *w. abl. or gen.*
 gift *dōnum*, -ī, *n.*
 girl *puella*, -ae, *f.*
 give *dō*
 glory *glōria*, -ae, *f.*
 go *eō*, *iter faciō*; go forth *exeō*; go to *adeō*
 god *deus*, -ī, *m.*
 goddess *dea*, -ae, *f.*
 gold *aurum*, -ī, *n.*
 golden *aureus*, -a, -um
 gradually *paulatim*
 grain *frūmentum*, -ī, *n.*
 great *magnum*; so great *tantus*
 grief *dolor*, -ōris, *m.*
 guard *statio*, -ōnis, *f.*
 happen *accidō*
 happy *laetus*, -a, -um
 have *habeō*; dative of possession *with sum*

he is, hic, ille	inflict inferō
hear audiō	influence moveō, inducō, adducō
heat aestus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>	inform certiōrem faciō
hero vir, virī, <i>m.</i>	injure nocēō
hide abdō	institution institūtum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
himself, herself, <i>intensive</i> ipse, ipsa; <i>reflexive</i> suī, sibi, sē	interrupt intermittō
his, hers, theirs eius, eōrum, eārum; <i>reflexive</i> suus, -a, -um	intervene intercēdō, intermittō
hither ceterior, -ius	into, <i>prep.</i> in, <i>w. acc.</i>
hold, hold back teneō	island insula, -ae, <i>f.</i>
home, house domus, -ūs, <i>f.</i>	it id
hope, <i>verb</i> spērō; <i>noun</i> spēs, -ei, <i>f.</i>	javelin pīlum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
horrible horribilis, -e	join coniungō
horse equus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	judge iudicō
hospitality hospitium, -ī, <i>n.</i>	keep from prohibeō
hostage obses, -idis, <i>m. or f.</i>	kill necō, interficiō
hour hōra, -ae, <i>f.</i>	king rēx, rēgis, <i>m.</i>
house aedificium, -ī, <i>n.</i> ; domicilium, -ī, <i>n.</i>	kingdom rēgnum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
household familia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	know sciō; not to know ignōrō
how quōmodo; how great quantus, -a, -um; however autem	knowledge scientia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
huge ingēns, -entis	labor labor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>
hunger famēs, -is, <i>f.</i>	labyrinth labyrinthum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
hurl adigō	lack dēficiō; be lacking dēsum
hurling engine tormentum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	land terra, -ae, <i>f.</i>
husband marītus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	language lingua, -ae, <i>f.</i>
I ego, meī	last suprēmus, extrēmus
if si	late in the day multō diē
ill, <i>adv.</i> aegrē	later, <i>adv.</i> post
immediately statim, prōtinus	latter hic, haec, hoc
impede impediō	launch dēducō
impediment impedimentum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	lay aside dēponō
impel impellō	lay waste populor
import importō	lead conducō, ducō; lead on, in-
in in, <i>w. abl.</i>	fluence adducō
incite incitō	leadership principātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
indicate significō	learn cognōscō, discō
infantry pedestrēs cōpiae, <i>f. pl.</i>	leave relinquo
	left sinister, -tra, -trum
	legion legiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
	less minus

- letter litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
 lieutenant lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
 lift sublevō
 light levis, -e; light-armed levis
 armātūrae
 likewise, *pron.* idem, eadem, idem;
 adv. item
 line aciōs, -ēī, *f.*; agmen, -inis, *n.*
 lion leō, leōnis, *m.*
 little, a paulum; by a little paulō
 live vivō
 load onus, -eris, *n.*
 long (time) diū
 look on aspiciō
 loud magnus, -a, -um
 love amō
 Lower Region Orcus, -ī, *m.*

 magistrate magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
 make faciō, comparō; make resti-
 tution satisfaciō; make trial of ex-
 pior; make war on bellum inferō
 man homō, -inis, *m.*; vir, -ī, *m.*;
 of man hūmānus, -a, -um
 many multī, -ae, -a, *pl. adj.*
 maritime maritimus, -a, -um
 marry in mātrimonium dūcō
 master dominus, -ī, *m.*
 material māteria, -ae, *f.*
 matter rēs, rei, *f.*
 meanwhile intereā, interim
 meet, run to meet occurrō
 merchant mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
 messenger nūntius, -ī, *m.*
 middle, midst of medius, -a, -um
 midnight media nox
 miles milia passuum, *pl.*
 military militāris, -e; military
 science rēs militāris, *f.*
 mind animus, -ī, *m.*
 more amplius

 mountain mōns, montis, *m.*; top
 of the mountain summus mōns, *m.*
 move moveō
 multitude multitudō, -inis, *f.*
 my meus, -a, -um

 narrow angustus, -a, -um
 narrow pass angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
 nature nātūra, -ae, *f.*
 near by propinquus, -a, -um
 necessary, be oportet
 neglect neglegō
 neither neuter, -tra, -trum
 never numquam
 nevertheless tamen
 new novus, -a, -um
 next proximus, -a, -um
 night nox, noctis, *f.*; at night noc-
 turnus, -a, -um
 no nullus, -a, -um
 nobility nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.*
 noon meridiēs, -ēī, *m.*
 no one nēmō; *gen.* nullius
 not nōn; (and) not, nor neque;
 and that . . . not nēve; is it
 not? nōnne; not only . . . but
 also nōn modo . . . sed etiam,
 nōn solum . . . sed etiam
 noteworthy insignis, -e
 nothing nihil
 notice animadvertō
 not yet nōndum
 now nunc
 number numerus, -ī, *m.*; multitudō,
 -inis, *f.*
 nymph nympha, -ae, *f.*

 oar rēmus, -ī, *m.*
 oath iūs iurandum
 obey pāreō
 obtain obtineō, nanciscor; obtain
 one's request impetrō

occur incidō	persuade persuādeō
offer offerō	pick, choose legō
old-time prīstinus	place, arrange, <i>verb</i> collocō; place
on, <i>prep.</i> in, <i>w. abl.</i> ; upon in, <i>w.</i>	in command praeficiō; <i>noun</i>
<i>acc.</i> ; on account of ob, <i>w. acc.</i>	locus, -ī, <i>m.</i> ; <i>pl.</i> loca, <i>n.</i> ; to the
one ūnus, -a, -um; one . . . the	same place eōdem
other alter . . . alter; one at a	plain plānitēs, -ēī, <i>f.</i>
time singulī, -ae, -a, singulāris,	plan cōsiliū, -ī, <i>n.</i>
-e; one from one ship, one from	plead dicō
another aliū ex aliā nāve	please placeō
only the, alone, <i>adj.</i> sōlus, -a, -um	poplar tree pōpulus, -ī, <i>f.</i>
only, <i>adv.</i> omnīnō, modo	port portus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
open, <i>verb</i> aperiō; <i>adj.</i> apertus, -a,	power rēgnum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
-um	praise laudō
opinion sententia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	prayer prex, precis, <i>f.</i>
opportune opportūnus, -a, -um	prefect praefectus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
opportunity occāsio, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> ; fa-	prefer mālō
cultās, -tātis, <i>f.</i>	prepare comparō, parō
opposite adversus, -a, -um	prepared parātus, -a, -um
or aut	press forward instō
oracle ōrāculum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	private privātus, -a, -um
order, in order that ut; <i>neg.</i> nē	proceed, enter ingredior
order imperō, iubeō	produce edō
other alter, -era, -erum; aliū; the	prolong prōducō
others ceterī, <i>m. pl.</i> , reliquī, <i>m. pl.</i>	promise polliceor
otherwise aliter	propose prōponō
our, ours noster, -tra, -trum; our	protection praesidium, -ī, <i>n.</i> ; to
men nostrī, -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	the protection in fidem
outside of, <i>adv.</i> , or <i>prep.</i> <i>w. acc.</i> extrā	province prōvincia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
overcome opprimō, superō	punishment supplicium, -ī, <i>n.</i> ; in-
ox taurus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	lict punishment, punish suppli-
	cium sūmō dē
palace, royal rēgia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	purpose of, for the ad or causā <i>w.</i>
part pars, partis, <i>f.</i>	<i>gerund</i> or <i>gerundive</i>
pass through pervādō	pursue prōsequor
path via, -ae, <i>f.</i>	put on impōnō, induō
peace pāx, pācis, <i>f.</i>	
people populus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	quaestor quaestor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>
perish pereō	quarrel contrōversia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
permit patior, permittō; it is per-	quarters pars, partis, <i>f.</i> ; from all
mitted licet	quarters undique

- queen *rēgina*, -ae, *f.*
quite *omnīnō*
race *genus*, -eris, *n.*
rampart *agger*, *aggeris*, *m.*
rashly *temerē*
rather *magis*, *potius*
reach *attingō*
receive *excipiō*
recount *commemorō*
recover *recipiō w. reflexive*
reduce *redigō*
refinement *hūmānitās*, -tātis, *f.*
region *regiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
relatives *necessārii*, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
remain *remaneō*; (be left) *supersum*
remarkable *ēgregius*, -a, -um
repair *reficiō*
report *renūntiō*, *ēnūntiō*, *nūntiō*
repulse *repellō*
reputation *opiniō*, -ōnis, *f.*
resist *resistō*
resources *opēs*, -um, *f. pl.*
response *respōnsum*, -i, *n.*
rest *quiēs*, -ētis, *f.*
rest, the *cēteri*, -ae, -a; *reliquus*
restore *restituō*
retard *tardō*
return *redeō*, *revertor*
reward *praemium*, -i, *n.*
river *flūmen*, -inis, *n.*
rock *rūpēs*, -is, *f.*
rope *fūnis*, -is, *m.*
rumor *rūmor*, -ōris, *m.*
run *currō*; run to meet *occurrō*
safe *tūtus*, -a, -um
safety *salūs*, -ūtis, *f.*
sail *solvō nāvem*
sail-yard *antenna*, -ae, *f.*
sake of, for the *causā*
same *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*
say *dīcō*, *inquam (parenthetical)*;
say . . . not, deny *negō*
scarcely *vix*
scatter *dispergō*
scout *explōrātor*, -ōris, *m.*
sea *mare*, *maris*, *n.*
secretly *clam*
see *videō*, *cōspiciō*, *cōspicor*, *per-*
spiciō; see to it *cūrō*
seek *quaerō*, *petō*; seek out *con-*
quirō
seize *rapīō*, *dētrahō*, *comprehendō*
select *ēligō*, *creō*
self-confidence *fidūcia*, -ae, *f.*
send *mittō*; send ahead *praemittō*
separate *dividō*
servitude *servitūs*, -tūtis, *f.*
set fire to *incendō*
set out *proficiscor*, *prōficiō*, *ēgredior*
several *nōn nullus*, -a, -um; *com-*
plūrēs, -a
shatter *frangō*; shattered, *adj.*
fractus, -a, -um
she *ea*, *haec*, *illa*
shield *scūtum*, -i, *n.*
ship *nāvis*, -is, *f.*; warship *nāvis*
longa, *f.*
shore *litus*, -oris, *n.*
short *brevis*, -e
show *praebeō*, *dēmōnstrō*, *ostendō*
side *latus*, -eris, *n.*
siege *oppugnātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
sight *cōspectus*, -ūs, *m.*
signal *signum*, -i, *n.*
since *cum*, *w. subjunctive*; also *abl.*
abs.
sister *soror*, -ōris, *f.*
size *magnitūdō*, -inis, *f.*
skilled, skillful *peritus*, -a, -um
slinger *funditor*, -ōris, *m.*
small *exiguus*, -a, -um

- so *tam*, *ita*; so great *tantus*, -a, -um
soldier *miles*, -itis, *m*.
some(one) *aliquis*; *adj.* *aliqui*
son *filius*, -i, *m*.
space *intervallum*, -i, *n*.
speed *celeritas*, -tatis, *f*.
stag *cervus*, -i, *m*.
stand *stō*
state *civitas*, -tatis, *f*.
stay *manēō*
still, *adv.* *tamen*
stone *lapis*, -idis, *m*.
stop *prohibeō*
storm, *noun* *tempestas*, -tatis, *f*.
storm, *verb* *expugnō*
story *fābula*, -ae, *f*.
strange *ignōtus*, -a, -um
strength *virēs*, -ium, *f. pl.*
stripped *nūdātus*, -a, -um
subdued *pācātus*, -a, -um
succeed *succedō*
succession, in *continuus*, -a, -um
such *tālis*, -e; such great *tantus*
suddenly *subitō*
suitable *idōneus*, -a, -um; *oppor-*
tūnus, -a, -um
summer *aestās*, -tatis, *f*.
summon *arcessō*
sun *sōl*, *sōlis*, *m*.
sunset *sōlis occāsus*, *m*.
supply *cōpia*, -ae, *f.*; *commeātus*,
-iūs, *m*.
surpass *antecēdō*, *praecēdō*, *praestō*
surrender, *noun* *deditiō*, -ōnis, *f.*; *verb*
dēdō; *v. reflex.* *prōdō*
surround *circumveniō*, *circumsistō*
suspect *suspīcor*
suspicion *suspiciō*, -ōnis, *f*.
swamp *palūs*, -ūdis, *f*.
table *mēnsa*, -ae, *f*.
talk *loquor*; talk together (to each
other) *inter sē colloquor* (*loquor*)
task *labor*, -ōris, *m*.
ten *decem*
territory *finēs*, -ium, *m. pl.*
terror *terror*, -ōris, *m*.
than *ac*, *quam*
thanks *grātia*, -ae, *f*.
that, *pron. or adj.* *ille*, *is*; that (of
yours) *iste*
that, *conj.*, *purpose and result* *ut*;
that not, *purpose* *nē*, *result* *ut*
... *nōn*; *after words of doubting*
quān; *after verbs of fearing* *nē*
then *tum*, *deinde*
there, *adv.* *eō*; therefore, *adv.* *itaque*
thing *rēs*, *rei*, *f*.
think *arbitror*
this *hic*, *is*; (thus) *sic*
three days *triduum*
through *per v. acc.*
throw *prōiciō*; throw into confusion
perturbō
time *tempus*, -oris, *n*.
to, *prep.* *in*, *ad*, *v. acc.*
tooth *dēns*, *dentis*, *m*.
torture *cruciātus*, -ūs, *m*.
touch *tangō*
toward, *prep.* *ad*, *in*, *v. acc.*
tower *turris*, -is, *f*.
town *oppidum*, -i, *n*.
train *instituō*
training *disciplina*, -ae, *f*.
tranquillity *tranquillitas*, -tatis, *f*.
transport, *noun* *nāvis onerāria*, *f*.
treachery *perfidia*, -ae, *f*.
tree *arbor*, -oris, *f*.
tribe *gēns*, *gentis*, *f*.
tribune *tribūnus*, -i, *m*.
trumpet *tuba*, -ae, *f*.
try out *explōrō*

- tumult tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
 turn vertō; turn away (from) āvertō
 two duo, duae, duo; two days
 bīdium, -ī, *n.*
 unarmed inermis, -e
 understand intellegō
 undertake suscipiō
 unencumbered expeditus, -a, -um
 unfavorable aliēnus, -a, -um; in-
 iquus, -a, -um
 unfriendly inimicus, -a, -um
 unhappy miser, -era, -erum
 unharmed incolumis, -e
 unless nisi
 unlike absimilis, -e
 until dum; *adv.* usque
 unwilling invītus, -a, -um; be un-
 willing nōlō
 upon, *prep.* in, *w. acc.*
 upper superus, -a, -um
 urge on incitō
 use, *noun* ūsus, ūsūs, *m.*; *verb* ūtor
 usual solitus, -a, -um

 valley vallēs, -is, *f.*
 village vicus, -ī, *m.*
 voice vōx, vōcis, *f.*
 vow cōfirmō

 wage gerō; wage war bellum gerō
 wagon carrus, -ī, *m.*
 wait expectō
 wall pariēs, -etis, *m.*; mūrus, -ī, *m.*
 wander vagor
 war bellum, -ī, *n.*
 watch vigilia, -ae, *f.*
 water aqua, -ae, *f.*
 way, right of way iter, itineris, *n.*
 weapon tēlum, -ī, *n.*
 weary dēfessus, -a, -um
 weather tempestās, -tātis, *f.*

 weep fleō
 weigh (anchor) tollō
 west sōlis occāsus, *m.*
 whatever quicūque, quaecumque,
 quodcumque
 when cum, ubi
 whence unde
 where ubi, in quō locō
 while dum
 while, a little, *adv.* paulisper
 who, which, what, that, *relative pron.*
 quī, quae, quod
 who, which, what, *interrog. pron.* quis,
 quid; *interrog. adj.* quī, quae, quod
 whole tōtus, -a, -um
 why cūr, quam ob rem
 width lātitudō, -inis, *f.*
 wife uxor, -ōris, *f.*
 wind ventus, -ī, *m.*
 wine vinum, -ī, *n.*
 wing āla, -ae, *f.*
 winter, *verb* hiemō
 wish volō
 with, *prep.* cum, *w. abl.*
 within, *prep.* intrā, *w. acc.*
 without, *prep.* sine, *w. abl.*
 witness testis, -is, *m.*
 woman mulier, -eris, *f.*
 woods silva, -ae, *f.*
 work opus, operis, *n.*; labor, -ōris,
 m.; opera, -ae, *f.*
 world terra, -ae, *f.*; orbis terrārum
 worn out cōfectus, -a, -um
 wretched miser, -era, -erum
 wrongdoing maleficium, -ī, *n.*

 year annus, -ī, *m.*
 yoke, *noun* iugum, -ī, *n.*; *verb* iungō
 you, *sing.* tū; *pl.* vōs
 young man adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
 your, *sing.* tuus; *pl.* vester

INDEX

The numbers refer to pages. **Boldface** numbers refer to pages in SYNTAX FOR REFERENCE; *italics* to review (ITERATIO) in THE ARGONAUTS. Reference to the many notes in the text concerning forms and principles of syntax is given only in special cases.

ablative

- absolute, 85, 214, 286 Note 2, 415
- of accompaniment, 82, 269, 415
- of accordance, 111, 305, 414
- of agent, 76, 414
- of attendant circumstance, 415
- of cause, 93, 415
- of comparison, 232 Note 9, 239, 263, 415
- of description (quality), 87, 216, 415
- of duration of time, 245 Note 9, 417
- of manner, 74, 277, 415
- of means, 67, 271, 416
- of measure (degree) of difference, 76, 231, 416
- of place from which, 106, 249, 414
- of place where, 67, 416
- of price, 416
- of separation, 273, 414
- of source, 230, 414
- of specification, 90, 206, 416
- of time, 62, 261, 417
- of way by which, 416
- with *dignus* and *indignus*, 416
- with prepositions, 417
- with special deponent verbs, 5, 67 Note 4, 100, 280, 416

accusative

- as subject of an infinitive, 414
- of direct object, 65, 413
- of exclamation, 155 Note 12, 414
- of extent, 71, 74, 414
- of place to which (limit of motion), 53, 65, 413
- two accusatives,
 - with compound verbs, 227 Note 3, 413
 - with verbs of *naming*, etc., 413
 - with verbs of *teaching*, etc., 413
- with prepositions, 414

adjectives

- agreement, 65, 419
- comparison, regular, 111, 392; irregular, 111, 392
- comparative and superlative, 392; declension of comparative, 392; use, 420
- declension, first and second, 65, 389-390; third, 81, 390; special (irregular), 9, 76, 391
- governing the genitive, 411
- interrogative, 100, 390
- numeral, 393
- possessive, use, 100, 419
- special uses
 - denoting a part, 247, 246 Note 8, 420
 - with adverbial force, 420
 - substantive use, 276 Note 7, 420

adverbs, comparison, regular, 111, 392; irregular, 111, 393

adversative clauses, 42, 245, 427

agreement

- of adjectives, 419
- of appositives, 410
- of relative pronouns, 418
- of verbs, 420

aliquis, declension, 396

alius, declension, 9, 391; idiomatic use, 318, 419

alter, declension, 391

antecedent, see **relative pronoun**

antequam, with indicative, 84, 426; with subjunctive, 84, 278, 426

anticipatory subjunctive, 84, 278, 426

appositives, 410

attraction, subjunctive by, 9; Note 4, 289 Note 2, 428

cardinal numerals, 88, 393

causâ, see **genitive**, **gerund**, and **gerundive**

- causal clauses**
 with *cum*, 42, 76, 427
 with *quod, quia, quoniam*, 230 Note 7, 427
 with relative pronoun, 281 Note 7, 424
- characteristic clauses, see relative clauses**
- commands**
 expressed by imperative, 52, 428
 expressed by subjunctive, 52, 423
 in indirect discourse, 284 Note 2, 430
 negative, 37, 230 Note 8, 428
- comparison, of adjectives, 73, 392; of ad-
 verbs, 111, 392, 393**
- complementary infinitive, 85, 429**
- conditions, 427-428**
 contrary to fact, 150 Note 3, 428
 in indirect discourse, 430-431
 of fact, 338 Note 3, 428
 of possibility, 338 Note 4, 428
- conjugation of verbs**
 deponents, 403-404
 irregular, 405-408
 regular, 397-403
- cum clauses, 38, 42, 76, 88, 245, 425-427**
- dative**
 double dative, 100, 244
 of agent, 40, 100, 283, 413
 of indirect object, 88, 412
 of possession, 42, 112, 413
 of purpose or tendency, 71, 244, 413
 of reference, 100, 244, 412
 of separation, 285 Note 8, 287, 413
 with adjectives, 223 Note 4, 413
 with compound verbs, 17, 71, 412
 with special verbs, 34, 70, 209, 412
- declensions**
 of adjectives, 65, 81, 389-391
 of nouns, 61, 71, 73, 70, 386-389
 of pronouns, 67, 73, 76, 70, 90, 109, 394-396
- defective verbs, 409**
- deliberative question, 423**
- demonstrative pronouns, declension, 394;
 uses, 419**
- deponent verbs, conjugation, 4-5, 100,
 403-404**
- derivatives, see word studies**
- dum, with indicative, 84, 312, 426; with
 subjunctive, 84, 426**
- duo, declension, 391**
- ego, declension, 394**
- eo, conjugation, 43, 93, 408**
- etsi, with indicative, 427**
- fearing, clauses with verbs of, 259-260,
 288, 425**
- ferō, conjugation, 16, 91, 406-407**
- fiō, conjugation, 24, 106, 407**
- future perfect tense, 9; active, 65, 398;
 passive, 73, 401; use of, 421; in
 indirect discourse, 309, 431**
- future tense, active, 62, 397; passive, 67,
 401; use of, 421**
- genitive**
 objective, 61, 221, 411
 of description, 87, 281, 411
 of possession, 62, 410
 of the whole, 76, 411
 predicate genitive, 160 Note 7, 411
 subjective genitive, 411
 with adjectives, 236, 411
 with *causā, grātiā*, 410
 with *potior*, 412
 with verbs of remembering and forgetting,
 412
- gerund, declension, 400; use, 47-49, 103,
 211, 432**
- gerundive (future passive participle),
 declension, 403; use, 48-49, 103,
 211, 432**
- hic, declension, 67, 394; use, 419**
- hindering, clauses with verbs of, 263 Note
 11, 424**
- historical present, 211 Note 6, 421**
- īdem, declension, 395; use, 419**
- ille, declension, 67, 395; use, 419**
- imperative mood, forms, 399, 402-403;
 use, 428**
- imperfect tense**
 indicative, active, 62, 245 Note 7, 397,
 421; passive, 67, 401
 subjunctive, active, 19-20, 76, 398;
 passive, 76, 402; secondary se-
 quence, 29, 422
- impersonal verbs, 73, 409, 421**
 passive of intransitive, 73, 245 Note 2,
 276 Note 5, 409

- indefinite pronouns**, declension, 24, 93, 396; use, 24, 280 Note 5, 418
- indicative mood**, conjugation, 397-398, 400-401; use, 422
- in adversative clauses, 42, 245, 427
- in causal clauses, 427
- in conditional clauses, 428
- in relative clauses, 423
- in temporal clauses, 38, 84, 218, 312, 425-427
- indirect discourse**, 264, 429-431
- commands in, 284 Note 2, 430
- implied, 273 Note 6, 431
- questions in, 20, 430
- sequence of tenses in, 300, 430-431
- statements in, 82, 262 Note 6, 264 Note 3, 430
- subordinate clauses in, 82, 430-431
- indirect questions**, 20, 100, 233, 425
- infinitive**, 397, 399-400, 403
- as subject or object, 82, 429
- complementary, 429
- historical, 429
- in indirect discourse, 82, 429-430
- tenses in indirect statements, 429-430
- with *iubeō* and *prohibeō*, 103 Note 4, 248, 424, 425
- intensive pronoun**, declension, 395; uses, 418
- interrogative pronoun**, 100, 396
- ipse*, declension, 76, 395; use, 418
- irregular verbs**, see *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*, *mālō*, *nālō*, *possum*, *sum*, *volō*
- is**, declension, 73, 394; use, 419
- locative case**, 417
- mālō**, conjugation, 37, 407-408
- memini**, force of tenses, 422
- nē**
- with purpose clauses, 14, 82, 285, 424
- with verbs of fearing, 64 Note 1, 250, 425
- with verbs of hindering, 424
- with volitive subjunctive, 52, 423
- negative commands**, 37-38, 430 Note 8, 428
- nālō**, conjugation, 37, 407-408; *nālī*, in negative commands (prohibitions), 37, 428
- nominative**, uses, 62, 410
- nōn**, in result clauses, 20, 424
- nouns**
- of first declension, 61, 386
- of second declension, 61, 386, 387
- of third declension, 71, 387, 388
- of fourth declension, 75, 388, 389
- of fifth declension, 70, 380
- of irregular declension, 388
- nōvī*, *cognōvī*, force of tenses, 422
- num**, 108 Note 2
- numerals**, 88, 108, 393, 394
- object**, direct, 64, 413; indirect, 81, 412
- ōdī*, force of tenses, 422
- optative subjunctive**, 423
- ordinal numerals**, 108, 393, 394
- participles**, 66; active, 400; passive, 403; uses, 66, 246, 275, 431
- agreement, 419
- future active, 400; see periphrastic conjugation, active
- future passive, 48, 403; see gerundive and periphrastic conjugation, passive
- perfect
- equivalent to a clause, 273 Note 4, 431
- equivalent to a present participle, 27 Note 6, 431
- passive voice of intransitive verbs**, 73, 409
- past perfect tense**
- indicative, active, 64, 398; passive, 73, 401
- subjunctive, 28; active, 399; passive, 402
- in contrary to fact conditions, 428
- representing a future perfect of direct discourse, 81 Note 7, 431
- secondary sequence, 20, 422
- perfect tense**
- indicative, active, 64, 398; passive, 73, 401
- subjunctive, 28; active, 70, 399; passive, 70, 402; primary sequence, 28, 29, 422
- periphrastic conjugations**, active, 64, 214, 409; passive, 48, 10, 100, 283, 409
- personal pronouns**, declension, 100, 394; use, 394, 417
- plūs**, declension, 391
- plūs**, **minus**, **amplius**, **longius**, construction with, 415

- possum*, conjugation, 85, 406
postquam, with indicative, 241, 427
 potential subjunctive, 137 Note 7, 423
 predicate nouns and adjectives, 228, 410
 prefixes, see word studies
 prepositions, with ablative, 417; with accusative, 414
 present tense, 421
 historical, 211 Note 6, 421
 indicative, active, 62, 397; passive, 67, 400
 of infinitive in indirect discourse, 429
 primary sequence, 28-29, 422
 subjunctive, active, 13-14, 398; passive, 402
 with *dum*, 81, 312, 426
priusquam
 with indicative, 84, 426
 with subjunctive, 84, 278, 426
 pronouns, declension, 24, 67, 73, 76, 79, 90, 100, 394-396; uses, 417-419
 purpose expressed by
 adverbial clauses, 14, 82, 285, 424
 dative, 71, 214, 413
 gerund with *ad* or *causā*, 47-48, 432
 gerundive with *ad* or *causā*, 48, 432
 relative clauses, 70, 218 Note 9, 220, 424
 supine in *-um*, 225-226, 432
quam, with comparatives, 239, 415;
 omitted with *plūs*, etc., 415; with superlative, 420
quamquam, with indicative, 427
 questions
 deliberative, 423
 indirect, 29, 100, 233, 425
 in indirect discourse, 430
 of fact, 422
qui
 indefinite, declension, 396 Footnote
 relative, declension, 395
 interrogative, declension, 396
quidam, declension, 396; use, 24, 418
quin
 with verbs of doubting, 96, 425
 with verbs of hindering, 424
quis
 indefinite, declension, 396 Footnote
 interrogative, declension, 100, 396
quisque, quisquam, declension, 396
quōd, with purpose clauses, 220, 424
quod, in causal clauses, 427; with substantive clause of fact, 425
quōdminus, with verbs of hindering, 424
 reflexive pronoun, declension, 79, 394; use, 82, 417
 relative clauses
 descriptive (characteristic), 216 Note 2, 423-424
 determinative, 423
 purpose, 70, 220, 424
 result, 338 Note 2, 424
 relative pronouns, 90, 418
 agreement, 91, 418
 antecedent, 216 Note 1, 227 Note 11, 418
 connecting, 81 Note 9, 90 Note 3, 299 Note 3, 419
 declension, 395
 result clauses
 adverbial with *ut, ut nōn*, 20, 93, 289, 424
 substantive, 267, 425
 tenses, sequence of, 28-29, 299 Note 8, 422
 semi-deponent verbs, 405
 sequence of tenses, 28-29, 82, 91, 422
sōlus, declension, 391
 subjunctive mood, 13; uses, 423-428
 forms of, present, 13, 76; imperfect, 19-20, 76; perfect and past perfect, 28, 79; active, 398-399; passive, 402
 by attraction, 289 Note 2, 428
 in anticipatory clauses, 84, 278, 314, 426
 in conditional clauses, 428
 in *cum*-adversative clauses, 42, 245 Note 4, 427
 in *cum*-causal clauses, 42, 427
 in *cum*-circumstantial clauses, 38, 88, 212, 426
 in descriptive relative clauses, 423
 in indirect questions, 29, 100, 233, 425
 in purpose clauses, 14, 70, 424
 in result clauses, 20, 93, 289, 424
 in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 82, 430-431
 optative, 423
 potential, 423
 volitive, 52, 106, 146 Note 2, 149 Note 2, 248, 423, 424

- with verbs of doubting, 96, 425
 with verbs of fearing, 64 Note 1, 259, 425
 with verbs of hindering, 424
substantive clauses, 424-425
 of fact, 425
 of result, 267, 425
 volitive, 52-53, 248, 424
 with words of doubting, 96, 425
 with verbs of fearing, 64 Note 1, 259, 288, 425
 with verbs of hindering, 263 Note 11, 424
suffixes, see **word studies**
suī, declension, 394; use, 82, 417
sum, conjugation, 71, 79, 405
supine, 225-226, 400, 432
- temporal clauses**
 indicative uses, 38, 425-427
 with *antequam* or *priusquam* stating a fact, 84, 426
 with *cum* in clauses denoting definite time, 38, 300, 425
 with *cum* of repeated action, 290, 426
 with *dum* meaning *while*, *as long as*, 84, 312, 426
 with *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, etc., 218, 241, 427
 subjunctive uses, 425-427
 with *antequam* or *priusquam* expressing anticipation, 84, 278, 314, 426
 with *cum* in circumstantial clauses (situation), 38, 88, 212, 426
 with *dum* expressing anticipation, 84, 426
- uses**
 of the indicative, 9-10, 421-422
 of the infinitive in indirect discourse, 309, 429-430
 primary, 28-29, 280 Note 4, 422, 431
 secondary, 28-29, 91, 422
 sequence of, with the subjunctive, 28-29, 422
- quis*, declension, 391
rēs, declension, 391
ū, declension, 394
- ubi*, with indicative, 218, 427
ūllus, declension, 391
ūnus, declension, 391
ut
 in purpose clauses, 14, 285, 424
 in result clauses, 20, 424
 in substantive volitive clauses, 424
 with the indicative, 427
 with verbs of fearing, 64 Note 1, 259, 425
- verbs**
 agreement with subject, 420
 conjugation, 397-409
 contracted forms, 409
 deponent, 4-5, 100, 403-404
 defective, 409
 impersonal, 73, 409, 421
 intransitive, 17
 irregular, 405-408
 semi-deponent, 405
 transitive, 17
 vocative case, 410
 volitive subjunctive, 52-53, 100, 140 Note 2, 140 Note 2, 248, 423, 424
volō, conjugation, 33, 100, 407-408
- word studies**
 assimilations, 433-434
 derivatives, see **word studies in various lessons** and also pp. 443-446
 prefixes
 ā- or *ab-*, *ad-*, *cum-*, *dē-*, *dīs-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *sub-*, *sē-*, *re-*, *prō-*; see **word studies in various lessons**
 suffixes, summary, 434
 -ānus, *-ēnus*, *-īnus*, 275; *-āris*, *-ārius*, 236; *-ātus*, 263; *-bilis*, *-ilis*, 88; *-ia* or *-tia*, 71; *-icus*, *-ius*, *-nus*, *-ēnsis*, 238; *-idus*, 210; *-io*, *-siō*, *-tiō*, 82; *-ium*, 91; *-ivus*, 240; *-lus*, *-olus*, *-ulus*, *-culus*, *-ellus*, 273; *-men*, *-mentum*, 241; *-ōsus*, 224; *-lās*, 62; *-tor*, 77; *-tūdō*, 71; *-lus*, *-sus*, 240; *-ulum*, *-bulum*, *-culum*, 65; *-ūra*, 104
- vowel changes, 434
 word studies, see **various lessons**

